

## User and Reference Manual



Copyright © 1998–2010, Altova GmbH. All rights reserved. Use of this software is governed by and subject to an Altova software license agreement. XMLSpy, MapForce, StyleVision, SemanticWorks, SchemaAgent, UModel, DatabaseSpy, DiffDog, Authentic, AltovaXML, MissionKit, and ALTOVA as well as their logos are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Altova GmbH. Protected by US Patent 7,200,816.

XML, XSL, XHTML, and W3C are trademarks (registered in numerous countries) of the World Wide Web Consortium; marks of the W3C are registered and held by its host institutions, MIT, INRIA, and Keio. UNICODE and the Unicode Logo are trademarks of Unicode Inc. This software contains 3rd party copyrighted software or material that is protected by copyright and subject to other terms and conditions as detailed on the Altova website at [http://www.altova.com/legal\\_3rdparty.html](http://www.altova.com/legal_3rdparty.html)

**ALTOVA®**

## **Altova StyleVision 2010 User & Reference Manual**

All rights reserved. No parts of this work may be reproduced in any form or by any means - graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or information storage and retrieval systems - without the written permission of the publisher.

Products that are referred to in this document may be either trademarks and/or registered trademarks of the respective owners. The publisher and the author make no claim to these trademarks.

While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this document, the publisher and the author assume no responsibility for errors or omissions, or for damages resulting from the use of information contained in this document or from the use of programs and source code that may accompany it. In no event shall the publisher and the author be liable for any loss of profit or any other commercial damage caused or alleged to have been caused directly or indirectly by this document.

Published: 2010

© 2010 Altova GmbH

---

# Table of Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Altova StyleVision 2010</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>About this Documentation</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>New Features</b>	<b>10</b>
3.1	Version 2010 .....	11
<b>4</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>14</b>
4.1	What Is an SPS? .....	15
4.2	Product Features .....	17
4.3	Terminology .....	20
4.4	Setting up StyleVision .....	24
4.5	Authentic View in Altova Products .....	25
<b>5</b>	<b>User Interface</b>	<b>28</b>
5.1	Main Window .....	29
5.1.1	Design View .....	30
5.1.2	Output Views .....	31
5.2	Sidebars .....	33
5.2.1	Design Overview .....	36
5.2.2	Schema Tree .....	39
5.2.3	Design Tree .....	42
5.2.4	Style Repository .....	46
5.2.5	Styles .....	49
5.2.6	Properties .....	51
<b>6</b>	<b>Quick Start Tutorial</b>	<b>56</b>
6.1	Creating and Setting Up a New SPS .....	57
6.2	Inserting Dynamic Content (from XML Source) .....	60
6.3	Inserting Static Content .....	66

6.4	Formatting the Content .....	71
6.5	Using Auto-Calculations .....	77
6.6	Using Conditions .....	80
6.7	Using Global Templates and Rest-of-Contents .....	87
6.8	That's It! .....	91

## **7 Usage Overview 94**

7.1	SPS and Sources .....	95
7.2	Creating the Design .....	96
7.3	XSLT and XPath Versions .....	97
7.4	Generated Files .....	98
7.5	Catalogs in StyleVision .....	99

## **8 SPS File: Content 104**

8.1	Inserting XML Content as Text .....	105
8.1.1	Inserting Content with a Predefined Format .....	108
8.1.2	Rest-of-Contents .....	109
8.2	User-Defined Templates .....	110
8.3	User-Defined Elements, XML Text Blocks .....	113
8.3.1	User-Defined Elements .....	114
8.3.2	User-Defined XML Text Blocks .....	115
8.4	Tables .....	116
8.4.1	Static Tables .....	119
8.4.2	Dynamic Tables .....	121
8.4.3	Tables in Design View .....	126
8.4.4	Table Formatting .....	128
8.4.5	Row and Column Display .....	132
8.5	Lists .....	134
8.5.1	Static Lists .....	135
8.5.2	Dynamic Lists .....	137
8.6	Graphics .....	140
8.6.1	Image URIs .....	141
8.6.2	Image Types and Output .....	143
8.6.3	Example: A Template for Images .....	144
8.7	Form Controls .....	145
8.7.1	Input Fields, Multiline Input Fields .....	147
8.7.2	Check Boxes .....	148

8.7.3	Combo Boxes .....	149
8.7.4	Radio Buttons, Buttons .....	151
8.8	Links .....	152
8.9	Layout Modules .....	153
8.9.1	Layout Containers .....	154
8.9.2	Layout Boxes .....	158
8.9.3	Lines .....	162
8.10	The Change-To Feature .....	164

## **9 SPS File: Structure 168**

9.1	Schema Sources .....	170
9.1.1	DTDs and XML Schemas .....	172
9.1.2	User-Defined Schemas .....	177
9.2	Modular SPSs .....	180
9.2.1	Available Module Objects .....	182
9.2.2	Creating a Modular SPS .....	185
9.2.3	Example: An Address Book .....	189
9.3	Templates and Design Fragments .....	194
9.3.1	Main Template .....	195
9.3.2	Global Templates .....	196
9.3.3	User-Defined Templates .....	200
9.3.4	Variable Templates .....	203
9.3.5	Node-Template Operations .....	204
9.3.6	Design Fragments .....	208
9.4	XSLT Templates .....	211

## **10 SPS File: Advanced Features 214**

10.1	Auto-Calculations .....	215
10.1.1	Editing and Moving Auto-Calculations .....	216
10.1.2	Example: An Invoice .....	218
10.2	Conditions .....	220
10.2.1	Setting Up the Conditions .....	221
10.2.2	Editing Conditions .....	224
10.2.3	Conditions and Auto-Calculations .....	225
10.3	Grouping .....	226
10.3.1	Example: Group-By (Persons.sps) .....	229
10.3.2	Example: Group-By (Scores.sps) .....	231
10.4	Sorting .....	234

10.4.1	The Sorting Mechanism .....	235
10.4.2	Example: Sorting on Multiple Sort-Keys .....	237
10.5	Parameters and Variables .....	240
10.5.1	User-Declared Parameters .....	241
10.5.2	Parameters for Design Fragments .....	243
10.5.3	SPS Parameters for Sources .....	246
10.5.4	Variables .....	247
10.6	Table of Contents, Referencing, Bookmarks .....	249
10.6.1	Marking Items for TOC Inclusion .....	252
	<i>Structuring the Design in Levels</i> .....	254
	<i>Creating TOC Bookmarks</i> .....	257
10.6.2	Creating the TOC Template .....	260
	<i>Relevels in the TOC Template</i> .....	262
	<i>TOC References: Name, Scope, Hyperlink</i> .....	263
	<i>Formatting TOC Items</i> .....	264
10.6.3	Example: Hierarchical and Sequential TOCs .....	265
10.6.4	Auto-Numbering .....	269
10.6.5	Text References .....	273
10.6.6	Bookmarks and Hyperlinks .....	275
	<i>Inserting Bookmarks</i> .....	276
	<i>Defining Hyperlinks</i> .....	279

## **11 SPS File: Presentation 284**

11.1	Predefined Formats .....	285
11.2	Output Escaping .....	287
11.3	Value Formatting (Formatting Numeric Datatypes) .....	289
11.3.1	The Value Formatting Mechanism .....	290
11.3.2	Value Formatting Syntax .....	293
11.4	Working with CSS Styles .....	298
11.4.1	External CSS Stylesheets .....	300
11.4.2	Defining CSS Styles Globally .....	302
11.4.3	Defining CSS Styles Locally .....	305
	<i>Selecting SPS Components to Style</i> .....	306
	<i>How Styles Are Applied to Components</i> .....	309
11.4.4	Setting CSS Property Values .....	310
11.5	Style Properties Via XPath .....	312

## **12 SPS File: Additional Functionality 316**

12.1	Altova Global Resources .....	317
12.1.1	Defining Global Resources .....	318
	<i>Files</i> .....	320
	<i>Folders</i> .....	323
	<i>Copying Configurations</i> .....	324
12.1.2	Using Global Resources .....	325
	<i>Assigning Files and Folders</i> .....	326
	<i>Assigning Databases</i> .....	329
	<i>Changing Configurations</i> .....	330
12.2	Working with Dates .....	331
12.2.1	Formatting Dates .....	332
12.3	Unparsed Entity URIs .....	335
12.4	Using Scripts .....	337
12.4.1	Defining JavaScript Functions .....	338
12.4.2	Assigning Functions as Event Handlers .....	339
12.4.3	External JavaScript Files .....	340
12.5	HTML Import .....	342
12.5.1	Creating New SPS via HTML Import .....	343
12.5.2	Creating the Schema and SPS Design .....	345
12.5.3	Creating Tables and Lists as Elements/Attributes .....	347
12.5.4	Generating Output .....	349

## **13 Automated Processing 352**

13.1	Command Line Interface: StyleVisionBatch .....	353
13.1.1	StyleVisionBatch Syntax .....	354
13.1.2	StyleVisionBatch Examples .....	357
13.2	Using AltovaXML .....	358
13.2.1	XSLT 1.0 CLI Transformations .....	359
13.2.2	XSLT 2.0 CLI Transformations .....	360
13.3	How to Automate Processing .....	361
13.3.1	Creating Batch Files .....	362
13.3.2	Automating with Scheduled Tasks (Windows XP) .....	363
13.3.3	Automating with Scheduled Tasks (Windows Vista) .....	366

## **14 Reference 372**

14.1	Toolbars .....	373
14.1.1	Formatting .....	375
14.1.2	Insert Design Elements .....	376

---

14.1.3	Table .....	378
14.1.4	Design Filter .....	380
14.1.5	Global Resources .....	381
14.1.6	Standard .....	382
14.2	Design View .....	383
14.2.1	Symbols .....	384
14.2.2	Edit XPath Expression .....	388
14.3	File Menu .....	391
14.3.1	New .....	392
14.3.2	Open, Reload, Close, Close All .....	399
14.3.3	Save Design, Design As, All .....	404
14.3.4	Save Generated Files .....	409
14.3.5	Assign/Unassign Working XML File .....	410
14.3.6	Properties .....	411
14.3.7	Print Preview, Print .....	413
14.3.8	Most Recently Used Files, Exit .....	414
14.4	Edit Menu .....	415
14.4.1	Undo, Redo, Select All .....	416
14.4.2	Find, Find Next, Replace .....	417
14.4.3	Stylesheet Parameters .....	419
14.4.4	Collapse/Expand Markup .....	420
14.5	View Menu .....	421
14.5.1	Toolbars and Status Bar .....	422
14.5.2	Design Sidebars .....	423
14.5.3	Design Filter, Zoom .....	424
14.6	Insert Menu .....	425
14.6.1	Contents .....	426
14.6.2	Rest of Contents .....	427
14.6.3	Form Controls .....	428
14.6.4	Auto-Calculation .....	429
14.6.5	Paragraph, Special Paragraph .....	431
14.6.6	Image .....	432
14.6.7	Horizontal Line .....	433
14.6.8	Table .....	434
14.6.9	Bullets and Numbering .....	435
14.6.10	Bookmark .....	438
14.6.11	Hyperlink .....	439
14.6.12	Condition, Output-Based Condition .....	441
14.6.13	Template .....	443
14.6.14	User-Defined Template .....	444



---

14.6.15	Variable Template .....	445
14.6.16	Layout Container, Layout Box, Line .....	446
14.6.17	Table of Contents .....	447
14.6.18	Design Fragment .....	448
14.6.19	User-Defined Item .....	449
14.7	Enclose With Menu .....	450
14.7.1	Template .....	451
14.7.2	User-Defined Template .....	452
14.7.3	Variable Templates .....	453
14.7.4	Paragraph, Special Paragraph .....	454
14.7.5	Bullets and Numbering .....	455
14.7.6	Bookmarks and Hyperlinks .....	456
14.7.7	Condition, Output-Based Condition .....	457
14.7.8	TOC Bookmarks and TOC Levels .....	459
14.7.9	User-Defined Element .....	460
14.8	Table Menu .....	461
14.8.1	Insert Table, Delete Table .....	462
14.8.2	Add Table Headers, Footers .....	463
14.8.3	Append/Insert Row/Column .....	464
14.8.4	Delete Row, Column .....	465
14.8.5	Join Cell Left, Right, Below, Above .....	466
14.8.6	Split Cell Horizontally, Vertically .....	467
14.8.7	View Cell Bounds, Table Markup .....	468
14.8.8	Table Properties .....	469
14.8.9	Vertical Alignment of Cell Content .....	470
14.9	Properties Menu .....	471
14.9.1	Edit Bullets and Numbering .....	472
14.9.2	Predefined Value Formatting Strings .....	473
14.10	Tools Menu .....	475
14.10.1	Spelling .....	476
14.10.2	Spelling Options .....	477
14.10.3	Global Resources .....	480
14.10.4	Active Configuration .....	481
14.10.5	Customize .....	482
14.10.6	Options .....	487
14.11	Window Menu .....	489
14.12	Help Menu .....	490
14.12.1	Table of Contents, Index, Search .....	491
14.12.2	Activation, Order Form, Registration, Updates .....	492
14.12.3	Other Commands .....	493

---

<b>15</b>	<b>Appendices</b>	<b>496</b>
15.1	XSLT Engine Information .....	497
15.1.1	XSLT 1.0 Engine: Implementation Information .....	498
15.1.2	XSLT 2.0 Engine: Implementation Information .....	500
	<i>General Information</i> .....	501
	<i>XSLT 2.0 Elements and Functions</i> .....	503
15.1.3	XPath 2.0 and XQuery 1.0 Functions .....	504
	<i>General Information</i> .....	505
	<i>Functions Support</i> .....	507
15.2	Technical Data .....	510
15.2.1	OS and Memory Requirements .....	511
15.2.2	Altova XML Parser .....	512
15.2.3	Altova XSLT and XQuery Engines .....	513
15.2.4	Unicode Support .....	514
	<i>Windows XP</i> .....	515
	<i>Right-to-Left Writing Systems</i> .....	516
15.2.5	Internet Usage .....	517
15.3	License Information .....	518
15.3.1	Electronic Software Distribution .....	519
15.3.2	Software Activation and License Metering .....	520
15.3.3	Intellectual Property Rights .....	521
15.3.4	Altova End User License Agreement .....	522
	<b>Index</b>	<b>537</b>

# **Chapter 1**

---

**Altova StyleVision 2010**

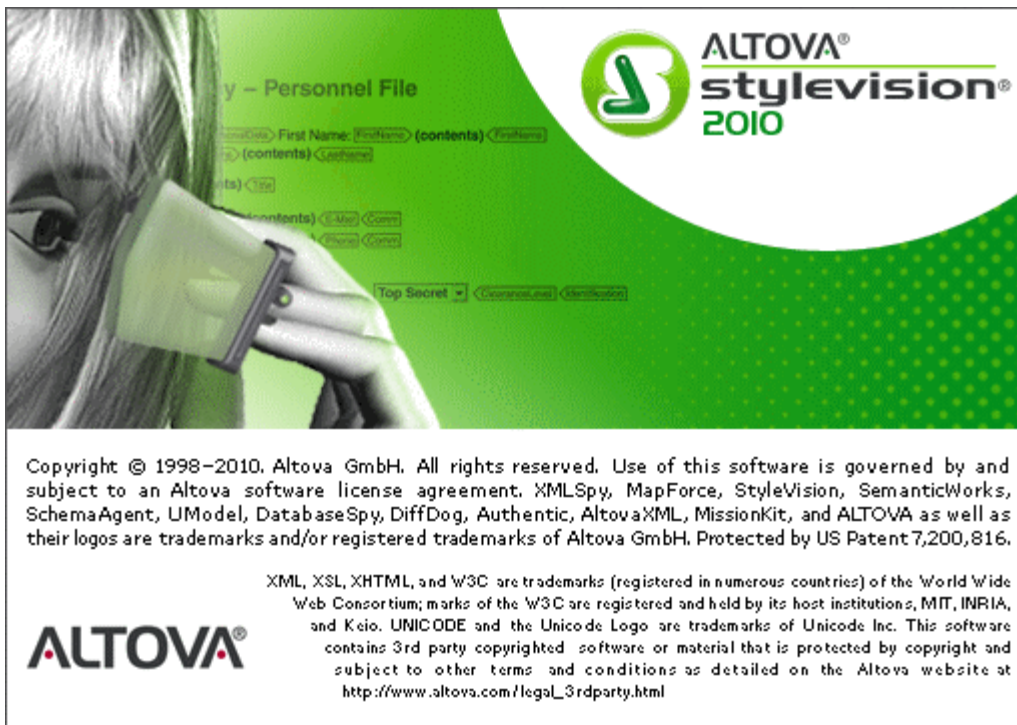


# 1 Altova StyleVision 2010

**Altova® StyleVision® 2010 Standard Edition** is an application for graphically designing and editing StyleVision Power Stylesheets. A StyleVision Power Stylesheet (SPS) can be used for the following purposes:

- To control a graphical WYSIWYG view of **XML documents in Authentic View**, which is an XML document editor available in the following Altova products: Altova XMLSpy, Altova StyleVision, Altova Authentic Desktop, and Altova Authentic Browser. It enables you to easily create [electronic forms](#) based on XML documents.
- To generate **XSLT stylesheets** based on the SPS design. (Both XSLT 1.0 and XSLT 2.0 are supported.) The XSLT stylesheets can be used outside StyleVision to transform XML documents into outputs such as HTML.
- To generate, directly from within StyleVision, **HTML output** from an XML document.

StyleVision also enables you to import an HTML document and create an XML document from it.



Altova website:  [Stylesheet Designer](#), [XSLT Designer](#)



## **Chapter 2**

---

### **About this Documentation**

## 2 About this Documentation

This documentation is the user manual delivered with StyleVision. It is available as the built-in Help system of StyleVision, can be viewed online at the [Altova website](#), and can also be downloaded from there as a PDF, which you can print.

The user manual is organized into the following sections:

- An [introduction](#), which explains what an SPS is and introduces the main features and concepts of StyleVision.
- A [description of the user interface](#), which provides an overview of the StyleVision GUI.
- A [tutorial](#) section, which is a hands-on exercise to familiarize you with StyleVision features.
- [Usage Overview](#), which describes usage at a high level: for example, schema sources used to create an SPS, the broad design process, Authentic View deployment, and projects.
- [SPS File Content](#), which explains how static (stylesheet-originated) and dynamic (XML document-originated) components are created and edited in the SPS.
- [SPS File Structure](#), which shows how an SPS file can be structured and modularized, and describes the handling of StyleVision's templates.
- [SPS File Advanced Features](#), which describes advanced design features, such as the automatic generation of calculations, the setting up of conditions, grouping and sorting on user-defined criteria, and how to build tables of contents and cross-references in the output document.
- [SPS File Presentation](#), which explains how SPS components are formatted and laid out.
- [SPS File Additional Editing Functionality](#), which describes a range of additional features that can make your SPS more powerful. These features include: global resources for leveraging functionality in other Altova products, additional validation, scripts, and variables and parameters.
- A [reference](#) section containing descriptions of all symbols and commands used in StyleVision.
- [Appendices](#) containing information about the Altova XSLT Engine information; technical data about StyleVision; and license information.

### How to use

We suggest you read the [Introduction](#), [User Interface](#) and [Usage Overview](#) sections first in order to get an overview of StyleVision features and general usage. Doing the [tutorial](#) next would provide hands-on experience of creating an SPS. The SPS File sections ([SPS File Content](#), [SPS File Structure](#), [SPS File Advanced Features](#), [SPS File Presentation](#), [SPS File Additional Functionality](#)) provide detailed descriptions of how to use various StyleVision features. For subsequent reference, the [Reference](#) section provides a concise description of all toolbar icon, design symbols, and menu commands, organized according to toolbar and menu. The [Command Line Interface: StyleVisionBatch](#) section provides information about calling StyleVision from the command line.

### Support options

Should you have any question or problem related to StyleVision, the following support options are available:

1. Check the [Help](#) file (this documentation). The Help file contains a full text-search feature, besides being fully indexed.
2. Check the [FAQs](#) and [Discussion Forum](#) at the [Altova Website](#).
3. Contact [Altova's Support Center](#).





**Commonly used abbreviations**

The following abbreviations are used frequently in this documentation:

- **SPS:** StyleVision Power Stylesheet
- **CSS:** Cascading Style Sheets
- **FAQ:** Frequently Asked Questions

## **Chapter 3**

---

### **New Features**

## 3 New Features

Features that are new in [StyleVision](#) **Version 2010 Release 3** are listed below.

- [Value Formatting \(Formatting Numeric Datatypes\)](#): The earlier Input Formatting mechanism has been extended to enable—only in the Enterprise Edition—the formatting of Inline XBRL values when they are output in an (X)HTML report. The older Input Formatting feature remains unchanged but has been renamed to Value Formatting.
- [Global templates](#) can now be created for any node or type in the schema. In earlier versions of StyleVision, global templates could only be created for global elements and global types. They can now be created on any node or type, and even for any item returned by an XPath expression.

## 3.1 Version 2010

### Version 2010 Release 1

Features that are new in [StyleVision Version 2010 Release 1](#) are listed below. Some of these new features have required a modification in the way older features are handled. In such cases, the existing feature continues to behave as before, but uses one or more of the newer mechanisms. The way a new feature affects existing features is also noted in the list below.

- [Layout Containers](#): A Layout Container is a block in which Design Elements can be laid out and absolutely positioned within the block.
- [Blueprints](#): Within a Layout Container an image of a form can be used as an underlay blueprint for the design. With the help of a blueprint, an existing design can be reproduced accurately.
- [User-Defined Templates](#): A template can be generated for a sequence of items by an XPath expression you specify. These items may be atomic values or nodes. An XPath expression enables the selection of nodes to be more specific, allowing conditions and filters to be used for the selection. Furthermore, templates can be built for atomic values, thus enabling structures to be built that are independent of the schema structure. *Older features affected*: Variable Iterators, which were used to create a template for a variable, now create a variable on a node template and then a User-Defined template for that variable.
- [User-Defined Elements](#): This feature is intended to enable presentation language elements (such as HTML, XSLT, and XSL-FO) to be freely inserted at any location in the design.
- [User-Defined XML Text Blocks](#): XML Text blocks can be freely inserted at any location in the design, and these blocks will be created at that location in the generated XSLT stylesheet.
- [XSLT Templates](#): XSLT files can be imported into the generated stylesheets. If a node in the XML instance document is matched to a template in the imported XSLT file and no other template takes precedence over the imported template, then the imported template will be used. Additionally, named templates in the imported XSLT file can be called from within the design.
- [Variables](#): A variable can now be declared on a template and take a value that is specified with an XPath expression. Previously, the value of a variable was limited to the selection of the node on which it was created. Variables in the 2010 version allow any XPath expression to be specified as the value of the variable. *Older features affected*: Variables and Variable Iterators. Variables from older versions are now created on the relevant template and are given a value that selects the same template. Variable Iterators are replaced with a combination of a Variable and a User-Defined Template; see User-Defined Templates below.
- [Inserting Design Elements](#): Design Elements (paragraphs, lists, images, etc) can be inserted first, and an XML node from the schema tree assigned to the Design Element afterwards. This is in addition to the existing mechanism by which a schema nodes is dragged into the design and a Design Element created for it.
- [Hide Markup in Design View](#): Markup tags in Design View can be hidden and collapsed, thus freeing up space in Design View.
- [Disable output escaping](#): A setting that defines whether text output will be escaped or not. A character is said to be escaped when it is written as a character entity (such as `&amp;` or `&#65;` ). This feature is useful when outputting text that contains program code.
- [Default length units](#): can be specified in the Options dialog (**Tools | Options**).
- [XHTML output](#): When XHTML is specified as the HTML output preference in the document's properties (**File | Properties**), an XHTML document is generated for the HTML output.
- [Printout of Design](#): The design in Design View can be printed with or without tags.

**Version 2010 Release 2**

Features that are new in [StyleVision](#) **Version 2010 Release 2** are listed below.

- Enterprise and Professional editions are each available as separate 64-bit and 32-bit applications.
- [Parameters for Design Fragments](#) allow design fragments to be used with different parameter values for each usage instance. A different parameter value can be assigned to a design fragment at each location where the design fragment is used in the SPS.
- [Layout Boxes](#) and [Lines](#) can be moved and resized using the keyboard.
- [Templates around table rows or columns](#) can be added or deleted without modifying the content or formatting of the row or column involved.
- [Text in tables](#) and [in layout boxes](#) can be rotated clockwise or anti-clockwise so that it is vertical.
- [Filters can be set on global templates](#) where these are used in the main template.
- Design fragments can be dragged from the [Schema Tree](#), in addition to being available in the [Design Tree](#).

## **Chapter 4**

---

### **Introduction**

## 4 Introduction

This section introduces you to **Altova® StyleVision® 2010**. It consists of the following sub-sections:

- [What Is an SPS?](#), which explains the role of an SPS in an XML environment and with respect to StyleVision.
- [Product Features](#), which provides an overview of the key features of StyleVision.
- [Terminology](#), which lists terms used in the StyleVision user interface and in this documentation.
- [Setting up StyleVision](#), which describes how StyleVision is to be correctly set up.



## 4.1 What Is an SPS?

A StyleVision Power Stylesheet (or SPS) is an extended XSLT stylesheet which is used to graphically create a design for an HTML output document

An SPS is saved with the file extension `.sps`.

### Design of the SPS

An SPS is created graphically in StyleVision. It is based on a schema (DTD or XML Schema). The design of the SPS is flexible. It can contain dynamic and static content. The [dynamic content](#) is the data in one XML document. The [static content](#) is content entered directly in the SPS. Dynamic content can be included in the design either as straight text or within components such as input fields, combo boxes, and tables. Additionally, dynamic content can be manipulated (using Auto-Calculations) and can be displayed if certain conditions in the source document are fulfilled. Different pieces of content can be placed at various and multiple locations in the SPS. Also, the SPS can contain various other components, such as images, hyperlinks, and JavaScript functions. Each component of the SPS can then be formatted for presentation as required.

### The SPS and XSLT stylesheets

After you have completed designing the SPS, you can generate XSLT stylesheets based on the design you have created. StyleVision supports both XSLT 1.0 and XSLT 2.0, and from a single SPS, you can generate XSLT stylesheets for HTML, RTF, XSL-FO, and Word 2007-and-higher output (*XSL-FO and Word 2007-and-higher in Enterprise edition only; RTF in Enterprise and Professional Editions; in Standard Edition only HTML output is supported*). The generated XSLT stylesheets can be used in external transformations to transform XML documents based on the same schema as the SPS from which the XSLT stylesheet was generated. For more information about procedures used with XSLT stylesheets, see the section [Generated Files](#).

### The SPS and output

You can also use StyleVision to directly generate output (*HTML, RTF, XSL-FO, and PDF in Enterprise Edition; HTML in Professional and Standard Editions*). The tabs for [Output Views](#) display the output for the active SPS document directly in the StyleVision GUI. The required output can also be generated to file: (i) from within the GUI via the [File | Save Generated Files](#) command; or (ii) by invoking StyleVision [via the command line](#).

**Authentic View in Altova Products**

Authentic View is a graphical XML document editor available in the following Altova products:

- \* Altova XMLSpy
- \* Altova Authentic Desktop
- \* Altova Authentic Browser
- \* Altova StyleVision

## 4.2 Product Features

The main product features of StyleVision are listed below in two groups:

- [General product features](#), which are high-level features
- [SPS design features](#), which are features related to the design of the SPS

### General product features

Given below is a list of the main high-level features of StyleVision.

- Enterprise and Professional editions are each available as separate 64-bit and 32-bit applications.
  - [Multiple SPS designs](#) can be open simultaneously, with one being active at any given time. Each SPS design is shown in a separate tab.
  - [Template filters](#) allow you to customize the display of the design document. With this feature you can disable the display of templates that are not currently being edited, thus increasing editing efficiency.
  - [Hide Markup in Design View](#): Markup tags in Design View can be hidden and collapsed, thus freeing up space in Design View.
  - While designing the SPS, [output views](#) and stylesheets can be displayed by clicking the respective tabs. This enables you to quickly preview the output and the XSLT code.
  - Both [XSLT versions \(1.0 and 2.0\)](#) are supported. XSLT 2.0 provides powerful data access and manipulation features.
  - [Altova Global Resources](#) can be used to locate source files such as schema, XML, and CSS. The Global Resources mechanism enables faster and better development and testing by allowing developers to quickly change source data and to use the functionality of other Altova applications from within StyleVision.
  - In the Enterprise and Professional Editions, [multiple output formats](#) (HTML) are generated from a single SPS design.
  - Both [XSLT files and output files](#) can be [generated and saved](#), either directly from within the GUI or by calling StyleVision from the [command line](#).
  - HTML documents can be [converted to XML](#).
  - StyleVision functionality can be called from the [command line](#).

### SPS design features

Given below is a list of the main StyleVision features specific to designing the SPS.

- The SPS can contain [static text](#), which you enter in the SPS, and [dynamic text](#), which is selected from the [source document](#).
- [Dynamic content](#) is inserted in the design by dragging-and-dropping nodes, including specific datatypes, from the [schema source](#). Dynamic design Elements (paragraphs, lists, images, etc) can also be inserted first, and an XML node from the schema tree assigned to the Design Element afterwards.
- [Dynamic content](#) can be inserted as text, or in the form of a [data-entry device](#) (such as an [input field](#) or [combo box](#)).
- The [structure of the design](#) is specified and controlled in a single [main template](#). This structure can be modified by optional templates for individual elements—known as [global templates](#) because they can be applied globally for that element.
- [Global templates](#) can also be created for individual datatypes, thus enabling processing to be handled also on the basis of types.
- [User-Defined Templates](#): A template can be generated for a sequence of items by an XPath expression you specify. These items may be atomic values or nodes. An XPath expression enables the selection of nodes to be more specific, allowing conditions and filters to be used for the selection.

- [User-Defined Elements](#): This feature is intended to enable presentation language elements (such as HTML, XSLT, and XSL-FO) to be freely inserted at any location in the design.
- [User-Defined XML Text Blocks](#): XML Text blocks can be freely inserted at any location in the design, and these blocks will be created at that location in the generated XSLT stylesheet.
- [Design Fragments](#) enable the modularization and re-use of templates within an SPS, and also across multiple SPSs (see [modular SPSs](#)), in a manner similar to the way functions are used.
- [SPS modules](#) can be added to other SPS modules, thus making objects defined in one SPS module available to other modules. This enables re-use of module objects across multiple SPSs and makes maintenance easier.
- [XSLT Templates](#): XSLT files can be imported into the generated stylesheets. If a node in the XML instance document is matched to a template in the imported XSLT file and no other template takes precedence over the imported template, then the imported template will be used. Additionally, named templates in the imported XSLT file can be called from within the design.
- [Layout Containers](#): A Layout Container is a block in which Design Elements can be laid out and absolutely positioned within the block.
- [Blueprints](#): Within a Layout Container an image of a form can be used as an underlay blueprint for the design. With the help of a blueprint, an existing design can be reproduced accurately.
- A common feature of XML documents is the repeating data structure. For example, an office department typically has several employees. The data for each employee would be stored in a data structure which is repeated for each employee. In the SPS, the [processing for each such data structure](#) is defined once and applied to each relevant node in turn (the employee node in our example).
- Multiple [tables of contents](#) can be inserted in XSLT 2.0 SPSs.
- Repeating data structures can also be inserted as [dynamic tables](#). This provides looping in a structured, table format, with each loop through the data structure producing a row (or, if required, a column) of the table.
- A repeating element can be [sorted on one or more sort-keys](#) you select, and the sorted element set is sent to the output (HTML).
- [Variables](#): A variable can now be declared on a template and take a value that is specified with an XPath expression. Previously, the value of a variable was limited to the selection of the node on which it was created. Variables in the 2010 version allow any XPath expression to be specified as the value of the variable.
- Nodes can be [grouped](#) on the basis of common data content (for example, the common value of an attribute value) and their positions.
- The [conditional templates](#) feature enables one of a set of templates to be processed according to what conditions in the XML document or system environment are fulfilled. This enables processing that is conditional on information contained in the source document or that cannot be known to the SPS document creator at the time of creation (for example, the date of processing). The available conditions are those that can be tested using XPath 1.0 or XPath 2.0 expressions.
- [Auto-Calculations](#) enable you to manipulate data from the source document/s and to display the result. This is useful, when you wish to perform calculations on numbers (for example, sum the prices in an invoice), manipulate strings (for example, change hyphens to slashes), generate content, etc. The available manipulations are those that can be effected using XPath 1.0 or XPath 2.0 expressions. Native Java and .NET functions can be used in the XPath expressions of Auto-Calculations.
- [Images](#) can be inserted in the design. The URI for the image can be static (entered in the SPS), or dynamic (taken from a node in the source document), or a combination of both static and dynamic parts.
- Two types of [lists](#) can be created: static and dynamic. In a [static list](#), each list item is defined in the SPS. In a [dynamic list](#), a node is created as a list item; the values of all

instances of that node are created as the items of the list.

- [Static and dynamic links](#) can be inserted in the design. The target URI can be static (entered in the SPS), or dynamic (taken from a node in the source document), or a combination of both static and dynamic parts.
- Static [bookmarks](#) can be inserted. These serve as anchors that can be linked to with a hyperlink.
- [Parameters](#) can be declared globally for the entire SPS. A parameter is declared with a name and a string value, and can be used in XPath expressions in the SPS. The parameter value you declare is the default value and can be overridden by a value passed from the [command line](#).
- With the [Input Formatting](#) feature, the contents of numeric XML Schema datatype nodes can be formatted as required for output display. Input Formatting can also be used to format the result of an [Auto-Calculation](#).
- [JavaScript functions](#) can be used in the SPS to provide user-defined functionality for Authentic View and HTML output.
- A number of [predefined HTML formats](#) are available via the GUI and can be applied to individual SPS components.
- A large number of CSS text formatting and layout properties can be applied to individual SPS components via the [Styles sidebar](#).
- Additionally, CSS styles can be defined for HTML selectors at the [global level](#) of an SPS and in external CSS stylesheets. These style rules will be applied to HTML output, thus providing considerable formatting and layout flexibility.
- [Styles can also be assigned using XPath expressions](#). This enables style property values to be selected from XML documents and to set property values conditionally.

## 4.3 Terminology

This section lists terms used in the StyleVision GUI and in this documentation. Terms are organized into the groups listed below, and within each group, they are listed alphabetically.

- [Altova product-related terms](#)
- [General XML terms and concepts](#)
- [XSLT and XPath terms](#)
- [StyleVision-specific terms](#)

**Note:** If a link below points to a term already in the viewport, the screen display will not change when the link is clicked; in such cases, look for the target term in the current display.

---

### Altova product-related terms

A list of terms that relate to Altova products.

- Authentic View** An XML document editor view available in the following Altova products: Altova XMLSpy; Altova StyleVision; Altova Authentic Desktop; Altova Authentic Browser. For more details about Authentic View and Altova products, visit the [Altova website](#).
- SPS** The abbreviated form of StyleVision Power Stylesheet, it is used throughout this documentation to refer to the design document created in StyleVision and saved as a file with the `.sps` extension. For a detailed description, see [What Is an SPS?](#).
- Global resource** An alias for a set of files, a set of folders, or a set of databases. Each alias has a set of configurations and each configuration is mapped to a resource. In StyleVision, when a global resource is used, the resource can be changed by changing the active configuration in StyleVision.

---

### General XML terms

Definitions of certain XML terms as used in this documentation.

- schema** A schema (*with lowercase 's'*) refers to any type of schema. Schemas supported by StyleVision are [XML Schema](#) (*capitalized*) and DTD.
- XML Schema** In this documentation, XML Schema (*capitalized*) is used to refer to schemas that are compliant with the [W3C's XML Schema specification](#). XML Schema is considered to be a subset of all [schemas](#) (*lowercased*).
- URI and URL** In this documentation, the more general URI is used exclusively—even when the identifier has only a "locator" aspect, and even for identifiers that use the `http` scheme.

---

### XSLT and XPath terms

There have been changes in terminology from XSLT 1.0 and XPath 1.0 to XSLT 2.0 and XPath 2.0. For example, what was the root node in XPath 1.0 is the [document node](#) in XPath 2.0. In this documentation, we use XSLT 2.0 and XPath 2.0 terminology.

<b><i>absolute XPath</i></b>	A path expression that starts at the root node of the tree containing the <a href="#">context node</a> . In StyleVision, when entering path expressions in dialogs, the expression can be entered as an absolute path if you check the Absolute XPath check box in the dialog. If this check box is unchecked, the path is relative to the <a href="#">context node</a> .
<b><i>context item / context node</i></b>	The context item is the item (node or string value) relative to which an expression is evaluated. A context node is a context item that is a node. The context item can change within an expression, for example, with each location step, or within a filter expression (predicate).
<b><i>current node</i></b>	The current node is the node being currently processed. The current node is the same as the <a href="#">context node</a> in expressions that do not have sub-expressions. But where there are sub-expressions, the <a href="#">context node</a> may change. Note that the <code>current()</code> function is an XSLT function, not an XPath function, and cannot therefore be used in StyleVision's Auto-Calculations and Conditional Templates. To select the current node in an expression use the <code>for</code> expression of XPath 2.0.
<b><i>document element</i></b>	In a well-formed XML document, the outermost element is known as the document element. It is a child of the <a href="#">document node</a> , and, in a well-formed XML document, there is only one document element. In the GUI the document element is referred to as the root element.
<b><i>document node</i></b>	The document node represents and contains the entire document. It is the root node of the tree representation of the document, and it is represented in an XPath expression as: <code>' / '</code> . In the Schema Tree window of StyleVision, it is represented by the legend: <code>' / Root elements'</code> .

---

### StyleVision-specific terms

Terms that refer to StyleVision mechanisms, concepts, and components.

<b><i>Blueprint image</i></b>	A blueprint image is one that is used as the background image of a <a href="#">layout container</a> , and would typically be the scan of a form. The SPS design can be modelled on the blueprint image, thus recreating the form design.
<b><i>dynamic items</i></b>	Items that originate in XML data sources. Dynamic items may be text, tables, and lists; also images and hyperlinks (when the URIs are dynamic).
<b><i>global element</i></b>	An element in the Global Elements list in the Schema Tree window. In an XML Schema, all elements defined as global elements will be listed in the Global Elements list. In a DTD, all elements are global elements and are listed in the Global Elements list. <a href="#">Global templates</a> can be defined only for global elements.
<b><i>global template</i></b>	A global template may be defined for a <a href="#">global element</a> . Once defined, a global template can be used for that element wherever that element occurs in the document. Alternatively to the global template, processing for a global element may be defined in a <a href="#">local template</a> .

<b>Layout container</b>	A Layout Container is a design block in which design elements can be laid out and absolutely positioned. If a design is to be based on a form, it can be created as a Layout Container, so that design elements of the form can be absolutely positioned. Alternatively, a design can be free-flowing and have layout containers placed within the flow of the document.
<b>local template</b>	A local template is the template that defines how an element (global or non-global) is processed within the <a href="#">main template</a> . The local template applies to that particular occurrence of the element in the <a href="#">main template</a> . Instead of the local template, a <a href="#">global template</a> can be applied to a given occurrence of an element in the <a href="#">main template</a> .
<b>main schema</b>	One of the assigned schema sources is designated the main schema; the document node of the <a href="#">Working XML File</a> associated with the main schema is used as the starting point for the <a href="#">main template</a> .
<b>main template</b>	The main entry-point template. In StyleVision, this template matches the <a href="#">document element</a> and is the first to be evaluated by the XSLT processor. In the Schema Tree window, it is listed as the child of the <a href="#">document node</a> . The <a href="#">main template</a> defines the basic output document structure and defines how the input document/s are to be processed. It can contain <a href="#">local templates</a> and can reference <a href="#">global templates</a> .
<b>output</b>	The output produced by processing an XML document with an XSLT stylesheet. Output files that can be generated by StyleVision would be HTML format. XSLT stylesheets generated by StyleVision are also not considered output and are referred to separately as XSLT stylesheets.
<b>static items</b>	Items that originate in the SPS and not in XML data sources. Static items may be text, tables, and lists; also images, hyperlinks, and bookmarks (when the URIs are static).
<b>SPS component</b>	An SPS component can be: (i) a schema node (for example, an element node); (ii) a static SPS component such as an <a href="#">Auto-Calculation</a> or a text string; or (iii) a <a href="#">predefined format</a> (represented in the SPS by its start and end tags).
<b>template</b>	Defined loosely as a set of instructions for processing a node or group of nodes.
<b>Template XML File</b>	A Template XML File is assigned to an SPS in StyleVision (Enterprise and Professional editions). It is an XML file that provides the starting data of a new XML document created with a given SPS when that SPS is opened in Authentic View. The Template XML File must be conformant with the schema on which the SPS is based.
<b>User-defined element</b>	An element that is neither a node in the schema tree nor a predefined element or a design element, but one that is specified by the user. An element can be specified with attributes.
<b>User-defined template</b>	A template that is created for a sequence specified in an XPath expression.
<b>User-defined XML text blocks</b>	XML Text blocks can be freely inserted at any location in the design



- Working XML/XBRL File** A Working XML/XBRL File is an XML data file that is assigned to an SPS in StyleVision in order to preview the output of the XML document in StyleVision. Without a Working XML/XBRL File, the SPS in StyleVision will not have any dynamic XML data to process. If the SPS is based on a schema that has more than one global element, there can be ambiguity about which global element is the document element. Assigning a Working XML/XBRL File resolves such ambiguity (because a valid XML document will, by definition, have only one [document element](#)). Note that XBRL functionality is available only in the Enterprise edition.
- XML document** XML document is used in two senses: (i) to refer to a specific XML document; (ii) to refer to any XML data source. Which sense is intended should be clear from the context.

## 4.4 Setting up StyleVision

Altova StyleVision runs on Windows XP, Windows Vista, and Windows 7. After downloading StyleVision from the [Altova website](#), double-click the executable (.exe) file to run the setup program. The setup program will install StyleVision at the desired location. The Altova XSLT Engines (1.0 and 2.0) are built into StyleVision and are used for all internal transformations. You, therefore, do not need to install an XSLT Engine additionally to your StyleVision installation.

You will, however, need to have the following components installed:

- Internet Explorer 5.5 or later, for HTML Preview. Internet Explorer 6.0 and later has better XML support and is recommended.

## 4.5 Authentic View in Altova Products

Authentic View is a graphical XML document editor available in the following Altova products:

- \* Altova XMLSpy
- \* Altova Authentic Desktop
- \* Altova Authentic Browser
- \* Altova StyleVision

### Enterprise editions of Authentic View applications

The following SPS functionality is enabled **only in the Enterprise editions** of Altova's [Authentic View](#) applications:

- [Absolute positioning \(layout containers\)](#)
- [Java and .Net function calls from XPath expressions in Auto-Calculations](#)
- [Variables](#)
- [User-Defined Elements and XML Text Blocks](#)

If any of this functionality is present in an SPS that is opened in a non-Enterprise edition of an Authentic View application (say, XMLSpy Professional Edition), then the application displays a message saying that this functionality is available only in the Enterprise edition of the application.

**Note:** StyleVision Enterprise Edition supports the Enterprise Edition of Authentic View, whereas StyleVision Professional Edition supports the Community Edition of Authentic View.



## **Chapter 5**

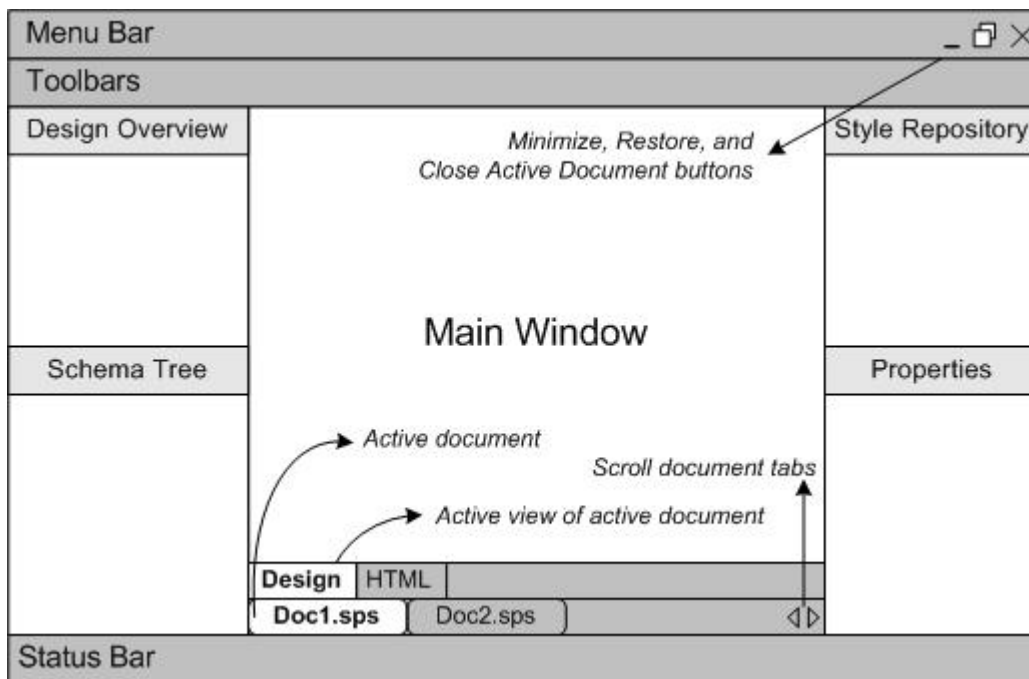
---

### **User Interface**

## 5 User Interface

The StyleVision GUI (*illustration below*) consists of the following parts:

- A **menu bar**. Click on a menu to display the items in that menu. All menus and their items are described in the [User Reference](#) section. The menu bar also contains the Minimize, Restore, and Close Active Document buttons.
- A **toolbar area**. The various [toolbars](#) and the command shortcuts in each toolbar are described in the [User Reference](#) section.
- A tabbed **Main Window**, which displays one or more open SPS documents at a time. In this window, you can [edit the design of the SPS](#) and [preview the XSLT stylesheets and output](#).
- The **Design sidebars**—the [Design Overview](#), [Schema Tree](#), [Design Tree](#), [Style Repository](#), [Styles](#), [Properties](#) windows—which can be docked within the application GUI or made to float on the screen.
- A **status bar**, which displays application status information.

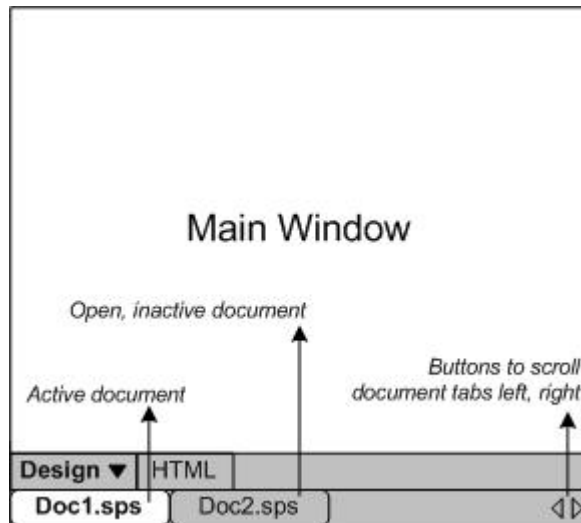


The [Main Window](#) and [Design sidebars](#) are described in more detail in the sub-sections of this section.

**Note:** The menu bar and toolbars can be moved by dragging their handles to the required location.

## 5.1 Main Window

The **Main Window** (*illustration below*) is where the SPS design, XSLT stylesheets, and output previews are displayed.



### SPS documents in the Main Window

- Multiple SPS documents can be open in StyleVision, though only one can be active at any time. The names of all open documents are shown in tabs at the bottom of the Main Window, with the tab of the active document being highlighted.
- To make an open document active, click its tab. Alternatively, use the options in the Windows menu.
- If so many documents are open that all document tabs are not visible in the document-tab bar, then click the appropriate scroll button (at the right of the document-tab bar; *see illustration above*) to scroll the tabs into view.
- To close the active document, click the **Close Document** button in the menu bar at the top right of the application window (or select [File | Close](#)).

### Document views

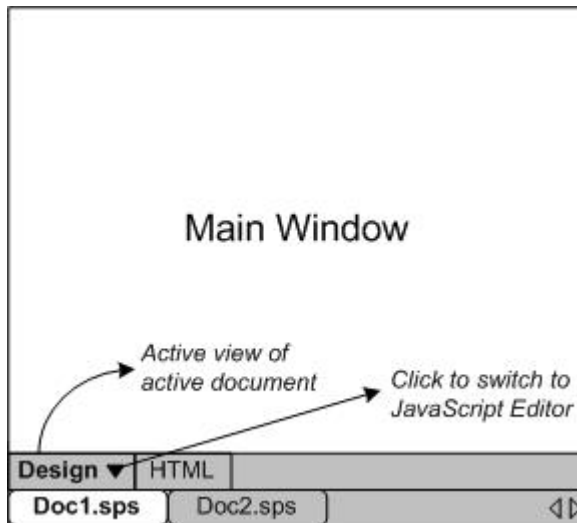
A document is displayed in the following views, one of which can be active at a time:

- [Design View](#), in which you design the SPS and edit JavaScript functions for use in that SPS. The view can be toggled between the design document and the JavaScript Editor by clicking the dropdown menu arrow and selecting Design or JavaScript, as required.
- [Output Views](#) (HTML output). These views are a preview of the actual output format and of the XSLT stylesheet used to generate that output. The view can be toggled between the output preview and the XSLT stylesheet by clicking the dropdown menu arrow and making the appropriate selection.

Each of the views listed above is available as a tab at the bottom of the Main Window in the Views Bar. To select a view, click on its tab. The tab of the selected view is highlighted.

## Design View

The **Design View** (*illustration below*) is the view in which the SPS is designed. In Design View, you create the design of the output document by (i) inserting content (using the sidebars, the keyboard, and the various content creation and editing features provided in the menus and toolbars); and (ii) formatting the content using the various formatting features provided in the sidebars and menus. These aspects of the Design View are explained in more detail below.

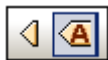


Design View can also be switched to a [JavaScript Editor](#), in which you can create and edit [JavaScript functions](#) which then become available in the GUI for use in the SPS. To switch to the [JavaScript Editor](#), click the dropdown button in the Design tab (*see illustration*) and select JavaScript from the dropdown menu. To switch back to Design View, click the dropdown button in the JavaScript tab and select Design from the dropdown menu.

In Design View, the SPS can have several templates: the main template, global templates, and Design Fragments. You can control which of these template types is displayed in Design View by using [Template Display Filters](#), which are available as [toolbar icons](#). These display filters will help you optimize and switch between different displays of your SPS.

### Displaying markup tags

The display of markup tags in Design View can be controlled via the markup icons (*below*).



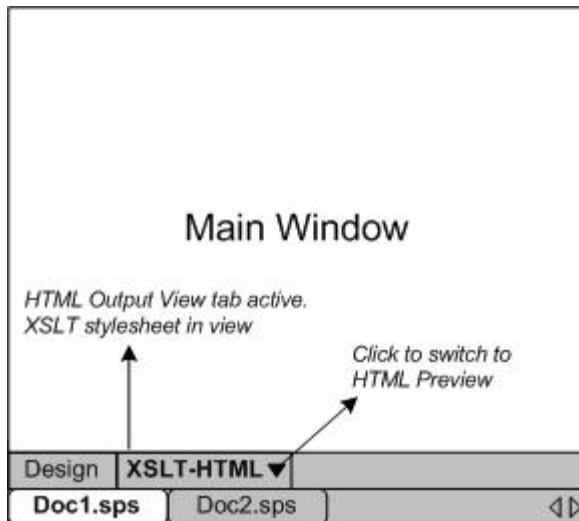
The icons shown above are toggles. They are, from left: (i) Show small design markups (tags without names); and (ii) Show large design markups (tags with names). When small markup is switched on, the path to a node is displayed when you mouseover that node.



## Output Views

The **Output View** tab (*illustration below*) displays: (i) the XSLT-for-HTML stylesheet generated from the SPS design; and (ii) a preview of the HTML output, produced by transforming the [Working XML File](#) with the generated XSLT stylesheet.

In the HTML Output View tab, the view can be switched between the XSLT-for-HTML stylesheet and the HTML output preview by clicking the dropdown button in the HTML Output View tab and selecting the XSLT option or the output preview option as required.



### XSLT view

The XSLT view displays the XSLT-for-HTML generated from the currently active SPS. The stylesheet is generated afresh each time the XSLT view is selected.

A stylesheet in an Output View tab is displayed with line-numbering and expandable/collapsible elements; click the + and – icons in the left margin to expand/collapse elements. The stylesheet in XSLT view cannot be edited, but can be searched (select [Edit | Find](#)) and text from it can be copied to the clipboard (with [Edit | Copy](#)).

**Note:** The XSLT stylesheets generated from the SPS can be separately generated and saved using the [File | Save Generated Files](#) command.

**HTML preview**

HTML preview displays the output produced by transforming the [Working XML File](#) with the XSLT-for-HTML. The output is generated afresh each time HTML preview tab is clicked. Note that it is the saved version of the Working XML File that is transformed—not the temporary version that is edited with Authentic View.

If no [Working XML File](#) is assigned when HTML preview is selected in the HTML View tab, you will be prompted to assign a Working XML File. For DB-based SPSs, there is no need to assign a [Working XML File](#) since a temporary non-editable XML file is automatically generated when the DB is loaded and this XML file is used as the [Working XML File](#).

**Note:** The output files generated from the SPS can be separately generated and saved using the [File | Save Generated Files](#) command.

## 5.2 Sidebars

The **Sidebars** (also called sidebar windows or windows) are GUI components that help you design the SPS and provide you with information related to the active view. Each sidebar (*listed below*) is described in a sub-section of this section.

- [Design Overview](#)
- [Schema Tree](#)
- [Design Tree](#)
- [Style Repository](#)
- [Styles](#)
- [Properties](#)

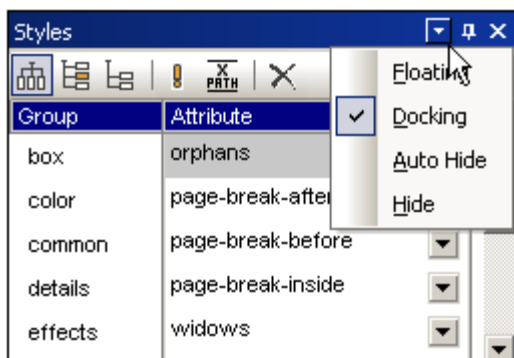
### Layout of the views

The layout of a view refers to what sidebars are available in that view and how these sidebars are positioned within the GUI. Layouts can be customized for separate view categories, and the customization consists of two parts: (i) switching or off the display of individual sidebars in a view (via the **View** menu or by right-clicking the sidebar's title bar and selecting **Hide**); (ii) positioning the sidebar within the GUI as required. The layout defined in this way for a view category is retained for that particular view category till changed. So, for example, if in Design View, all the sidebars except the Messages sidebar are switched on, then this layout is retained for Design View over multiple view changes, till the Design View layout is changed. The view categories are: (i) no document open; (ii) Design View; (iii) Output View.

### Docking and floating the Sidebar windows

Sidebar windows can be docked in the StyleVision GUI or can be made to float on your screen. To dock a window, drag the window by its title bar and drop it on any one of the four inner or four outer arrowheads that appear when you start to drag. The inner arrowheads dock the dragged window relative to the window in which the inner arrowheads appear. The four outer arrowheads dock the dragged window at each of the four edges of the interface window. To make a window float, (i) double-click the title bar; or (ii) drag the title bar and drop it anywhere on the screen except on the arrowheads that appear when you start to drag.

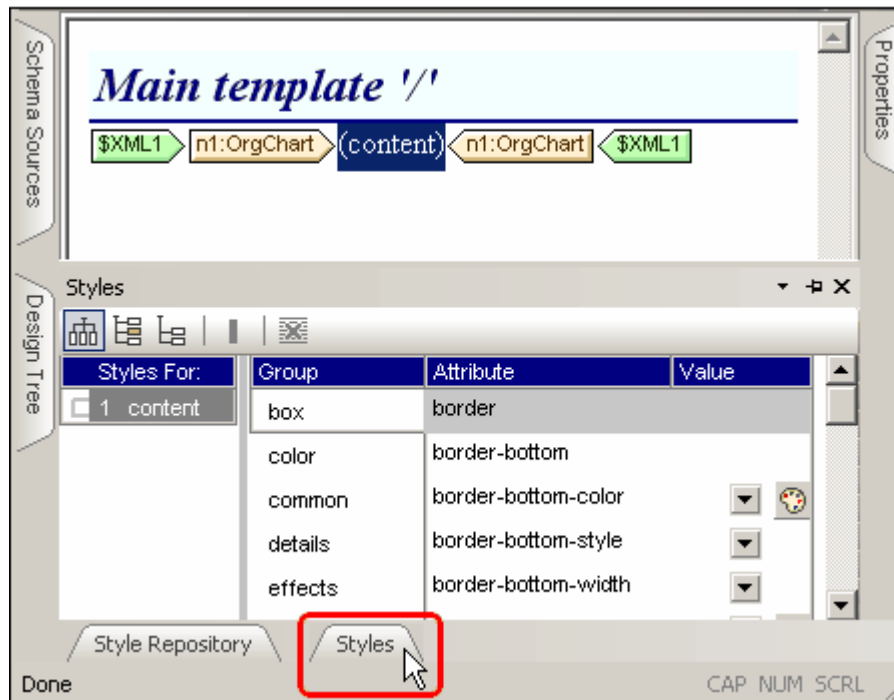
Alternatively, you can also use the following mechanisms. To float a docked window, click the **Menu** button at the top-right of a docked window (*see screenshot below*) and select Floating. This menu can also be accessed by right-clicking the title bar of the docked window.



To dock a floating window, right-click the title bar of the floating window and select Docking from the menu that appears; the window will be docked in the position in which it was last docked.

### Auto-Hiding Design sidebar windows

A docked window can be auto-hidden. When a sidebar window is auto-hidden, it is minimized to a tab at the edge of the GUI. Placing the cursor over the tab causes that window to roll out into the GUI and over the Main Window. In the screenshot below, placing the cursor over the Styles tab causes the Styles sidebar to roll out into the Main Window.



Moving the cursor out of the rolled-out window and from over its tab causes the window to roll back into the tab at the edge of the GUI.

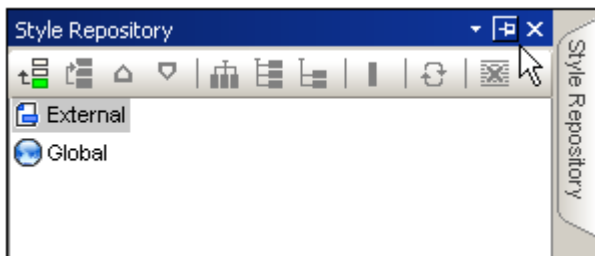
The Auto-Hide feature is useful if you wish to move seldom-used sidebars out of the GUI while at the same time allowing you easy access to them should you need them. This enables you to create more screen space for the Main Window while still allowing easy access to Design sidebar windows.

To auto-hide a window, in a docked window, click the Auto Hide button (the drawing pin icon) at the top right of the window (*screenshot below*). Alternatively, in the [Menu](#), select Auto Hide; (to display the [Menu](#), right-click the title bar of the window or click the [Menu button](#) in the title bar of the docked window).



The window will be auto-hidden.

To switch the Auto-Hide feature for a particular window off, place the cursor over the tab so that the window rolls out, and then click the Auto Hide button (*screenshot below*). Alternatively, in the [Menu](#), deselect Auto Hide; (to display the [Menu](#), right-click the title bar of the window or click the [Menu button](#) in the title bar of the window).



**Note:** When the Auto-Hide feature of a sidebar window is off, the drawing pin icon of that window points downwards; when the feature is on, the drawing pin icon points left.

### Hiding (closing) sidebar windows

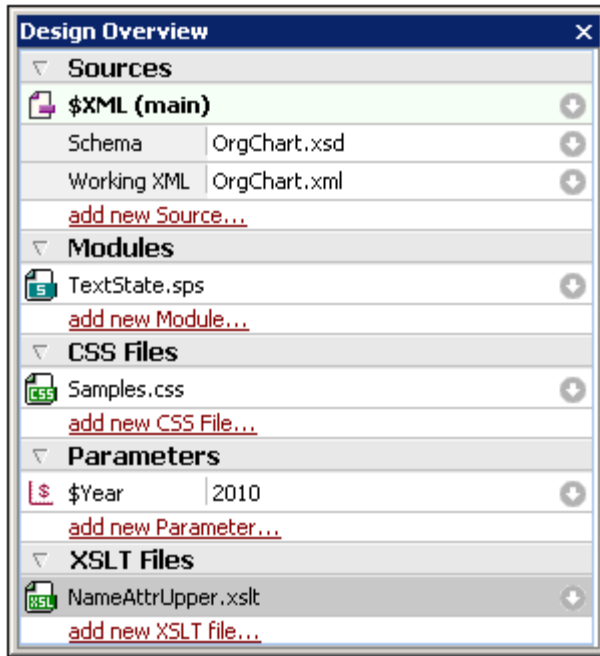
When a sidebar window is hidden it is no longer visible in the GUI, in either its maximized form (docked or floating) or in its minimized form (as a tab at an edge of the GUI, which is done using the [Auto-Hide feature](#)).

To hide a window, click the **Close** button at the top right of a docked or floating window ( *screenshot below*). Alternatively, in the [Menu](#), select **Hide**; (to display the [Menu](#), right-click the title bar of the window or click the [Menu button](#) in the title bar of the window).

To make a hidden (or closed) window visible again, select the name of the Design sidebar in the [View](#) menu. The Design sidebar window is made visible in the position at which it was (docked or floating) when it was was hidden.

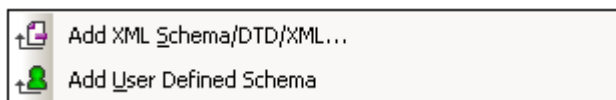
## Design Overview

The **Design Overview** sidebar (*screenshot below*) enables you to add schema sources, global parameters, SPS modules, and CSS files to the active SPS. It gives you an overview of these components and enables you to manage them conveniently in one location.



### Adding schema sources

Schema sources may be added to an empty SPS. A schema source is added by clicking the command **Add New Source** under the Sources heading. This pops up a menu (*screenshot below*) that enables you to add an XML Schema, DTD, schema generated from an XML file, or a user-defined schema.



### The Working XML File

When a schema is added, it is listed under the Sources item. Each schema has an entry for the [Working XML File](#) within the XML item.





### Adding modules, CSS files, parameters, and XSLT files

Click the respective **Add New** commands at the bottom of the Modules, CSS Files, Parameters and XSLT Files sections to add a new item to the respective section.


### Design Overview features

The following features are common to each section (Sources, Parameters, etc) in the Design Overview sidebar:

- Each section can be expanded or collapsed by clicking the triangular arrowhead to the left of the section name.

- Files in the Sources, Modules, and CSS Files sections are listed with only their file names. When you mouseover a file name, the full file path is displayed in a popup.
- Items that are listed in gray are present in an imported module, not in the SPS file currently active in the GUI.
- Each section also has a **Add New <Item>** command at the bottom of the section, which enables you to add a new item to that section. For example, clicking the **Add New Parameter** command adds a new parameter to the SPS and to the Parameters list in the Design Overview.
- Each item in a section has a context menu which can be accessed either by right-clicking that item or clicking its **Context Menu** icon  (the downward-pointing arrow to the right of the item).
- The **Remove** icon in the toolbar removes the selected item. This command is also available in context menus if the command is applicable.
- The toolbar icon **Edit File in XMLSpy**  starts the selected file in the Altova application XMLSpy. This command is also available in context menus if the command is applicable.
- The toolbar icons **Move Up**  and **Move Down**  are applicable only when one of [multiple modules](#) in the Modules section is selected. Each button moves the selected module, respectively, up or down relative to the immediately adjacent module. The commands are also available in context menus where applicable.

### Sources

The Sources section lists the schema that the SPS is based on and the Working XML File assigned to the SPS. You can change each of these file selections by accessing its context menu (by right-clicking or clicking the Context Menu icon ), and then selecting the appropriate **Assign...** option.

### Modules

The Modules section lists the [SPS modules](#) used by the active SPS. New modules are appended to the list by clicking the **Add New Module** command and browsing for the required SPS file. Since [the order in which the modules are listed](#) is significant, if more than one module is listed, the **Move Up / Move Down** command/s (in the toolbar and context menu) become active when a module is selected. The selected module can be moved up or down by clicking the required command. The context menu also provides a command for opening the selected module in StyleVision.

**Note:** The Design Overview sidebar provides an overview of the modules, enabling you to manage modules at the file level. The various [module objects](#) (objects inside the modules), however, are listed in the [Design Tree sidebar](#).

### CSS Files

The CSS Files section lists the CSS files used by the active SPS. New CSS files are appended to the list by clicking the **Add New CSS File** command and browsing for the required CSS file. Since [the order in which the CSS files are listed](#) is significant, if more than one CSS file is listed, the **Move Up / Move Down** command/s (in the toolbar and context menu) become active when a CSS file is selected. The selected CSS file can be moved up or down by clicking the required command. The context menu also provides a command for opening the selected module in XMLSpy.

**Note:** The Design Overview sidebar provides an overview of the CSS files, enabling you to manage CSS files at the file level. The various [CSS rules](#) inside the CSS files, however, are listed in the [Style Repository sidebar](#).

**Parameters**

The Parameters section lists the global parameters in the SPS. You can add new parameters using the **Add New Parameter** command at the bottom of the section. Double-clicking the parameter name or value enables you to edit the name or value, respectively. To remove a parameter, select the parameter and then click the **Remove** icon in the Design Overview toolbar or the **Remove** command in the context menu.

**XSLT Files**

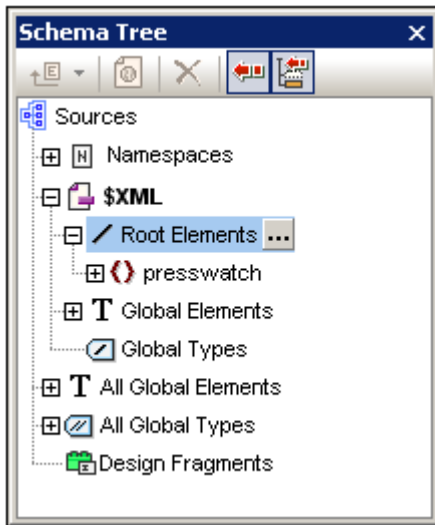
The XSLT Files section lists the XSLT files that have been imported into the SPS. XSLT templates in these XSLT files will be available to the stylesheet as global templates. For a complete description of how this works, see [XSLT Templates](#).



## Schema Tree


The **Schema Tree** sidebar (*screenshot below*) enables you to do the following:

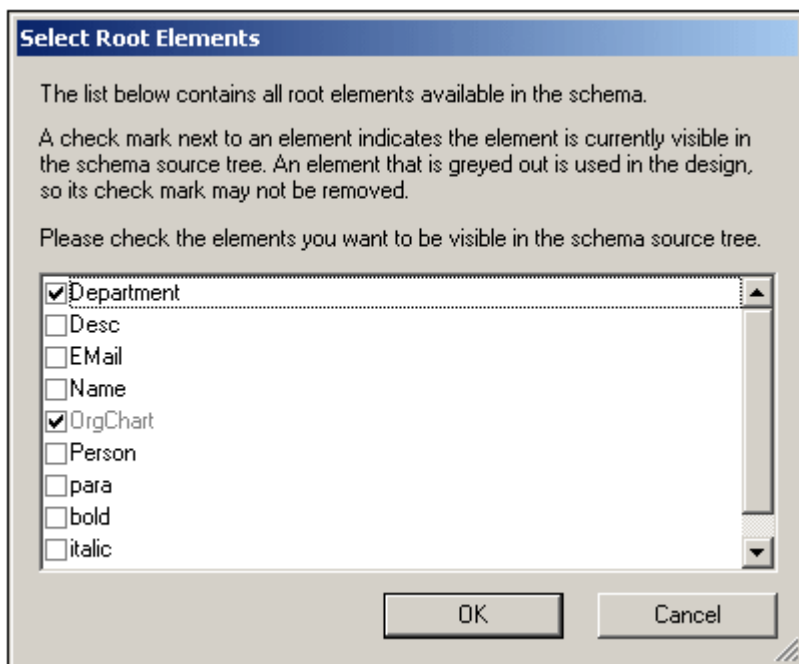
- Select multiple root elements (document elements) for a schema.
- Drag nodes (elements, attributes, global types) from a schema tree and drop them into the design. These nodes represent the XML content that is to be included in the output.
- View listings of all global elements and types in the schema source. Enables a global element or global type to be created as a global template.
- View a listing of all namespaces used in the SPS.



### Root elements

For each schema, under the `$XML` heading, the selected [Root elements](#) (or [document elements](#)) are listed. This list consists of all the root elements you select for the schema (see below for how to do this). Each root element can be expanded to show its content model tree. It is from the nodes in these root element trees that the content of the main template is created. Note that the entry point of the main template is the document node of the main schema, which you can select or change at any time (see below for how to do this).

To select the root elements for a schema, do the following: Click the **Select**  button at the right of the `Root Elements` item. This pops up the Select Root Elements dialog (*screenshot below*), in which you can select which of the global elements in the schema is/are to be the root elements. See [SPS Structure | Schema Sources](#) for an explanation of the possibilities offered by a selection of multiple root elements.



Additionally, all the global elements in the schema are listed under the All Global Elements item. For each global element, a [global template](#) can be created.

### Global elements and global types

Global elements and global types can be used to create [global templates](#) which can be re-used in other templates. Additionally, global types can also be used directly in templates.

### Design Fragments

All the [Design Fragments](#) in the document are listed under this item and can be viewed when the Design Fragments item is expanded. The following Design Fragment functionality is available:

- Double-clicking the name of a Design Fragment in the Schema Tree enables the name of that Design Fragment to be edited.
- A Design Fragment can be enabled or disabled by, respectively, checking or unchecking the check box next to the Design Fragment.
- S Design Fragment can be dragged from the schema tree into the design.

See the section [Design Fragments](#) for information about working with Design Fragments.

### Namespaces

The namespaces used in the SPS are listed under the Namespaces heading together with their prefixes. The namespaces in this list come from two sources: (i) namespaces defined in the referenced schema or schemas (*see note below*); and (ii) namespaces that are added to every newly created SPS by default. Referring to such a list can be very useful when writing XPath expressions. Additionally, you can set an XPath default namespace for the entire SPS by double-clicking the value field of the `xpath-default-ns` entry and then entering the namespace.

**Note:** If you wish to add a namespace to an SPS or to an XSLT stylesheet being generated from an SPS, the namespace must be added to the top-level `schema` element of the

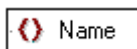
XML Schema on which the SPS is based.

### Toolbar and schema tree icons

The following toolbar icons are shortcuts for common Schema Tree sidebar commands.

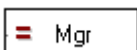
### Symbols used in schema trees

Given below is a list of the symbols in schema trees.



Name

Element.



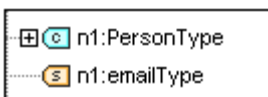
Mgr

Attribute.



Person

Element with child elements. Double-clicking the element or the +/- symbol to its left causes the element to expand/collapse.



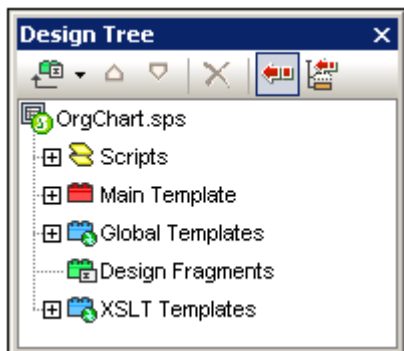
n1:PersonType

n1:emailType

Global types can be either complex or simple. Complex types are indicated with a cyan icon, simple types with a brown icon.

## Design Tree

The **Design Tree** sidebar (*screenshot below*) provides an overview of the SPS design.







At the root of the Design Tree is the name of the SPS file; the location of the file is displayed in a pop-up when you mouseover. The next level of the Design Tree is organized into the following categories:

- [Scripts](#), which shows all the JavaScript functions that have been defined for the SPS using the JavaScript Editor of StyleVision.
- [Main Template](#), which displays a detailed structure of the main template.
- [Global Templates](#), which lists the global templates in the current SPS, as well as the global templates in all included SPS modules.
- [Design Fragments](#), which shows all the Design Fragments in the design, and their structures.
- [XSLT Templates](#), which provides the capability to view XSLT templates in imported XSLT files.

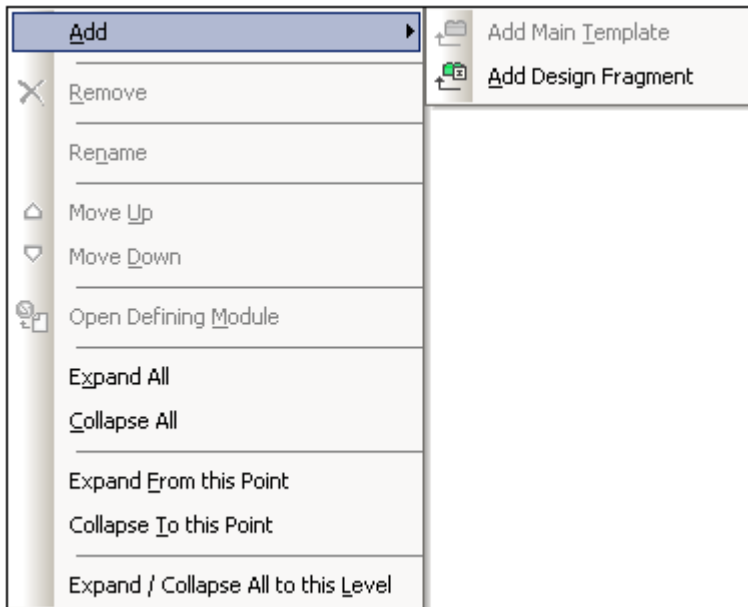
### Toolbar icons

The following toolbar icons are shortcuts for common Schema Tree sidebar commands.

- 
 Adds a Design Fragment, main template, or layout item to the design. Clicking the left-hand part of the icon adds a Design Fragment. Clicking the dropdown arrow drops down a list with commands to add a Design Fragment or any of various layout items.
- 
 Remove the selected item; icon is active when item in the Global Templates or Layout sub-trees is selected.
- 
 Synchronize tree toggle. When toggled on (icon has border), selecting a node in the tree selects (i) the corresponding node in the design, and (ii) the corresponding node in the schema tree if the Synchronize Tree icon in the schema tree is toggled on. When toggled off, the corresponding nodes in the design and schema tree are not selected.
- 
 Auto-collapses items in the design tree when the selection is synchronized.

### Modifying the Design Tree display

The display of the Design Tree can be modified via the context menu (*screenshot below*), which pops up on right-clicking an item in the Design Tree.



A description of the context menu commands is given in the following table.

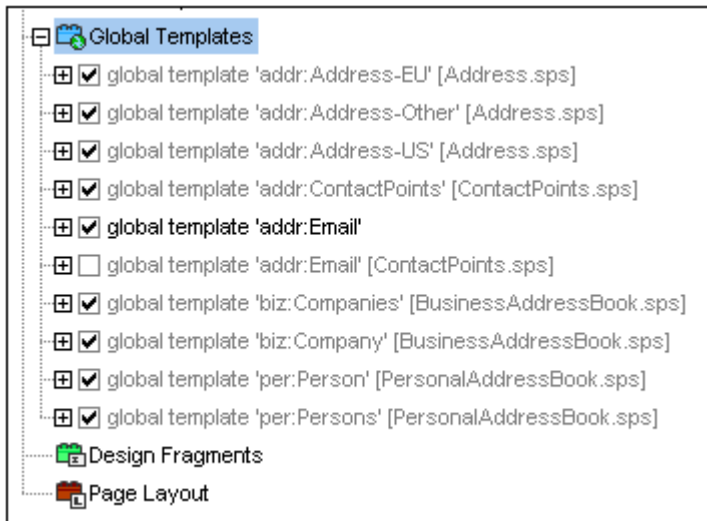
<b>Add</b>	Enables a main template (when none exists) and a design fragment to be added.
<b>Remove (Item)</b>	Removes the selected item from the Design Tree and the Design.
<b>Rename</b>	Enables Design Fragments to be renamed.
<b>Move Up/Down</b>	Disabled.
<b>Open defining module</b>	Disabled.
<b>Expand All</b>	Expands all expandable items in all categories of the Design Tree.
<b>Collapse All</b>	Collapses the entire Design Tree to the top-level item, which is the location of the SPS file.
<b>Expand from This Point</b>	Expands all expandable items in the selected item.
<b>Collapse to This Point</b>	Collapses all items within the selected item, up to the selected item.
<b>Expand/Collapse All to This Level</b>	Expands or collapses all categories to the level of the selected item.

### Scripts and Main Template

The Scripts listing displays all the scripts in the Design, including those in imported modules. The Main Template listing displays a tree of the main template. Items in the tree and the design can be removed by right-clicking the item and selecting **Remove**.

### Global Templates

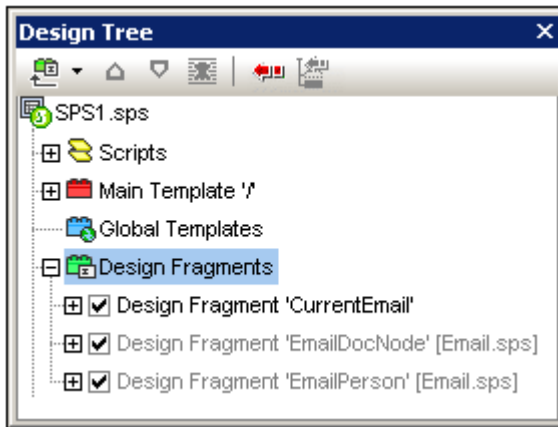
The [Global Templates](#) item lists all global templates in the current SPS and in all added SPS modules. Global templates defined in the current SPS are displayed in black, while global templates that have been defined in added modules are displayed in gray (see *screenshot below*). Each global template has a check box to its left, which enables you to activate or deactivate it.



A global template in the current SPS (not one in an added module) can be removed by selecting it and clicking the **Remove** button in the toolbar or the **Remove** command in the context menu. The component is removed from the design and the tree.

### Design Fragments

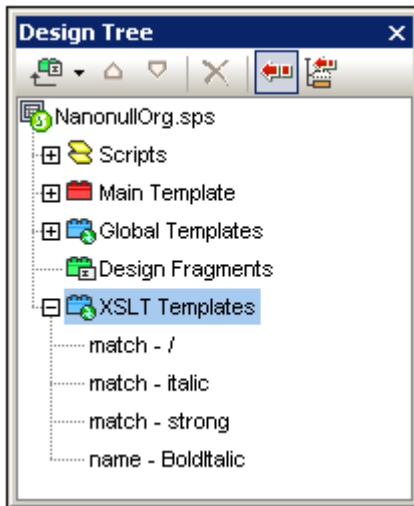
The [Design Fragments](#) item lists all the Design Fragments in the current SPS and in all added SPS modules. Design Fragments defined in the current SPS are displayed in black, while Design Fragments that have been defined in added modules are displayed in gray (see *screenshot below*). Each Design Fragment has a check box to its left, which enables you to activate or deactivate it. A Design Fragment in the current SPS (not one in an added module) can be removed by selecting it and clicking the **Remove** button in the toolbar or the **Remove** command in the context menu. The component is removed from the design and the tree.



Each Design Fragment is designed as a tree with expandable/collapsible nodes. Any component in a Design Fragment tree (that is defined in the current SPS) can be removed by selecting it and clicking the **Remove** button in the toolbar or the **Remove** command in the context menu. The component is removed from the design and the tree.

### XSLT Templates

In the Design Tree sidebar (*screenshot below*), the XSLT Templates contained in the imported XSLT file are displayed under the XSLT Templates heading.



There are two types of imported XSLT templates: (i) match templates (indicated by *Match*), and (ii) named templates (indicated by *Name*). In the Design Tree, these two types are listed with (i) the value of the `select` attribute of match templates, and (ii) by the value of the `name` attribute of named templates, respectively. For a complete description of how XSLT Templates work, see [XSLT Templates](#).

## Style Repository

In the **Style Repository** sidebar (*screenshot below*), you can assign external CSS stylesheets and define global CSS styles for the SPS. Style rules in external CSS stylesheets and globally defined CSS styles are applied to the HTML output document.

The Style Repository sidebar contains two listings, **External** and **Global**, each in the form of a tree. The External listing contains a list of external CSS stylesheets associated with the SPS. The Global listing contains a list of all the global styles associated with the SPS.

The structure of the listings in the Style Repository is as follows:

```


External
- CSS-1.css (Location given in popup that appears on mouseover)
  - Media (can be defined in Style Repository window)
  - Rules (non-editable; must be edited in CSS file)
    - Selector-1
      - Property-1
      - ...
      - Property-N
    - ...
  - Selector-N
+ ...
+ CSS-N.css
Global
- Selector-1
  + Selector-1 Properties
- ...
+ Selector-N
  
```


### Precedence of style rules

If a global style rule and a style rule in an external CSS stylesheet have selectors that identify the same document component, then the global style rule has precedence over that in the external stylesheet, and will be applied. If two or more global style rules select the same document component, then the rule that is listed last from among these rules will be applied. Likewise, if two or more style rules in the external stylesheets select the same document component, then the last of these rules in the last of the containing stylesheets will be applied.

### Managing styles in the Style Repository

In the Style Repository sidebar you can do the following, using either the icons in the toolbar and/or items in the context menu:




**Add:** The **Add** icon  adds a new external stylesheet entry to the External tree or a new global style entry to the Global tree, respectively, according to whether the External or Global tree was selected. The new entry is appended to the list of already existing entries in the tree. The **Add** command is also available in the context menu. For more details about using external stylesheets and global styles, see [Working with CSS Styles](#). Note that an external CSS stylesheet can also be added or a stylesheet removed via the [Design Overview sidebar](#).


**Insert:** The **Insert** icon  inserts a new external stylesheet entry above the selected external stylesheet (in the External tree) or a new global style entry above the selected global style (in the Global tree). The **Insert** command is also available in the context menu. For more details about using external stylesheets and global styles, see [Working with CSS Styles](#).

**Move Up/Down:** The **Move Up** icon  and **Move Down** icon  move the selected external




stylesheet or global style respectively up and down relative to the other entries in its tree. These commands are useful for changing the priority of external stylesheets relative to each other and of global style rules relative to each other. The **Move Up** and **Move Down** commands are also available in the context menu. For more details about how to change the precedence of styles, see [Working with CSS Styles](#).

**Views of global style properties:** The properties of a global style can be displayed in one of three views: (i) by property group; (ii) all properties sorted alphabetically; (iii) properties with values defined, sorted alphabetically. The view can be changed for each style individually. To change the properties view of a global style, select that style and click one of the View icons in the Style Repository toolbar: **Grouped** , **List All** , and **List Non-Empty** . These commands are also available in the context menu under the **View Mode** item.

**Toggle Important:** Clicking the Toggle Important icon  sets the CSS value `!important` on or off for the selected CSS rule.

**Reload All:** The **Reload All** icon  reloads all the external CSS stylesheets.

**Reset:** The **Reset** icon  deletes the selected external stylesheet or global style.

**Expand/Collapse All:** All expandable items in both the External and Global trees can be expanded and collapsed with one click using the **Expand All** and **Collapse All** commands in the context menu, respectively.

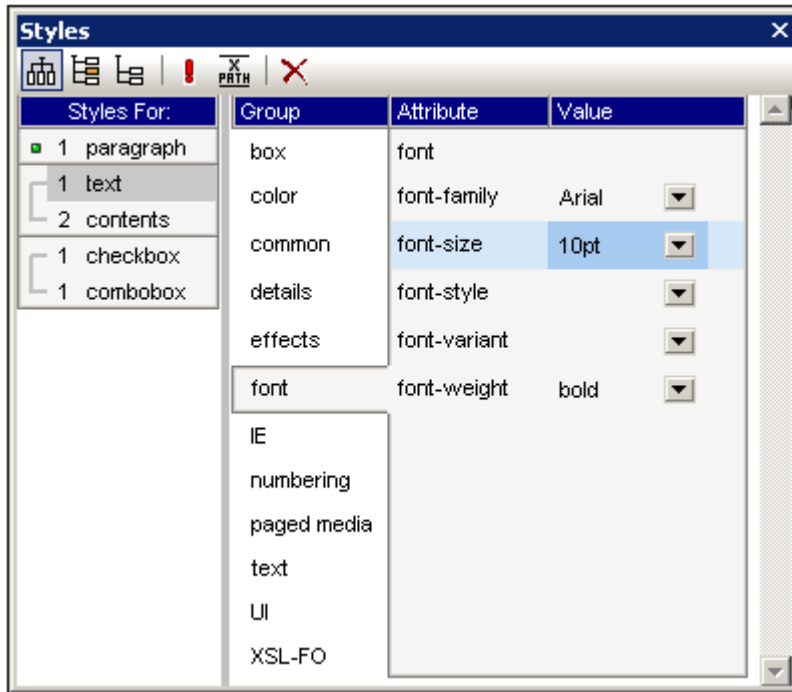
**Editing CSS styles in the Style Repository**

The following editing mechanisms are provided in the Style Repository:

- You can add and remove a CSS Stylesheet, and you can specify the media to which each external CSS stylesheet applies. How to do this is explained in the section [External CSS Stylesheets](#).
- Global styles can have their selectors and properties directly edited in the Style Repository window. How this is done is described in the section [Defining CSS Styles Globally](#).


## Styles

The **Styles** sidebar (*screenshot below*) enables CSS styles to be defined locally for SPS components selected in the Design View.




The Styles sidebar is divided into two broad parts:

- The **Styles For column**, in which the selected component types are listed. One of these component types may be selected at a time for styling. (In the screenshot above, the *1 text* component is selected.) For detailed information about the selection of component types, see [Selecting SPS Components to Style](#).
- The **Property Definitions column**, in which CSS properties are defined for the component type/s selected in the Styles For column. The Property Definitions column can be displayed in three views (*see below*). For the details of how to set local property



definitions, see [Setting CSS Property Values](#). The XPath icon  toggles on and off the application of XPath expressions as the source of property values. With a property selected, if the XPath icon is toggled on, then an XPath expression can be entered for this property and the return value of the XPath expression is used as the value of that property. In this way, the value of a node in an XML document can be returned, at runtime, as the value of a property. When the XPath icon is toggled off, a static value can be entered as the value of the property.

### Three views of Property Definitions

The Property Definitions column shows the properties of the component selected in Design View. The display is available in three views (*listed below*) and can be switched between each other by clicking the respective buttons in the toolbar of the Entry Helper:



- **Grouped** : The properties are organized into groups. In this view, the Property Definitions column is divided into three columns: Group, Attribute, and Value. All the available property groups are displayed in the Group column. When a group is selected, the properties of that group are displayed in the Attribute column. If a value for a

property is defined, the value appears in the Value column.

- **List All** : All properties of all groups are listed in a single alphabetically ordered list. The Attribute column is listed first, followed by the Group column and then the Value column.
- **List Non-Empty** : Only properties that have values defined are listed. The columns are ordered, from left to right, as follows: Attribute, Group, and Value. In this view, it will not be possible to define a value for a new property—because no undefined property is listed. However, this is a quick way to see all the defined properties for the selected component type, and the displayed properties can be edited.

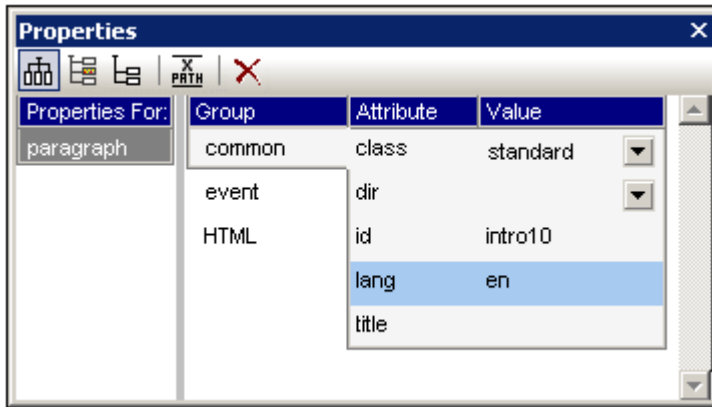
Views can also be changed by right-clicking any item in the Property Definitions column, selecting **View Mode**, and then the required view.

### **Toggle Important and Reset toolbar icons**

Clicking the Toggle Important icon  sets the CSS value `!important` on or off for the selected CSS rule. Clicking the Reset icon  resets the value of the selected property.

## Properties

The **Properties** sidebar (*screenshot below*) enables properties to be defined for SPS components selected in the Design View.






The Properties sidebar is divided into two broad parts:

- The **Properties For column**, in which the selected component types are listed. One of these component types may be selected at a time and properties assigned for it. (In the screenshot above, the *paragraph* component is selected.) For detailed information about how components with properties are grouped, see the section [Components and their Property Groups](#) below.
- The **Property Definitions column**, in which component properties are defined for the component type selected in the Properties For column. The Property Definitions column can be displayed in three views (*see below*). For the details of what properties are in each property group, see the section [Property Groups](#) below.


### Three views of Property Definitions

The Property Definitions column shows the properties of the component selected in Design View. The display is available in three views (*listed below*) and can be switched between each other by clicking the respective buttons in the toolbar of the Entry Helper:

- **Grouped** : The properties are organized into groups. In this view, the Property Definitions column is divided into three columns: Group, Attribute, and Value. All the available property groups are displayed in the Group column. When a group is selected, the properties of that group are displayed in the Attribute column. If a value for a property is defined, the value appears in the Value column.
- **List All** : All properties of all groups are listed in a single alphabetically ordered list. The Attribute column is listed first, followed by the Group column and then the Value column.
- **List Non-Empty** : Only properties that have values defined are listed. The columns are ordered, from left to right, as follows: Attribute, Group, and Value. In this view, it will not be possible to define a value for a new property—because no undefined property is listed. However, this is a quick way to see all the defined properties for the selected component type, and the displayed properties can be edited.

Views can also be changed by right-clicking any item in the Property Definitions column, selecting **View Mode**, and then the required view.

### Reset toolbar icon

Clicking the Reset icon  resets the value of the selected property to its default.

### Components and their property groups

The availability of property groups is context-sensitive. What property groups are available depends on what design component is selected. The table below lists SPS components and the property groups they have.

Component	Property Group
Content	Common; Event
Text	Common; Event
Auto-Calculation	AutoCalc; Common; Event
Condition Branch	When
Data-Entry Device	Common; [Data-Entry Device]; Event; HTML
Image	Image; Common; Event; HTML
Link	Link; Common; Event; HTML
Table	Common; Event; HTML
Paragraph	Paragraph; Common; Event; HTML

The following points about component types should be noted:

- Content components are the `content` and `rest-of-contents` placeholders. These represent the text content of a node or nodes from the XML document.
- A text component is a single string of static text. A single string extends between any two components other than text components, and includes whitespace, if any is present.
- Data-entry devices are input field, multiline input fields, combo boxes, check boxes, radio buttons and buttons; their properties cover the data-entry device as well as the contents of the data-entry device, if any.
- A table component refers to the table structure in the design. Note that it contains sub-components, which are considered components in their own right. The sub-components are: row, column, cell, header, and footer.
- A paragraph component is any predefined format.


The table below contains descriptions of each property group.


Property Group	Description
<b>AutoCalc</b>	These properties are enabled when an Auto-Calculation is selected. The <code>Input Formatting</code> property specifies the <a href="#">formatting</a> of an Auto-Calculation that is a numeric or date datatype. The <code>XPath</code> property specifies the XPath expression that is used for the <a href="#">Auto-Calculation</a> .
<b>Common</b>	The <i>Common</i> property group is available for all component types except the Template and AutoCalc component types. It contains the following properties that can be defined for the component: <code>class</code> (a class name), <code>dir</code> (the writing direction), <code>id</code> (a unique ID), <code>lang</code> (the language), and <code>title</code> (a name).
<b>Data-Entry Device</b>	Specifies the value range of combo boxes, check boxes, and radio buttons. Note that this property group does not apply to input fields and buttons.
<b>Event</b>	Contains properties that enable <a href="#">JavaScript functions</a> to be defined for the following client-side HTML events: <code>onclick</code> , <code>ondblclick</code> , <code>onkeydown</code> , <code>onkeypress</code> , <code>onkeyup</code> , <code>onmousedown</code> , <code>onmousemove</code> , <code>onmouseout</code> , <code>onmouseover</code> , <code>onmouseup</code> .
<b>HTML</b>	Available for the following component types: <a href="#">data-entry devices</a> ; <a href="#">image</a> ; <a href="#">link</a> ; <a href="#">table</a> ; <a href="#">paragraphs</a> . Note that there are different types of <a href="#">data-entry devices</a> and <a href="#">paragraphs</a> , and that <a href="#">tables</a> have sub-components. These properties are HTML properties that can be set on the corresponding HTML elements ( <code>img</code> , <code>table</code> , <code>p</code> , <code>div</code> , etc). The available properties therefore vary according to the component selected. Values for these properties can be selected using XPath expressions.

In addition, there are component-specific properties for [images](#), [links](#), [paragraphs and other predefined formats](#), and [condition branches](#). These properties are described in the respective sections.

### Setting property values

Property values can be entered in one, two, or three ways, depending on the property:

- Entered directly in the Value column. To do this, select a property, double-click in its Value column, enter the value using the keyboard, and press **Enter** or click anywhere in the GUI.
- By selecting a value from the dropdown list of the combo box for that property. Click the down arrow of the combo box to drop down the list of property-value options.
- By using the Edit button  at the right-hand side of the Value column for that property. Clicking the Edit button pops up a dialog relevant to that property. For example, the sidebar for the `Format` property in the screenshot below pops up the Input Formatting dialog, while that for the `XPath` property pops up the Edit XPath Expression dialog.

For some properties, in the Common and HTML groups of properties, XPath expressions can be used to provide the values of the property. The XPath icon  toggles on and off the application of XPath expressions as the source of property values. With a property selected, if the XPath icon is toggled on, then an XPath expression can be entered for this property and the

return value of the XPath expression is used as the value of that property. In this way, the value of a node in an XML document can be returned, at runtime, as the value of a property. When the XPath icon is toggled off, a static value can be entered as the value of the property.

**Modifying or deleting a property value**

To modify a property value, use any of the applicable methods described in the previous paragraph, [Setting Property Values](#). To delete a property value, select the property and click the

Reset icon  in the toolbar of the Properties sidebar.



## **Chapter 6**

---

### **Quick Start Tutorial**

## 6 Quick Start Tutorial

The objective of this tutorial is to take you quickly through the the key steps in creating an effective SPS. It starts with a section on creating and setting up the SPS, shows you how to insert content in the SPS, how to format the components of the SPS, and how to use two powerful SPS features: Auto-Calculations and conditions. Along the way you will get to know how to structure your output efficiently and how to use a variety of structural and presentation features.

### Files required

Files related to this Quick Start tutorial are in the application folder `C:/Documents and Settings/<username>/My Documents/Altova/StyleVision2010/StyleVisionExamples/Tutorial/QuickStart:`

- `QuickStart.xsd`, the XML Schema file on which the SPS is based.
- `QuickStart.xml`, the Working XML File, which is the source of the data displayed in the output previews.
- `QuickStart.sps`, which is the finished SPS file; you can compare the SPS file you create with this file.
- `QuickStart.css`, which is the external CSS stylesheet used in the tutorial.
- `NewsItems.BMP`, an image file that is used in the SPS.

### Doing the tutorial



It is best to start at the beginning of the tutorial and work your way through the sections. Also, you should open the XSD and XML files before starting the tutorial and take a look at their structure and contents. Keep the XSD and XML files open while doing the tutorial, so that you can refer to them. Save your SPS document with a name other than `QuickStart.sps` (say `MyQuickStart.sps`) so that you do not overwrite the supplied SPS file. And, of course, remember to save after successfully completing every part.

## 6.1 Creating and Setting Up a New SPS

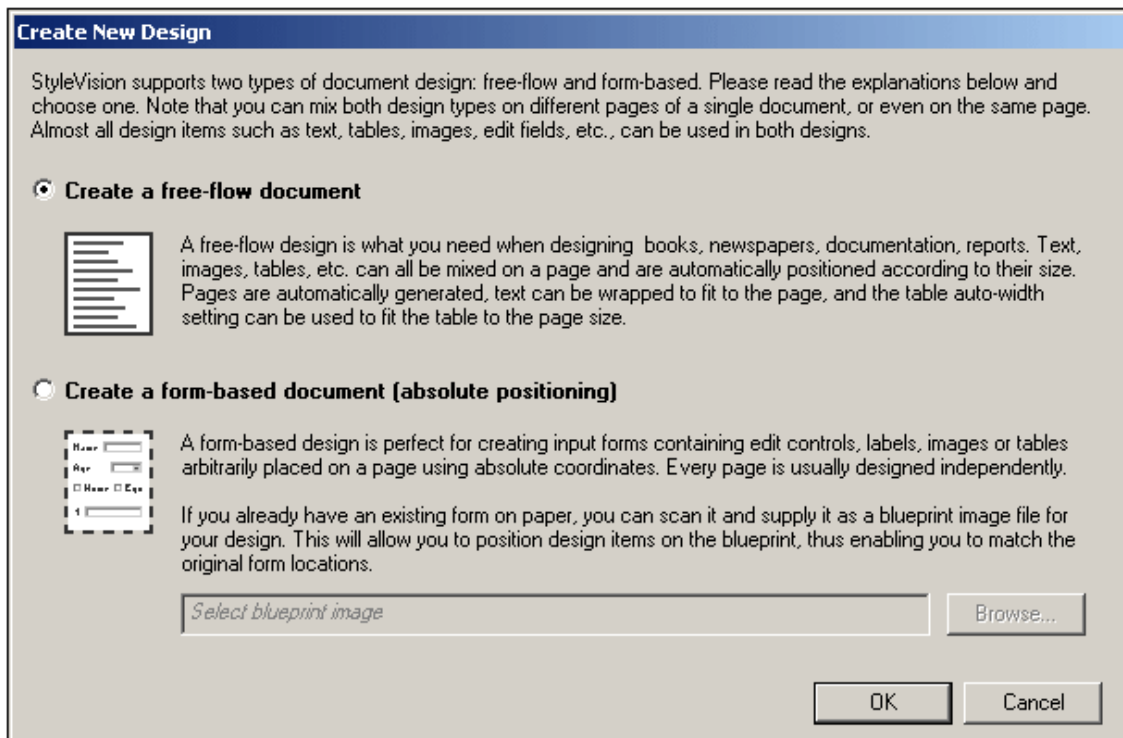
In this section, you will learn:

- [How to create a new SPS document.](#)
- [How to add a schema source for the SPS.](#)
- [How to select the XSLT version of the SPS.](#)
- [How to assign the Working XML File.](#)
- [How to specify the output encoding.](#)
- [How to save the SPS document.](#)

### Creating a new SPS document

Create a new SPS document by clicking [File | New | New \(Empty\)](#) or select **New (Empty)**  in the dropdown list of the [New icon](#)  in the application toolbar. The Create New Design dialog pops up.

The Create New Design dialog (*screenshot below*) prompts you to select either: (i) a free-flowing document design, or (ii) a form-based document design (in which components are positioned absolutely, as in a layout program).



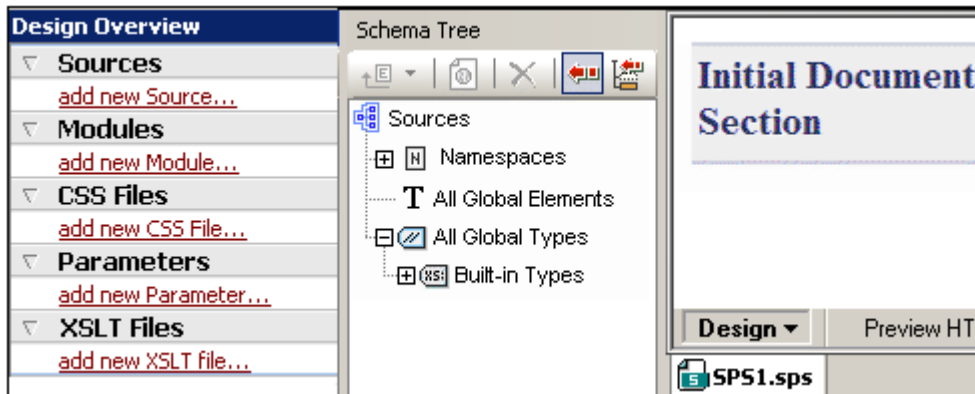
In a free-flowing document design, document content is laid out to fit the output media object or viewer (paper or screen). Items in the document content can only be placed relative to each other, and not absolutely. This kind of design is suited for documents such as reports, articles, and books.

In a form-based document, a single [Layout Container](#) is created, in which design components can be positioned absolutely. The dimensions of the Layout Container are user-defined, and Layout Boxes can be positioned absolutely within the Layout Container and document content can be placed within individual Layout Boxes. If you wish the design of your SPS to replicate a

specific form-based design, you can use an image of the original form as a [blueprint image](#). The blueprint image can then be included as the background image of the Layout Container. The blueprint image is used to help you design your form; it will not be included in the output.

You will be creating a free-flowing document, so select this option by clicking the *Create a free-flow document* radio button, then click **OK**.

A new document titled `SPS1.sps` is created and displayed in [Design View](#) (screenshot below).

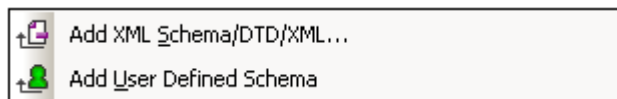


In [Design View](#), an empty main template is displayed. In the [Design Overview](#) and [Schema Tree](#) sidebars, there are no schema entries.

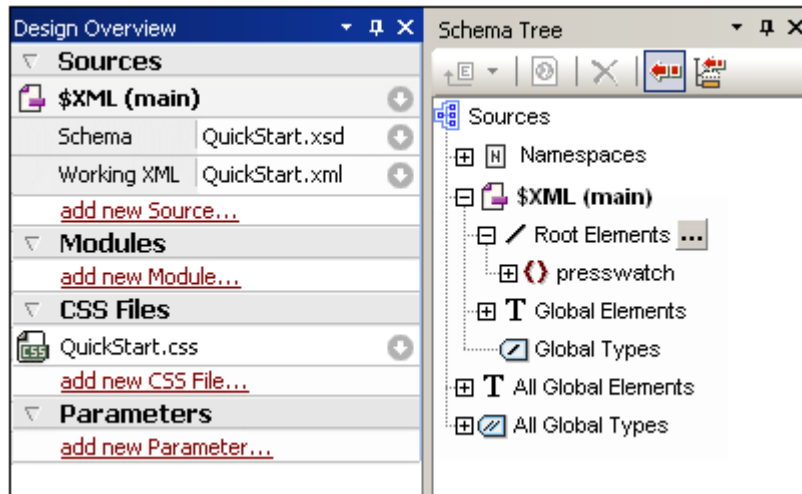
### Adding a schema source

For this SPS, you will use the schema, `QuickStart.xsd`. To add this schema as the schema source, do the following:

1. In the Design Overview sidebar, under the Sources heading, click the **Add New Source** command (screenshot above). In the menu that pops up (screenshot below), select **Add XML Schema/DTD/XML**.




2. In the Open dialog that pops up browse for the file `C:/Documents and Settings/<username>/My Documents/Altova/StyleVision2010/StyleVisionExamples/Tutorial/QuickStart/QuickStart.xsd`, and click **Open**.
3. You will be prompted to select a Working XML File. Select the option to select the file from the filesystem, then browse for the file `C:/Documents and Settings/<username>/My Documents/Altova/StyleVision2010/StyleVisionExamples/Tutorial/QuickStart/QuickStart.xml`, and click **Open**. The schema will be added as a schema source in the Design Overview sidebar and in the Schema Tree sidebar (screenshot below). Also, in the Design Overview, the Working XML File you chose will be assigned to the schema.




You should note the following points: (i) In Design Overview, the `$XML` entry for the schema source lists the schema and the [Working XML File](#); (ii) In the Schema Tree sidebar, the Root Elements tree would list the one or more [root elements \(document elements\)](#) you select from among the [global elements](#) defined in the schema. In the case of this schema, the element `presswatch` is selected by default because it is the one [global element](#) in the schema that lies clearly at the top of the hierarchy defined in the schema; (iii) All [global elements](#) in the schema are listed in the [All Global Elements tree](#).

### Selecting the XSLT version

For this SPS you will use XSLT 2.0. To specify the XSLT version, in the application toolbar, click the  icon.

### Assigning or changing the Working XML File

While adding the XML Schema to the SPS in the previous step, you also assigned a [Working XML File](#) to the schema. A Working XML File provides the SPS with a source of XML data to process. To assign, change, or unassign a [Working XML File](#) for a given schema, in the Design Overview sidebar, right-click anywhere in the Working XML File line you wish to modify (or click the Context Menu icon  at the right), and select the required command from the context menu that pops up. The [Working XML File](#) is now assigned, and the filename is entered in the Design Overview. Before proceeding, ensure that you have correctly assigned the file `C:/Documents and Settings/<username>/My Documents/Altova/StyleVision2010/StyleVisionExamples/Tutorial/QuickStart/QuickStart.xml` as the Working XML File.

### Specifying the encoding of output

In the Default Encoding tab of the Options dialog ([Tools | Options](#)), set the HTML encoding to Unicode UTF-8.

### Saving the SPS document

After you have set up the SPS as described above, save it as `MyQuickStart.sps` in the `C:/Documents and Settings/<username>/My Documents/Altova/StyleVision2010/StyleVisionExamples/Tutorial/QuickStart` folder. Do this by clicking the menu command [File | Save Design](#) or **Ctrl+S**, and then entering the file name in the Save Design dialog that pops up.

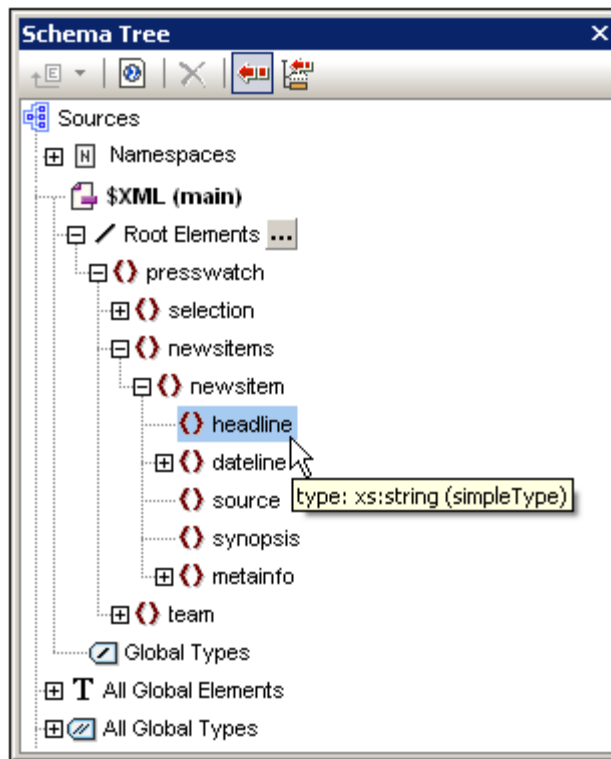
## 6.2 Inserting Dynamic Content (from XML Source)

This section introduces mechanisms to insert data from nodes in the XML document. In it you will learn how to drag element and attribute nodes from the schema tree into the design and create these nodes as contents. When a node is created as contents, the data in it is output as a string which is the concatenation of the content of that element's child text nodes and the text nodes of all descendant elements.

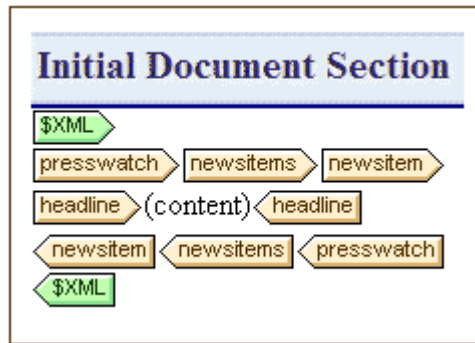
### Inserting element contents

In your SPS, do the following:

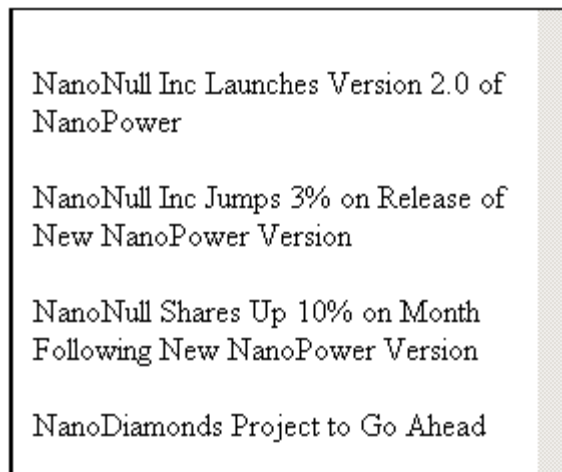
1. In the [Schema Tree sidebar](#), expand the schema tree up to the children of the `newsitem` element (*screenshot below*).



2. Select the `headline` element (notice that the element's datatype is displayed in a pop-up when you mouseover; *screenshot above*). Drag the element into [Design View](#), and, when the arrow cursor turns to an insertion point, drop it into the main template.
3. In the context menu that pops up, select **Create Contents**. The start and end tags of the `headline` element are inserted at the point where you dropped the `headline` element, and they contain the content placeholder. The `headline` tags are surrounded by the start and end tags of the ancestor elements of `headline` (*screenshot below*).
4. In the design put elements on different lines (by pressing **Enter**) as shown in the screenshot below.



Click the HTML tab to see a [preview of the HTML output](#) (screenshot below). The HTML preview shows the contents of the `headline` child elements of `newsitem`, each as a text string.

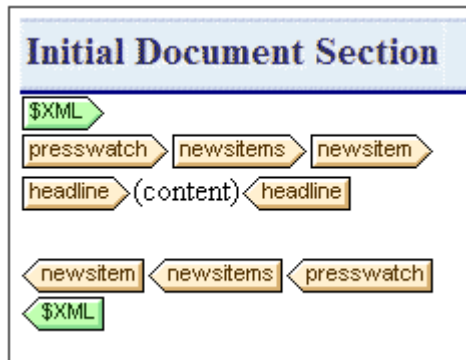


**Note:** You can also create the contents of a node by: (i) clicking the the Insert Contents icon in the [Insert Design Elements toolbar](#), (ii) clicking at location in the design, (iii) selecting, from the Schema Selector tree that pops up, the node for you wish to create contents.

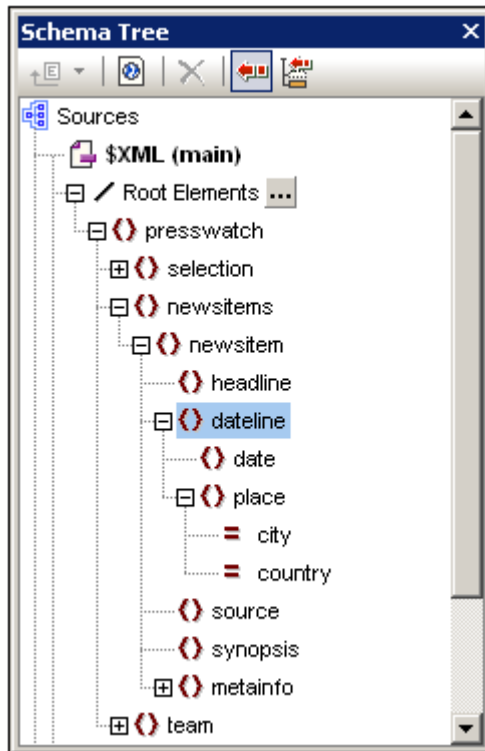
### Inserting attribute contents

When an element is inserted into the design as contents, the contents of its attributes are not automatically inserted. You must explicitly drag the attribute node into the design for the attribute's value to be output. In your SPS, now do the following:

1. Place the cursor after the end tag of the `headline` element and press **Enter**. This produces an empty line (screenshot below).

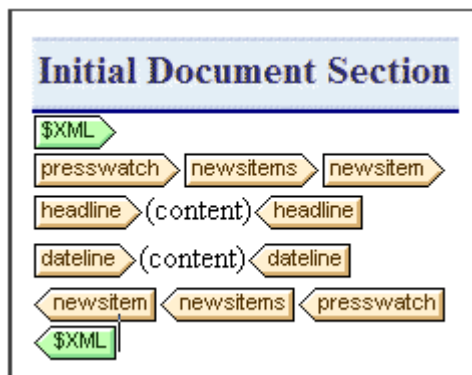


2. In the Schema Tree sidebar, expand the `dateline` element (*screenshot below*).



Notice that the `dateline` element has two child elements, `date` and `place`, and that the `place` element has two attributes, `city` and `country`.

3. Drag the `dateline` element into the design and drop it at the beginning of the newly created empty line (*screenshot below*).



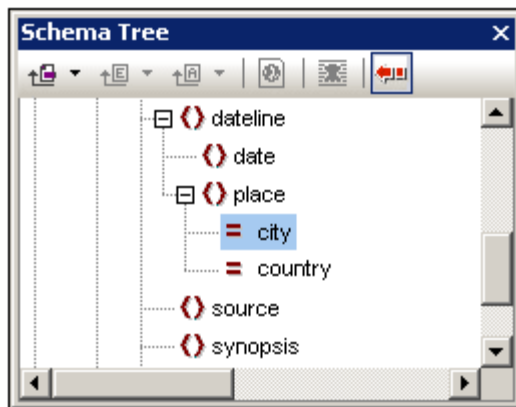


- Switch to [HTML Preview](#) and look carefully at the output of `dateline` (*screenshot below*).



Notice that while the contents of the `date` children of `dateline` elements have been output, no contents have been output for the `place` children of `dateline`. This is because the `place` data is contained in the attributes `city` and `country` and attribute contents are not output when the attribute's parent element is processed.

- Drag the `date` element from the [Schema Tree sidebar](#) and drop it (create it as contents) in between the start and end tags of the `dateline` element.
- Select the `city` attribute of the `dateline/place` element (*screenshot below*) in the [Schema Tree sidebar](#).



- Drag the `@city` attribute node into [Design View](#), and drop it (create as contents) just after the end tag of the `date` element.
- Drag the `@country` attribute node into [Design View](#), and drop it (create as contents) just after the end tag of the `@city` attribute.

When you are done, the SPS design should look something like this:



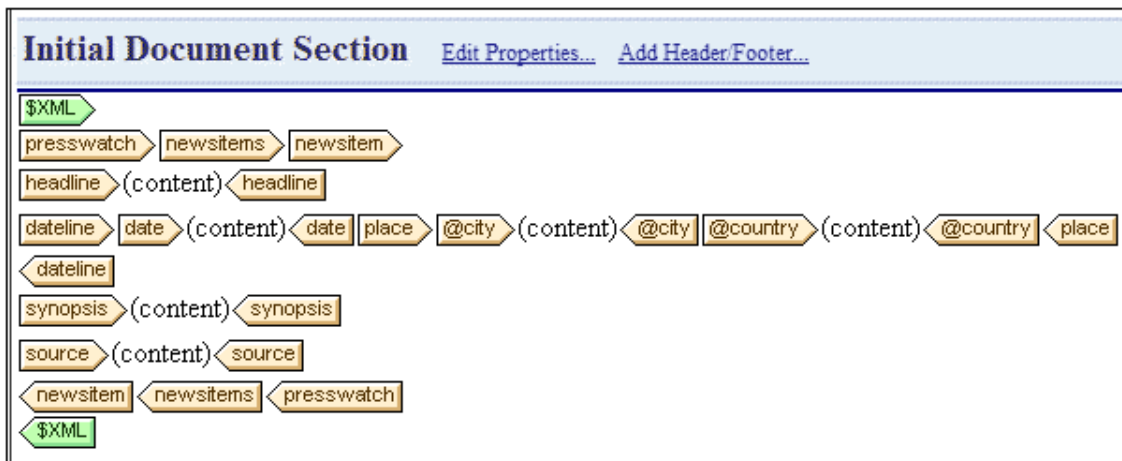
The [HTML Preview](#) will look like this:



Notice that the values of the `@city` and `@country` attributes are now included in the output.

### Adding more dynamic content

The contents of elements and attributes from the XML data source can be inserted anywhere in the design using the method described above. To complete this section, add the `synopsis` and `source` elements to the design so that the design now looks like this:



Notice that the `synopsis` element has been placed before the `source` element, which is not the order in which the elements are in the schema. After you have added the `synopsis` and `source` elements to the design, check the [HTML preview](#) to see the output. This is an important point to note: that the order in which nodes are placed in the [main template](#) is how you specify the [structure of the output](#).

Another important point to note at this stage is the form in which a node is created in the design. In the [HTML preview](#), you will see that all the nodes included in the design have been sent to the output as text strings. Alternatively to being output as a text string, a node can be output in some other form, for example, as a table or a combo box. In this section, you have, by creating all the nodes as `(contents)`, specified that the output form of all nodes are text strings. In the section, [Using Conditions](#), you will learn how to create a node as a combo box, and in the section, [Using Global Templates and Rest-of-Contents](#), how to create a node as a (dynamic) table.

Make sure to save the file before moving to the next section.

## 6.3 Inserting Static Content

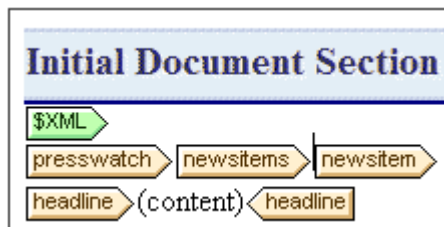
Static content is content you enter directly in the design—as opposed to content that comes from the XML source. A variety of static components can be entered in an SPS design. In this part of the tutorial, you will learn how to insert the following static components:

- [An image](#)
- [A horizontal line](#)
- [Text](#)

### Inserting a static image

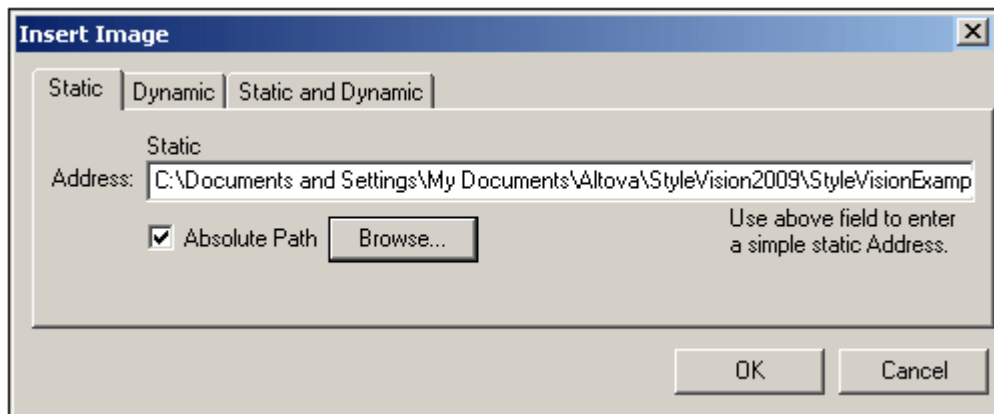
The static image to insert is `C:/Documents and Settings/<username>/My Documents/Altova/StyleVision2010/StyleVisionExamples/Tutorial/QuickStart/NewsItems.BMP`, which will be used as the header of the document. To insert this image at the head of the document, do the following:

1. Place the cursor between the start-tags of `newsitems` and `newsitem` (*screenshot below*).



Notice that the cursor is within the `newsitems` element but outside the `newsitem` element. It will therefore be inserted in the output once, at the start of processing of the `newsitems` element (because there is only one `newsitems` element defined in the schema).

2. Right-click, and select [Insert | Image](#). The Insert Image dialog pops up (*screenshot below*).



3. In the Static tab, click the Absolute Path, then browse for the file `NewsItems.BMP` and select it.
4. Click **OK** to finish.

The HTML preview will look something like this:



### Inserting horizontal lines

The first horizontal line you will insert is between the document header and document body. Do this as follows:

1. Place the cursor immediately after the recently inserted static image.
2. Right-click, and select [Insert | Horizontal Line](#). A horizontal line is inserted.

Set properties for the line as follows:

1. With the line selected in [Design View](#), in the [Properties sidebar](#), select the *line* component (in the Properties For column) and then the *HTML* group of properties.
2. Assign `color` and `size` properties for the line.
3. With the line selected in [Design View](#), in the [Styles sidebar](#), select the *line* component and then the *box* group of properties. Define a `margin-bottom` property of 12pt.
4. Check the output in [HTML Preview](#).

Now insert a horizontal line at the end of each news item. To do this the cursor would have to be placed immediately before the end-tag of the `newsitem` element. This will cause the line to be output at the end of each `newsitem` element.

### Inserting static text

You have already added static text to your design. When you pressed the **Enter** key to obtain new lines (in the section [Inserting Dynamic Content \(from XML Source\)](#)), whitespace (static text) was added. In this section, you will add a few static text characters to your design.

The SPS you have designed up to this point will produce output which looks something like this:

## Summary of News Items

---

NanoNull Inc Launches Version 2.0 of NanoPower  
 2006-04-01BostonUSA  
 Nanonull Inc today launched version 2.0 of its market-leading NanoPower line of hardware and software. The highlights of the new version of NanoPower are improved chip design capabilities in NanoSoft, the software used to design computer chips; and higher precision sand-filtering processes in NanoMeld, the hardware in which the transformation from sand to silicon chips is executed.  
 NewTech Online

---

Notice that in the output of the `dateline` element, the contents of the `date` element and `place/@city` and `place/@country` attributes are run together without spacing. You can add the spacing as static text. In the design, place the cursor after the `date` element and enter a colon and a space. Next, enter a comma and space after the `@city` attribute (*screenshot below*)

date (content) date : place @city (content) @city , @country (content) @country place

This part of the output will now look like this:

## Summary of News Items

---

NanoNull Inc Launches Version 2.0 of NanoPower  
 2006-04-01: Boston, USA

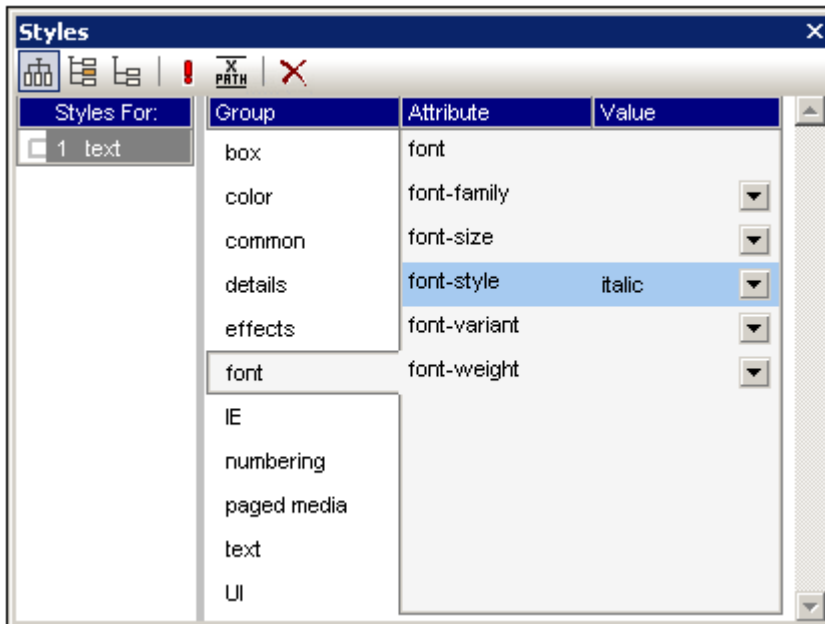
Notice the colon, spacing and comma in the `dateline` output. All of these text items are static text items that were inserted directly in the design.

You will now add one more item of static text. In the design, type in the string "Source: " just before the start-tag of the `source` element (*screenshot below*).

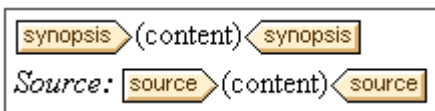
synopsis (content) synopsis  
 Source: source (content) source

### Formatting static text

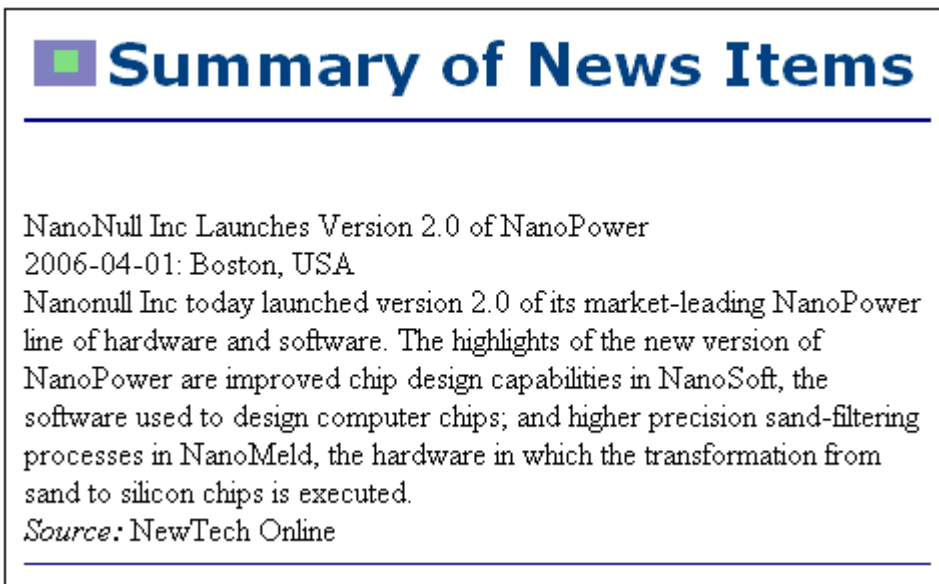
To format static text, highlight the text to be formatted and specify local style properties. In the design, highlight the text "Source: " that you just typed. In the [Styles sidebar](#) (*screenshot below*), notice that the *1 text* component is selected. Now select the *font* group of properties, and, for the `font-style` property (*screenshot below*), select the *italic* option from the dropdown menu.



The static text (that is, the string "Source: ") will be give an italic style in the design, and will look like this:



The output will look like this in HTML Preview:



If you think there is too little vertical space between the source item and the horizontal line separating two `newsitem` elements, then, in the design, insert a blank line between the source and the horizontal line (by pressing **Enter**).

After you are done, save the file.

In this section you have learned how to insert static content and format it. In the next section you will learn more about how design components can be formatted using CSS principles and properties.



## 6.4 Formatting the Content

StyleVision offers a powerful and flexible [styling mechanism](#), based on CSS, for formatting components in the design. The following are the key aspects of StyleVision's styling mechanism:

- CSS style rules can be defined for both block components and inline components.
- [Predefined formats](#) are block components that have inherent styles and can be used as wrappers for a group of adjacent components that need to be treated as a block. The inherent styles of these predefined formats can be overridden by styles you specify.
- Class attributes can be declared on components in the design, and the class can be used as a selector for [external](#) or [global](#) style rules.
- You can specify styles at three levels. These are, in increasing order of priority: (i) style rules in [external stylesheets](#), (ii) [global style rules](#), and (iii) [local style rules](#).

In this section, you will learn how to:

- [Assign predefined formats](#)
- [Assign a component a class attribute](#)
- [Define styles in an external CSS stylesheet](#) and add this stylesheet to the style repository of the SPS
- [Define global style rules](#)
- Define [local styles for a selection of multiple design components](#)
- Define [local styles for a single component](#)

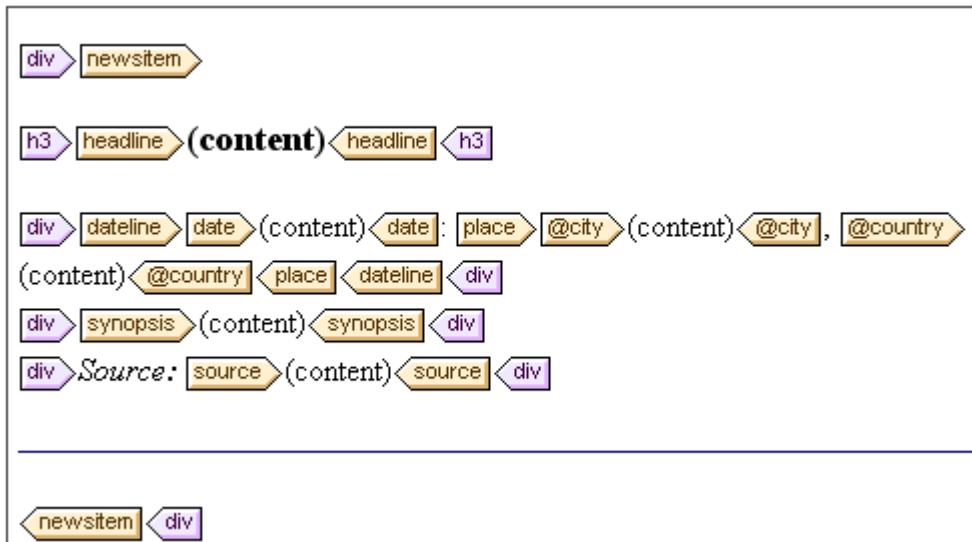
### Assigning predefined formats

One reason to assign a [predefined format](#) is to give a component the inherent styling of that [predefined format](#). In the design, select the `headline` element and then select **Insert | Special Paragraph | Heading 3 (h3)** (alternatively use the Predefined Formats combo box in the toolbar). The predefined format tags are created around the `headline` element (*screenshot below*).



Notice that the font properties of the contents change and that vertical spacing is added above and below the predefined format. These property values are inherent in the `h3` predefined format.

Another use of predefined formats is to group design components in a block so that they can be formatted as a block or assigned inline properties as a group. The most convenient predefined property for this purpose is the `div` predefined format, which creates a block without spacing above or below. In your design, assign the `newsitem`, `dateline`, `synopsis`, and `source` nodes separate `div` components. Your design should look something like the screenshot below. Note that the static text "Source: " is also included in the `div` component that contains the `source` element, and that the entire `newsitem` element is inside a `div` component.

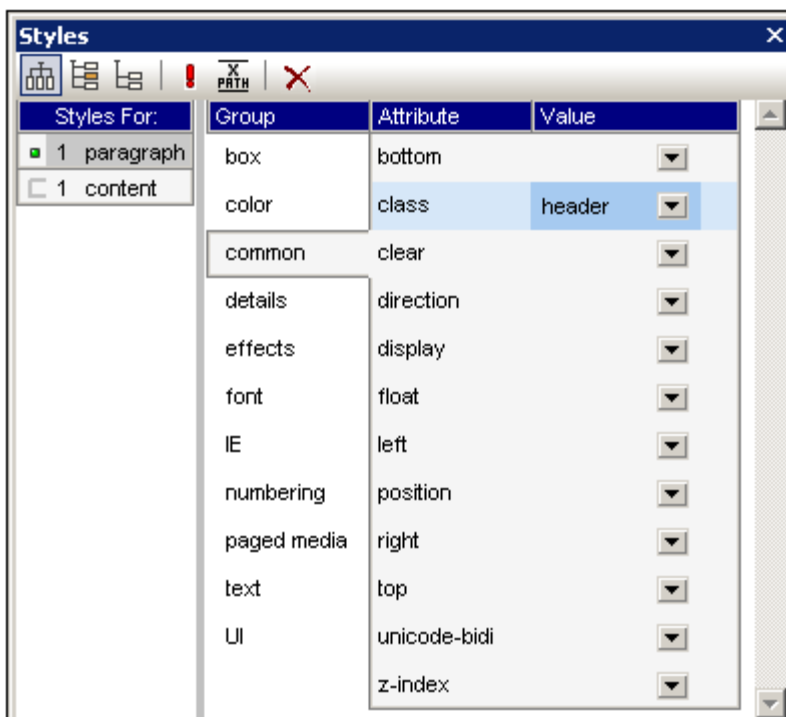


You have now grouped components together in different `div` blocks. [Later in this section](#), you will learn how to assign styles to such blocks of grouped components.

### Assigning components to class attributes

A style rule can be defined for a class of components. For example, all headers can be defined to have a set of common properties (for example, a particular font-family, font-weight, and color). To do this you must do two things: (i) assign the components that are to have the common properties to a single class; (ii) define the styling properties for that class.

In your design, select the `h3` tag, and in the Styles sidebar, select *1 paragraph* (to select the predefined format), and the *common* group of properties. Double-click in the Value field of the `class` property and enter `header`.



This particular instance of the `h3` format is now assigned to a class named `header`. When you define styling properties for the `header` class (styles from an external stylesheet or global SPS styles), these properties will be applied to all components in the SPS that have the `header` class.

### Adding an external CSS stylesheet to the style repository

Style rules in an external CSS stylesheet can be applied to components in the SPS design. External stylesheets must, however, first be added to the style repository in order for rules in them to be applied to components. In the [Style Repository sidebar](#) (in Design View), do the following:

1. Select the `External` item.
2. Click the **Add** button in the toolbar. This pops up the Open dialog.
3. Browse for the file `C:/Documents and Settings/<username>/My Documents/Altova/StyleVision2010/StyleVisionExamples/Tutorial/QuickStart/QuickStart.css` and click **Open**.

The stylesheet is added to the style repository. It contains the following rules that are relevant at this stage:

```
.header {
    font-family: "Arial", sans-serif;
    font-weight: bold;
    color: red;
}

h3 {
    font-size: 12pt;
}
```

The style rules for the `header` class and `h3` element are combined and produce the following HTML output for the `headline` element.

## NanoNull Inc Launches Version 2.0 of NanoPower

2006-04-01: Boston, USA

Nanonull Inc today launched version 2.0 of its market-leading NanoPower line of hardware and software. The highlights of the new version of NanoPower are improved chip design capabilities in NanoSoft, the software used to design computer chips; and higher precision sand-filtering processes in NanoMeld, the hardware in which the transformation from sand to silicon chips is executed.

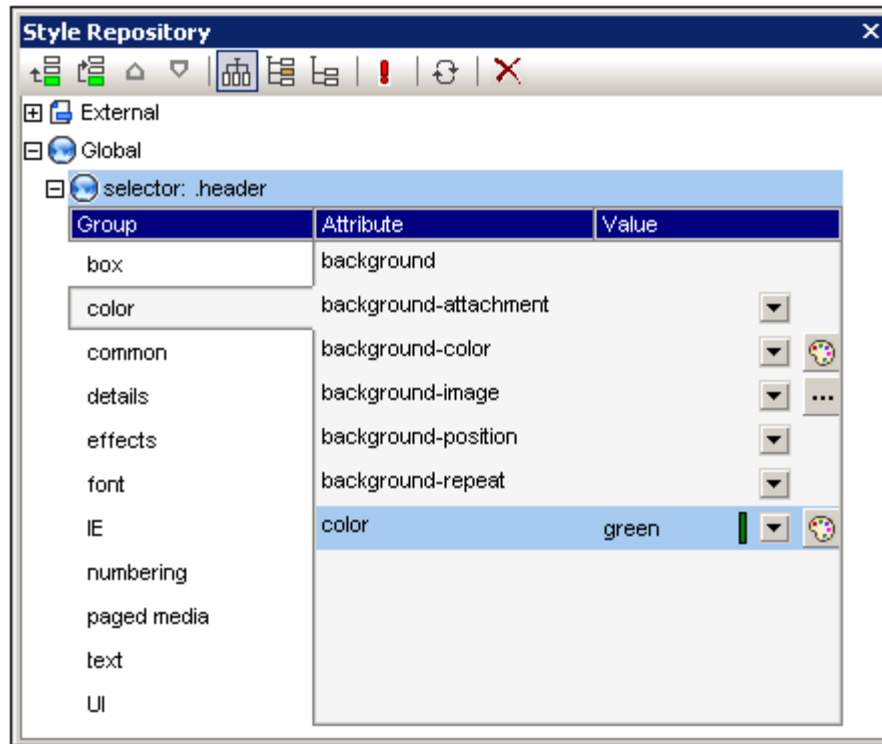
*Source:* NewTech Online

### Defining global style rules

[Global style rules](#) can be defined for the entire SPS using CSS selectors. The rules are defined directly in the [Style Repository sidebar](#). Create a global style rule for the `header` class as follows:

1. With [Design View](#) active, in the [Style Repository sidebar](#), select the Global item.

2. Click the **Add** button in the toolbar. This creates an empty rule for the wildcard selector (\*), which is highlighted.
3. Type in `.header` to replace the wildcard as the selector.
4. In the *color* group of properties, select `green` from the dropdown list of the `color` property values (screenshot below).



Where the global style rule defines a property that is also defined in the external stylesheet (the `color` property), the property value in the global rule takes precedence. In the HTML preview, the contents of the headline will therefore be green. Other property definitions from the external stylesheet (not over-riden by a property in a global style rule) are retained (in this case, `font-family` and `font-weight`).

### NanoNull Inc Launches Version 2.0 of NanoPower

2006-04-01: Boston, USA

Nanonull Inc today launched version 2.0 of its market-leading NanoPower line of hardware and software. The highlights of the new version of NanoPower are improved chip design capabilities in NanoSoft, the software used to design computer chips; and higher precision sand-filtering processes in NanoMeld, the hardware in which the transformation from sand to silicon chips is executed.

*Source:* NewTech Online

### Defining local styles for multiple components at once

Local styles can be defined for multiple components at once. In your design, to specify that the entire text contents of a news item should have Arial as its font, click the `div` component surrounding the `newsitem` element and, in the [Styles sidebar](#), in the Styles For column, select `1 paragraph`. Then, in the *font* group of properties, assign `Arial` as the `font-family`. This property setting will be inherited by all five descendant predefined formats.

Now, in the design, select the three `div` components surrounding the `dateline`, `synopsis`, and `source` nodes (by keeping the **Shift** key pressed as you click each `div` component). In the [Styles sidebar](#), select `3 paragraphs`, then the *font* group of properties, and set a `font-size` of `10pt`. (The `h3` component was not selected because it already has the required `font-size` of `12pt`.)

Finally, in the design, select the `div` component surrounding the `dateline` element. In the Styles For column of the [Styles sidebar](#), select `1 paragraph`. In the *font* group of properties, set `font-weight` to `bold` and `font-style` to `italic`. In the *color* group of properties, set `color` to `gray`. The output of the dateline will look like this



2006-04-01: Boston, USA

Notice that the styling defined for the `div` component has been applied to the static text within the `div` component as well (that is, to the colon and the comma).

### Defining local styles for a single component

A local style defined on a single component overrides all other styles defined at higher levels of the SPS for that component. In the design, select the `headline` element and assign it a color of `navy` (`color` property in the *color* group of properties). The locally defined property (`color: navy`) overrides the global style for the `.header` class (`color: green`).

Select the `div` component surrounding the `source` element. In the [Styles sidebar](#), with the `1 paragraph` item in the Styles For column selected, set the `color` property (in the *color* group of properties) to `gray`. In the *font* group of properties, set `font-weight` to `bold`. These values are applied to the static text. Remember that in the last section the static text "Source: " was assigned a `font-style` value of `italic`. The new properties (`font-weight: bold` and `color: gray`) are additional to the `font-style: italic` property).

Now, in Design View, select the `(content)` placeholder of the `source` element. In the Styles For column, with `1 content` selected, set the `color` property (in the *color* group of properties) to `black`. In the *font* group of properties, set `font-weight` to `normal`. The new properties are set on the `contents` placeholder node of the `source` element and override the properties defined on the `div` component (see [screenshot below](#)).

### Completing the formatting

To complete the formatting in this section, select the `div` component on the `synopsis` element and, in the [Predefined Formats](#) combo box in the toolbar, select `p`. This gives the block the inherent styles of the HTML's `p` element. The HTML preview should now look something like this:

## **NanoNull Inc Launches Version 2.0 of NanoPower**

*2006-04-01: Boston, USA*

Nanonull Inc today launched version 2.0 of its market-leading NanoPower line of hardware and software. The highlights of the new version of NanoPower are improved chip design capabilities in NanoSoft, the software used to design computer chips; and higher precision sand-filtering processes in NanoMeld, the hardware in which the transformation from sand to silicon chips is executed.

*Source:* NewTech Online

After you are done, save the file.

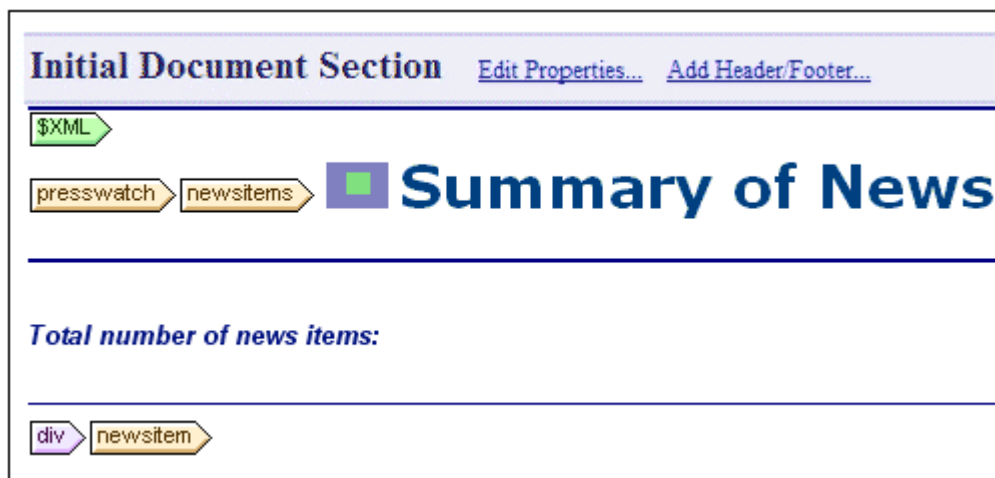
## 6.5 Using Auto-Calculations

[Auto-Calculations](#) are a powerful mechanism for providing additional information from the available XML data. In this section you will add two pieces of information to the design: the total number of news items and the time period covered by the news items in the XML document. Neither piece of information is directly available in the XML document but has to be calculated or manipulated from the available data.

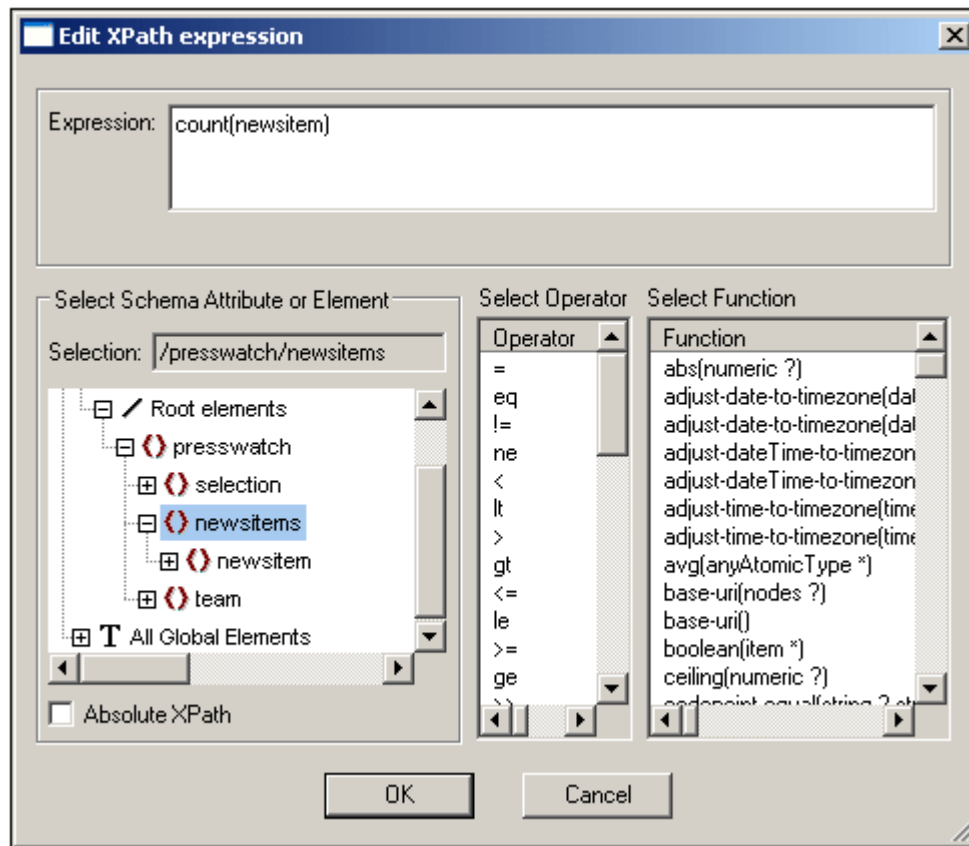
### Counting the news item nodes

In the design, do the following:

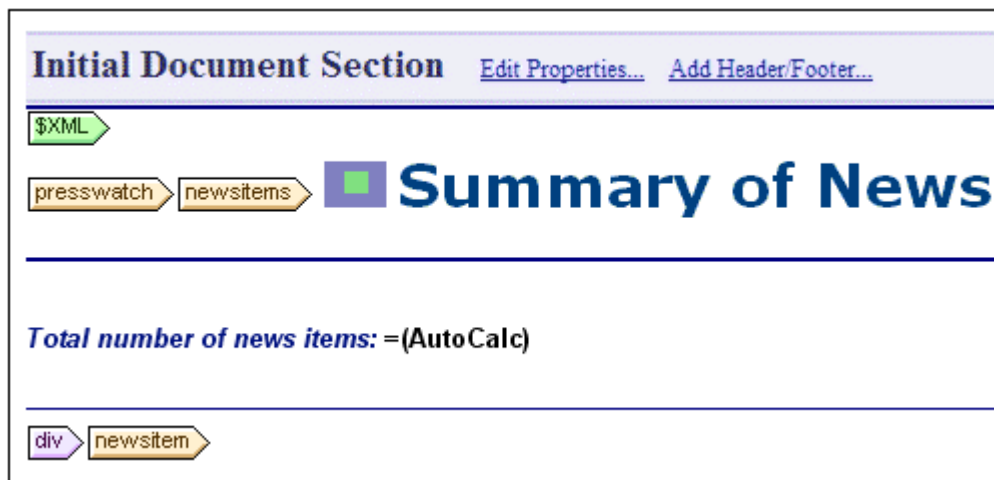
1. Create space, as shown in the screenshot below, for a line of static text (on which the Auto-Calculation will also be placed). Use the **Return** key to add new lines and insert a horizontal line below the space you create (*see screenshot*).



2. Type in the static text "Total number of news items: " as shown in the screenshot above.
3. Apply local styling of your choice to the static text. Do this as described in the section [Formatting the Content](#).
4. Place the cursor after the colon and select **Insert | Auto-Calculation | Value**. This pops up the Edit XPath Expression dialog (*screenshot below*). (Alternatively, you can right-click and select the command in the context menu.)

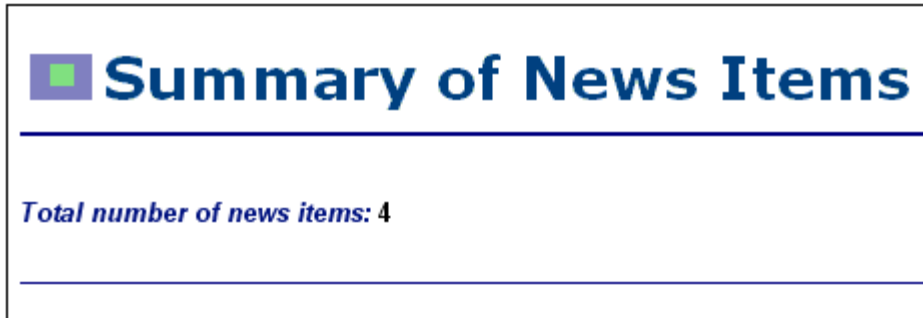


- In the schema tree, note that the context node is `newsitems`, which is highlighted. Now, in the Expression text box either type in the expression `count(newsitem)` or build the expression using the sidebars. (Double-click the `count` function to enter it, then place the cursor within the parentheses of the function and double-click the `newsitem` node in the schema tree.
- Click **OK** to finish. The Auto-Calculation is inserted in the design at the cursor location ( *screenshot below*). Format the Auto-Calculation using [local styles](#).





Your HTML output will look like this:

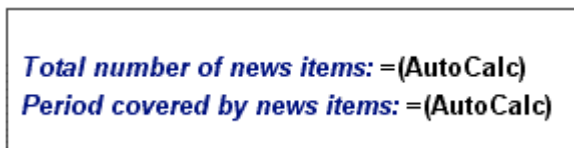


### Displaying the period covered by news items

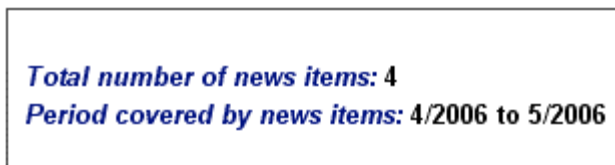
The period covered by the news items can be obtained by getting the date of the earliest news item and the date of the latest news item. This can be achieved with XPath expressions like those given below. The first expression outputs the contents of the `date` node. The second expression is a refinement, outputting just the month and year values in the `date` node. You can use either of these.

- `concat(min(//date), ' to ', max(//date)).`
- `concat(month-from-date(min(//date)), '/', year-from-date(min(//date)), ' to ', month-from-date(max(//date)), '/', year-from-date(max(//date))).`

In the design, insert the static text and Auto-Calculation as shown in the screenshot below. Apply whatever local styling you like.



The HTML preview will look something like this:



After you are done, save the file.

## 6.6 Using Conditions

If you look at `QuickStart.xml`, you will see that each `newsitem` element has a `metainfo` child element, which in turn can contain one or more `relevance` child elements. Each `relevance` node contains a heading under which the relevance of the news item is indexed. Further, there is a node `/presswatch/selection/byrelevance`. The content of this node contains one of the relevance headings and determines what news items are displayed. For example, if the content of the `byrelevance` node is `NanoPower`, then all news items that have a `relevance` node containing `NanoPower` are displayed. A condition can test what the content of the `byrelevance` node is (by looking up that node) and provide appropriate processing (displays) in the conditional template. In this section, you will create a conditional template that displays those news items that have a `relevance` element that matches the content of `byrelevance`.

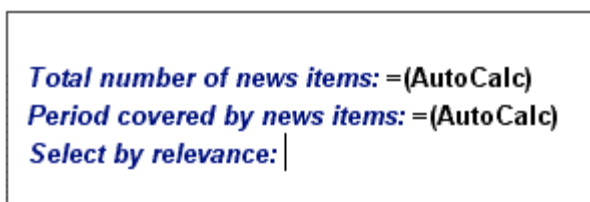
We will proceed as follows:

1. Create a combo box which displays the value of the `byrelevance` node. The values in the dropdown list of the combo box are obtained by using an XPath expression, which dynamically compiles a list of all unique `relevance` node values.
2. Insert a condition around the `newsitem` element. This condition selects all `newsitem` elements that have a `relevance` element with content matching the content of the `byrelevance` node. The content that is surrounded by a branch of a condition is known as a conditional template.
3. Within the conditional template, list each `relevance` node of that news item.
4. Highlight the `relevance` element (in the list of `relevance` elements) that matches the `byrelevance` element. This is done by creating a condition to select such `relevance` elements and then applying special formatting to this conditional template.
5. In the condition for the `newsitem` element, insert a branch that selects all news items.

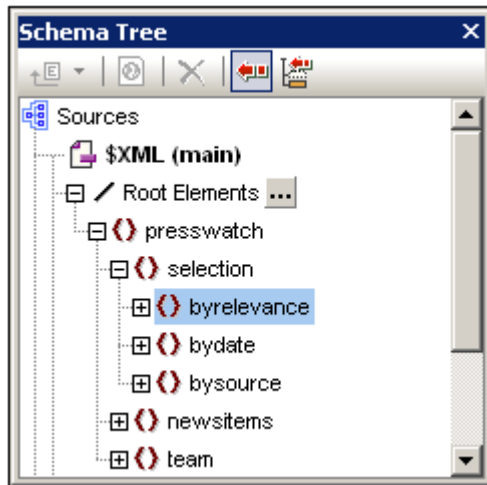
### Creating the combo box to select unique node values

In the XML document, the node that will contain the user selection is `/presswatch/selection/byrelevance`. Create this node as a combo box. Do this as follows:

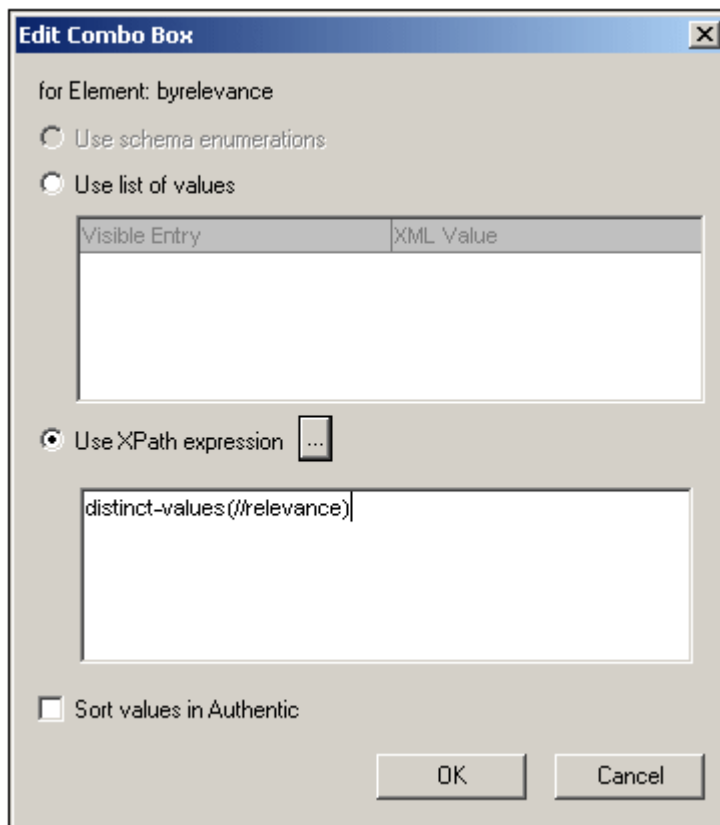
1. Insert the static text "Select by relevance: " at the head of the document and just below the [second Auto-Calculation](#) (screenshot below).



2. Drag the `byrelevance` node from the [Schema Tree sidebar](#) (screenshot below), and drop it after the newly entered static text.

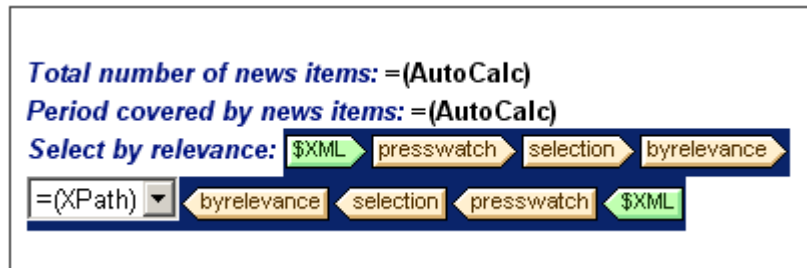


3. In the context menu that appears, select Create Combo Box. This pops up the dialog shown below.

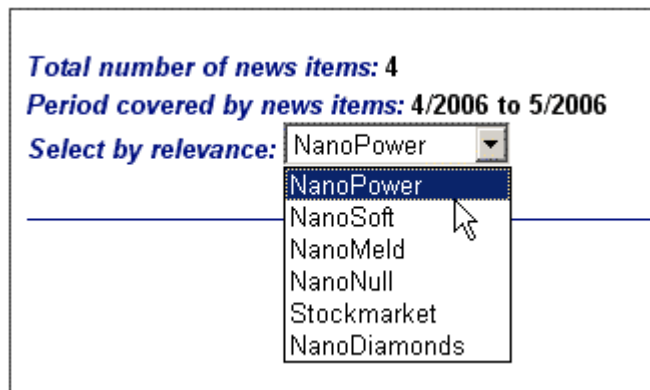


4. In the Edit Combo Box dialog (*screenshot above*), select Use XPath Expression, and enter the XPath expression: `distinct-values(//relevance)`. This expression selects unique values of all `relevance` elements in the XML document. Note that although the values of all `relevance` nodes will appear in the HTML combo box, selecting one of them in HTML Preview will have no effect on the content of the node in the XML document (which is what the SPS acts on). The HTML document is an output obtained by transforming the XML document; it does not accept input. The combo box is used here to demonstrate alternative ways of presenting content.
5. Click **OK** to finish. The combo box is inserted and the design will look something like

this:



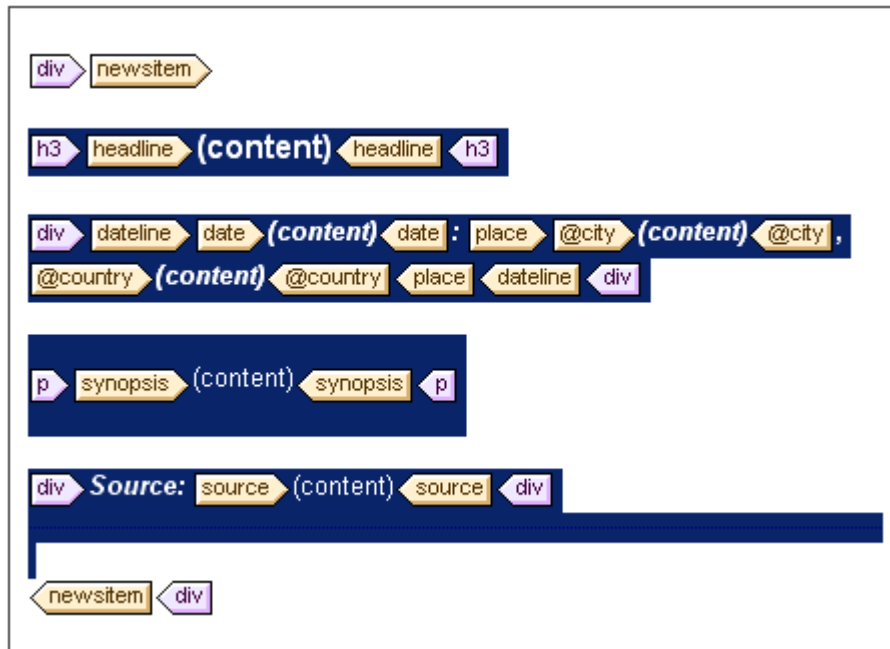
- Switch to [HTML Preview](#). When you click the dropdown arrow of the combo box, notice that the list contains the unique values of all `relevance` nodes (*screenshot below*). Check this against the XML document. This is a dynamic listing that will be augmented each time a new `relevance` value is added to the XML document.



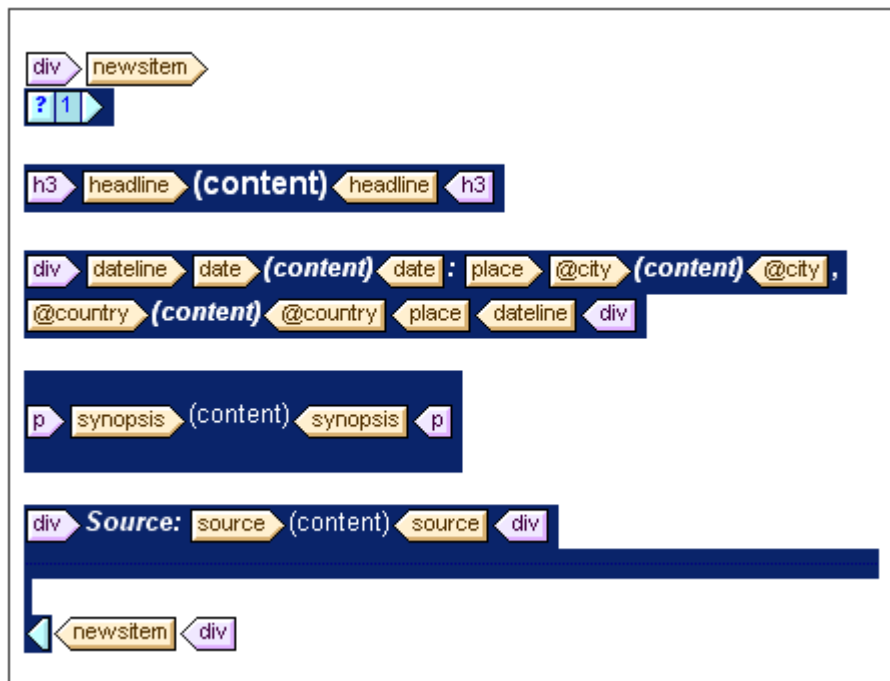
#### Inserting a condition to display news items having the selected `relevance`

The condition selects `newsitem` elements that have a `metainfo/relevance` element with a value that is the same as that in the `/presswatch/selection/byrelevance` element. Insert the condition as follows:

- Select the contents of the `newsitem` part of the design which is to be contained inside the condition (highlighted in the screenshot below).



2. Select the menu command (or context menu command) **Enclose with | Condition**. This pops up the Edit XPath expression.
3. Enter the expression `metainfo/relevance=/presswatch/selection/byrelevance`. This expression evaluates to true when the value of the `metainfo/relevance` descendant of the current `newsitem` is the same as the value of the `/presswatch/selection/byrelevance` element (the user selection).
4. Click **OK**. The condition is created around the contents of the `newsitem` element ( *screenshot below* ).



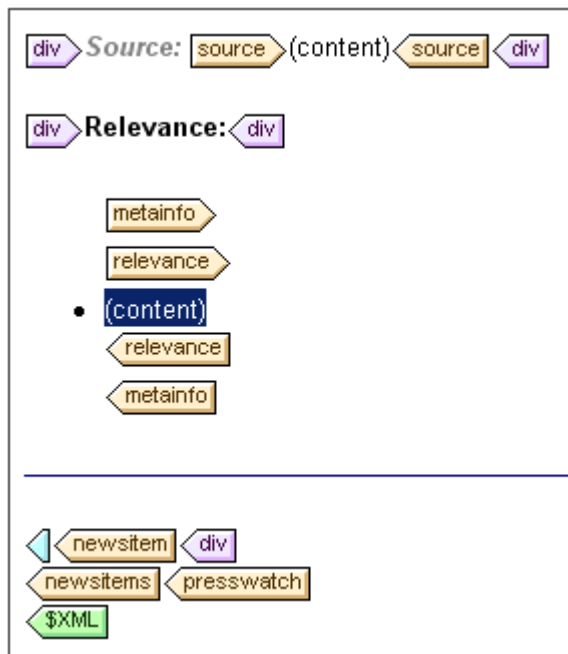
Note that there is a single branch in this condition. News items for which the condition test evaluates to true are displayed, those for which the condition test does not evaluate to true are

not displayed. The condition in this case, therefore, works as a filter. Later in this section, you will add a second branch to this condition.

### Inserting the `relevance` node as a list

In order to display the `relevance` nodes of each `newsitem` element, insert them in the design as follows (see screenshot below):

1. Create some vertical space below the `div` component for the `source` element and within the end-tag of the conditional template.
2. Type in the static text "Relevance: " and create a predefined format of `div` around it (highlight the static text and insert the predefined format).
3. Drag the `relevance` element from the Root elements tree in the [Schema Tree sidebar](#) and drop it into the design below the static text `Relevance: .`
4. Create it as a list. (In the context menu that pops up when you drop the node in the design, select Bullets and Numbering, and then select the desired list format.)
5. Apply text formatting to the contents of the list. When you are done, the design should look something like this:

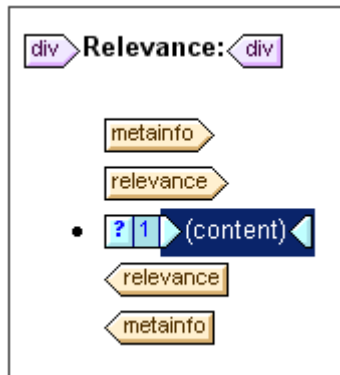


Now, in HTML Preview, check the results for different selections of `relevance`; Do this by: (i) changing the value of the `byrelevance` node in the XML document; (ii) saving the XML document; (iii) and then re-opening the SPS file in StyleVision.

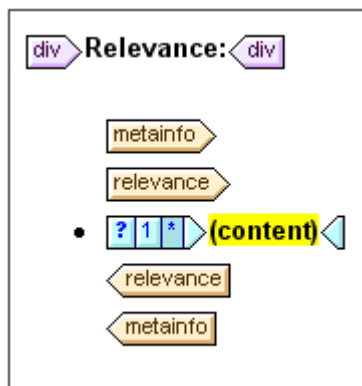
### Making the selected `relevance` element bold

Some news items have more than one `relevance` element. In such cases, the design would be improved if the relevance that matches the user-selection were visually highlighted while the others were not. You can do this in the following way:

1. Select the `relevance` element in the design.
2. Insert a condition, giving it an XPath expression of: `./presswatch/selection/byrelevance`. This creates a condition with a single branch (*screenshot below*) that selects `relevance` elements that match the `byrelevance` element.



3. Select the `contents` placeholder and give it a local formatting (in the Styles sidebar) of bold (*font* group) and yellow background-color (*color* group).
4. Right-click the condition and, from the context menu, select **Copy Branch**.
5. In the Edit XPath Expression dialog that pops up, check the Otherwise check box (below the expression text box).
6. Click **OK** to finish. A new branch (*Otherwise*) is created (*screenshot below*). This condition branch selects all `relevance` elements that do not match the `byrelevance` element.



7. Notice that the contents of the *Otherwise* branch are a copy of the first branch; the `contents` placeholder is bold and has a yellow background. Remove this formatting (bold and background-color) from the `contents` placeholder.

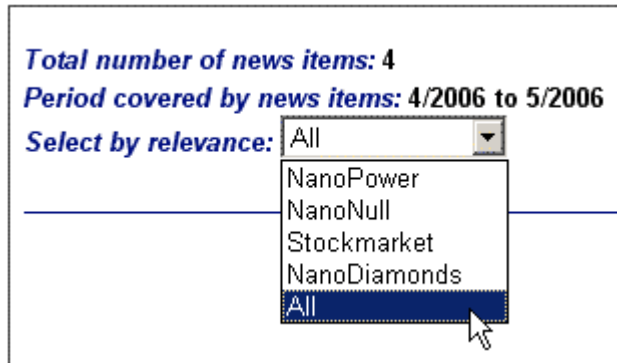
You have put a condition with two branches (each with its conditional template) that carries out the following test on each `relevance` element: (i) if the contents of `relevance` match those of `/presswatch/selection/byrelevance`, then the contents of `relevance` are displayed bold and with a yellow background. Otherwise (the second branch) they are displayed normal. Check this in HTML Preview.

### Modifying the combo box and inserting a second condition branch

In the combo box, there is no dropdown list option for selecting all news items. To include this option do the following:

1. In Design View, select the combo box.
2. In the Properties sidebar, with *combobox* selected in the Properties For column, click the **Edit** button of the `content origin` property (in the *combo box* group of properties).
3. In the Edit XPath Expression dialog that pops up, modify the XPath expression from `distinct-values(//relevance)` to `distinct-values(//relevance), 'All'`. This adds the string `All` to the sequence of items returned by the XPath expression.

4. Check the dropdown list of the combo box in HTML Preview (*screenshot below*).



The value `All` can now be entered in the `byrelevance` node. The idea is that when the `byrelevance` node contains the value `All`, all news items should be displayed.

The condition that displays the news item template has a single branch with the expression `metainfo/relevance=/presswatch/selection/byrelevance`. Since no `metainfo/relevance` node has the value `All`, no news item will be displayed when `All` is the value of the `byrelevance` node. What you have to do is create a second branch for the condition, which will test for a value of `All`. By creating the news item template within this branch, you will be outputting the news item if the test is true. Do this as follows:

1. In Design View, select the news item condition.
2. Right-click the condition and, from the context menu, select **Copy Branch**.
3. In the Edit XPath Expression dialog that pops up, enter the expression: `/presswatch/selection/byrelevance='All'`.
4. Click **OK** to finish. A second branch is created.

The second branch has as its contents the same template as the first branch. What the second branch does is output the news item template if the content of the `byrelevance` node is `All`.

After you have completed this section, save the design.



## 6.7 Using Global Templates and Rest-of-Contents

[Global templates](#) are useful for specifying the processing of an element globally. This enables the rules of the global template (defined in one location) to be used at multiple locations in the stylesheet. A global template can be used in two ways:

- The rules of the global template can be copied to the local template.
- A local template (in the main template) can pass processing of that node to the global template, after completing which processing resumes in the main template; in this case, the global template is said to be invoked or used.

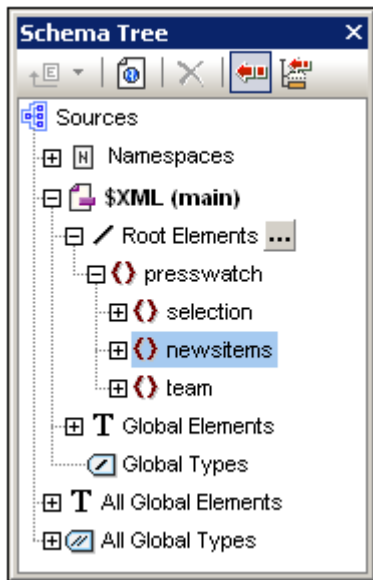
There are two mechanisms that are used to invoke a global template from the main template:

- A local template references a global template.
- A `(rest-of-contents)` instruction in the main template applies templates to the descendant elements of the current element (that is, to the rest-of-contents of the current element). If a global template exists for one of the descendant elements, the global template is applied for that element. Otherwise the built-in template for elements is applied.

In this section, you will create a design for the team-members' template using the rest-of-contents instruction and a global template for the [global element](#) `member`.

### Inserting the `rest-of-contents` instruction

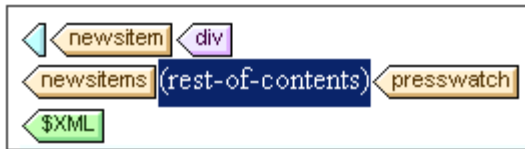
The broad structure of the schema is shown in the screenshot below.



The document element `presswatch` contains three children: (i) `selection`; (ii) `newsitems`; and (iii) `team`. The main template you have created this far processes the `/presswatch` element. Within the `presswatch` element, only the `newsitems` element is processed. The `selection` and `team` elements are not processed within the `presswatch` element (although `selection` has been processed within the `newsitems` element). Inserting the `rest-of-contents` instruction within `presswatch` will therefore cause the `selection` and `team` elements to be processed.

Insert the `rest-of-contents` instruction in the design by placing the cursor between the end-tags of `newsitems` and `presswatch`, and selecting the menu command or context menu command [Insert | Rest of Contents](#). The `rest-of-contents` placeholder is inserted (

screenshot below).



If you look at the HTML preview, you will see a string of text (*screenshot below*):

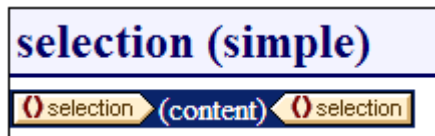
```
AllAndrewBentincka.bentinck@nanonull.comNadiaEdwardsn.edwar
```

This string is the result of the application of the built-in templates to the `selection` and `team` elements. The built-in template for elements processes child elements. The built-in template for text nodes outputs the text in the text node. The combined effect of these two built-in templates is to output the text content of all the descendant nodes of the `selection` and `team` elements. The text `All` comes from `selection/byrelevance`, and is followed by the text output of `team/member` descendant nodes, `first`, `last`, `email`, in document order. Note that the `id` attribute of `member` is not output (because, as an attribute, it is not considered a child of `member`).

### Creating a global template for `selection`

Since the content of `selection` is not required in the output, you should create an empty global template for `selection` so that its contents are not processed. Do this as follows:

1. In Design View, right-click `selection` in the All Global Elements tree in the [Schema Tree sidebar](#).
2. In the context menu that pops up, select **Make / Remove Global Template**. A global template for `selection` is created (*screenshot below*).



3. In the global template, click the `contents` placeholder and press the **Delete** key of your keyboard. The `contents` placeholder is deleted.
4. Check the HTML preview. The text `All` is no longer present in the line of text output by the built-in templates (*screenshot below*).

```
AndrewBentincka.bentinck@nanonull.comNadiaEdwardsn.e
```

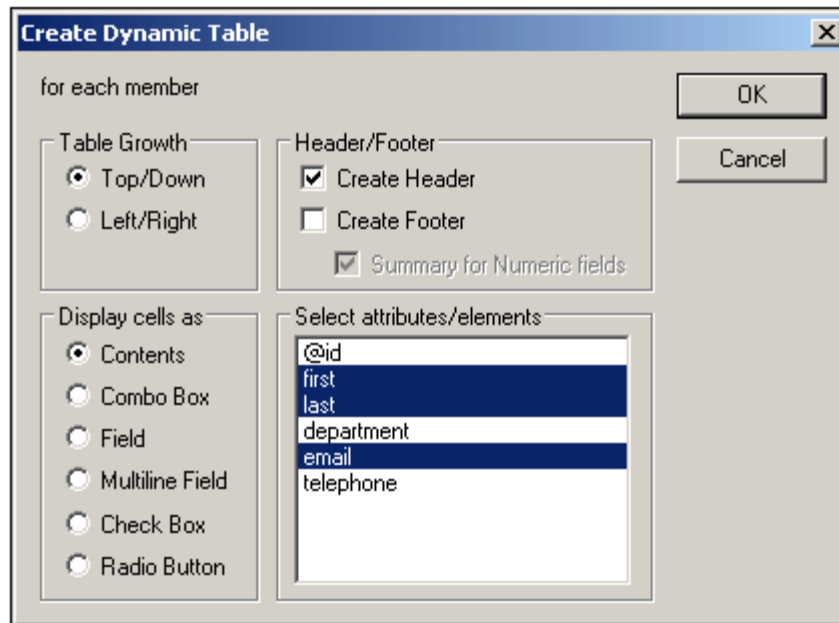
Since the global template for `selection` is empty, the child elements of `selection` are not processed.

### Creating a global template for `team/member`

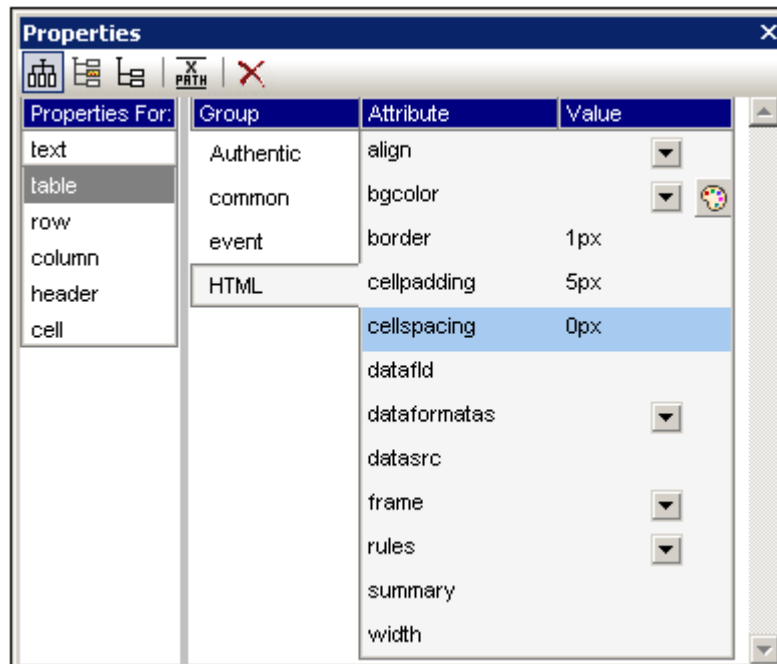
The objective is to create a table to display details of the members of the press monitoring team. This table will be created in a global template for the `team` element. Do this as follows:

1. Create a global template for the element `team` (right-click `team` in the All Global Elements list of the Schema Tree sidebar and select **Make / Remove Global Template**).
2. In the All Global Elements list, expand the `team` element and drag its `member` child element into the global template of `team` (in the design).

- In the context menu that pops up when you drop the element into the global template of `team`, select **Create Table**. This pops up the Create Dynamic Table dialog ( *screenshot below*).



- In the attributes/elements list deselect `@id`, `department` and `telephone` (see *screenshot*), and click **OK**. The dynamic table is created.
- Place the cursor in the dynamic table, and in the [Properties sidebar](#), with `table` selected in the Properties For column, specify table properties as shown in the screenshot below.



- Set additional properties as required in the Properties and Styles sidebars. For example, a background color can be set for the header row by placing the cursor in the header row, and with `row` selected in the Properties For column of the Styles sidebar,

specifying a value for the `background-color` property (*color* group). You can also edit the headers, which are strings of static text. Also, if the `content` placeholder of the `team` element is still present in the global template, delete it.

The HTML preview of the table will look something like this:

First	Last	Email
Andrew	Bentinck	a.bentinck@nanonull.com
Nadia	Edwards	n.edwards@nanonull.com
John	Edwards	j.edwards@nanonull.com
Janet	Ashe	j.ashe@nanonull.com

## 6.8 That's It!

Congratulations for having successfully completed the tutorial. You have learned the most important aspects of creating an SPS:

- How to [create the structure](#) of the document ([main template](#) and [global templates](#)).
- How to insert [dynamic](#) and [static](#) content in the design, using a variety of dynamic and static SPS components..
- How to use [CSS styles](#), in [external stylesheets](#), in [global style rules](#), and in [local style rules](#).
- How to use [Auto-Calculations](#) to derive additional information from the available XML data.
- How to use [conditions](#) to filter the XML data and how to obtain different outputs depending on values in the XML data.
- How to use [global templates](#) and [rest-of-contents](#).

For a more detailed description of these features, see the corresponding sections in the following four sections:

- [SPS File: Content](#)
- [SPS File: Structure](#)
- [SPS File: Advanced Features](#)
- [SPS File: Presentation](#)
- [SPS File: Additional Functionality](#)

These sections also contain descriptions of several other StyleVision features not encountered in the Quick Start tutorial.



## **Chapter 7**

---

### **Usage Overview**

## 7 Usage Overview

### Objectives

SPS documents that you create in StyleVision can be used to generate XSLT stylesheets for HTML. A stylesheet generated from an SPS can be used to transform any XML document based on the same schema as the SPS.

### Steps for creating an SPS


Given below is an outline of the steps involved in creating a new SPS.

1. [Assign a schema](#) to the newly created empty SPS. The schema may be: (i) a schema file (DTD or XML Schema); (ii) an XML Schema generated from a DB (*Enterprise and Professional editions only*); (iii) a schema based on an XBRL taxonomy (*Enterprise edition only*); (iv) a user-defined schema (created directly in StyleVision). This is done in the [Design Overview sidebar](#). Alternatively, a new SPS can be created directly with a schema via the **File | New** command.
2. [Assign a Working XML File](#) to the SPS. The [Working XML File](#) provides the XML data processed by the SPS when generating output previews. The [Working XML File](#) is assigned in the [Design Overview sidebar](#). The Working XML File enables you to preview output in StyleVision.
3. [Select the required XSLT version](#).
4. The SPS document is designed in [Design View](#) using the various design components available to the designer. The [design process](#) consists of creating a document structure and defining [presentation properties](#).
5. The outputs are tested. If modifications to the design are required, these are made and the SPS document is re-tested.
6. If [XSLT files or output files](#) are required, these are [generated](#).



## 7.1 SPS and Sources

### Creating a new SPS file

To create a new SPS document, select an option from under the [File | New \(Ctrl+N\)](#) command or click the **New Design** icon  in the [Standard toolbar](#). A new SPS document is created and is displayed in Design View. The new document is given a provisional name of `SPSX.sps`, where `x` is an integer corresponding to the position of that SPS document in the sequence of new documents created since the application was started.

After a new SPS document is created, the source files for the SPS must be assigned.

### Assigning source files for the SPS

There are two types of source files that can be assigned to an SPS:

- [Schema sources](#)
- [Working XML File](#)

These source file assignments are made in the [Design Overview sidebar](#). How to make the assignments is described in the section, [Design Overview](#). The significant points about each type of source file are given below.

### Schema sources

A schema source file must be assigned to an SPS so that a structure for the design document can be created. Schema sources are assigned in the [Design Overview sidebar](#). A schema may be an XML Schema file (`.xsd` file), an XML Schema generated from an XML file, a DTD, or a user-defined schema. For each schema, one optional [Working XML File](#) can be assigned.

**Note:** If you wish to add a namespace to an SPS or to an XSLT stylesheet being generated from an SPS, the namespace must be added to the top-level `schema` element of the XML Schema on which the SPS is based.

### Working XML File

can, optionally, have a [Working XML File](#) associated with it. The function of the [Working XML File](#) is to provide the XML data source for output previews in StyleVision, and it must therefore be valid according to the schema with which it is associated. The [Working XML File](#) is assigned in the [Design Overview sidebar](#).

## 7.2 Creating the Design

In the SPS design, you specify:

1. [What content](#) (from the XML document or DB) should go to the output; additionally content can be inserted directly in the SPS for inclusion in the output;
2. [How the output should be structured](#); and
3. [What presentation \(formatting\) properties](#) are applied to the various parts of the output.

### Content for output

The content for the output can come from:

1. The XML document to which the SPS is applied. Content from the [XML document](#) is included in the SPS by dragging the required XML data node from the relevant schema tree in the [Schema Tree sidebar](#) and dropping this node at the desired place in the SPS.
2. An external XML document that is accessible to the application (that is, to StyleVision). By using the `doc()` function of XPath 2.0 in an Auto-Calculation, content from external XML document sources can be accessed. An XML document accessed via the `doc()` function in an XPath expression does not need to be referenced via the [Schema Sources](#) associations.
3. The SPS itself. Text and other content (such as images and tables) can be inserted directly in the SPS using the keyboard and other GUI features. Such input is independent of the XML document.
4. Manipulated dynamic (XML source) data, with the manipulations being achieved using XPath 1.0 and XPath 2.0 expressions. Manipulations are typically achieved with [Auto-Calculations](#).
5. For the HTML output, [JavaScript functions](#) can be used to generate content.



### Structure of output

In the SPS design, the [structure of the output](#) can be controlled by using either: (i) a procedural approach, in which the output structure is specified in an [entry-level template](#) (StyleVision's [main template](#)) and can be independent of the structure of the XML document; (ii) a declarative approach, in which [template rules are declared for various nodes](#) (StyleVision's [global templates](#)), thus generating an output that follows the structure of the XML document; or (iii) a combination of the procedural and declarative approaches. In Design View, you can use a mix of [main template](#) and [global templates](#) to obtain the desired structure for the output document. The use of [Modular SPSs](#) and [Design Fragments](#) provides additional flexibility in the way an SPS is structured.

### Presentation (or formatting) of the output

In Design View, presentation properties are applied to design components using CSS styles. Styles can be defined locally on the component, for HTML selectors declared at the document level, and for HTML selectors declared in an external CSS stylesheet. Additionally, certain HTML elements can be applied to components using [predefined formats](#). Specifying presentation properties is described in detail in the section, [Presentation Procedures](#).

## 7.3 XSLT and XPath Versions

An SPS is essentially an XSLT stylesheet. For each SPS you must set the XSLT version: 1.0 or 2.0. You do this by clicking the appropriate toolbar icon:  or . The selection you make determines two things:

- Which of the two XSLT engines in StyleVision is used for transformations; StyleVision has separate XSLT 1.0 and XSLT 2.0 engines.
- What XSLT functionality (1.0 or 2.0) is displayed in the interface and allowed in the SPS. For example, XSLT 2.0 uses XPath 2.0, which is a much more powerful language than XPath 1.0 (which is used in XSLT 1.0). Additionally, some SPS features, such as the table-of-contents feature, is available only with XSLT 2.0.

### XSLT transformations

XSLT transformations in StyleVision are used: (i) to generate [output views](#) in the interface; and (ii) to [generate and save output files](#) (HTML) from [within the interface](#) and from the [command line](#). The XSLT engine used for transformations (Altova XSLT 1.0 Engine or Altova XSLT 2.0 Engine) corresponds to the XSLT version selected in the SPS.

### XSLT functionality in GUI

The functionality appropriate for each XSLT version relates mostly to the use of the correct XPath version (XPath 1.0 for XSLT 1.0 and XPath 2.0 for XSLT 2.0). XPath expressions are widely used in StyleVision—most commonly in features such as [Auto-Calculations](#) and [Conditional Templates](#)—and there are interface mechanisms that require, and help you build, XPath expressions. The functionality of the correct XPath version is automatically made available in the interface according to the XSLT version you select.

## 7.4 Generated Files

In StyleVision, XSLT stylesheets and output files can be generated using the [File | Save Generated Files](#) command or the [command line utility, StyleVisionBatch.exe](#). Alternatively, if you wish only to validate or transform XML using XSLT, you can do this directly with the [Altova engines](#) and without having to call StyleVision. The Altova engines are available at the [Altova website](#) as the free Altova product, AltovaXML.

The following files can be generated from StyleVision:

- XSLT stylesheets based on the SPS design.
- Output files generated by processing the [Working XML File](#) assigned in the SPS with the XSLT stylesheets generated from the SPS. The [command line utility](#) offers the option of specifying XML files other than the [Working XML File](#) as the XML input.

The markup for the output is contained in the SPS. The data for the output is contained in the XML document. It is the XSLT stylesheet that brings markup and data together in the output. Both the XSLT stylesheets as well as the actual output can be previewed in StyleVision in the [Output Views](#).

**Note:** If you wish to add a namespace to an SPS or to an XSLT stylesheet being generated from an SPS, the namespace must be added to the top-level `schema` element of the XML Schema on which the SPS is based.

Given below are important points to note about the generated documents:

- **HTML output and stylesheets:** (1) The formatting and layout of the generated HTML document will be identical to the HTML Preview of StyleVision. (2) Data-input devices (text input fields, check boxes, etc) in the HTML file do not allow input. These data-input devices are intended for XML data input in Authentic View and, though they are translated unchanged into the graphical HTML equivalents, they cannot be used for data-entry in the HTML document.

## 7.5 Catalogs in StyleVision

StyleVision supports a subset of the OASIS XML catalogs mechanism. The catalog mechanism enables StyleVision to retrieve commonly used schemas (as well as stylesheets and other files) from local user folders. This increases the overall processing speed, enables users to work offline (that is, not connected to a network), and improves the portability of documents (because URIs would then need to be changed only in the catalog files.)

The catalog mechanism in StyleVision works as outlined below.

### RootCatalog.xml

When StyleVision starts, it loads a file called `RootCatalog.xml` (*structure shown in listing below*), which contains a list of catalog files that will be looked up. You can modify this file and enter as many catalog files to look up as you like, each in a `nextCatalog` element. Each of these catalog files is looked up and the URIs in them are resolved according to the mappings specified in them.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<catalog xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:entity:xmlns:xml:catalog"
          xmlns:spy="http://www.altova.com/catalog_ext"
          xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
          xsi:schemaLocation="urn:oasis:names:tc:entity:xmlns:xml:catalog
Catalog.xsd">
  <nextCatalog catalog="%PersonalFolder%/Altova/%AppAndVersionName%/
CustomCatalog.xml"/>
  <nextCatalog catalog="CoreCatalog.xml"/>
  <!-- Include all catalogs under common schemas folder on the first directory
level -->
  <nextCatalog spy:recurseFrom="%AltovaCommonFolder%/Schemas" catalog="
catalog.xml" spy:depth="1"/>
  <!-- Include all catalogs under common XBRL folder on the first directory
level -->
  <nextCatalog spy:recurseFrom="%AltovaCommonFolder%/XBRL" catalog="
catalog.xml" spy:depth="1"/>
</catalog>
```

In the listing above, notice that in the `Schemas` and `XBRL` folders of the folder identified by the variable `%AltovaCommonFolder%` there are catalog files named `catalog.xml`. (The value of the `%AltovaCommonFolder%` variable is given in the table below.)

The catalog files in the Altova Common Folder map the pre-defined public and system identifiers of commonly used schemas (such as SVG and WSDL) and XBRL taxonomies to URIs that point to locally saved copies of the respective schemas. These schemas are installed in the Altova Common Folder when StyleVision is installed. You should take care not to duplicate mappings in these files, as this could lead to errors.

### CoreCatalog.xml, CustomCatalog.xml, and Catalog.xml

In the `RootCatalog.xml` listing above, notice that `CoreCatalog.xml` and `CustomCatalog.xml` are listed for lookup:

- `CoreCatalog.xml` contains certain Altova-specific mappings for locating schemas in the Altova Common Folder.
- `CustomCatalog.xml` is a skeleton file in which you can create your own mappings. You can add mappings to `CustomCatalog.xml` for any schema you require but that is not addressed by the catalog files in the Altova Common Folder. Do this using the supported elements of the OASIS catalog mechanism (*see below*).
- There are a number of `Catalog.xml` files in the Altova Common Folder. Each is inside

the folder of a specific schema or XBRL taxonomy in the Altova Common Folder, and each maps public and/or system identifiers to URIs that point to locally saved copies of the respective schemas.

### Location of catalog files and schemas

The files `RootCatalog.xml` and `CoreCatalog.xml` are installed in the StyleVision application folder. The file `CustomCatalog.xml` is located in your `MyDocuments/Altova/StyleVision` folder. The `catalog.xml` files are each in a specific schema folder, these schema folders being inside the folders: `%AltovaCommonFolder%\Schemas` and `%AltovaCommonFolder%\XBRL`.

### Shell environment variables and Altova variables

Shell environment variables can be used in the `nextCatalog` element to specify the path to various system locations (see *RootCatalog.xml* listing above). The following shell environment variables are supported:

<code>%AltovaCommonFolder%</code>	<code>C:\Program Files\Altova\Common2010</code>
<code>%DesktopFolder%</code>	Full path to the Desktop folder for the current user.
<code>%ProgramMenuFolder%</code>	Full path to the Program Menu folder for the current user.
<code>%StartMenuFolder%</code>	Full path to Start Menu folder for the current user.
<code>%StartUpFolder%</code>	Full path to Start Up folder for the current user.
<code>%TemplateFolder%</code>	Full path to the Template folder for the current user.
<code>%AdminToolsFolder%</code>	Full path to the file system directory that stores administrative tools for the current user.
<code>%AppDataFolder%</code>	Full path to the Application Data folder for the current user.
<code>%CommonAppDataFolder%</code>	Full path to the file directory containing application data for all users.
<code>%FavoritesFolder%</code>	Full path of the Favorites folder for the current user.
<code>%PersonalFolder%</code>	Full path to the Personal folder for the current user.
<code>%SendToFolder%</code>	Full path to the SendTo folder for the current user.
<code>%FontsFolder%</code>	Full path to the System Fonts folder.
<code>%ProgramFilesFolder%</code>	Full path to the Program Files folder for the current user.
<code>%CommonFilesFolder%</code>	Full path to the Common Files folder for the current user.
<code>%WindowsFolder%</code>	Full path to the Windows folder for the current user.
<code>%SystemFolder%</code>	Full path to the System folder for the current user.
<code>%CommonAppDataFolder%</code>	Full path to the file directory containing application data for all users.

`%LocalAppDataFolder%` Full path to the file system directory that serves as the data repository for local (non-roaming) applications.

`%MyPicturesFolder%` Full path to the MyPictures folder.

### How catalogs work

Catalogs are commonly used to redirect a call to a DTD to a local URI. This is achieved by mapping, in the catalog file, public or system identifiers to the required local URI. So when the DOCTYPE declaration in an XML file is read, the public or system identifier locates the required local resource via the catalog file mapping.

For popular schemas, the `PUBLIC` identifier is usually pre-defined, thus requiring only that the URI in the catalog file point to the correct local copy. When the XML document is parsed, the `PUBLIC` identifier in it is read. If this identifier is found in a catalog file, the corresponding URL in the catalog file will be looked up and the schema will be read from this location. So, for example, if the following SVG file is opened in an XML editor that can read catalogs, such as Altova XMLSpy:

```
<?xml version="1.0" standalone="no"?>
<!DOCTYPE svg PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD SVG 1.1//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/Graphics/SVG/1.1/DTD/svg11.dtd">

<svg width="20" height="20" xml:space="preserve">
  <g style="fill:red; stroke:#000000">
    <rect x="0" y="0" width="15" height="15"/>
    <rect x="5" y="5" width="15" height="15"/>
  </g>
</svg>
```

This document is read and the catalog is searched for the `PUBLIC` identifier. Let's say the catalog file contains the following entry:

```
<catalog>
  ...
  <public publicId="-//W3C//DTD SVG 1.1//EN" uri="schemas/svg/svg11.dtd"/>
  ...
</catalog>
```

In this case, there is a match for the `PUBLIC` identifier, so the lookup for the SVG DTD is redirected to the URI `schemas/svg/svg11.dtd` (this path is relative to the catalog file), and the local file that is referenced will be used as the DTD. If there is no mapping for the `Public ID` in the catalog, then the URL in the XML document will be used (in the example above: `http://www.w3.org/Graphics/SVG/1.1/DTD/svg11.dtd`).

### The catalog subset supported by StyleVision

When creating entries in `CustomCatalog.xml` (or any other catalog file that is to be read by StyleVision), use only the following elements of the OASIS catalog specification. Each of the elements below is listed with an explanation of their attribute values. For a more detailed explanation, see the [XML Catalogs specification](#). Note that each element can take the `xml:base` attribute, which is used to specify the base URI of that element.

- `<public publicId="PublicID of Resource" uri="URL of local file"/>`
- `<system systemId="SystemID of Resource" uri="URL of local file"/>`
- `<uri name="filename" uri="URL of file identified by filename"/>`
- `<rewriteURI uriStartString="StartString of URI to rewrite" rewritePrefix="String to replace StartString"/>`

- ```
<rewriteSystem systemIdStartString="StartString of SystemID"
rewritePrefix="Replacement string to locate resource locally"/>
```

In cases where there is no public identifier, as with most stylesheets, the system identifier can be directly mapped to a URL via the `system` element. Also, a URI can be mapped to another URI using the `uri` element. The `rewriteURI` and `rewritesSystem` elements enable the rewriting of the starting part of a URI or system identifier, respectively. This allows the start of a filepath to be replaced and consequently enables the targeting of another directory. For more information on these elements, see the [XML Catalogs specification](#).

**More information**

For more information on catalogs, see the [XML Catalogs specification](#).



## **Chapter 8**

---

**SPS File: Content**

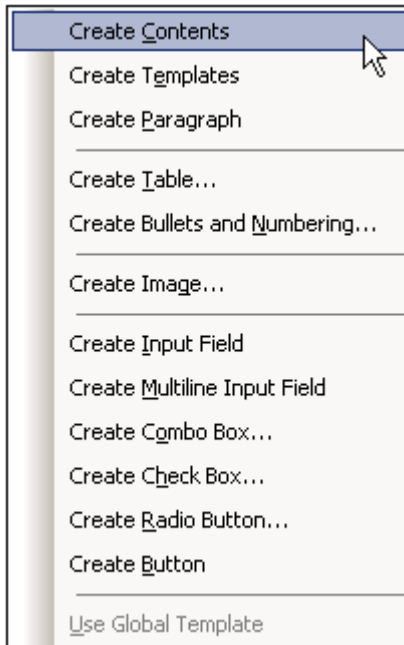
## 8 SPS File: Content

This section describes in detail the core procedures used to create and edit SPS document components that are used to create locations in the document design for XML data content. The procedures are listed below and described in detail in the sub-sections of this section. These mechanisms are used to design any kind of template: [main](#), [global](#), or [named](#).

- [Inserting XML Content as Text](#). XML data can be inserted in the design by dragging the relevant nodes (element, attribute, type, or CDATA) into the design and creating them as `( contents )` or `( rest-of-contents )`.
- [Working with Tables](#). Tables can be inserted by (i) the SPS designer, directly in the SPS design (static tables) or using XML document sub-structures, and (ii) the Authentic View user.
- [Creating Lists](#). Static lists, where the list structure is entered in the SPS design, and dynamic lists, where an XML document sub-structure is created as a list, provide powerful data-ordering capabilities.
- [Using Graphics](#): Graphics can be inserted in the SPS design using a variety of methods to determine the target URI (static, dynamic, a combination of both, and unparsed entity URIs).
- [Using Data-Entry Devices](#). XML data can be input by the Authentic View user via data-entry devices such as input fields and combo boxes. This provides a layer of user help as well as of input constraints. Individual nodes in the XML document can be created as data-entry devices.
- [The Change-To Feature](#). This feature enables a different node to be selected as the match for a template and allows a node to be changed to another content type.

## 8.1 Inserting XML Content as Text

Data from a node in the XML document is included in the design by dragging the corresponding schema node from the Schema Tree window and dropping it into the design. When the schema node is dropped into the design, a menu pops up with options for how the node is to be created in the design (*screenshot below*).



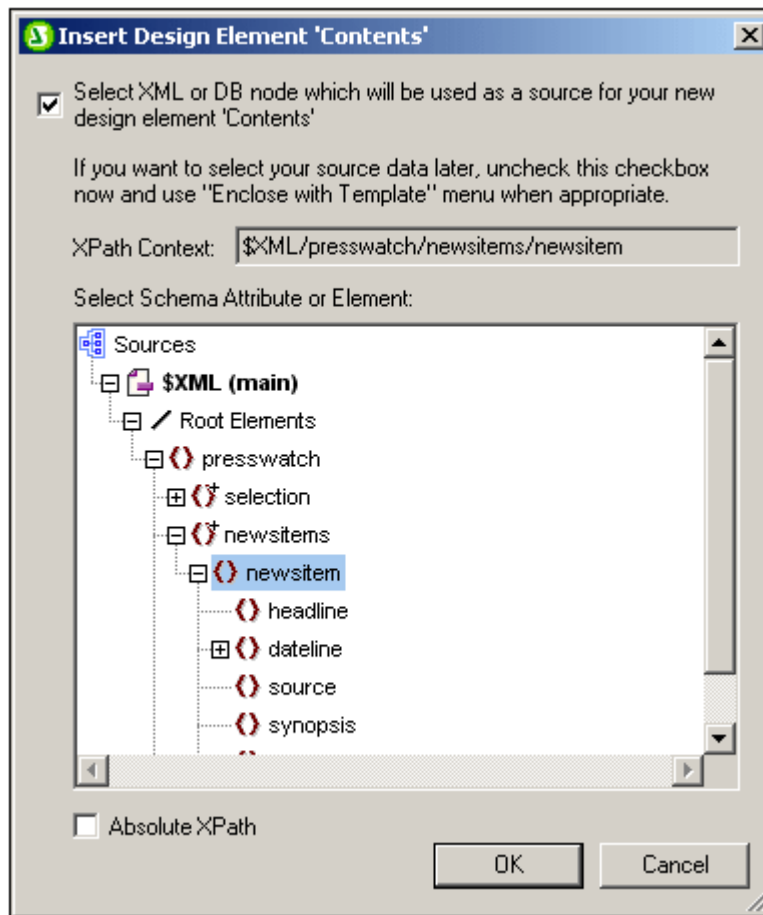
### Types of schema nodes

Schema nodes that can be dropped from the Schema Tree sidebar into the design are of three types: (i) element nodes; (ii) attribute nodes; and (iii) datatype nodes.

### Using the Insert Contents toolbar icon

The **Insert Contents** icon in the [Insert Design Elements toolbar](#) also enables you to insert the contents of a node in the design. Insert contents as follows:

1. Select the Insert Contents icon.
2. Click the location in the design where you wish to insert contents. The Insert Contents Selector pops up (*screenshot below*).



3. The context of the insertion location in the design is displayed in the *XPath Context* field. Select the node for which you wish to create contents.
4. Click **OK**. The `contents` placeholder is created. If the node you selected is anything other than the context node, additional template tags with the path to the selected node will be created around the `contents` placeholder.

### Outputting text content of nodes

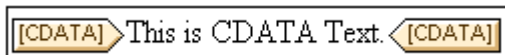
To output the text contents of the node, the node should be created as contents. When a node is created as contents, the node will look something like this in the design document:



In the screenshot above, the `Desc` element has been created as contents. The output will display the text content of `Desc`. If `Desc` has descendant elements, such as `Bold` and `Italic`, then the text content of the descendant elements will also be output as part of the contents of `Desc`. Note that attribute nodes of `Desc` are not considered its child nodes, and the contents of the attribute nodes will therefore not be output as part of the contents of `Desc`. Attribute nodes have to be explicitly inserted in order to be processed.

### CDATA sections

If CDATA sections are present in the XML document they will be output.

A diagram illustrating the output of CDATA sections. It shows a rectangular box containing the text "[CDATA]" followed by a right-pointing arrow, the text "This is CDATA Text.", and another right-pointing arrow followed by "[CDATA]". The arrows are yellow with black outlines, and the text is in a serif font.

### In this section

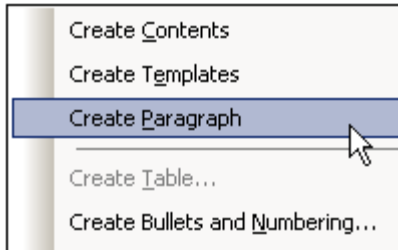
In the sub-sections of this section, we describe other aspects of inserting XML content as text:

- How the text content of a node can be [marked up with a predefined format directly](#) when the node is inserted.
- How descendant nodes not explicitly included within a node can be included for processing. See [Rest-of-Contents](#).

**Note:** You can create an **empty template rule** by deleting the ( content) placeholder of a node. An empty template rule is useful if you wish to define that some node not be processed, i.e. produce no output.

## Inserting Content with a Predefined Format

The text content of a node can be directly inserted with the markup of one of StyleVision's predefined formats. To do this, drag the node from the Schema Tree window and drop it at the desired location. In the menu that pops up, select **Create Paragraph** (*screenshot below*).



The predefined format can be changed by selecting the predefined format tag and then choosing some other predefined format from the [Format combo box in the toolbar](#) (*screenshot below*) or using the menu command **Insert | Format**.



The predefined format can also be changed by changing the value of the `paragraph type` property of the *paragraph* group of properties in the Properties window, or by changing the paragraph type via the node-template's [context menu command, Enclose With | Special Paragraph](#).

Each paragraph type has particular formatting features that can be used to advantage. Note that the `pre` format type enables carriage returns and linefeeds to be output as such instead of them being normalized to whitespace.

## Rest-of-Contents

The `rest-of-contents` placeholder applies templates to all the remaining child elements of the element for which the template has been created. As an example consider the following:

- An element `parent` has 4 child elements, `child1` to `child4`.
- In the template for element `parent`, some processing has been explicitly defined for the `child1` and `child4` child elements.

This results in only the `child1` and `child4` child elements being processed. The elements `child2` and `child3` will not be processed. Now, if the `rest-of-contents` placeholder is inserted within the template for `parent`, then, not only will `child1` and `child4` be processed using the explicitly defined processing rules in the template. Additionally, templates will be applied for the `child2` and `child3` child elements. If [global templates](#) for these are defined then the global templates will be used. Otherwise the built-in default templates (for element, attribute, and text nodes) will be applied.

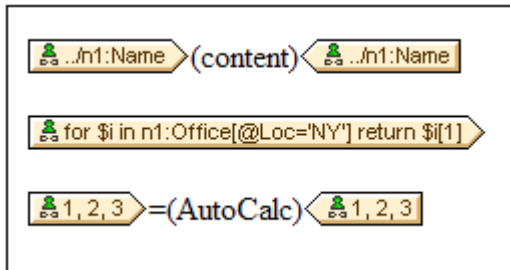
**Important:** It is important to note what nodes are selected for `rest-of-contents`.

- As described with the example above, all child element nodes and child text nodes are selected by the `rest-of-contents` placeholder. (Even invalid child nodes in the XML document will be processed.)
- Attribute nodes are not selected; they are not child nodes, that is, they are not on the child axis of XPath.
- If a global template of a child element is used in the parent template, then the child element does not count as having been used locally. As a result, the `rest-of-contents` placeholder will also select such child elements. However, if a global template of a child element is "copied locally", then this usage counts as local usage, and the child element will not be selected by the `rest-of-contents` placeholder.

**Note:** You can create an **empty template rule** by deleting the `( content )` placeholder of a node. An empty template rule is useful if you wish to define that some node not be processed, i.e. produce no output.

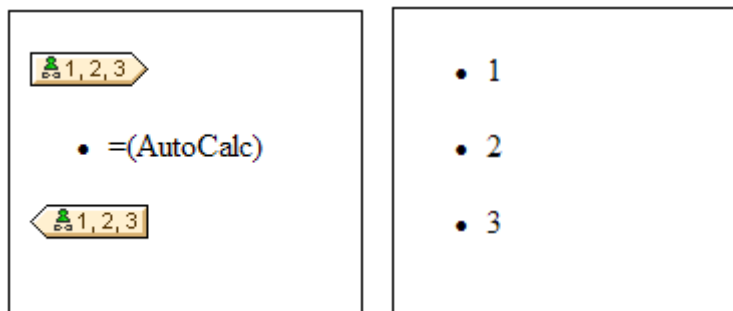
## 8.2 User-Defined Templates

User-Defined Templates are templates for items generated by an XPath expression you specify. These items may be atomic values or nodes. In the screenshot below, which shows three User-Defined Templates, note the User-Defined Template icon on the left-hand side of the tags. User-Defined Templates are very useful because they provide extraordinary flexibility for creating templates.



The XPath expression of each of the three User-Defined templates shown in the screenshot above do the following:

- Selects a node in a source schema. By using an XPath expression, any node in any of the schema sources can be reached from within any context node. If StyleVision can unambiguously target the specified node, the template will be changed automatically from a User-Defined Template to a normal template. If it is a User-Defined Template, this will be indicated by the green User-Defined Template icon on the left-hand side of the template tags.
- Selects a node that fulfills a condition specified by the `for` construct of XPath 2.0. Such templates can never resolve to normal templates (but will remain User-Defined Templates) because the `for` construct does not allow StyleVision to unambiguously resolve the target from only the schema information it currently has at its disposal.
- Selects a sequence of atomic values `{1, 2, 3}`. While it is allowed to create a template for an atomic value, you cannot use the `contents` placeholder within such a template. This is because the `xsl:apply-templates` instruction (which is what the `contents` placeholder generates) can only be applied to node items (not atomic values). You could, however, use an Auto-Calculation in combination with some design element such as a list. For example, the User-Defined Template at left would generate the output at right.



**Note:** If the SPS uses XSLT 1.0, then the XPath expression you enter must return a node-set. Otherwise an error is reported.

### Advantage of using XPath to select template node

The advantage of selecting a schema node via an XPath expression (User-Defined Templates)



is that the power of XPath's path selector mechanism can be used to select any node or sequence of items, as well as to filter or set conditions for the node selection. As a result, specific XML document nodes can be targeted for any given template. For instance, the XPath expression `//Office/Department[@Location="NY"]` will select only those `Department` nodes that have `Location` attribute with a value of `NY`. Also see the other examples above.

**Note:** If an XPath expression contains multiple location path steps, then it is significant—especially for grouping and sorting—whether brackets are placed around the multiple location path steps or not. For example, the XPath expression `/Org/Office/Dept` will be processed differently than `(/Org/Office/Dept)`. For the former expression (without brackets), the processor loops through each location step. For the latter expression (with brackets), all the `Dept` elements of all `Office` elements are returned in one undifferentiated nodeset.

| Bracket<br>s | Underlying XSLT Mechanism                                                                                                                                                                                    | Effect                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| No           | <pre>&lt;xsl:for-each select="Org"&gt;   &lt;xsl:for-each select="Office"&gt;     &lt;xsl:for-each select="Dept"&gt;       ...     &lt;/xsl:for-each&gt;   &lt;/xsl:for-each&gt; &lt;/xsl:for-each&gt;</pre> | Each <code>Office</code> element has its own <code>Dept</code> population. So grouping and sorting can be done within each <code>Office</code> . |
| Yes          | <pre>&lt;xsl:for-each select="/Org/Office/Dept"&gt;   ... &lt;/xsl:for-each&gt;</pre>                                                                                                                        | The <code>Dept</code> population extends over all <code>Office</code> elements and across <code>Org</code> .                                     |

This difference in evaluating XPath expressions can be significant for grouping and sorting.

### Inserting a User-Defined Template

To insert a User-Defined Template, do the following:

1. Click the **Insert User-Defined Template** icon in the Insert Design Elements toolbar and then click the design location where you wish to insert the template. Alternatively, right-click the design location where you wish to insert the template and, from the context menu that appears, select the **Insert User-Defined Template** command.
2. In the [Edit XPath Expression](#) dialog that pops up, enter the XPath expression you want, and click **OK**. Note that the context node of the XPath expression will be the node within which you have clicked. An empty node template will be created. Sometimes a joined node is created. When a node is joined, the targeted instance nodes are selected as if at a single level, whereas if a node is not joined (that is if it is split into multiple hierarchic levels), then the node selection is done by looping through each instance node at every split level. The nodeset returned in both cases of selection (joined and split) is the same unless a grouping or sorting criterion is specified. For a discussion of the effect joined nodes have on the grouping and sorting mechanisms, see [Node-Template Operations](#).

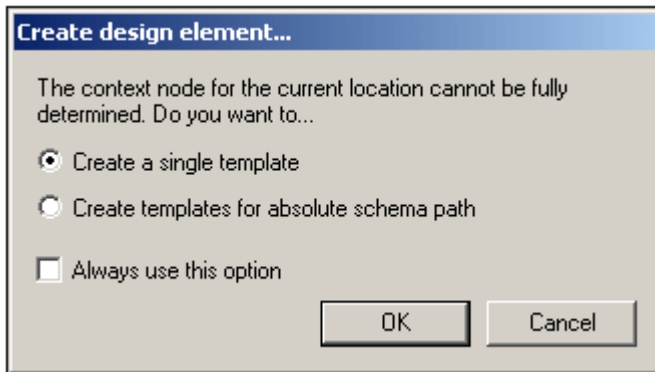
### Editing a Template Match

The node selection of any node template (user-defined or normal) can be changed by using an XPath expression to select the new match expression. To edit the template match of a node

template, right-click the node template, then select the **Edit Template Match** command. This pops up the Edit XPath Expression dialog, in which you enter the XPath expression to select the new node. Then click **OK**.

### Adding nodes to User-Defined Templates

If a node from the schema tree is added to a User-Defined Template, the context for the new node will not be known if the User-Defined Template has been created for a node or sequence that cannot be placed in the context of the schema source of the SPS. You will therefore be prompted (*screenshot below*) about how the new node should be referenced: (i) by its name (essentially, a relative path), or (ii) by a full path from the root of the schema source.



Prompting for advice on how to proceed is the default behavior. This default behavior can be changed in the Design tab of the [Tool | Options dialog](#).

## 8.3 User-Defined Elements, XML Text Blocks

[User-Defined Elements](#) and [User-Defined XML Text Blocks](#) enable, respectively, (i) any element, and (ii) any XML text block to be inserted into the design. The advantage of these features is that designers are not restricted to adding XML elements and design elements from source schemas and the palette of StyleVision design elements. They can create (i) templates for elements they define (User-Defined Elements), and (ii) independent and self-contained XML code (User-Defined Blocks) that creates objects independently (for example ActiveX objects).

There is one important difference between User-Defined Elements and User-Defined XML Text Blocks. A User-Defined Element is created in the design as a template node for a single XML element (with attributes). All content of this template must be explicitly created. This content consists of the various design elements available to the SPS. A User-Defined XML Text Block may not contain any design element; it is an independent, self-contained block. Since a User-Defined Element is created empty, it does not lend itself for the creation of an object requiring a number of lines of code. For the latter purpose, User-Defined XML Text Blocks should be used.

**Note:** User-Defined Elements and User-Defined Text Blocks are supported in Authentic View only in the Enterprise Editions of Altova products.

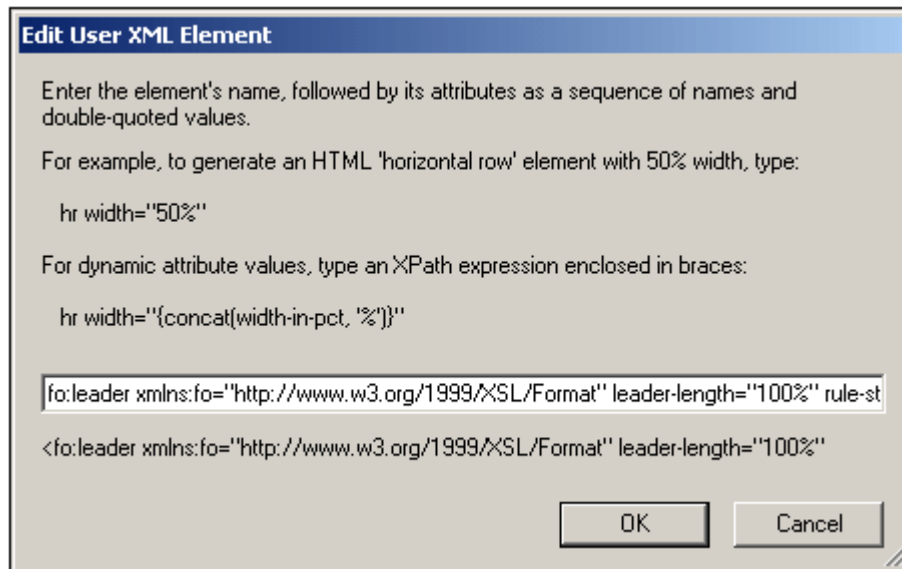
## User-Defined Elements

User-Defined Elements are elements that you can generate in the output without these elements needing to be in any of the schema sources of the SPS. This means that an element from any namespace (HTML or XSL-FO for example) can be inserted at any location in the design. SPS design elements can then be inserted within the inserted element.

**Note:** User-Defined Elements are supported in Authentic View only in the Enterprise Editions of Altova products.

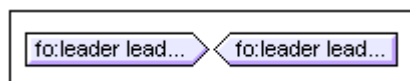
The mechanism for using User-Defined Elements is as follows:

1. Right-click at the location in the design where you wish to insert the User-Defined Element.
2. From the context menu that appears, select **Insert User-Defined Item | User-Defined Element**.
3. In the dialog that appears (*screenshot below*), enter the element name, the desired attribute-value pairs, and, a namespace declaration for the element if the document does not contain one.



In the screenshot above an XSL-FO element called `leader` is created. It has been given a prefix of `fo:`, which is bound to the namespace declaration `xmlns:fo="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format"`. The element has a number of attributes, including `leader-length` and `rule-style`, each with its respective value. The element, its attributes, and its namespace declaration must be entered without the angular tag brackets.

4. Click **OK** to insert the element in the design. The element is displayed in the design as an empty template with start and end tags (*screenshot below*).



5. You can now add content to the template as for any other template. The User-Defined Element may contain static content, dynamic content from the XML document, as well as more additional User-Defined Elements (*see screenshot below*).

**Note:** A User-Defined Element that is intended for a particular output should be enclosed in a suitable output-based condition so as to avoid unexpected results in alternative outputs.

## User-Defined XML Text Blocks

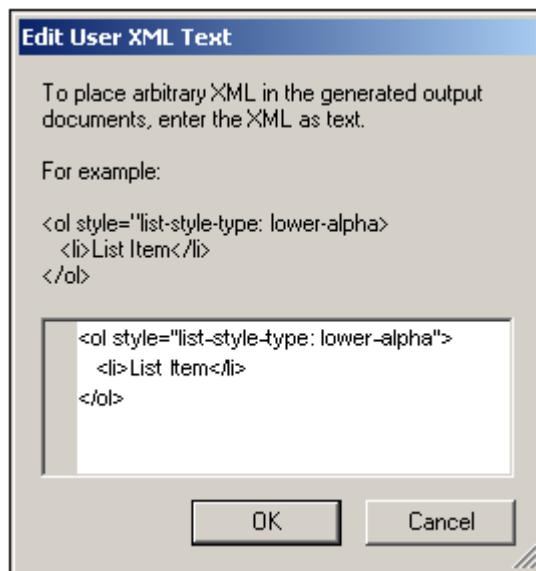
A User-Defined XML Text Block is an XML fragment that will be inserted into the XSLT code generated by the SPS. It is placed in the SPS design as a self-contained block to which no design element may be added. Such an XML Text Block should therefore be applicable as XSLT code at the location in the stylesheet at which it occurs.

The usefulness of this feature is that it provides the stylesheet designer a mechanism with which to insert XSLT fragments and customized code in the design. For example, an ActiveX object can be inserted within an HTML `SCRIPT` element.

**Note:** This feature will be enabled **only in Enterprise editions of Authentic View** (that is, in the Enterprise editions of StyleVision, Authentic Desktop, Authentic Browser, and XMLSpy).

To insert an XML Text Block, do the following:

1. Right-click at the location in the design where you wish to insert the User-Defined Block.
2. From the context menu that appears, select **Insert User-Defined Item | User-Defined Block**.
3. In the dialog that now appears (*screenshot below*), enter the XML Text Block you wish to insert. Note that the XML text block should be well-formed XML to be accepted by the dialog.



In the screenshot above an XML Text Block is added that generates an HTML ordered list.

4. Click **OK** to insert the element in the design. The XML Text Block is displayed in the design as a text box.

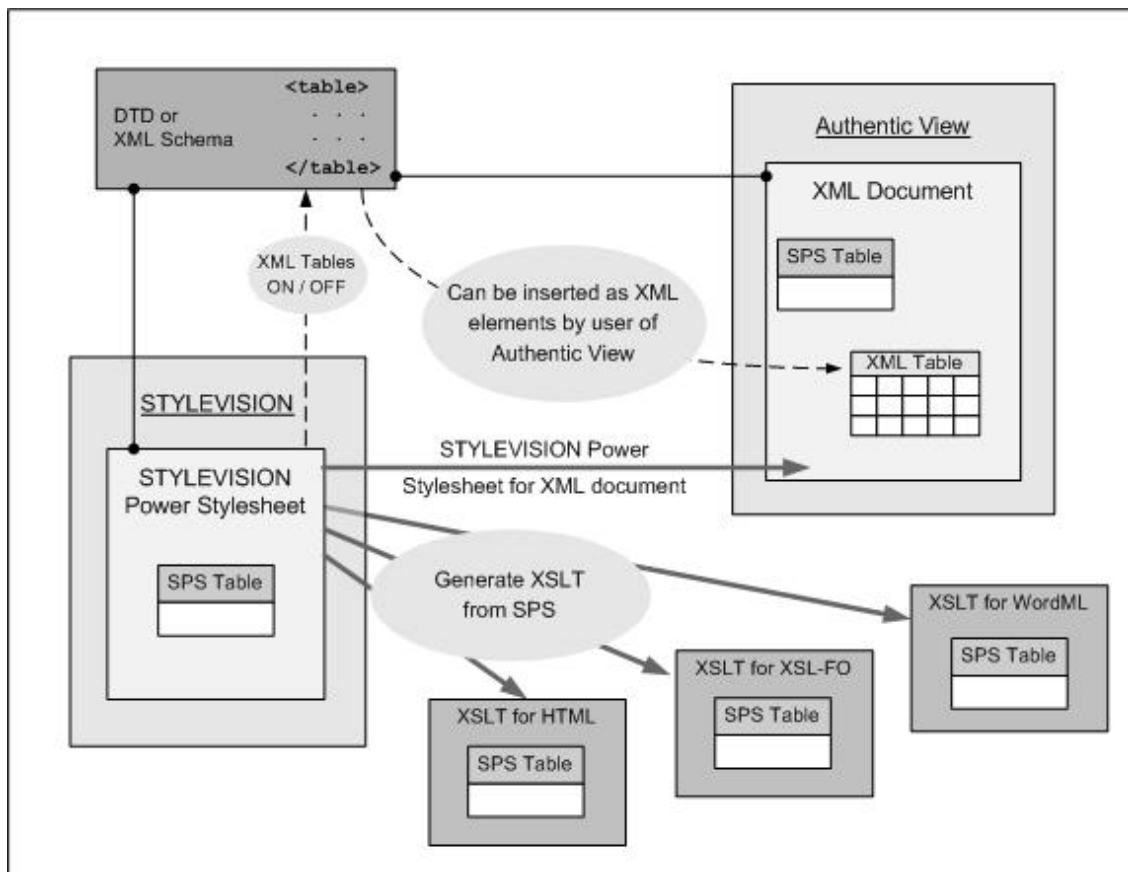
**Note:** An XML Text Block that is intended for a particular output should be enclosed in a suitable output-based condition so as to avoid unexpected results in alternative outputs.

## 8.4 Tables

In an SPS, two types of tables are used: **SPS tables** and **XML tables**. There are differences between the two types, and it is important to understand these. This section contains a detailed description of SPS tables and XML tables, and instructions about how to use them. For now, we look at the broad picture.

**Note:** XML tables are not available in StyleVision Standard Edition.

The illustration below shows the relationship of SPS tables and XML tables to the SPS and to the XML document.



### SPS tables

An **SPS table** is a component of an SPS, and is created and formatted using StyleVision. If present in an SPS, an SPS table appears in Authentic View as well as in the XSLT stylesheets you generate with StyleVision.

The structure of an SPS table is specified by the person who designs the SPS. An SPS table can be created anywhere in an SPS, and any number of SPS tables can be created.

SPS tables are entirely presentational devices and are represented using the presentational vocabulary of Authentic View and the output format. The **structure** of an SPS table is **not represented by nodes in the XML document**—although the content of table cells may come from nodes in the XML document. SPS tables occur in three types of output:

- Rendered in Authentic View; a vocabulary specific to Authentic View is used to mark up SPS tables.

- In StyleVision-generated XSLT stylesheets for HTML output, SPS tables are marked up as HTML tables.

There are two types of SPS tables:

- **Static tables** are built up, step-by-step, by the person designing the SPS. After the table structure is created, the content of each cell is defined separately. The content of cells can come from random locations in the schema tree and even can be of different types. Note that the rows of a static table do not represent a repeating data structure. This is why the table is said to be static: it has a fixed structure that does not change with the XML content.
- **Dynamic tables** are intended for data structures in the XML document that repeat. They can be created for schema elements that have a substructure—that is, at least one child attribute or element. Any element with a substructure repeats if there is more than one instance of it. Each instance of the element would be a row in the dynamic table, and all or some of its child elements or attributes would be the columns of the table. A dynamic table's structure, therefore, reflects the content of the XML file and changes dynamically with the content.

### XML tables (Enterprise and Professional Editions)

An XML table is created by the **Authentic View user** as a data structure in the XML document. The purpose of XML tables is to give the Authentic View user the option of inserting a table-type data structure in the XML document. This XML data structure can then be transformed to the table markup of the output format.

The data structure for an XML table must correspond to either the HTML or CALS table model. One element in the XML document corresponds to the `table` element of the CALS or HTML table model, and must have a substructure that corresponds to either the CALS or HTML table model. An XML table can be inserted at any point in the XML document where it is allowed according to the schema. An XML table is formatted after it is inserted in the XML document.

Shown below is the Authentic View of an XML table that corresponds to the HTML table model.

| Name           | Phone   |
|----------------|---------|
| John Merrimack | 6517890 |
| Joe Concord    | 6402387 |

Data that is entered into the table's cells is entered as content of the corresponding XML elements. For example, the HTML text fragment for the XML table shown in the illustration above looks like this:

```
<table border="1" width="40%">
  <tbody>
    <tr>
      <td>Name</td>
      <td>Phone</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
      <td>John Merrimack</td>
      <td>6517890</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
      <td>Joe Concord</td>
      <td>6402387</td>
    </tr>
  </tbody>
</table>
```

The original XML document might look like this:

```
<phonelist border="1" width="40%">
  <items>
    <person>
      <name>Name</name>
      <phone>Phone</phone>
    </person>
    <person>
      <name>John Merrimack</name>
      <phone>6517890</phone>
    </person>
    <person>
      <name>Joe Concord</name>
      <phone>6402387</phone>
    </person>
  </items>
</phonelist>
```

Note that element names in the XML document do not need to be related to table terminology; the table structure, however, corresponds to the HTML table model (it could also correspond to the CALS table model in order to be allowed as an XML table). Also note the following:

- An XML table can be inserted at any location in the XML document where, according to the schema, a table is allowed.
- In Authentic View, data is entered directly into table cells. This data is stored as the content of the corresponding XML table element.
- The formatting properties of an XML table are assigned in Authentic View.

Note that XSLT stylesheets generated with StyleVision will not contain XML tables—because no template for the XML table is automatically included in the SPS.

### Summary for designer


From the document designer's perspective, the following points should be noted:

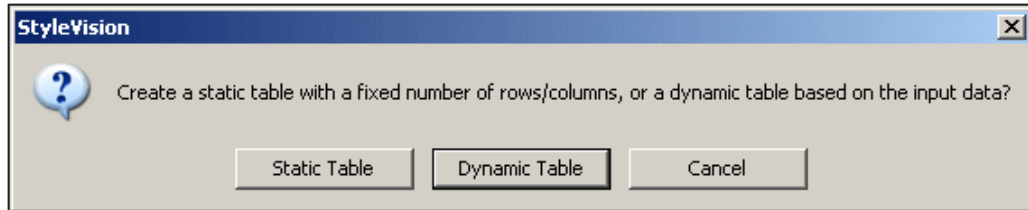
- An **SPS table** occurs in the XML document at a location determined by the designer of the document—not the user of Authentic View. The structure and formatting of SPS tables are specified by the designer of the SPS in StyleVision.



## Static Tables

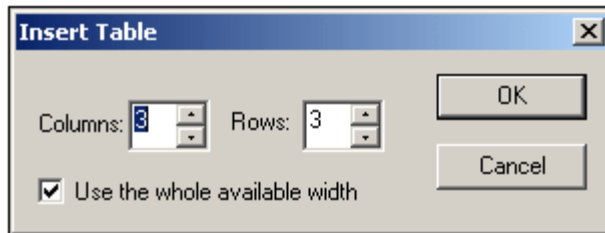
To create a static table, do the following:

1. Use one of the following commands: **Table | Insert Table** or **Insert | Table**, or click the  **Insert Table** icon in the Insert Design Elements toolbar.
2. All of these commands pop up the Create Table dialog (*screenshot below*).



Click **Static Table**.

3. The Insert Table dialog (*screenshot below*) pops up, in which you specify the dimensions of the table and specify whether the table should occupy the whole available width.



4. Click OK. An empty table with the specified dimensions, as shown below, is created.


5. You can now enter content into table cells using regular StyleVision features. Cell content could be text, or elements dragged from the schema tree, or objects such as images and nested tables. The figure below shows a table containing nested tables.

Person	Telephone	Fax
	Office Home	Office Home

Static SPS tables are especially well-suited for organizing XML data that is randomly situated in the schema hierarchy, or for static content (content not derived from an XML source).

### Deleting columns, rows, and tables

To delete a column, row, or table, place the cursor in the column, row, or table to be deleted, and click the menu item **Table | Delete Column**, **Table | Delete Row**, or **Table | Delete Table**, respectively. If you have nested tables, these commands will apply, respectively, to the column,


row, and table containing the cursor.

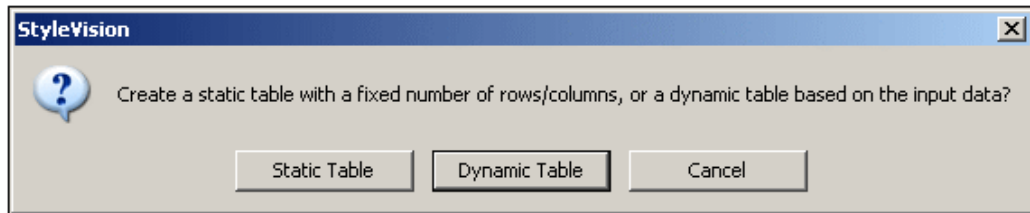
**Toolbar table editing icons**

The table editing icons, which are by default in the second row of the toolbar, are shortcuts to the **Table** menu commands. These commands allow you to insert, delete, edit the structure of, and assign formatting properties to the static table. These icons can also be used for dynamic SPS tables.

## Dynamic Tables

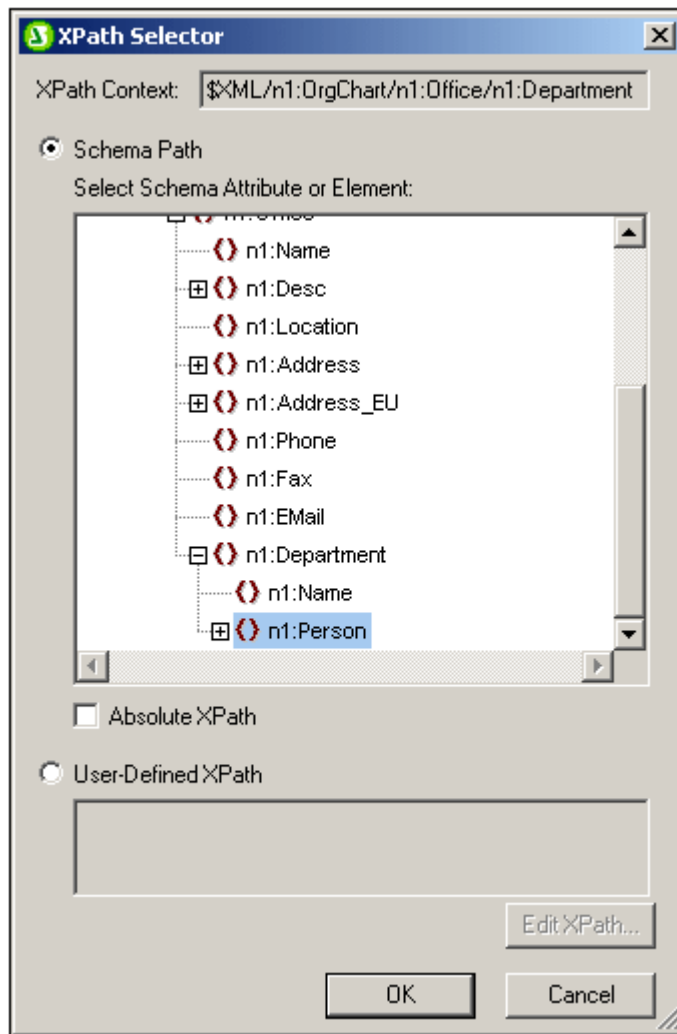
To insert a dynamic table, do the following:

1. Use one of the following commands: **Table | Insert Table** or **Insert | Table**, or click the  **Insert Table** icon in the Insert Design Elements toolbar.
2. All of these commands pop up the Create Table dialog (*screenshot below*). If you clicked the Insert Table icon in the toolbar, the Create Table dialog will pop up when you click at the location in the design where you want to insert the table.



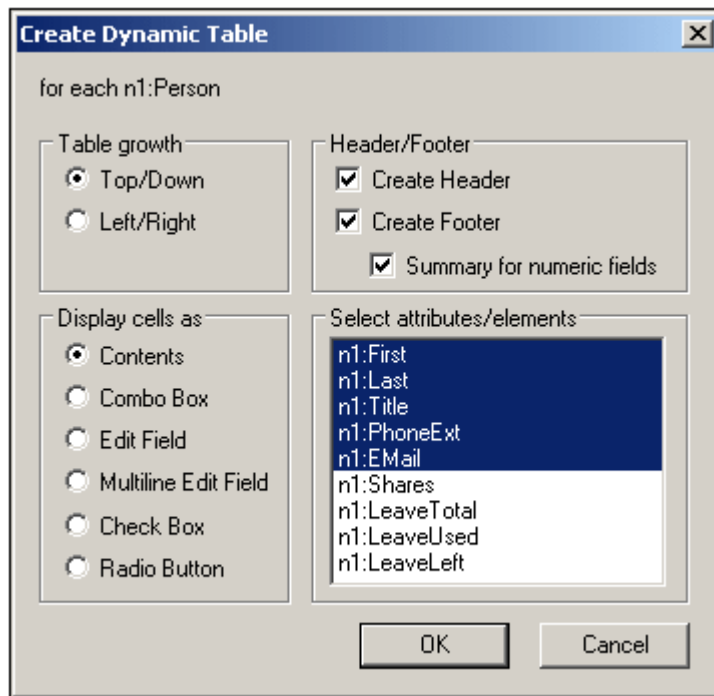
Click **Dynamic Table**.

3. In the XPath Selector dialog (*screenshot below*) that pops up, notice that the XPath Context is the context of the insertion location, and it cannot be changed in the dialog. Select the node that is to be created as the dynamic table. In the screenshot below, the context node is `n1:Department`, and the `n1:Person` node has been selected as the node to be created as a table.



If you select the User-defined XPath option, then you can enter an XPath expression to select the node to be created as the dynamic table.

4. Click **OK**. The Create Dynamic Table dialog (*screenshot below*) pops up.



5. The child elements and attributes of the element that has been dragged into the Design window are displayed in the "Select attributes/element" list and can be created as columns of the table. Deselect the child nodes that you do not want and select any attribute/element you want to include as columns. (In the figure above, the elements `Shares`, `LeaveTotal`, `LeaveUsed` and `LeaveLeft` have been deselected.) An explanation of the other options is given below. Click **OK** when done. Note that columns are created only for child elements and attributes, but for no descendant on a lower level.

**Note:** If you specified a User-defined XPath to select the node to be created as the dynamic table, then StyleVision will probably not know unambiguously which node is being targeted. Consequently, the Create Dynamic Table will, in such cases, not display a list of child attributes/elements to select as the fields (columns) of the table. The table that is created will therefore have to be manually populated with node content. This node content should be child attributes/elements of the node selected to be created as the table.

**Note:** Another way of creating a schema node as a table is to drag the node from the schema tree into the design and to specify, when it is dropped, that it be created as a table.

### Table grows down or right

When a table grows top-down, this is what it would look like:

name	street	city	state	zip
<code>lpo:name</code>	<code>lpo:street</code>	<code>lpo:city</code>	<code>lpo:state</code>	<code>lpo:zip</code>
(contents)	(contents)	(contents)	(contents)	(contents)
<code>lpo:name</code>	<code>lpo:street</code>	<code>lpo:city</code>	<code>lpo:state</code>	<code>lpo:zip</code>

When a table grows left-right it looks like this:

name	<code>&lt;ipo:name&gt;(contents)&lt;/ipo:name&gt;</code>
street	<code>&lt;ipo:street&gt;(contents)&lt;/ipo:street&gt;</code>
city	<code>&lt;ipo:city&gt;(contents)&lt;/ipo:city&gt;</code>
state	<code>&lt;ipo:state&gt;(contents)&lt;/ipo:state&gt;</code>
zip	<code>&lt;ipo:zip&gt;(contents)&lt;/ipo:zip&gt;</code>

### Headers and footers

Columns and rows can be given headers, which will be the names of the column and row elements. Column headers are created at the top of each column. Row headers are created on the left hand side of a row. To include headers, check the Create Header check-box. If the table grows top-down, creating a header, creates a header row above the table body. If the table grows left-right, creating a header, creates a column header to the left of the table body.

To include footers, check the Create Footer check-box. Footers, like headers, can be created both for columns (at the bottom of columns) and rows (on the right hand side of a row). The footer of numeric columns or rows will sum each column or row if the *Summary for Numeric Fields* check box is checked.

Via the **Table** menu, header and footer cells can be joined and split, and rows and columns can be inserted, appended, and deleted; this gives you considerable flexibility in structuring headers and footers. Additionally, headers and footers can contain any type of static or dynamic content, including conditional templates and auto-calculations.

**Note:** Headers and footers must be created when the dynamic table is defined. You do this by checking the Create Header and Create Footer options in the Create Dynamic Table dialog. Appending or inserting a row within a dynamic table does not create headers or footers but an extra row. The difference is significant. With the Create Header/Footer commands, real headers and footers are added to the top and bottom of a table, respectively. If a row is inserted or appended, then the row occurs for each occurrence of the element that has been created as a dynamic table.

### Nested dynamic tables

You can nest one dynamic table within another dynamic table if the element for which the nested dynamic table is to be created is a child of the element that has been created as the containing dynamic table. Do the following:

1. Create the outer dynamic table so that the child element to be created as a dynamic table is created as a column.
2. In the dynamic table in Design View, right-click the child element.
3. Select **Change to | Table**. This pops up the Create Dynamic Table dialog.
4. Define the properties of the nested dynamic table.

To nest a dynamic table in a static table, drag the element to be created as a dynamic table into the required cell of the static table. When you drop it, select **Create Table** from the context menu that appears.

### Tables for elements with text content

To create columns (or rows) for child elements, the element being created as a table must have a **child element or attribute node**. Having a **child text node** does not work. If you have this kind of situation, then create a child element called, say, `Text`, and put your text node in the

`TableElement/Text` elements. Now you will be able to create `TableElement` as a dynamic table. This table will have one column for `Text` elements. Each row will therefore contain one cell containing the text node in `Text`, and the rows of the table will correspond to the occurrences of the `TableElement` element.

### Contents of table body cells

When you create a dynamic table, you can create the node content as any one of a number of StyleVision components. In the examples above, the table body cells were created as contents; in the Create Dynamic Table dialog, the option for Display Cells As is *contents*. They could also have been created as data-entry devices. There are two points to note here:

- The setting you select is a global setting for all the table body cells. If you wish to have an individual cell appear differently, edit the cell after you have created the table: right-click in the cell and, in the context menu that appears, select "Change to" and then select the required cell content type.
- If you create cells as element contents, and if the element has descendant elements, then the content of the cell will be a concatenation of the text strings of the element and all its descendant elements.

### Deleting columns, rows, and tables

To delete a column, row, or table, place the cursor in the column, row, or table to be deleted, and click the menu item **Table | Delete Column**, **Table | Delete Row**, or **Table | Delete Table**, respectively. If you have nested tables, the table immediately containing the cursor will be deleted when the **Table | Delete Table** command is used.

### Toolbar table editing icons

The table editing icons in the toolbar are shortcuts to the **Table** menu commands. These commands allow you to insert, delete, edit the structure of, and assign formatting properties to the dynamic table. These icons can also be used for static tables.

### Creating dynamic tables in global templates

You can also create dynamic tables in global templates. The process works in the same way as for the Root Template (given above). The important point to note is that, in a global template, a dynamic table can only be created for **descendant elements** of the global template node; it cannot be created for the global template node itself. For example, if you wish to create a dynamic table for the element `authors` within a global template, then this dynamic table must be created within the global template of the parent element of `authors`, say `contributors`. It cannot be created within the global template of the `authors` element.

## Tables in Design View

The main components of static and dynamic SPS tables are as shown in the screenshots below with the table markup (**Table | View Table Markup**) switched on.

Header-C1	Header-C2
Qn1:First (content) Qn1:First	Qn1:Last (content) Qn1:Last
Footer-C1	Footer-C2

The screenshot above shows a simple table that grows top-down and that has a header and footer.

- A column is indicated with a rectangle containing a downward-pointing arrowhead. Column indicators are located at the top of columns. To select an entire column—say, to assign a formatting property to that entire column—click the column indicator of that column.
- A row is indicated with a rectangle containing a rightward-pointing arrow. Click a row indicator to select that entire row.
- In tables that grow top-down (*screenshot above*), headers and footers are indicated with icons pointing up and down, respectively. In tables that grow left-right, headers and footers are indicated with icons pointing left and right, respectively (*screenshot below*).
- To select the entire table, click in the top left corner of the table (in the screenshots above and below, the location where the arrow cursor points).
- When any table row or column is selected, it is highlighted with a dark blue background. In the screenshot above, the footer is selected.
- In tables that grow top-down, the element for which the table has been created is shown at the extreme left, outside the column-row grid (*screenshot above*). In tables that grow left-right, the element grid for which the table has been created is shown at the top, outside the column-row grid (*screenshot below*).

Qn1:Person	Header-R1	Header-R2
Qn1:First (content) Qn1:First	Footer-R1	Footer-R2
Qn1:Last (content) Qn1:Last	Footer-R1	Footer-R2

After a column or row or table has been selected, styles and/or properties can be set for the selection in the Styles and Properties Windows.

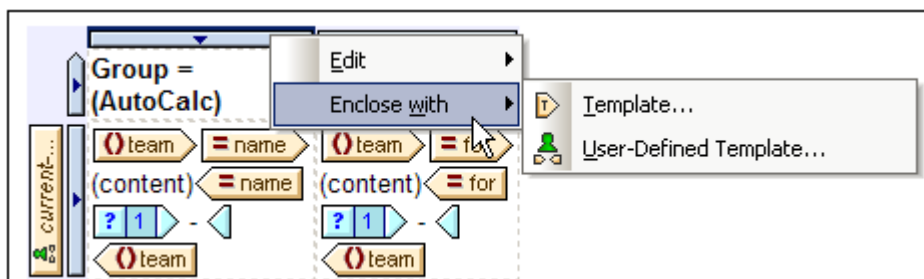
### Drag-and-drop functionality

The columns and rows of an SPS table (static or dynamic) can be dragged to alternative locations within the same table and dropped there.

### Enclosing and removing templates on rows and columns

A row or column can be enclosed with a template by right-clicking the row or column indicator and, from the context menu that pops up (*screenshot below*), selecting **Enclose With | Template** or **Enclose With | User-Defined Template**. In the next step, you can select a node from the schema tree or enter an XPath expression for a [User-Defined Template](#). A template will be created around the row or column.





A template that is around a row or column can also be removed while leaving the row or column itself intact. To do this, select the template tag and press the **Delete** key.

The enclosing with, and removing, templates feature is useful if you wish to remove a template without removing the contents of a row or column, and then, if required, enclosing the row or column with another template. Enclosing with a [User-Defined Template](#) also allows the use of interesting template-match results within the row or column (via Auto-Calculations, for example).

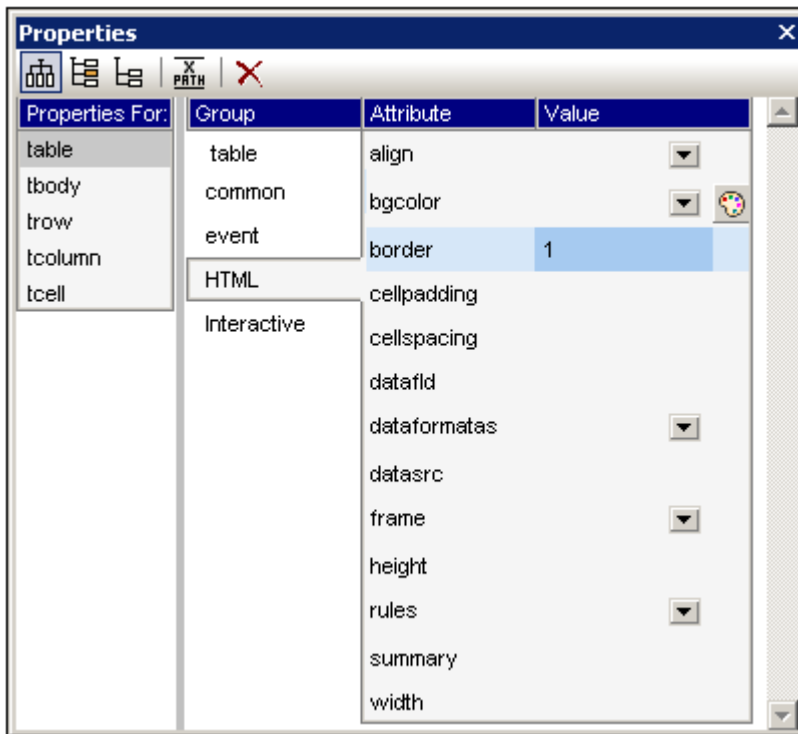
## Table Formatting

Static and dynamic tables can be formatted using:

1. HTML table formatting properties (in the Properties sidebar)
2. CSS (styling) properties (in the Styles sidebar).

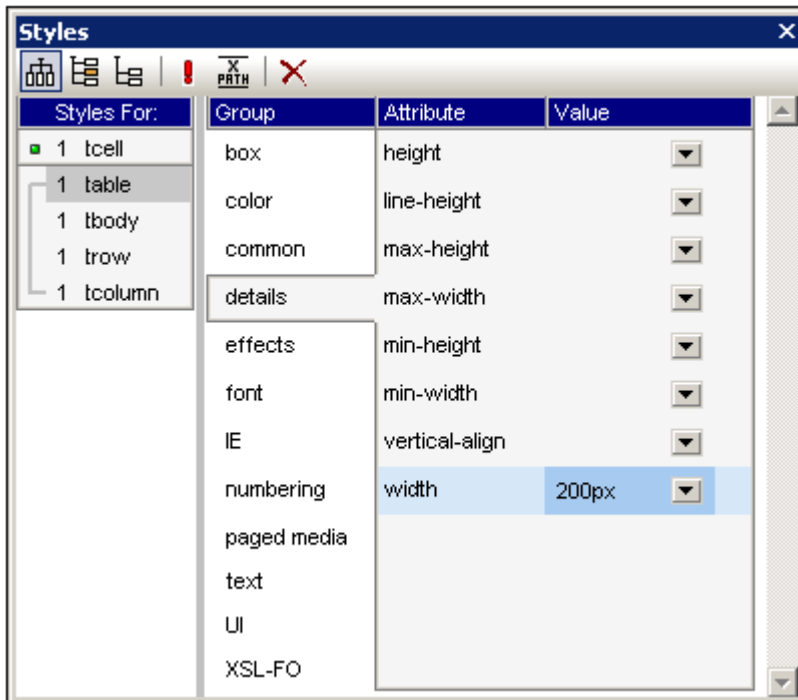
### Properties sidebar

The HTML table formatting properties are available in the Properties sidebar (*screenshot below*). These properties are available in the HTML group of properties for the table component and its sub-components (body, row, column, and cell).



### Styles sidebar

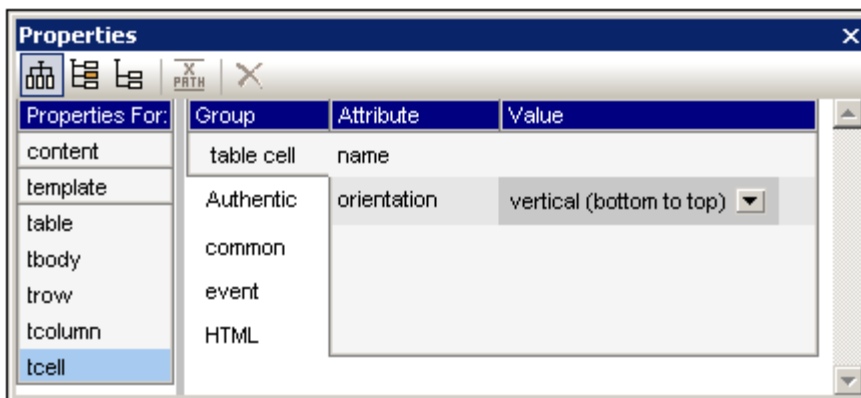
The CSS table formatting properties are available in the Styles sidebar (*screenshot below*). CSS properties are available for the table component and its sub-components (body, row, column, and cell).



**Note:** If all table cells in a row are empty, Internet Explorer collapses the row and the row might therefore not be visible. In this case, you should use the HTML workaround of putting a non-breaking space in the appropriate cell/s.

### Vertical text

Text in table cells can be rotated 90 degrees clockwise or anti-clockwise, so that the text is vertical, reading from top-to-bottom or bottom-to-top, respectively. To do this, in the design, select the content in the table cell that is to be rotated and, in the Properties sidebar (*screenshot below*), select `tcell`. In the *Table Cell* group of properties, select the required value for the *Orientation* property.



Note the following points:

- The rotation will be applied to the output, but will not be displayed in the design.
- This property is intended to be applied to text and should not be used for other content.
- Besides being applicable to text in table cells, the property can also be applied to text in [Text boxes](#).

### Table formatting via Properties and Styles

Some formatting properties are available in both the Properties sidebar as well as in the Styles sidebar. The table below lists some of the more important table properties available in both sidebars.

Table component	Properties sidebar	Styles sidebar
Table	border, frame, rules; cellpadding, cellspacing; bgcolor; height, width ( <i>overridden by height, width in Styles sidebar if the latter exist</i> ); align	borders and padding in Box styles; height, width in Details group ( <i>they override height and width in Properties sidebar</i> ); color, font, and text styles
Body	align, valign	height, vertical-align; color, font, and text styles
Column	align, valign	width, vertical-align; color, font, and text styles; box styles
Row	align, valign	height, vertical-align; color, font, and text styles; box styles
Cell	align, valign	height, width, vertical-align; color, font, and text styles; box styles

### Height and width

The height and width of tables, rows, columns, and cells must be set in the Styles sidebar (in the Details group of styles). When a table, column, or row is resized in the display by using the mouse, the altered values are entered automatically in the appropriate style in the Styles sidebar. Note, however, that the height and width styles are not supported for cells that are spanned (rowspans or colspans).

### Giving alternating rows different background colors

If you want alternating background colors for the rows of your dynamic table, do the following:

1. Select the row indicator of the row for which alternating background colors are required. Bear in mind that, this being a dynamic table, one element is being created as a row, and the design contains a single row, which corresponds to the element being created as a table.
2. With the row indicator selected, in the Properties sidebar, click the *Properties for:* `trow`.
3. Select the `bgcolor` property.
4. Click the XPath icon in the toolbar of the Properties window, and, in the Edit XPath Expression dialog that appears, enter an XPath expression similar to this:

```
if ( position() mod 2 = 0 ) then "white" else "gray"
```

This XPath expression specifies a `bgcolor` of white for even-numbered rows and a `bgcolor` of gray for odd-numbered rows

You can extend the above principle to provide even more complex formatting.

### Numbering the rows of a dynamic table

You can number the rows of a dynamic table by using the `position()` function of XPath. To do

this, first insert a column in the table to hold the numbers, then insert an Auto-Calculation in the cell of this column with an XPath of: `position()`. Since the context node is the element that corresponds to the row of the dynamic table, the `position()` function returns the position of each row element in the set of all row elements.

### Table headers and footers in PDF output

If a table flows over on to more than one page, then the table header and footer appear on each page that contains the table. The following points should be noted:

- If the footer contains Auto-Calculations, the footer that appears at the end of the table segment on each page contains the Auto-Calculations for the whole table—not those for only the table segment on that page.
- The header and footer will not be turned off for individual pages (for example, if you want a footer only at the end of the table and not at the end of each page). In

In order to omit the header or footer being displayed each time the page breaks, use the `table-omit-header-at-break` and/or `table-omit-footer-at-break` properties (attributes) on the `table` element. These properties are available in the Styles sidebar, in the XSL-FO group of properties for the table. To omit the header or footer when the page breaks, specify a value of `true` for the respective attribute. (Note that the default value is `false`. So not specifying these properties has the effect of inserting headers and footers whenever there is a break.)

### Hyphenating content of table cells

If you wish to hyphenate text in table cells, you must explicitly set the `hyphenate` option for the respective block/s.

## Row and Column Display

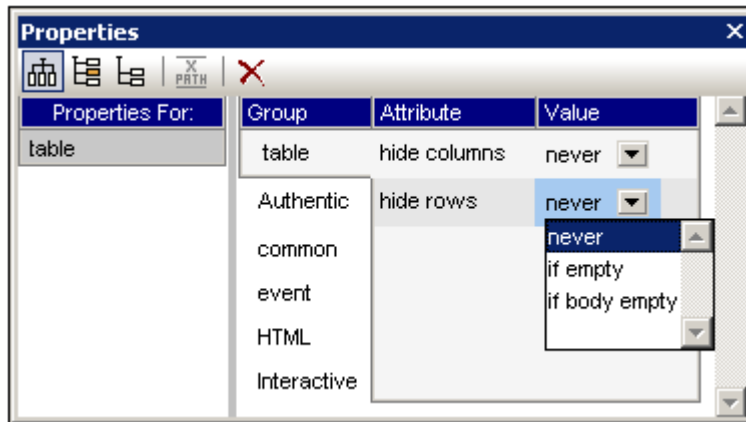
For tables, the following row and column display options are available in the **HTML output only**. These features are **not supported in Authentic View** and they require XSLT 2.0 to be selected as the XSLT version of the SPS.

- Empty rows and columns can be automatically hidden.
- Each column can have a **Close** button, which enables the user to hide individual columns.
- Row elements with descendant relationships can be displayed with expand/collapse buttons.

### Hiding empty rows and columns by default

To hide empty rows and/or columns in the HTML output, do the following:

1. In Design View, select the table or any part of it (column, row, cell).
2. In the Properties entry helper, select properties for *Table*, and the *Table* group of properties (*screenshot below*).



3. Select the required value for the *Hide Columns* and *Hide Rows* properties. The options for each of these two properties are the same: *Never*, *If empty*, and *If body empty*. The *If empty* option hides the column or row if the entire column/row (including header and footer) is empty. *If body empty* requires only that the body be empty.

**Note:** If a non-XBRL table has row or column spans (where cells of a row or a column have been joined), the hiding of empty rows and columns might not work.

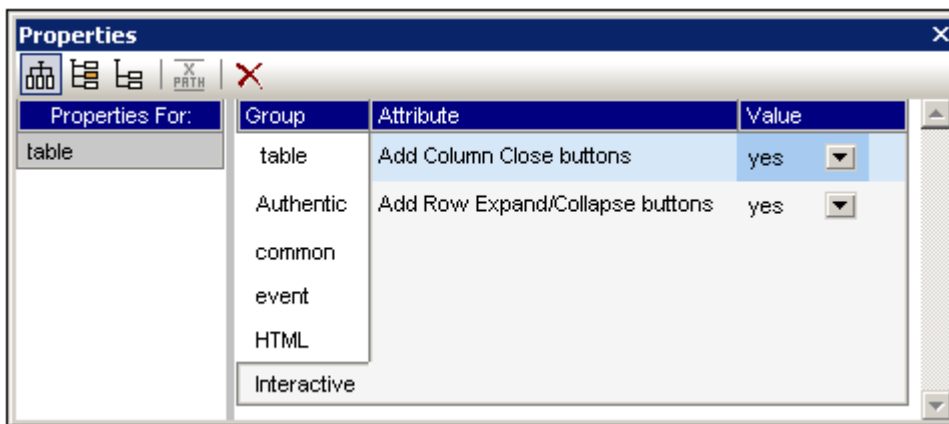
### User interaction to hide columns expand/collapse rows

It can be specified in the design that each table column contain a **Close** button in the HTML output (*see screenshot below*). The user can then hide individual columns by clicking the **Close** button. After the user hides a column, a plus symbol appears in the first column (*see screenshot below*). Clicking this symbol re-displays all hidden columns.

<b>Balance Sheet (in Millions)</b> +	2004-09-30	2004-07-01 - 2004-09-30	2003-12-31	2004-01-01
[-] Assets, Total	€ 21.49		€ 24.02	
[+] Current Assets, Total	€ 10.65		€ 12.32	
[+] Non Current Assets, Total	€ 10.85		€ 11.7	
[-] Liabilities and Equity, Total	€ 21.49		€ 24.02	
[+] Liabilities, Total	€ 8.9		€ 10.79	
Minority Interests				
[-] Equity, Total	€ 12.59		€ 13.23	
[+] Issued Capital and Reserves	€ 12.59		€ 13.23	

Also, row elements that have descendant elements can be displayed in the HTML output with an expand/collapse (plus/minus) symbol next to it (see *screenshot above*). Clicking these symbols in the HTML output expands or collapses that row element. In the design, you can specify indentation for individual rows using CSS properties.

The settings for these two features are made in the *Interactive* group of properties of the *Table* properties (*screenshot below*).



The options for both properties are Yes (to add the feature) and No (to not add the feature).

## 8.5 Lists

There are two types of lists that can be created in the SPS:

- [Static lists](#), which are lists, the contents of which are entered directly in the SPS. The list structure is not dynamically derived from the structure of the XML document.
- [Dynamic lists](#), which are lists that derive their structure and contents dynamically from the XML document.

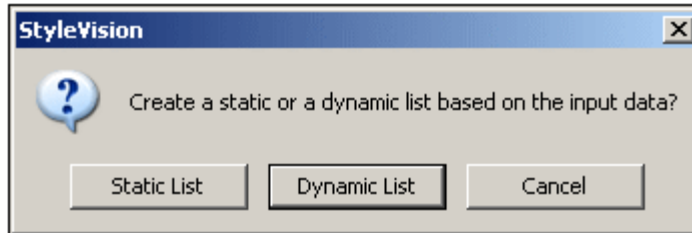
How to create these two list types are described in detail in the sub-sections of this section.



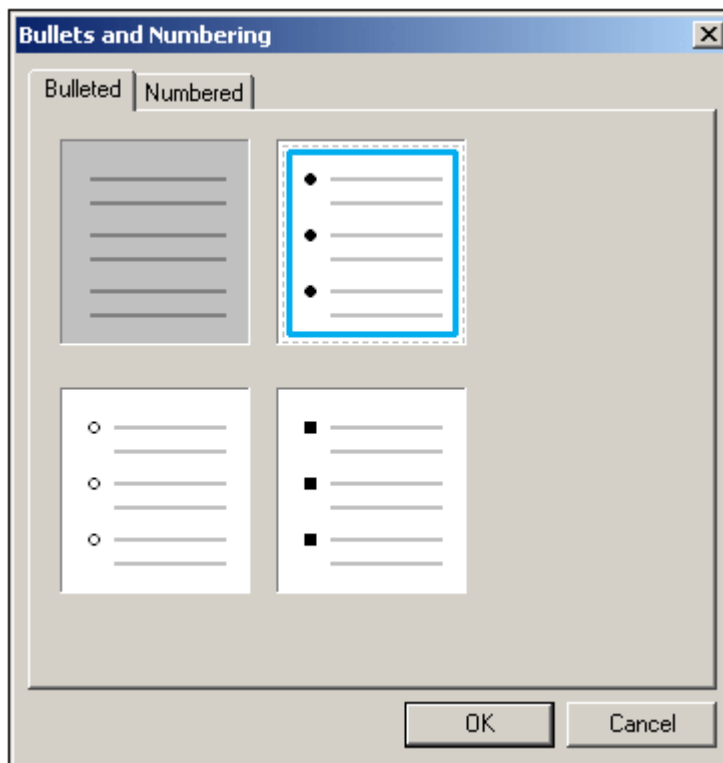
## Static Lists

A static list is one in which list item contents are entered directly in the SPS. To create a static list, do the following:

1. Place the cursor at the location in the design where you wish to create the static list and select the [Insert | Bullets and Numbering](#) menu command. This pops up a dialog asking whether you wish to create a static list or dynamic list (*screenshot below*).



2. Click **Static List**. This pops up the Bullets and Numbering dialog (*screenshot below*).



3. Select the desired list item marker and click **OK**. An empty list item is created.
4. Type in the text of the first list item.
5. Press **Enter** to create a new list item.

To create a nested list, place the cursor inside the list item that is to contain the nested list and click the [Insert | Bullets and Numbering](#) menu command. Then use the procedure described above once again.

**Note:** You can also create a static list by placing the cursor at the location where the list is to be created and clicking the Bulleted List or Numbered List icons in the [Insert Design Elements toolbar](#). The first list item will be created at the cursor insertion point.

**Changing static text to a list**

There are two ways to change static text to a list:

- Highlight the text to change, click [Insert | Bullets and Numbering](#), select the desired marker type, and click **OK**. If the text contains a CR-LF, carriage-return and/or linefeed (inserted by pressing the **Enter** key), then separate list items are created for each text fragment separated by a CR-LF.
- With the cursor placed in a text fragment, click [Insert | Bullets and Numbering](#), select the desired marker type, and click **OK**. That text fragment, till the CR-LF separators on either side, is created as a list item.

## Dynamic Lists

Dynamic lists display the content of a set of sibling nodes of the same name, with each node represented as a single list item in the list. The element, the instances of which are to appear as the list items of the list, is created as the list. The mechanism and usage are explained below.

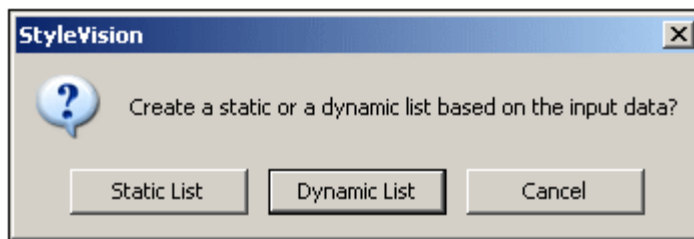
### General usage mechanism

- Any element can be created as a list.
- When an element is created as a list, the instances of that element are created as the items of the list. For example, if in a `department` element, there are several `person` elements (i.e. instances), and you wanted to create a list of all the persons in the department, then you must create the `person` element as the list.
- Once the list has been created for the element, you can modify the appearance or content of the list or list item by inserting additional static or dynamic content such as text, Auto-Calculations, dynamic content, etc.

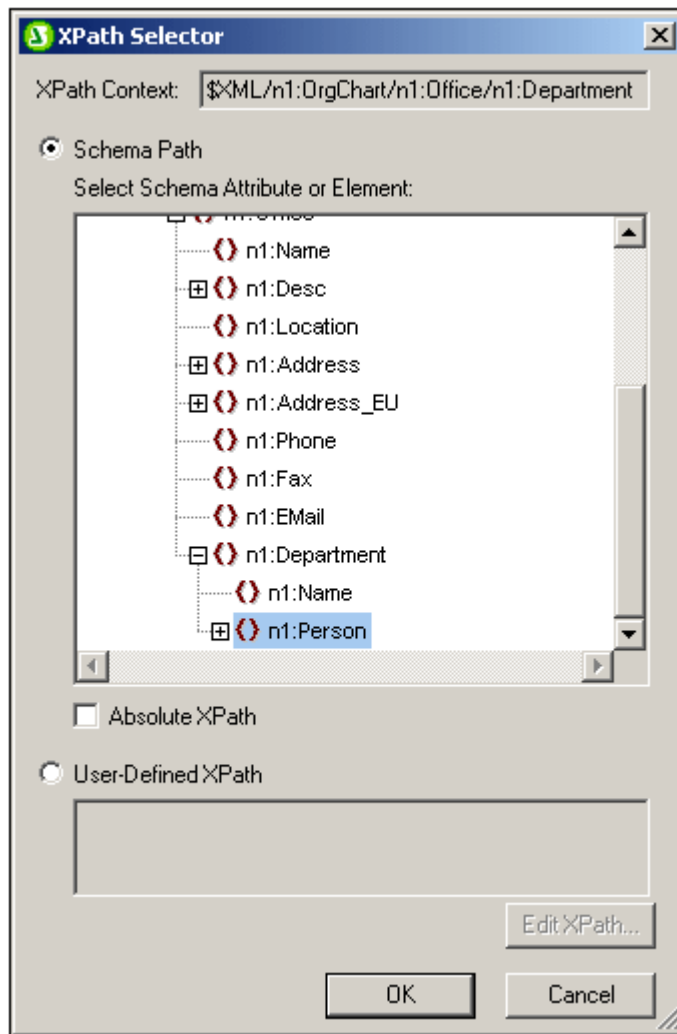
### Creating a dynamic list

Create a dynamic list as follows:

1. Place the cursor at the location in the design where you wish to create the static list and select the **Insert | Bullets and Numbering** menu command. This pops up a dialog asking whether you wish to create a static list or dynamic list (*screenshot below*).

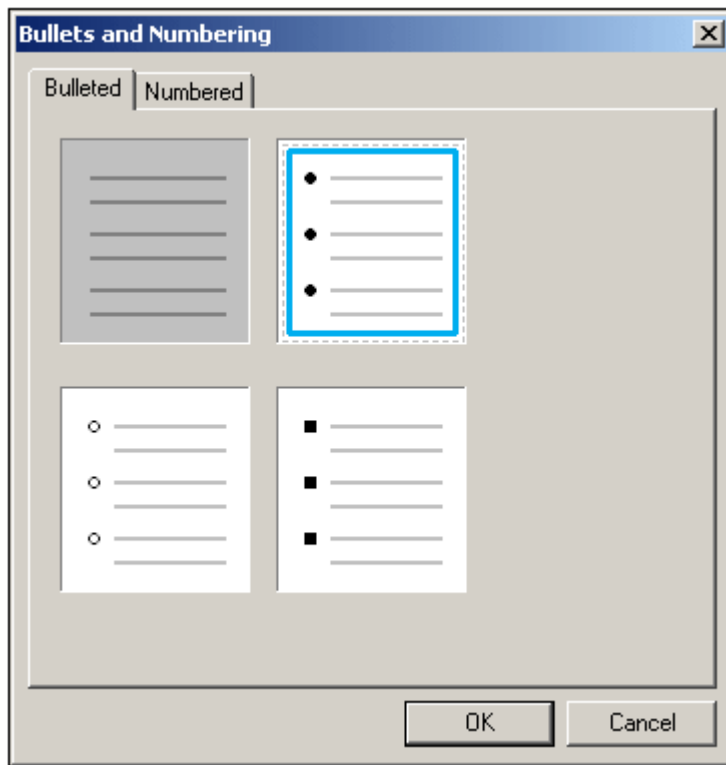


2. Click **Dynamic List**. This pops up the XPath Selector dialog (*screenshot below*).
3. In the XPath Selector dialog, notice that the XPath Context is the context of the insertion location, and that it cannot be changed in the dialog. Select the node that is to be created as the dynamic list. In the screenshot below, the context node is `n1:Department`, and the `n1:Person` node has been selected as the node to be created as a list. This means that the content of each `n1:Person` node will be created as an item in the list.



If you select the User-defined XPath option, then you can enter an XPath expression to select the node to be created as the dynamic table. Clicking **OK** pops up the Bullets and Numbering dialog described in the next step.

4. In the the Bullets and Numbering dialog, select the kind of list you wish to create. You can choose from a bulleted list (with a bullet, circle, or square as the list item marker), or a numbered list. Clicking **OK** creates the list with the type of list item marker you selected.



## 8.6 Graphics

When inserting images in the design document, the location of the image can be specified directly in the SPS (by the SPS designer) or can be taken or derived from a node in the XML document. How to specify the location of the image is described in the section [Image URIs](#). What type of images are supported in the various outputs are listed in the section [Image Types and Output](#).

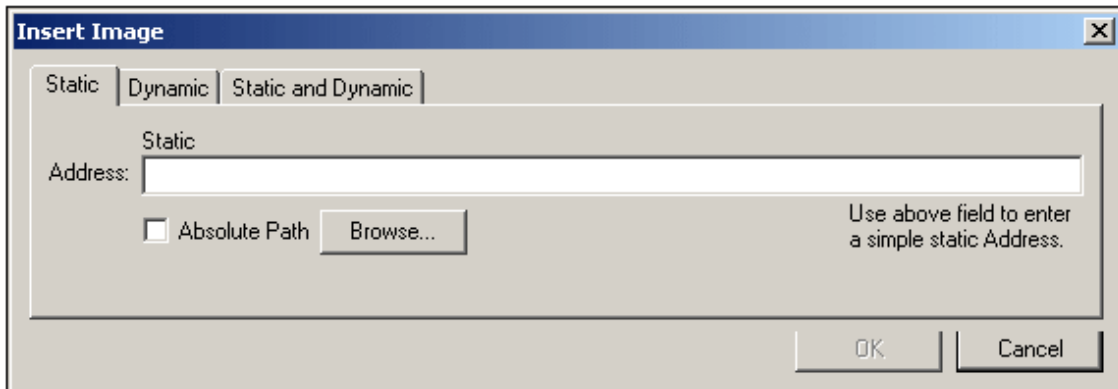
### Image properties

Images can be set in the Properties window. Do this as follows. Select the image in the design. Then, in the Properties window, (i) select *image* in the Properties for column, (ii) select the required property group, and (iii) within the selected property group, select the the required property. For example, to set the height and width of the image, set the `height` and `width` properties in the *HTML* group of properties.

## Image URIs

Images can be inserted at any location in the design document. These images will be displayed in the output documents; in Design View, inserted images are indicated with placeholders.

To insert an image, click the [Insert | Image](#) menu command, which pops up the Insert Image dialog (*screenshot below*). The URI of the image to be inserted is entered in this dialog.



There are three ways in which the URI of the image can be entered:

- In the Static tab, directly as an absolute or relative URI. For example, `nanonull.gif` (*relative URI*; [see section below](#)), and `C:/images/nanonull.gif` (*absolute URI*).
- In the Dynamic tab, as an XPath expression that selects a node containing either (i) a URI (absolute or relative), or (ii) an [unparsed entity name](#). For example, the entry `image/@location` would select the `location` attribute of the `image` element that is the child of the context node (that is, the node within which the image is inserted). The `location` node in the XML document would contain the image URI. How to use unparsed entities is described in the section [Unparsed Entity URIs](#).
- In the Static and Dynamic tab, an XPath expression in the Dynamic part can be prefixed and/or suffixed with static entries (text). For example, the static prefix could be `C: / XYZCompany/Personnel/Photos/`; the dynamic part could be `concat(First, Last)`; and the static suffix could be `.png`. This would result in an absolute URI something like: `C: / XYZCompany/Personnel/Photos/JohnDoe.png`.

### Accessing the image for output

The image is accessed in different ways and at different times in the processes that produce the different output documents. The following points should be noted:

- Note the output formats available for your edition: (i) HTML in Standard Edition; (ii) HTML and RTF in Professional; (iii) HTML, RTF, PDF, and Word 2007+ in Enterprise Edition).
- For Design View, you can set, in the [Properties dialog](#), whether relative paths to images should be relative to the SPS or to the XML file.
- For HTML output, the URI of the image is passed to the HTML file and the image is accessed by the browser. So, if the path to the image is relative, it must be relative to the location of the HTML file. For the HTML Preview in StyleVision, a temporary HTML file is created in the same folder as the SPS file, so, for rendition in HTML Preview, relative paths must be relative to this location.
- Whether the URI is relative or absolute, the image must be physically accessible to the process that renders it.

### Editing image properties

To edit an image, right-click the image placeholder in Design View, and select Image Properties from the context menu. This pops up the Edit Image dialog, which is the same as the Insert Image dialog (*screenshot above*) and in which you can make the required modifications. The Edit Image dialog can also be accessed via the `URL` property of the *image* group of properties in the Properties window. The *image* group of properties also includes the `alt` property, which specifies alternative text for the image.

### Deleting images

To delete an image, select the image and press the **Delete** key.



## Image Types and Output

The table below shows the image types supported by StyleVision in the various output formats supported by StyleVision. Note that different editions of StyleVision support different sets of output formats: *Enterprise Edition*, HTML, Authentic, RTF, PDF, and Word 2007+; *Professional Edition*, HTML, Authentic, RTF; *Standard Edition*, HTML.

Image Type	Authentic	HTML	RTF	PDF
JPEG	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
GIF	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
PNG	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
BMP	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
SVG	No	No	No	Yes

Note the following points:

- FOP reports an error if an image file cannot be located and does not generate a PDF.
- If FOP is being used to produce PDF, rendering PNG images requires that the JIMI image library be installed and accessible to FOP.
- For more details about FOP's graphics handling, visit the [FOP website](#).

### Example: A Template for Images

The StyleVision package contains an SPS file that demonstrates the use of images in StyleVision. This file is: `C:/Documents and Settings/<username>/My Documents/Altova/StyleVision2010/StyleVisionExamples/Tutorial/Images/Images.sps`). The Images document (`Images.xml` and `Images.sps`) consists of three parts:

- The second part contains a table showing which image formats are supported in the various StyleVision output formats. Note that the RTF, PDF and Word 2007+ output formats are available only in the Enterprise Edition and Professional Edition (RTF only) of StyleVision. In Design View, only images with static URIs will be displayed. All the image formats listed in the table are displayed in Part 3 of the Images document.
- In Part 3, all the popular image formats supported by StyleVision are displayed one below the other. After opening the file `Images.sps` in StyleVision, you can switch among the various previews of StyleVision to see how each image is displayed in that preview. Since the location of the image is in an XML node, you can also enter the location of your own images in Authentic View and test their appearances in the preview windows.

## 8.7 Form Controls

Nodes in the XML document can be created as data-entry devices (such as input fields and combo boxes). In the HTML output, the data-entry device is rendered as an object that is the same as that displayed in Design View, or a near-equivalent. Note that data-entry devices will not work in the HTML output.

### General mechanism

Given below is a list of the data-entry devices available in StyleVision.

- Input field (text box)
- Multiline input field
- Combo box
- Check box
- Radio button
- Button

### General usage

To create a data-entry device, do the following:

1. Drag a node from the Schema Tree window into Design View and drop it at the desired location.
2. From the context menu that appears, select the data-entry device you wish to create the node as.
3. For some data-entry devices, a dialog pops up. In these cases, enter the required information in the dialog, and click OK.

To **reopen and edit** the properties of a data-entry device, select the data-entry device (not the node containing it), and edit its properties in the Properties sidebar.

**Note:**

- Data cannot be entered in data-entry devices in the HTML output. In the HTML output, data-entry devices are merely used as an alternative way of presenting content.
- Data-entry devices can also be created by changing the current component type of a node to a data-entry device. To do this right-click the node and select **Change to**.
- In the HTML output, the entry selected by the user is displayed in the output. Changing the value of a data-entry device in the HTML document does not change the text value in either the XML document or HTML document.

## Input Fields, Multiline Input Fields

You can insert an Input Field or a Multiline Input Field in your SPS when you drop a node from the Schema Sources window into Design View. The content of that node is displayed in the input field or multiline input field.

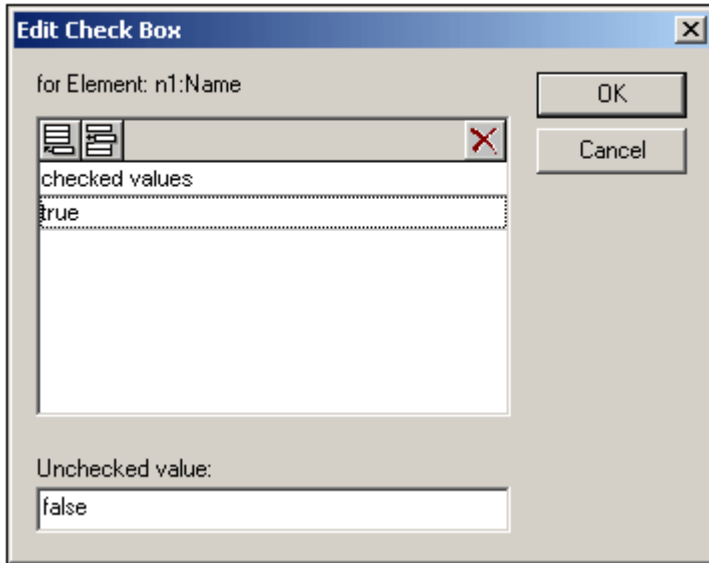
### Editing the properties of input fields

You can modify the HTML properties of input fields by selecting the input field and then modifying its HTML properties in the Properties sidebar.

For example, with the input field selected, in the Properties window select `editfield`, select the `HTML` group of properties and the `maxlength` property. Then double-click in the Value field of `maxlength` and enter a value.

## Check Boxes


You can create a check box as a data-entry device. In Standard edition, you can leave the settings in the Edit Check Box dialog at their default settings (since Standard edition does not support Authentic View, as a result of which no value can be entered in the XML file.)



In the above screenshot, an element called `Name` has been created as a check box. If the Authentic View user checks the check box, a value of `true` will be entered as the value of the element `Name`. If the value is unchecked, then the value `false` is entered as the XML value of `Name` (as defined in the dialog).

### Accessing the Edit Check Box dialog

If you are creating a new check box, when you create the node as a check box, the Edit Check Box dialog pops up. To access the Edit Check Box dialog afterwards, do the following:

1. Select the check box in the design.
2. In the Properties sidebar, select the checkbox item and then the *checkbox* group of properties (see screenshot below).
3. Click the Edit button  of the `check values` property. This pops up the Edit Check Box dialog.

**Note:** You can modify the HTML properties of a check box by selecting it and then modifying its HTML properties in the Properties sidebar.


## Combo Boxes

A combo box presents items in a dropdown list. The items in the list can be selected in one of the three ways listed below. This list can be used in the generated HTML document for any required purpose; for example the generated HTML can be post-processed so that the combo box list provides entries for an HTML form.

- From the schema enumerations for the selected node.
- From a list defined in the Edit Combo Box dialog. You enter the visible entry and the corresponding XML value, which may be different. The XML value applies to the Enterprise and Professional editions, and refers to the XML value to which the Authentic View user-selection maps. Standard edition users can leave this column blank (since Authentic View is not supported in Standard edition).
- From the result sequence of an XPath expression relative to the current node. The items in the result sequence are displayed as the entries of the drop-down list. This is a powerful method of using dynamic entries in the combo box. The node that you create as the combo box is important. For example, say you have a `NameList` element that may contain an unlimited number of `Name` elements, which themselves have `First` and `Last` children elements. If you create the `Name` element as a combo box, and select the `Last` child element for the list values, then you will get as many combo boxes as there are `Name` elements and each combo box will have the `Last` child as its dropdown menu entry. In order to get a single combo box with all the `Last` elements in the dropdown menu list, you must create the single `NameList` element as the combo box, and select the `Last` element in the XPath expression.

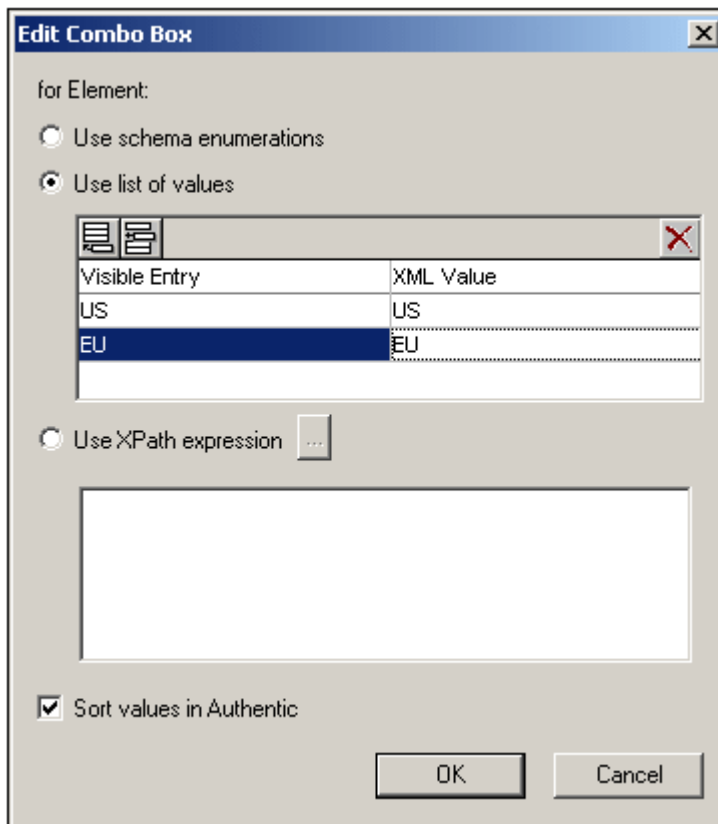
### Accessing the Edit Combo Box dialog

If you are creating a new combo box, when you create the node as a combo box, the Edit Combo Box dialog pops up. You can also insert a combo box with the **(Insert | Insert Form Controls | Combo Box)** menu command. To access the Edit Combo Box dialog afterwards, do the following:

1. Select the combo box in the design.
2. In the Properties sidebar, select the combo box item and then the *combo box* group of properties (see *screenshot below*).
3. Click the Edit button  of the the `content origin` property. This pops up the Edit Combo Box dialog.

### Using the Edit Combo Box dialog

The Edit Combo Box dialog is shown below.



To define the entries and values for the combo box, do the following:

1. Select the method with which you wish to define the entries and values by clicking the appropriate radio button.
2. If you select Schema Enumerations, the enumerations are entered in automatically. If you select Use List of Values, you can insert, append, edit, and delete any number of drop-down list entries with their corresponding XML values. If you wish to use values from the XML file, select Use XPath Expression, and enter or build an XPath expression to generate the desired sequence.
3. If you wish to have the items that appear in the dropdown list of the combo box in Authentic View sorted, check the *Sort Values in Authentic* check box.
4. Click **OK** to finish.

#### Note

- Using an XPath expression to select the items of the combo box drop-down list enables you to create combo boxes with dynamic entries from the XML file itself.
- If the items in the drop-down list of the combo box are obtained from schema enumerations, they will be sorted alphabetically by default. If the items are obtained from an XML data file, they will appear in document order by default.
- You can modify the HTML properties of a combo box by selecting it and then modifying its HTML properties in the Properties sidebar.



## Radio Buttons, Buttons

There are two types of button: radio buttons and buttons. Radio buttons and buttons can be useful for input into forms or triggering events in the HTML output. The latter is done by associating scripts with the button event.

**Note:** You can modify the HTML properties of a radio button or button by selecting it and then modifying its HTML properties in the Properties sidebar.

## 8.8 Links

Links (or hyperlinks) can be created to bookmarks located in the document as well as to external resources like Web pages. Links can also be created to dynamically generated anchors. StyleVision offers considerable flexibility in the way target URIs for hyperlinks can be built.

The section, [Bookmarks and Hyperlinks](#), describes how to create static and dynamic bookmarks in the document and how to link to bookmarks as well as to external documents.

## 8.9 Layout Modules

Layout Modules are objects containing a layout. The module as a whole is inserted in the SPS design and occurs as a block within the document flow. Within a Layout Module, multiple Layout Boxes, each containing standard SPS design elements, can be placed according to design requirements. Using Layout Modules, therefore, designers can create a layout just as they would using an artboard-based graphical design application.

The steps for creating a Layout Module are as follows:

1. Insert a [Layout Container](#). The Layout Container can occupy the entire width of a page or can have any other dimensions you want. It can contain a blueprint of the design to serve as design guide and it can be formatted (in the Styles sidebar) using styles for the Layout Container.
2. Insert one or more [Layout Boxes](#) in the Layout Container. Layout Boxes can contain multiple design elements (including static text, schema nodes, Auto-Calculations, images, lists, etc), and they can be formatted (in the Styles sidebar) using styles for the Layout Box. Layout Boxes can also be moved relative to each other within the Layout Container and can be positioned in front of or behind each other.
3. [Lines](#) can be drawn, formatted, positioned and moved to the front or back of the stack of layout objects (Layout Boxes and other Lines).

### Form-based designs

When you [create a new SPS](#) you are offered the choice of creating a free-flowing design or a form-based design. A form-based design is essentially an SPS design consisting of a Layout Container.

**Note:** Layout Modules are supported in Authentic View only in the Enterprise Editions of Altova products.

## Layout Containers

A Layout Container has the following properties:

- It can be [inserted](#) within the flow of a document, that is, within a template. Or it can be inserted as the container within which the document design is created.
- It can have the same dimensions as the page dimensions defined for that section (the Auto-Fit to Page property of Layout Containers). Or it can have any other dimensions you specify. See the [Layout Container size](#) section below for details.
- A [layout grid](#) and a [zoom feature](#) make the positioning of objects in the Layout Container easier.
- It can have [style properties](#), such as borders, background colors, font-properties for the whole container, etc.
- It can [contain Layout Boxes and Lines](#), but no other design element. (All design elements must be placed within Layout Boxes.)
- It can contain a [blueprint](#), which is an image placed on the artboard to serve as a reference template for the designer. The design can then be built to match the blueprint exactly.

**Note:** Layout Containers are supported in Authentic View only in the Enterprise Editions of Altova products.

### Inserting a Layout Container

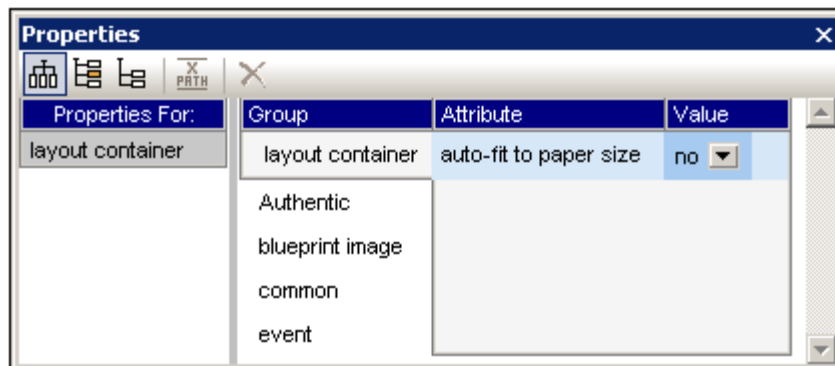
To insert a Layout Container, place the cursor at the location where the Layout Container is to be inserted and click the **Insert Layout Container** icon in the [Insert Design Elements toolbar](#). A dialog appears asking whether you wish to auto-fit the Layout Container to the page. If you click **Yes**, the Layout Container will have the same size as the page dimensions defined in the page layout properties of that particular document section. If you click **No**, then a Layout Container with a default size of 3.5in x 5.0in is created.

Note that a Layout Container can also be created at the time you create an SPS.

### Layout Container size

There are two sets of properties that affect the size of the Layout Container:

- The *Auto-Fit Page Size* property (Properties sidebar, *screenshot below*) can be set to `yes` to create a Layout Container having the same dimensions as those specified for pages in that document section. A value of `no` for this property creates a Layout Container with a customizable size.



- The *height* and *width* properties of the Details group of Layout Container styles (in the

Styles sidebar) specify the dimensions of the Layout Container. The dimensions can also be modified directly in the design by dragging the right and bottom margins of the Layout Container. Note that the *height* and *width* properties will take effect only when the *Auto-Fit Page Size* property has a value of `no`.

### Layout Container Grid

The Layout Container has a grid to aid in spacing items in the layout. The following settings control usage of the grid:

- *Show/Hide Grid*: A toggle command in the Insert Design Elements toolbar switches the display of the grid on and off.
- *Grid Size*: In the Design tab of the Options dialog units for horizontal and vertical lengths can be specified. Note that if very large length units are selected, the grid might not be clearly visible.
- *Snap to Grid*: A toggle command in the Insert Design Elements toolbar enables or disables the Snap to Grid function. When the Snap to Grid feature is enabled, the top and left edges of Layout Boxes and the endpoints of Layout Lines align with grid lines and points, respectively.

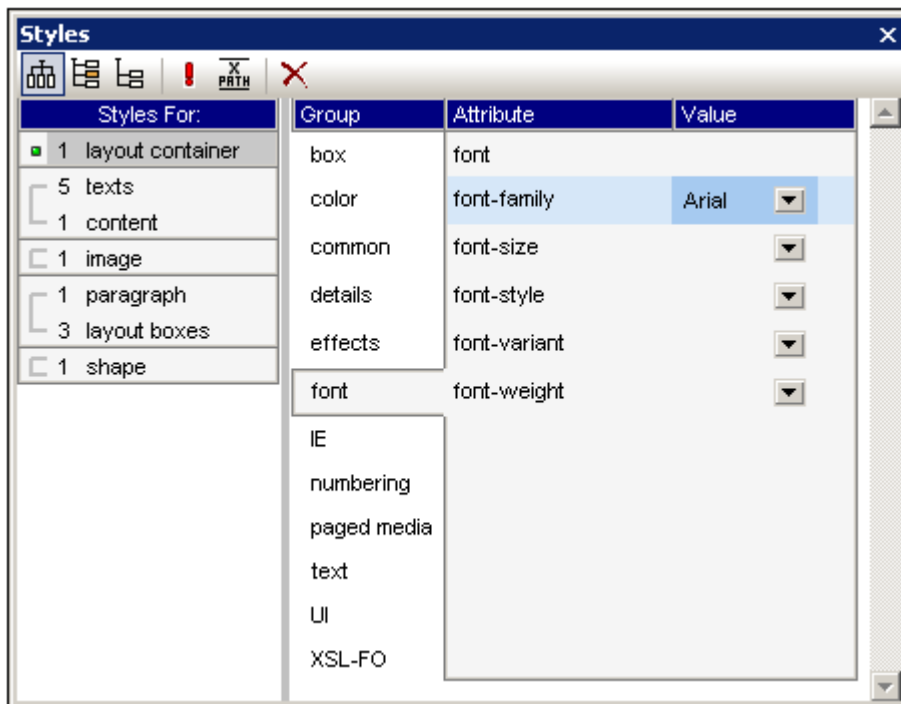
### Zooming

To help position objects more accurately, you can magnify the view. Do this by changing the Zoom factor in the Zoom combo box (in the Standard toolbar), or by pressing the **Ctrl** key and scrolling with the mouse.

### Layout Container style properties

There are two types of style properties that can be applied to Layout Containers:

- Those applied to the Layout Container alone and which are not inheritable, such as the *border* and *background-color* properties.
- Those that are inheritable by the Layout Boxes in the Layout Container, such as font properties.



The style properties of a Layout Container are set in the *Layout Container* styles in the Styles sidebar (*screenshot above*).

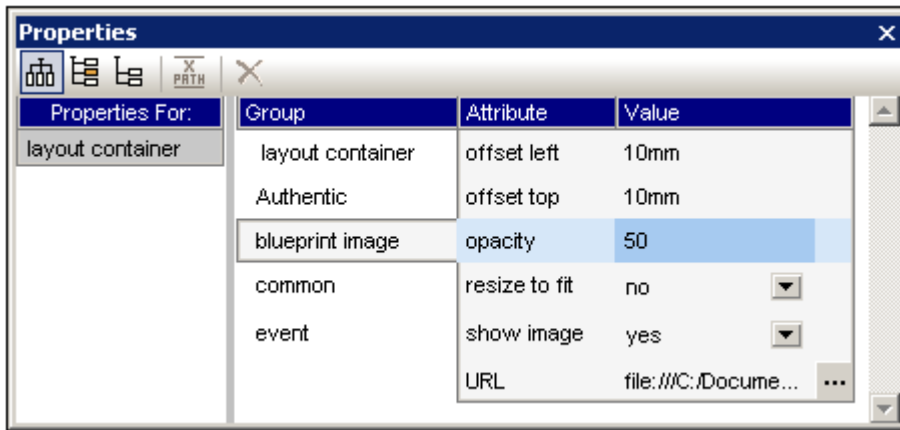
### Layout Container contents

The only design items that can be contained in a Layout Container are Layout Boxes and Lines. Additionally, a blueprint (which is not a design element) can be placed in the Layout Container as a design aid. All design elements must be placed in a Layout Box.

### Blueprints

One blueprint can be placed in a Layout Container at a time to aid the designer in creating the SPS. The blueprint is an image file that can be placed to exactly fit the size of the Layout Container. Alternatively, if the blueprint image is smaller than the Layout Container, it can be offset to the desired location in the design (*see Blueprint image properties screenshot below*). The designer can use the blueprint by reproducing the SPS design over the blueprint design. In this way the designer will be able to place design elements in the layout exactly as in the blueprint. The blueprint will appear only in Design View, but **not** in any output view: this is because its purpose is only to aid in the design of the SPS.

The blueprint's properties can be controlled via the *Blueprint image* group of properties of the Layout Container properties (in the Properties sidebar, *screenshot below*).



The opacity of the blueprint in the Layout Container can be specified so that the blueprint does not interfere with the viewing of the design. The display of the blueprint image can also be switched off if required.

**Note:** If design element markup tags—such as template node tags—are inserted in a Layout Box, the spacing in the layout will be affected, because the tags occupy space in the layout. To avoid this source of incongruence and to match the design to the blueprint more closely, use the Hide Design Markups feature to hide tags.

## Layout Boxes

Every design element in a layout (such as static text, schema nodes, Auto-Calculations, images, lists, etc) must be placed in a Layout Box. The Layout Boxes containing design elements are laid out as required in the Layout Container. Note that a design element cannot be placed directly in a Layout Container; it must be placed in a Layout Box.

This section describes how Layout Boxes are used and is organized into the following sub-sections:

- [Inserting Layout Boxes](#)
- [Selecting and moving Layout Boxes](#)
- [Modifying the size of the Layout Box](#)
- [Defining Layout Box style properties](#)
- [Inserting content in the Layout Box](#)
- [Stacking order of Layout Boxes](#)

### Inserting a Layout Box

A Layout Box can be inserted only in a [Layout Container](#). To add a Layout Box, first click the Insert Layout Box icon in the [Insert Design Elements](#) toolbar, then click on the location inside the Layout Container where you wish to insert the Layout Box. A Layout Box will be inserted, with its top left corner positioned at the point where you clicked. The box will be transparent, will have no borders, and will have default text.

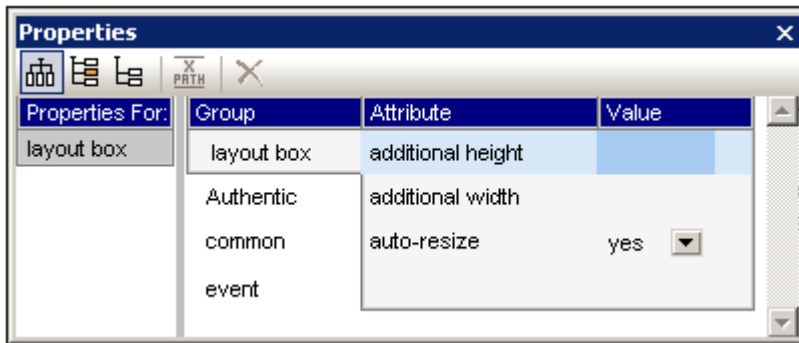
### Selecting and moving a Layout Box

To select a Layout Box, place the cursor over the left border or top border of the Layout Box so that the cursor becomes a crossed double arrow. When this happens, click to select the Layout Box. If you keep the mouse button depressed, you can move the Layout Box to another location within its Layout Container. You can also move a Layout Box left, right, up, or down by selecting it, and then pressing the cursor key for the required direction. When the Layout Box is selected, its properties and styles are displayed in the respective sidebars.

### Layout Box size

Each Layout Box has a property called *Auto-Resize* (see *screenshot below*). When the value of this property is set to *yes*, the Layout Box automatically resizes to exactly accommodate any content (including markup) that is inserted in it. When the value of Auto-Resize is set to *no*, the size of the Layout Box does not automatically change when content is inserted in it. To change the size of the Layout Box manually, drag its right border and bottom border. You can also change the size of a Layout Box by using the cursor keys to move the right and bottom borders of the box. To do this first [select the Layout Box](#). Then do the following: (i) to move the right border, keep the **Shift** key depressed and press the right or left cursor key till the required size is obtained; (ii) to move the bottom border, keep the **Shift** key depressed and press the top or bottom cursor key.



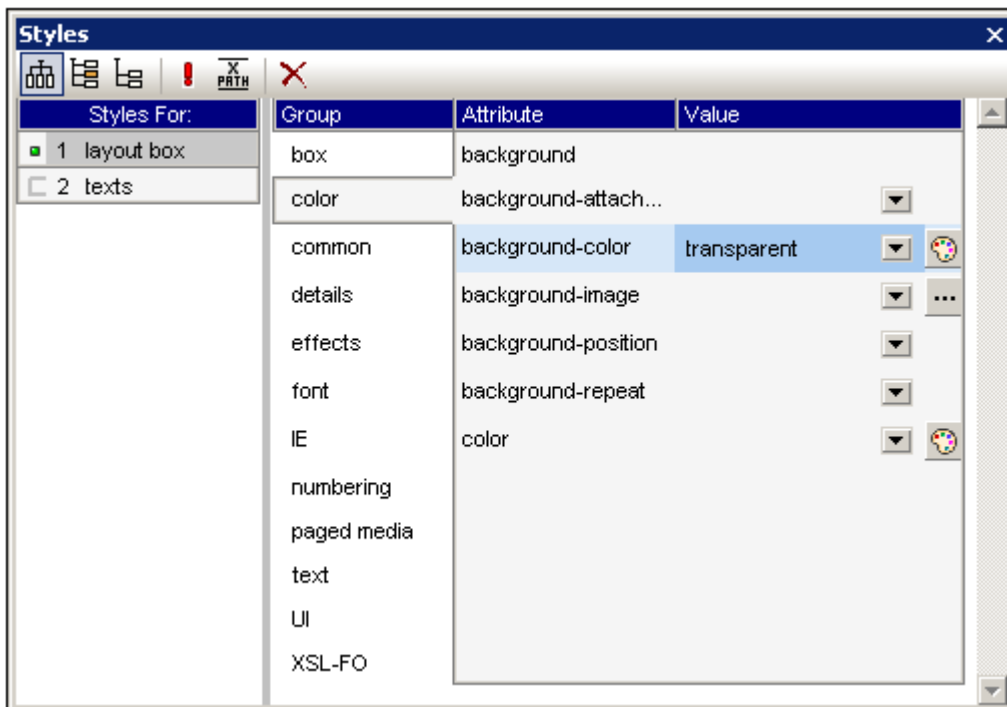


The *Additional Height* and *Additional Width* properties give the lengths that are additional to the optimal dimensions as determined by auto-resizing. The additional lengths are obtained when a Layout Box is manually resized. Conversely, by changing the values of these two properties, the size of the Layout Box can be changed.

**Note:** In a Layout Box a linefeed is obtained by pressing the **Enter** key. This is significant, because if content is added that does not contain a linefeed, then the length of the current line increases, thus increasing the optimal width of the Layout Box and—incidentally—affecting the *Additional Width* value, which is calculated with reference to the optimal width.

### Layout Box style properties

The style properties of a Layout Box are set in the *Layout Box* styles in the Styles sidebar ( *screenshot below*). The styles are displayed when the Layout Box is selected, and can then be edited.



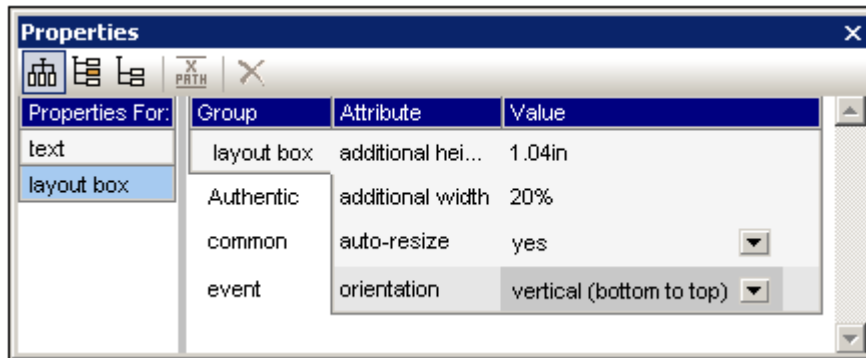
**Note:** The *background-color* value of `transparent` can be selected in the dropdown list of the

property's combo box (it is not available in the color palette). The significance of this value in a situation where the Layout Box is part of a stack is explained below.

### Inserting content in a Layout Box

Any type of design element can be inserted in a Layout Box, and is inserted just as it normally would be in an SPS. Note, however, that neither a [Layout Container](#) nor a [Layout Line](#) can be inserted in a Layout Box. The following points should be noted:

- When design elements are inserted that require a context node, the current node will be taken as the context node. The current node is the node within which the Layout Module has been created.
- If markup tags are displayed in a Layout Box, they would affect the WYSIWYG nature of the layout.
- Text content in a layout box can be rotated 90 degrees clockwise or anti-clockwise, so that the text is vertical, reading from top-to-bottom or bottom-to-top, respectively. To do this, in the design, select the text that is to be rotated and, in the Properties sidebar ( *screenshot below*), select `LayoutBox`. In the *Layout Box* group of properties, select the required value for the *Orientation* property.

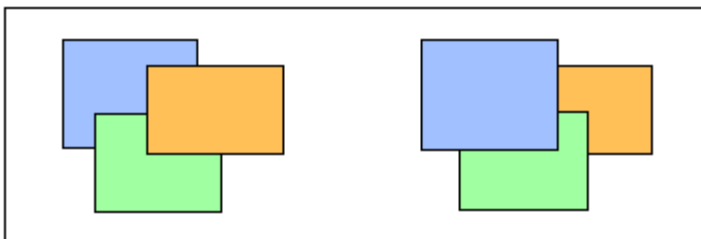


Note the following points:

- The rotation will be applied to the output, but will not be displayed in the design.
- This property can also be applied to text in [table cells](#).

### Stacking order of Layout Boxes

Layout Boxes can be placed one over the other. When one Layout Box is placed on top of another, then, if it is opaque, it hides that part of the Layout Box which it covers. This behaviour can be extended to a stack of several Layout Boxes. In such a stack, only the topmost Layout Box will be fully visible; the others will be partially or fully covered.

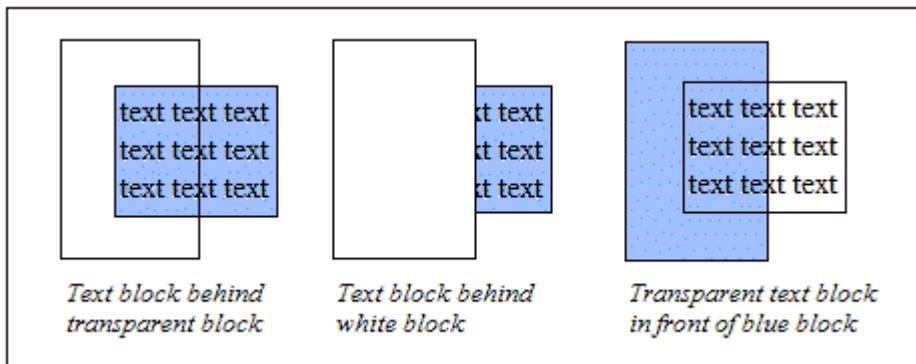


Layout Boxes can be sent backward or brought forward using the **Order** menu commands in the context menu of the selected Layout Box. Using these commands a Layout Box can be

ordered: (i) relative to its nearest neighbor on the stack (the **Bring Forward** and **Send Backward** commands), or (ii) relative to the entire stack (the **Bring to Front** and **Send to Back** commands). In the screenshot above, the stacking order from front to back is as follows:

- *Left stack:* orange, green, blue
- *Right stack:* blue, green, orange

Note that Layout Boxes with transparent backgrounds (the default background of Layout Boxes) might appear to not move relative to each other, especially if more than one box in the stack is transparent and if boxes have no borders. The screenshot below presents some ways in which transparency affects stacking.



**Note:** [Layout Lines](#) can also be added to a stack of Layout Boxes, and each Line can be moved relative to other items in the stack.

## Lines

Lines can be [inserted in a Layout Container](#) (but not in Layout Boxes), then [selected, re-sized and moved](#) around within the Layout Container, [assigned properties](#), and [moved backwards and forwards in a stack of layout items](#) consisting of Layout Boxes and other Lines.

### Inserting a Line

To add a Line to a Layout Container, do the following:

1. Click the Insert Line icon in the [Insert Design Elements](#) toolbar.
2. Click on the location inside the Layout Container where you wish to locate the start point of the line.
3. Without releasing the mouse button, draw the line from the start point to the desired end point. Then release the mouse button.

A black line will be inserted, with a dot at each end indicating the start and end points respectively.

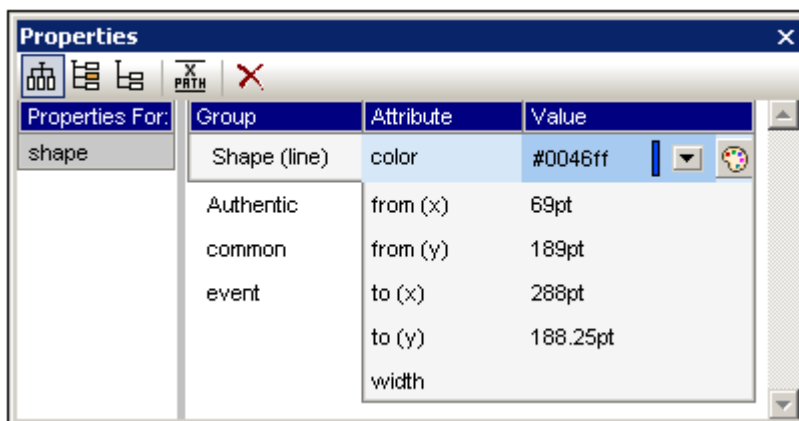
### Selecting, moving, and sizing a Line

In the Main Window, you can carry out the following-drag-and-drop functions:

- To select a Line, click any part of the Line (the cursor becomes a crossed double arrow when it is over the Line). Once a Line is selected, its properties are displayed in the Properties sidebar and can be edited there (*see below*).
- To move a Line, select it and drag it to the desired location. You can also move a line left, right, up, or down by selecting it, and then pressing the cursor key for the required direction.
- To graphically re-size or re-orient a Line, select either the start point or end point and re-position it to obtain a new size and/or orientation. You can also the re-size or re-orient a Line by pressing **Shift** and the cursor keys: the right and left cursor keys move the right-hand endpoint right and left, the up and down cursor keys move the right-hand endpoint up and down, respectively.

### Line properties

When a Line is selected its properties are displayed in the Properties sidebar (*screenshot below*), and the properties (listed below) can be edited in the sidebar. You can also right-click a Line to pop up the Properties sidebar with the properties of the Line in it.

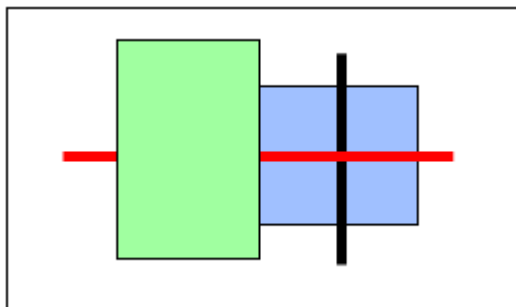


The following Line properties can be edited in the Properties sidebar:

- *Color*: Specifies a color for the Line. The default is black.
- *Size and position*: The location of the start and end points of the Line can be specified using an x-y (horizontal-vertical) coordinate system. The reference frame is created with the top left corner of the Layout Container having the coordinates (  $x=0$ ,  $y=0$  ).
- *Width*: Specifies the thickness of the Line.

### Lines and stacking order

When a Line is in a stack consisting of Layout Boxes and other Lines, it can be sent backward or brought forward using the **Order** menu commands in the context menu of the selected Line. Using these commands a Line can be ordered: (i) relative to its nearest neighbor on the stack (the **Bring Forward** and **Send Backward** commands), or (ii) relative to the entire stack (the **Bring to Front** and **Send to Back** commands).



In the screenshot above, the stacking order from front to back is as follows: green box, red line, black line, blue box.

## 8.10 The Change-To Feature

The **Change-To** feature is available when a template or the contents of a template are selected, and enables you to change: (i) the node for which that template applies, or (ii) how the node is created in the design.

### What can be changed with the Change-To feature

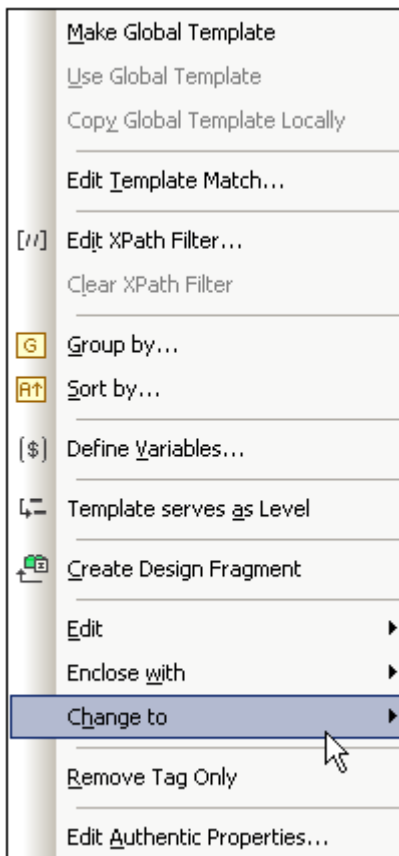
Either a node or its contents can be changed. In the image below left, the node is selected. In the image at right, the node's contents are selected.



The `n1:Name` element in the screenshot above has been created as `(contents)`, and so the node's contents are represented by the `(contents)` placeholder. Alternatively, the node could have been created as another type of content, for example, as an input field or combo box. Other types of content can also be selected.

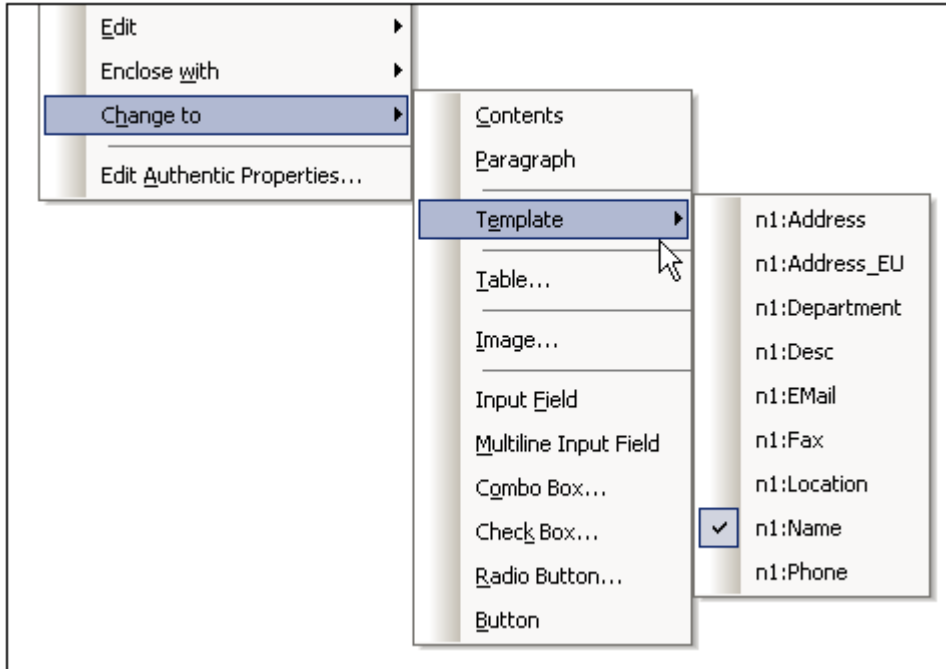
### The Change-To command

Access the change to command by right-clicking your selection. In the context menu that pops up, select **Change To** (screenshot below).



### Changing template matches

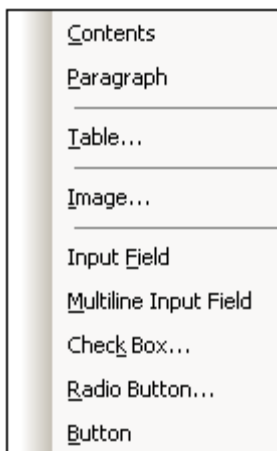
If a template is selected, you can change the node for which that template applies. This is useful if, for instance, the name of an element has been changed in the schema. When you mouse over the Change To command and select Template from the sub-menu that pops up, you are presented with a list of all the nodes that may be inserted as a child of the selected node's parent element. Click one of these nodes to make the template apply to that node.



If the selected node has a content model that does not match that described in the template, there will be structural inconsistencies. Such inconsistencies are errors and are indicated with red strikethroughs in the tags of nodes that are invalid.

### Changing the content type of the node

If a template or its contents are selected, then you can change the type of content the node is created as. On hovering over the Change To command in the context menu, the type of content that the selected node can be changed to is displayed as options in the sub-menu that pops up (*screenshot below*).



The screenshot above has been taken with a combo box selected.





## **Chapter 9**

---

### **SPS File: Structure**

## 9 SPS File: Structure

The structure of an SPS document is both input- as well as output-driven, and it is controlled by:

- [Schema sources](#)
- [Modular SPSs](#)
- [Templates and Design Fragments](#)

### Input-driven structure: schemas and modular SPS files

By input-driven, we mean that the source schemas of SPS files specify the structure of the input document/s and that this structure is the structure on which the SPS document is based. For example, if a source schema specifies a structure that is a sequence of `Office` elements, then SPS design could have a template for the `Office` element. At processing time this template will be applied in turn to each `Office` element in the source data document.

Another example of how the source document structure drives the design of the SPS file can be seen in the use of tables. Say that an `Office` element contains multiple `Person` element children, and that each `Person` element contains a set of child elements such as `Name`, `Address`, `Telephone`, etc. Then a template in the form of a table can be created for the `Person` element. Each `Person` element can be presented in a separate row of the table (*screenshot below*), in which the columns are the details of the `Person` (the child elements of the `Person` element).

First	Last	Title (sorted by)
Loby	Matise	Accounting Manager
Frank	Further	Accounts Receivable
<b>Vernon</b>	<b>Callaby</b>	Office Manager

Such a template is possible because of the structure of the `Person` element and because the `Person` elements are siblings. In the table template a single row is designed for the `Person` element, and this processing (the row design) is applied in turn to each `Person` element in the source document, creating a new row for each `Person` element, with the child elements forming the columns of the table.

How to use various kinds of schema sources is described in the section, [Schema Sources](#).

Additionally, StyleVision allows SPSs to be re-used as modules within other SPSs. In this way, modules can be included within a structure and can modify it. However, a schema structure contained in a module must fit in with the structure of the underlying schema of the containing SPS. How to work with modular SPSs is described in the section, [Modular SPSs](#).

### Output-driven structure: templates and design fragments

While the schema sources provide the structure of the input data document, the actual design of the output document is what is specified in the SPS document. This design is contained in one document template called the main template. The main template typically contains several component templates and can reference global templates. Templates are described in the section, [Templates and Design Fragments](#).

This composability (of multiple templates) is further enhanced by a StyleVision feature called Design Fragments, which enables specific processing to be assigned to a document fragment that can be re-used. A Design Fragment is different than a global template in that: (i) it can be

composed of multiple templates; and (ii) identical content with different processing can be created in separate design fragments, either of which can be used in a template according to the situation. For example, in some processing situations, an `Email` node might be required as a link that opens an empty email; in other cases the `Email` element could be required in bold and in red. Two separate design fragments could provide the respective processing, and both can be re-used as required.

Design fragments are described in detail in the section, [Design Fragments](#).

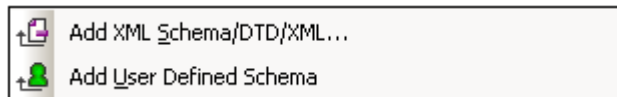
## 9.1 Schema Sources

The schema sources are the starting point of the design, and design structure can be influenced by: (i) choices you make during schema selection, and (ii) the root elements you select in the schema.

### Schema selection

The selection of the schema for a new SPS file can be done in the following ways:

1. Click **File | New** and directly select a schema source to add via one of the methods (except **New (empty)**) available in the menu that pops up.
2. Click **File | New**, select **New (empty)** from the menu that pops up. After the new SPS is created and displayed in the GUI, in the [Design Overview sidebar](#), select the **Add New Schema** command. This pops up a menu listing the methods you can use to add different types of schemas (*screenshot below*). Each command in this menu is described in the sub-sections of this section.




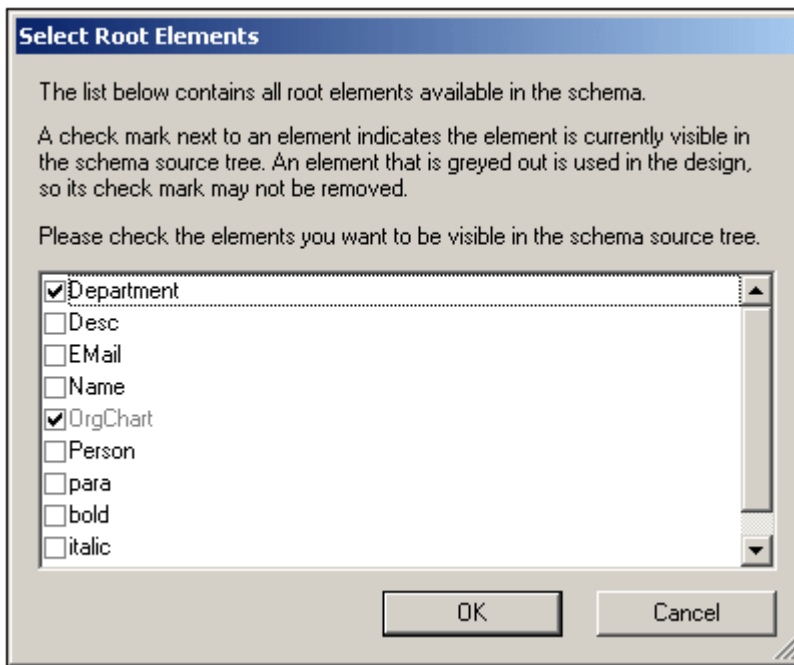
The schema source can be selected from a file or be user-defined. An important point to consider is whether you will be using global templates, and whether elements you wish to create as global templates are defined as global elements in the schema. When adding a DTD from file, remember that all elements defined in the DTD are global elements. When adding an XML Schema from file, it is worth checking what elements are defined as global elements and, should you wish to make any change to the schema, whether this is permitted in your XML environment.

**Note:** If you wish to add a namespace to an SPS or to an XSLT stylesheet being generated from an SPS, the namespace must be added to the top-level `schema` element of the XML Schema on which the SPS is based.

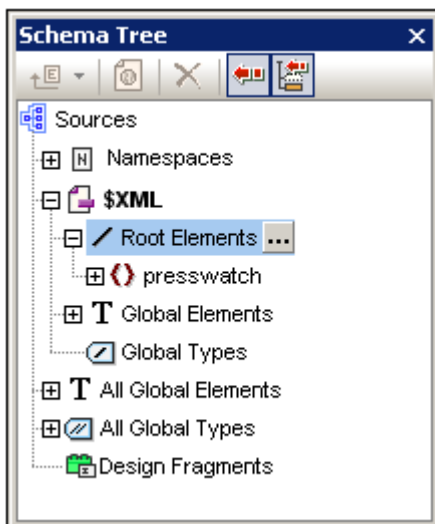
### Root elements

If a schema source has multiple [global elements](#), then multiple root elements ([document elements](#)) can be selected for use in the design. This enables the SPS design to have templates that match multiple document elements. The advantage of this is that if an SPS, say `UniversalSPS.sps`, based on `UniversalSchema.xsd` has one template each for its two root elements, `Element-A` and `Element-B`, then this one SPS can be used with an XML instance document which has `Element-A` as its document element as well as with another XML instance document which has `Element-B` as its document element. For each XML instance, the relevant template is used, while the other is not used. This is because for the document element of each XML instance document, there is only one template in the SPS which matches that document element. For example, the document element `/Element-A` will be matched by the template which selects `/Element-A` but not by that which selects `/Element-B`. In this connection, it is important to remember that if multiple global elements are defined in the schema, an XML document with any one of these global elements as its document element is valid (assuming of course that its substructure is valid according to the schema).

To set up the SPS to use multiple root elements ([document elements](#)), click the  button to the right of the `/Root elements` entry of the schema. The following dialog pops up.



The dialog lists all the global elements in the schema. Select the global elements that should be available as root elements ([document elements](#)), and click **OK**. The schema tree would then look something like this:



For the SPS represented in the screenshot above, two templates, to match both the [document elements](#), can now be created in the design. The SPS can then be used with different XML instances that are valid according to `NanonullOrg.xsd`, some with `Department` as document element, others with `OrgChart` as document element. The appropriate template will be used in the case of each instance document.

## DTDs and XML Schemas

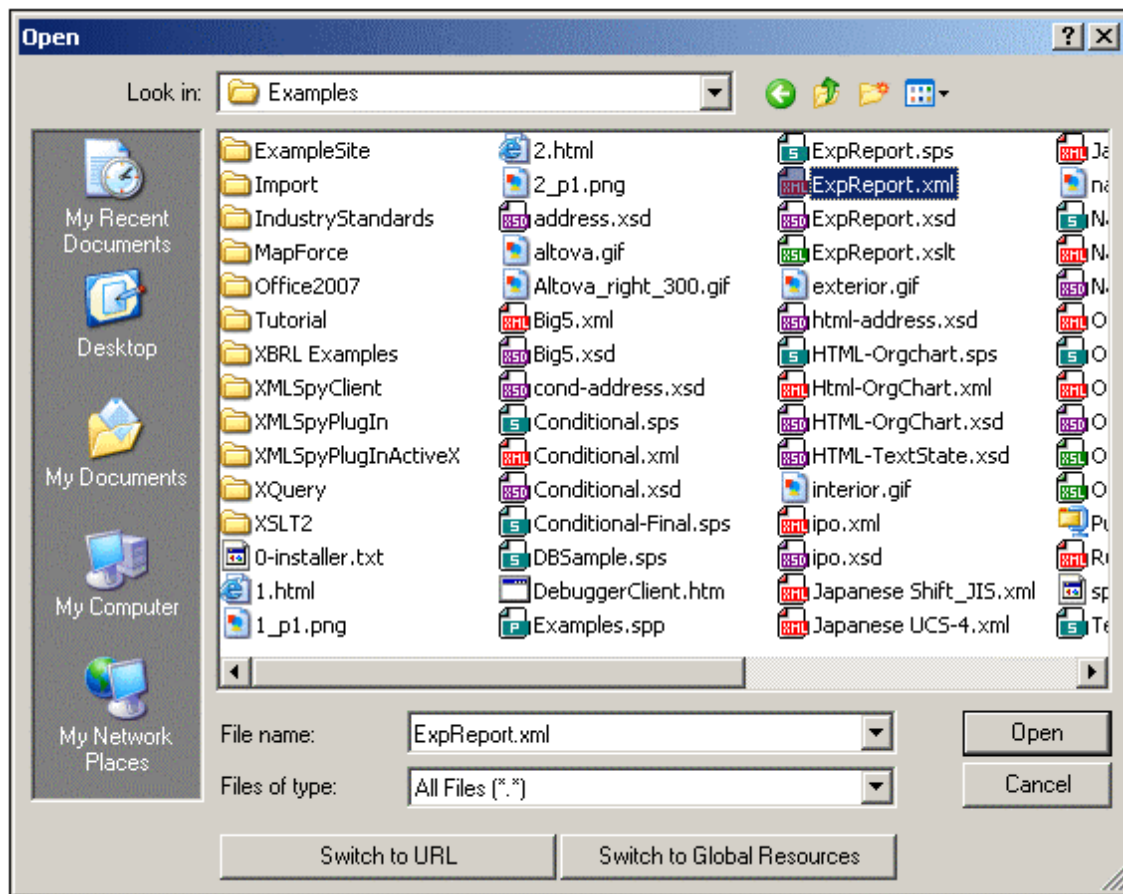
An SPS can be based on an XML Schema or DTD. An XML Schema or DTD can be created as a schema source in one of the following ways:

- The XML Schema or DTD is created as a schema source directly when the SPS is created (**File | New | New from XML Schema / DTD / XML**).
- The XML Schema or DTD is added to an empty SPS (in the [Design Overview sidebar](#)).

The respective commands prompt you to browse for the XML Schema or DTD. If the schema is valid, it is created as a schema source in the Schema Sources tree of the Schema Tree sidebar. Alternatively, an XML file can be selected. If an XML Schema (.xsd) or DTD file is associated with the XML file, then the XML Schema or DTD file is loaded as the source schema and the XML file is loaded as the Working XML File. If no schema is associated with the XML file, a dialog pops up asking whether you wish to generate an XML Schema based on the structure and contents of the XML file or browse for an existing schema. If you choose to generate a schema, the generated schema will be loaded as the source schema, and the XML file will be loaded as the Working XML File.

## Selecting files via URLs and Global Resources

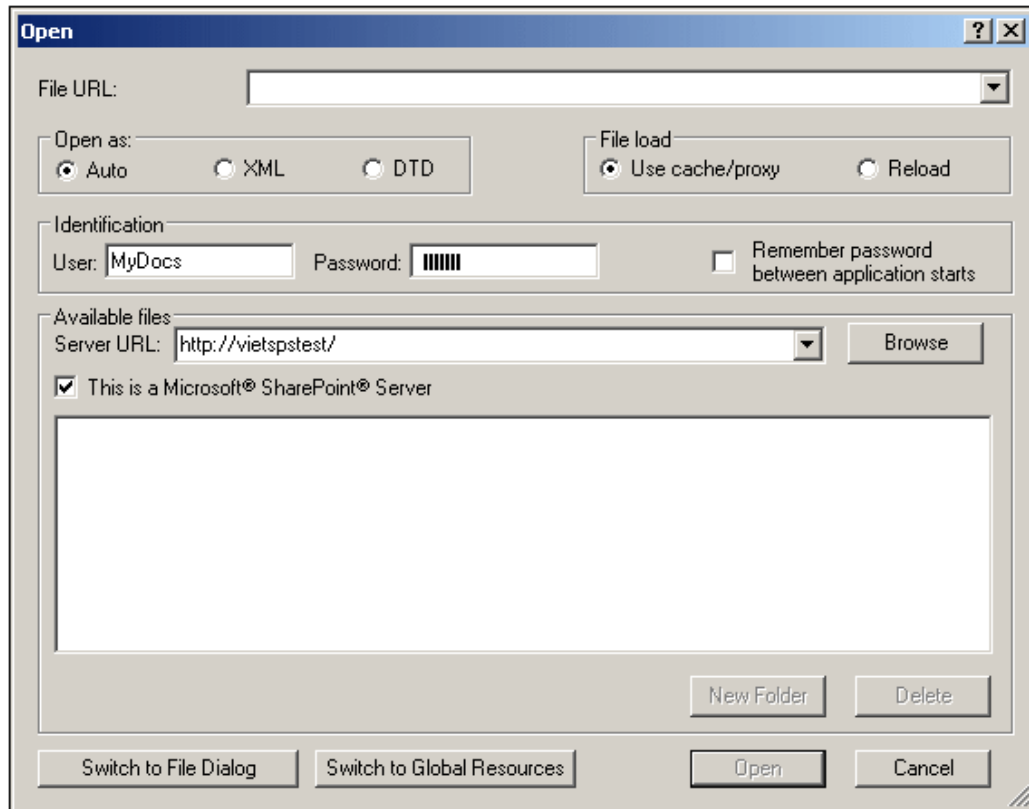
In several File Open and File Save dialogs, you can choose to select the required file or save a file via a URL or a global resource (*see screenshot below*). Select the **Switch to URL** or **Switch to Global Resource** to go to one of these selection processes.



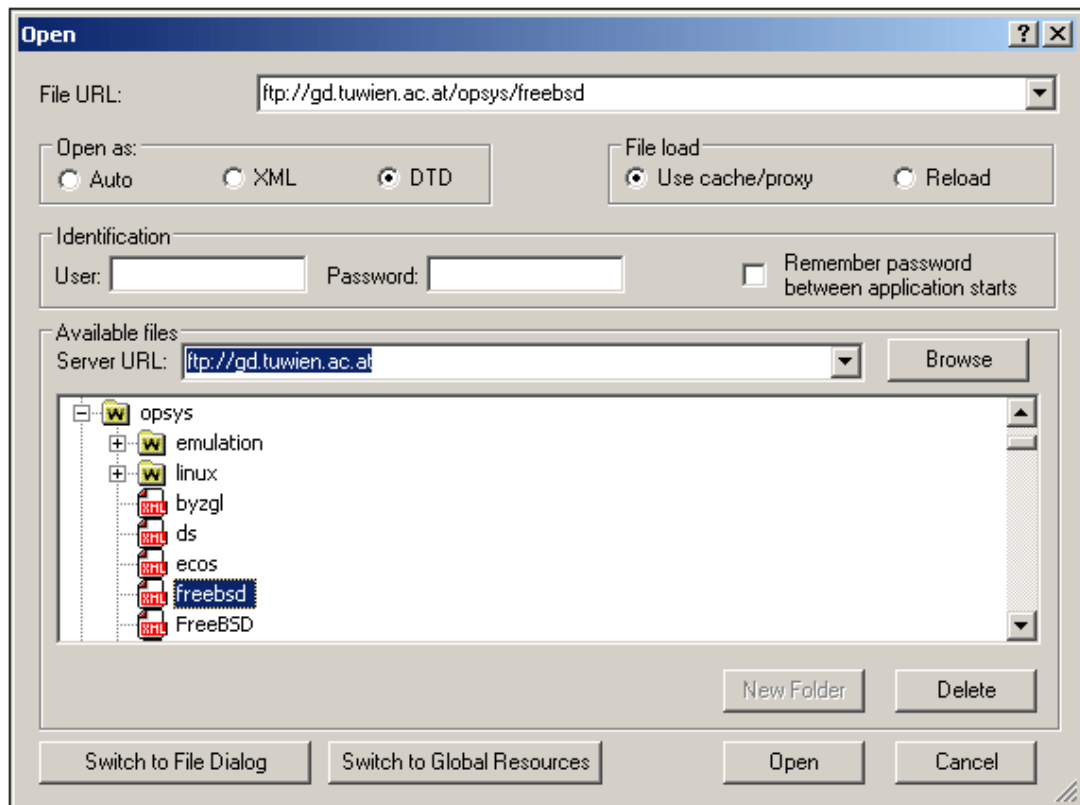
### Selecting files via URLs

To select a file via a URL, do the following:

1. Click the **Switch to URL** command. This switches to the URL mode of the Open dialog (screenshot below).



2. Enter the URL you want to access, in the *Server URL* field (screenshot above). If the server is a Microsoft® SharePoint® Server, check the *Microsoft® SharePoint® Server* check box. See the Microsoft® SharePoint® Server Notes below for further information about working with files on this type of server.
3. If the server is password protected, enter your User-ID and password in the *User* and *Password* fields.
4. Click **Browse** to view and navigate the directory structure of the server.
5. In the folder tree, browse for the file you want to load and click it.



The file URL appears in the File URL field (*screenshot above*). The **Open** button only becomes active at this point.

6. Click the **Open** button to load the file. The file you open appears in the main window.

**Note:** The Browse function is only available on servers which support WebDAV and on Microsoft SharePoint Servers. The supported protocols are FTP, HTTP, and HTTPS.

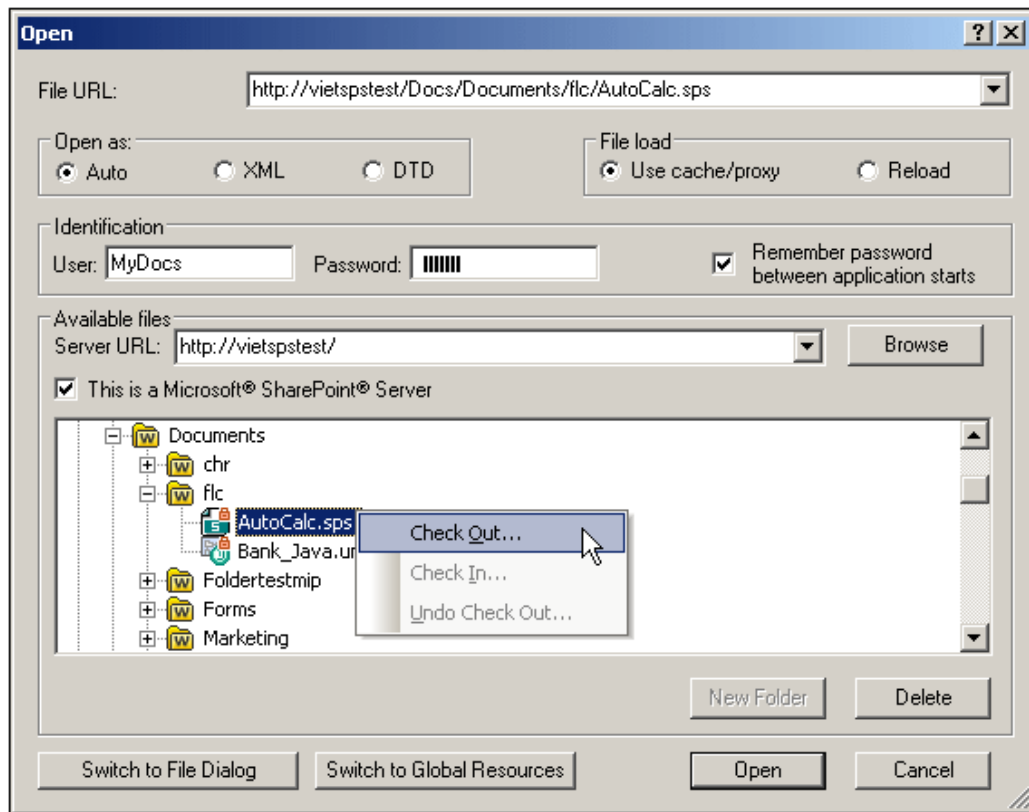
**Note:** To give you more control over the loading process, you can choose to load the file through the local cache or a proxy server (which considerably speeds up the process if the file has been loaded before). Alternatively, you may want to reload the file if you are working, say, with an electronic publishing or database system; select the **Reload** option in this case

#### Microsoft® SharePoint® Server Notes

Note the following points about files on Microsoft® SharePoint® Servers:




- In the directory structure that appears in the Available Files pane (*screenshot below*), file icons have symbols that indicate the check-in/check-out status of files.



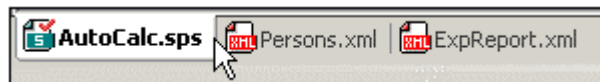


Right-clicking a file pops up a context menu containing commands available for that file (*screenshot above*).

- The various file icons are shown below:

	Checked in. Available for check-out.
	Checked out by another user. Not available for check-out.
	Checked out locally. Can be edited and checked-in.

- After you check out a file, you can edit it in your Altova application and save it using **File | Save (Ctrl+S)**.
- You can check-in the edited file via the context menu in the Open URL dialog (see *screenshot above*), or via the context menu that pops up when you click the file tab in the Main Window of your application (*screenshot below*).



- When a file is checked out by another user, it is not available for check out.
- When a file is checked out locally by you, you can undo the check-out with the Undo Check-Out command in the context menu. This has the effect of returning the file unchanged to the server.
- If you check out a file in one Altova application, you cannot check it out in another Altova application. The file is considered to be already checked out to you. The available commands at this point in any Altova application supporting Microsoft® SharePoint® Server will be: **Check In** and **Undo Check Out**.

**Opening and saving files via Global Resources**

To open or save a file via a global resources, click **Switch to Global Resource**. This pops up a dialog in which you can select the global resource. These dialogs are described in the section, [Using Global Resources](#). For a general description of Global Resources, see the [Global Resources](#) section in this documentation.

**The `anyType` datatype of XML Schema**

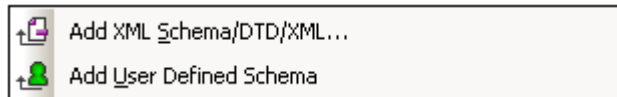
If an element in the XML Schema has been assigned the `anyType` datatype of XML Schema or if it has not been assigned any datatype, then the schema tree in the Schema Tree will show this element as having all the global elements of that schema as possible children. For example, if an element called `email` has not been assigned any datatype, then it will be displayed in the schema tree with all global elements as possible children, such as, for example: `person`, `address`, `city`, `tel`, etc. To avoid this, assign the `email` element a datatype such as `xs:string`.

## User-Defined Schemas

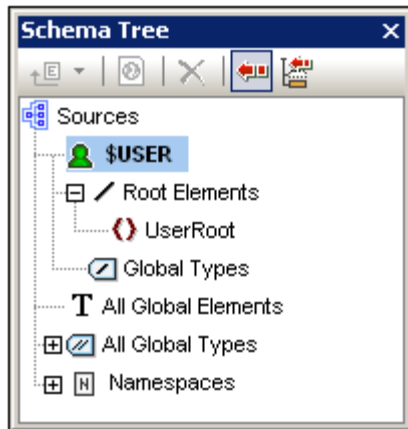
You can quickly create a user-defined schema in the [Schema Tree sidebar](#). This is useful if you have an XML document that is not based on any schema and you wish to create an SPS for this XML document.





To add and create a user-defined schema, in the Schema Tree sidebar, do the following:

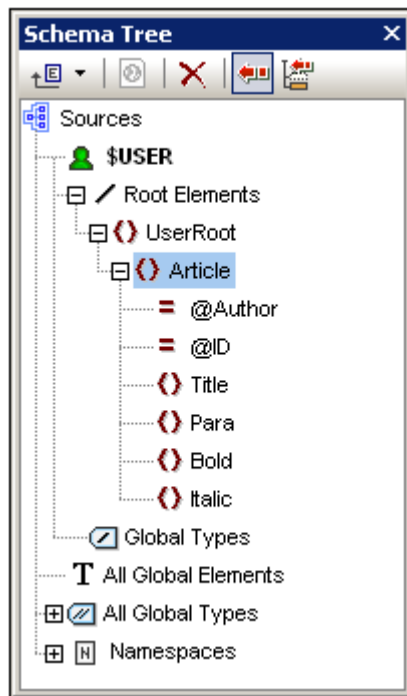
1. Click **File | New | New (empty)**. In the [Design Overview sidebar](#), click the **Add New Schema** command (under the Sources heading), and select **Add User-Defined Schema** (*screenshot below*).



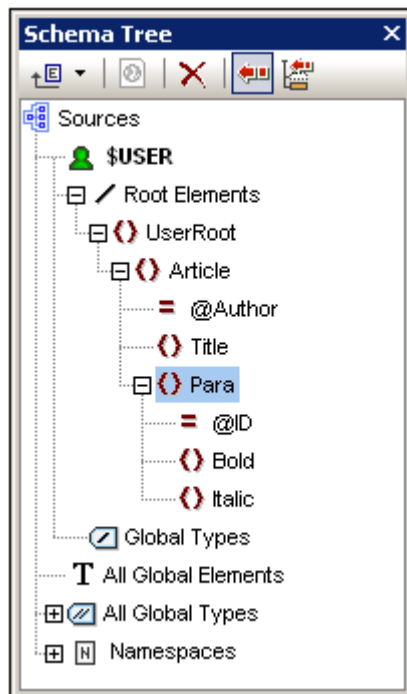
The new schema is created and is indicated with the parameter `$USER` (*screenshot below*).



2. In the Root Elements tree, there is a single [root element \(document element\)](#) called `UserRoot`.
3. Double-click `UserRoot` and rename it to match the [document element](#) of the XML document for which you are building this schema.
4. To assign a child element or an attribute to the document element, select the document element (`UserRoot`), and click, respectively, the Append New Element icon  or the Append New Attribute icon  in the toolbar of the [Schema Tree sidebar](#). Alternatively, you can right-click and select the required command from the context menu. After the new element or attribute is added to the tree, type in the desired name. Note that the Append New Element icon  and append New Attribute icon  have dropdown menus that can be accessed by clicking the dropdown arrow in the respective icon. The dropdown menus contain items that enable you to add nodes at alternative levels relative to the selected node. You can also drag nodes to the desired location (described in the next step). In the screenshot below, the `Article` element is the document element. The elements `Title`, `Para`, `Bold`, and `Italic`, and the attributes `ID` and `Author` have been added at the child level of `Article`.




- To move the elements `Bold` and `Italic`, and the attribute `ID` to the level of children of `Para`, select each individually and drag to the `Para` element. When a bent downward-pointing arrow appears, drop the dragged node. It will be created as a "child" of `Para` (screenshot below).



- When any element other than the document element is selected, adding a new element or attribute adds the new node at the same level as the selected element. Drag a node (element or attribute) into an element node to create it as a "child" of the element node.

**Editing node names and deleting nodes**

To edit the name of an element or attribute, double-click in the name and edit the name. To delete a node, select it and click the Remove icon  in the toolbar. Alternatively, select **Remove** from the context menu.

## 9.2 Modular SPSs

The global templates of an SPS, as well as Design Fragments, JavaScript functions, and page layout items can be used in the design of another SPS. This enables:

1. The re-use of global templates and other components across multiple SPSs, the main advantages of which are single-source editing and consistency of output.
2. SPSs to be modularized, and thus to be more flexibly structured.

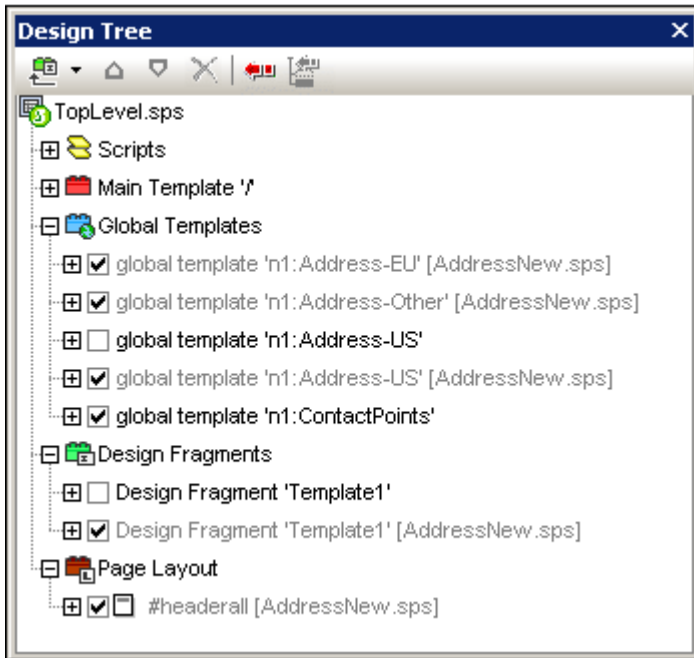
In any given SPS, one or more SPSs can be added as modules. Some types of components (or objects) in these modules are then available to the importing (or referring) SPS.

### Available module objects

The section, [Available Module Objects](#), not only describes the extent to which, and conditions under which, the various components of an SPS are available to an importing SPS. It also lists those components that are not available to the importing SPS. You should note that if an added module itself contains modules, then these are added recursively to the referring SPS. In this way, modularization can be extended to several levels and across a broad design structure.

### Creating a modular SPS

To build a modularized SPS, first [add the required SPS](#) to the main SPS as a module. All the global templates, Design Fragments, JavaScript functions, and page layout items in the added module are available to the referring SPS. Each of the available objects is listed in the Design Tree, under its respective heading (*screenshot below*), and can be activated or deactivated, respectively, by checking or unchecking its check box.



These objects can then be re-used in the referring SPS according to their respective inclusion mechanisms. Global templates and page layout items typically would need merely to be activated in order for them to be applied in the referring SPS. Design fragments have to be dragged from the Design Tree to the required location. And JavaScript functions are assigned via the Property window as event handlers for the selected design component.

How to create and work with a modular SPS is described in the section, [Creating a Modular](#)

[SPS.](#)**Terminology**

When an SPS is used within another module it is said to be added to the latter, and we call the process **adding**. The two SPSs are referred to, respectively, as the **added SPS module** and the **referring SPS module**. When an SPS module is added, its **objects** are added to the referring SPS module. These objects are called **module objects**, and are of the following types: global templates; Design Fragments; JavaScript functions; and page layout items.

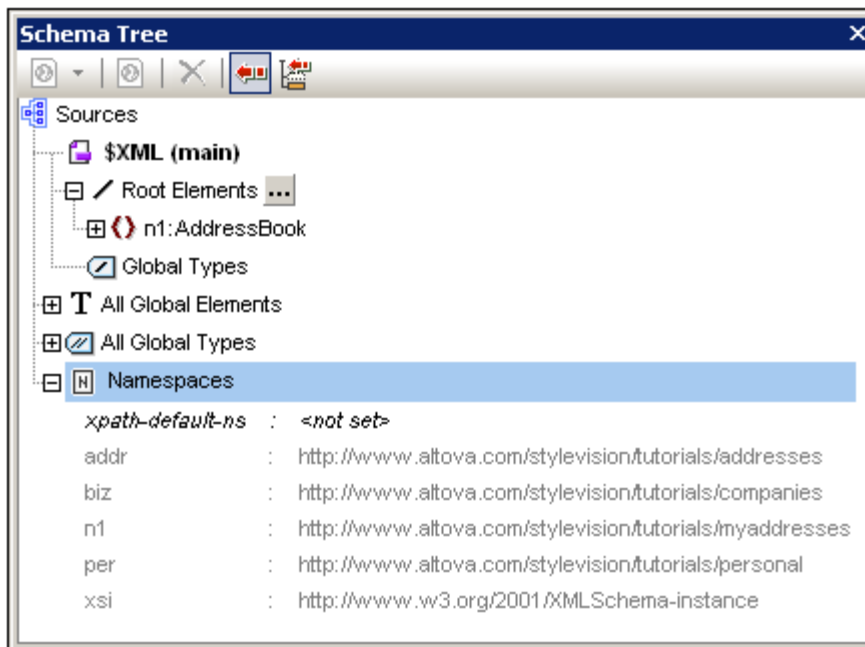
## Available Module Objects

This section lists the objects in [added SPS modules](#) that are available to the [referring SPS module](#). The listing explains in what way each object is available to the referring SPS module and how it can be used there. For a step-by-step approach to creating modular SPSs, see the next section, [Creating a Modular SPS](#). This section ends with a list of objects in the added SPS that are not available to the referring SPS module, which will help you to better understand how modular SPSs work.

- [Namespace declarations](#)
- [Global templates](#)
- [Design fragments](#)
- [Added modules](#)
- [Scripts](#)
- [CSS styles](#)
- [Page layouts](#)
- [Unavailable module objects](#)

### Namespace declarations

Each SPS stores a list of namespace URIs and their prefixes. When an SPS is added as a module, the namespaces in it are compared to the namespaces in the schema source/s of the referring SPS. If a namespace URI in the added SPS matches a namespace URI in the schema source/s of the referring SPS, then the prefix used in the schema source of the referring SPS is adopted as the prefix for that namespace in the referring SPS. If a namespace in the added SPS cannot be matched with any in the schema source/s of the referring SPS, then an error message indicating this is displayed.

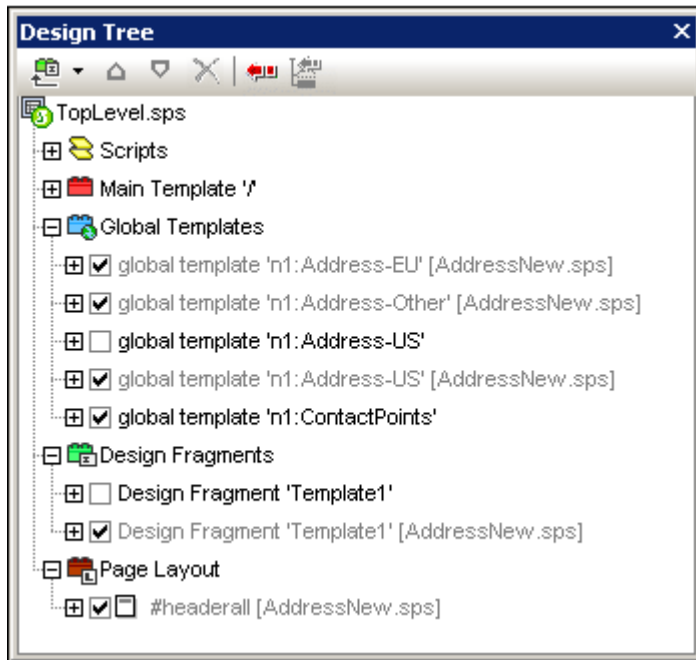


The screenshot above shows the various namespaces in an SPS, together with their prefixes, in the Schema Tree sidebar. These namespaces come from the source schema/s and cannot be edited.

### Global templates



The [global templates](#) of the added SPS module are available to the referring SPS module and are displayed in the [Design Tree sidebar](#) (screenshot below).



Note that the main template of added modules are not available. This means that if you plan to re-use a template via the modular approach, you must create it as a global template. If no global template is defined for a particular element and processing is invoked for that element, then the default processing for that element (XSLT's built-in templates) will be used.

### Design fragments

[Design fragments](#) in the added SPS module are available to the referring SPS and are displayed in the [Design Tree sidebar](#) (screenshot above). When inserting a design fragment in the design, care should be taken to place the design fragment within the correct context node in the design.

### Added modules

Each added SPS module also makes available to the referring SPS its own added modules, and their added modules, and so on. In this way, adding one module recursively makes available all modules that have been added to it, down multiple levels. Needless to say, these modules must together construct a content model that is valid according to the source schema/s of the referring SPS module. Modules are displayed and can be managed in the [Design Overview sidebar](#).

### Scripts

The scripts in all the added SPS modules are available for use in the referring SPS and are displayed in the [Design Tree sidebar](#). In effect, the scripts of all the added modules are collected in a library that is now—in the referring SPS—available for selection in the Properties dialog.

### CSS styles

The global styles present in added SPS modules are carried over to the referring SPS as global

styles and the style rules are displayed in the [Style Repository sidebar](#). The CSS files are also listed in the [Design Overview sidebar](#). Similarly, external CSS files that were available to the added SPS module, are available to the referring SPS module.

### Page layouts

The page layouts of an added module are available to the referring SPS and are displayed in the [Design Tree sidebar](#).

### Module objects that are not available to the referring SPS

The following objects of the added module are not available to the referring SPS:

- **Parameter definitions:** are ignored.
- **Schema sources:** The schema source on which the added SPS is based is ignored. Bear in mind that the content model of the document element of the added SPS must be contained within the content model of the referring SPS; otherwise it would not be possible to correctly use the added SPS as a module. If you wish, you could always add a user-defined schema to the referring SPS. The additional schema could accommodate the content model of the added global template/s.
- **Working XML File and Template XML File:** References to these files are ignored. The referring SPS uses its own Working XML and Template XML Files.
- **XPath default namespaces:** If they have been set on a module that is imported then they are not carried through to the importing SPS.

## Creating a Modular SPS

Creating a modular SPS consists of three broad parts:

1. Design and save the [SPS module to be added](#).
2. [Add the module](#) to the SPS in which it is to be used (that is, to the referring SPS module).
3. [Activate or deactivate the added object/s](#) as required.
4. Apply the required object wherever required.

### The SPS module to be added

There are two points to bear in mind when creating an SPS that will be added to another:

1. The templates that can be used in the [referring SPS module](#) can only be [global templates](#). This means that the templates you wish to re-use must be created as global templates in the [SPS module that is to be added](#).
2. The document structure defined in the SPS module to be added must be valid within the content model defined by the [source schema/s of the referring SPS](#). If an added template is not contained in the content model defined by the main schema of the SPS, its content model, however, can still be defined in a user-defined schema.

When creating the SPS module to be added, the schema on which you base the SPS could be one of the following:

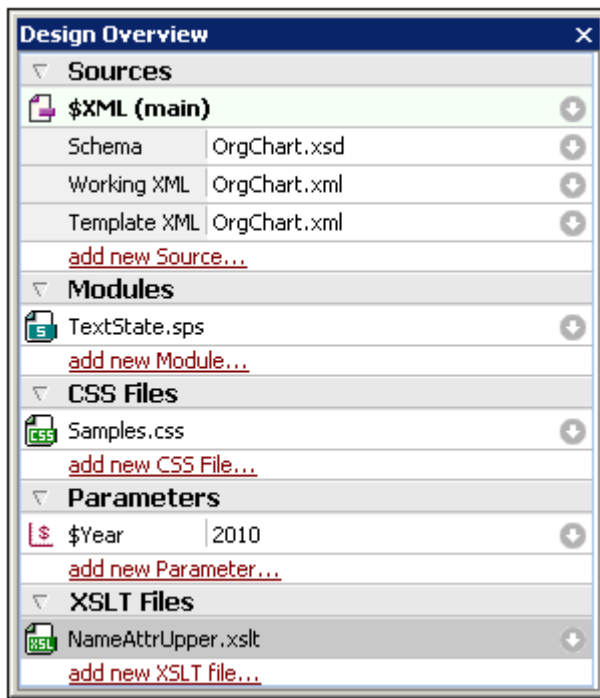
- The main source schema of the referring SPS. In this case, when the SPS is added, the added global templates will be part of the content model of the referring SPS's main schema. The output of these global templates in Authentic View is, therefore, editable.
- A schema which defines a content model that is part of the content model defined by the main schema of the referring SPS. In this case, when the global templates are added, they will fit into the content model of the main schema of the referring SPS. The output of these global templates is editable in Authentic View.
- A schema which defines a content model that is **not** part of the content model defined by the main schema of the referring SPS. When this SPS module is added, its global templates will not be part of the content model of the main schema of the referring SPS. They can, however, be used to produce output if a user-defined schema is used that defines a content model that contains the content model of the global template/s. In Authentic View, however, the output of these global templates cannot be edited.

When defining the content models in your schemas, you should pay close attention to the [namespaces](#) used since these determine the expanded names of nodes.

You could use a [Working XML File](#) to test the output of the SPS module to be added. The reference to this Working XML File will be [ignored by the referring SPS](#).

### Adding the SPS module

To add a module to an SPS, in the [Design Overview](#) (*screenshot below*), click the Add New Module command, browse for the required SPS file in the dialog that appears, select it, and click **Open**.



The module is added to the SPS and is listed under the Modules heading in the Design Overview. In the screenshot above, the `BusinessAddressBook.sps` and `PersonalAddressBook.sps` modules have been added to the `AddressBook.sps` module (the active SPS). All the added module objects are listed in the Design Tree sidebar; added CSS files, though, are also also listed in the Design Overview. If the added modules themselves refer to modules, these latter, indirectly imported modules are listed under the Modules heading, but in gray. Information about which modules import an indirectly imported module is available in a pop-up that appears when you mouseover the indirectly imported module.

To open one of the added modules or indirectly imported modules quickly in StyleVision, right-click that module, and select **Open Defining Module** from the context menu that pops up.

#### **Order of added modules**

The order in which modules are added and listed is significant for the prioritizing of CSS styles. In keeping with the CSS cascade order, CSS style rules in a relatively later module (lower down the list) have priority over style rules defined in a relatively earlier module (higher up the list). CSS styles in the referring SPS module have priority over those in any added module. To change the relative position of an added module, select it in the Design Overview and click, as required, the **Move Up** or **Move Down** toolbar icon in the Design Tree toolbar.

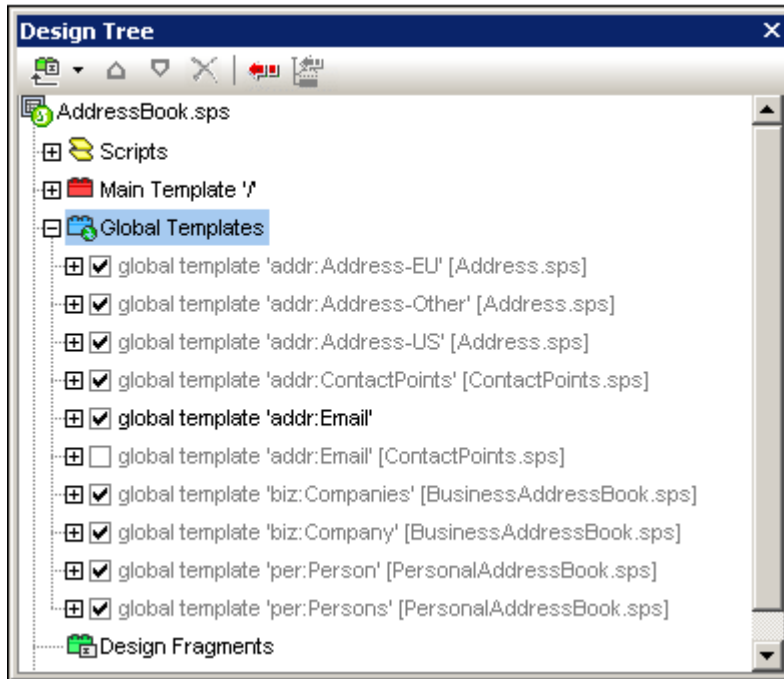
The module order is not significant for resolving conflicts among scripts, global templates, design fragments, and page layout items.

#### **File modification alerts**

If any added file (whether an SPS module, schema, or Working XML File) is modified after the referring SPS module has been opened, then a file modification pop-up will alert you to the change and ask whether the referring SPS module should be refreshed with the changes.

### Activating/deactivating the added object

All module objects in all added modules (whether added directly or indirectly) are added to the referring SPS and are listed under the corresponding headings in the Design Tree: *Scripts*; *Global Templates*; *Design Fragments*; and *Page Layout*. Next to each of these objects is a check box (see screenshot below), which you can check or uncheck to, respectively, activate or deactivate that object. When an object is deactivated, it is effectively removed from the SPS.



In the screenshot above, all the global templates used in the `AddressBook.sps` module are listed under the *Global Templates* heading. Those that have been added via other modules (whether directly or indirectly) are displayed in gray. Those that have been created directly in `AddressBook.sps` are displayed in black. The screenshot shows that only one global template, `addr:Email`, has been created in `AddressBook.sps` itself. All the other global templates have been added via other modules, and the file in which each of these is defined is listed next to its name.

Notice that there are two global templates for `addr:Email`, one created in the referring SPS (`AddressBook.sps`) itself, and the other created in the added module `ContactPoints.sps`. If more than one global template has the same (namespace-) expanded name, then only one of these will be active at a time. You can select which one by checking its check box. (Alternatively, you activate the global template from its context menu in Design View.) This mechanism is useful if you: (i) wish to override an added global template with one that you create in the referring SPS module, or (ii) wish to resolve a situation where a global template for one element is defined in more than one added module.

A global template that has been defined in the current SPS can be deleted by selecting it and clicking the **Remove** button. However, global templates that have been defined in an added module cannot be removed from the referring SPS. They must be removed by opening the added SPS and removing the global template there.

Individual scripts, Design Fragments, and page layout items can be activated and deactivated in the same way.

**Applying or using modular objects**

In the [referring SPS module](#), you design your templates as usual. Each different type of added object is used or applied differently. You should, of course, ensure that each module object you wish to apply has [been activated](#).

**Global templates**

When you wish to use a [global template](#) from any of the added SPS modules, you must make sure that this global template is indeed applied. This can be done in one of two ways, according to which one is appropriate for your design:

- In the main template, specify that the element template either uses the global template for that element or copies that global template locally. These two commands are available in the context menu that appears when you right-click the element tag in the design.
- In the main template, the contents or rest-of-contents placeholders cause templates to be applied, leading to the relevant global templates being processed.

**Design Fragments**

To use a Design Fragment, drag it from the Design Tree to the desired location in the main template or a global template. Make sure that the location where the Design Fragment is dropped is the correct context node for that Design Fragment. For details, see [Design Fragments](#).

**Scripts**

All JavaScript functions (whether in an added module or created in the referring SPS) are available as event handlers, and can be [set for a particular event via the Properties sidebar](#).

**Page layout items**

If page layout items have been defined in any of the added modules, these are listed under the Page Layout item of the referring SPS module. If a page layout item is not required, it can be unchecked. Where there is more than one option for the same item, for example, `HeaderOdd`, then you can select which one of the options is to be applied by checking that option's check box.

## Example: An Address Book

The folder `C:/Documents and Settings/<username>/My Documents/Altova/StyleVision2010/StyleVisionExamples/Tutorial/ModularSPS` contains examples of modular SPSs. The example files in this folder comprise a project in which an address book containing business and personal contacts is modularized. The example not only demonstrates the mechanisms in which modularization is implemented, but also illustrates the main reasons why one would modularize.

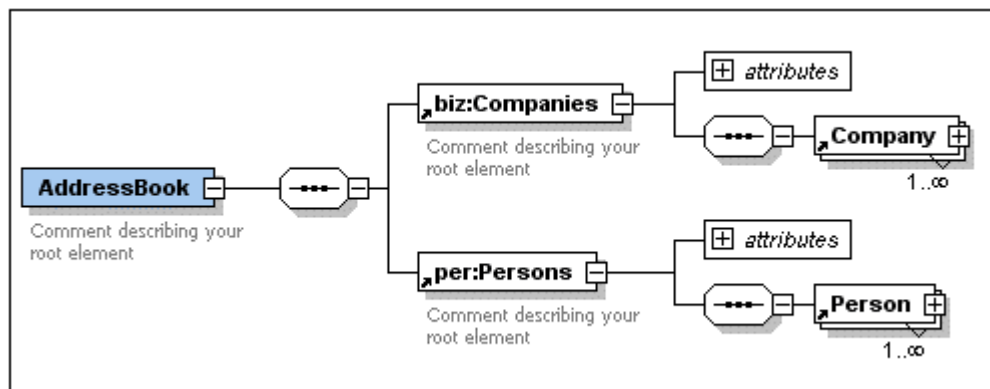
- The complete address book is composed of two modules: (i) a business address book, and (ii) a personal address book, each of which has a separate SPS defining different designs. The two modules together make up the composite address book. Modularization in this case is used to compose: the modules are the components of a larger unit.
- Although the content model of each module (business and personal address books) differs slightly from the other, both have a common module, which is the `ContactPoints` module, consisting of the core contact details: address, telephone, fax, and email. The `ContactPoints` module can therefore be shared between the two address books (business and personal). Modularization in this case enables a single module to be used as a common unit within multiple other units.
- Further, the `ContactPoints` module can be modularized to provide more flexibility. In the example project, we have created a separate `Address` module to contain the postal address, which may have one of three content models, depending on whether the address is in the EU, US, or elsewhere. The output for all three content models is defined in a single SPS. However, they could have been defined in separate SPSs, which would have provided finer granularity. In this case, modularization would provide more flexibility as modules could be re-used more easily.

The description of this project is organized into the following parts:

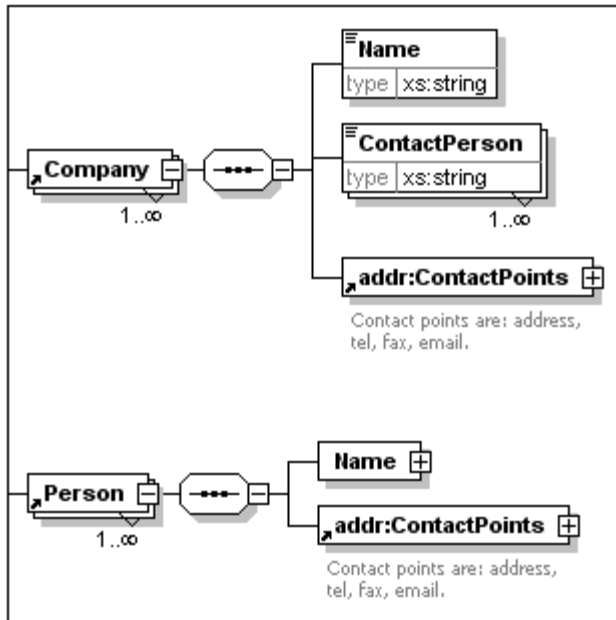
- [The schema files](#)
- [The XML data sources](#)
- [The SPS files](#)

### The schema files

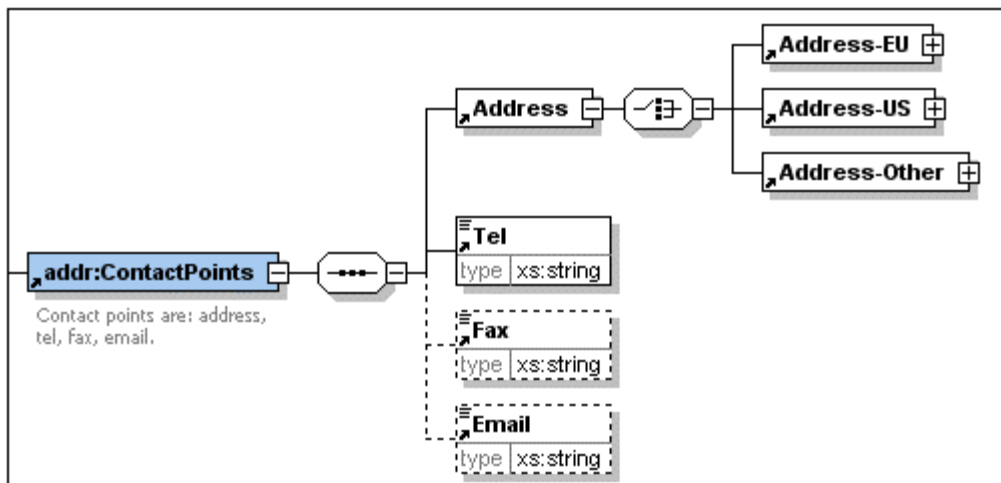
When creating schemas for modular SPSs, the most important thing to bear in mind is to create the elements that you wish to re-use as global elements. The schema for the address book is `AddressBook.xsd`. This schema has been constructed by importing the schemas for the business address book (`BusinessAddressBook.xsd`) and personal address book (`PersonalAddressBook.xsd`). The `BusinessAddressBook.xsd` schema provides a content model for companies, while the `PersonalAddressBook.xsd` schema provides a content model for persons (see screenshot below).



Both schemas import the `ContactPoints.xsd` schema (see screenshot below), which defines a content model for contact details.



Finally, the `ContactPoints.xsd` schema (screenshot below) includes the `Address.xsd` schema, which defines the three address-type content models: for EU, US, and other addresses.



Imports are used when the imported schema belongs to a different namespace than the importing schema. Includes are used when the included schema belongs to the same namespace as the including schema.

**Note:** The screenshots above are of the schema in the Schema/WSDL View of Altova's XMLSpy.

### The XML data sources

The XML data is contained in the file `AddressBook.xml`. This file is structured so that the



`AddressBook` element contains the `companies` and `persons` elements as its children. The content models of these two elements are defined in the schema files, `BusinessAddressBook.xsd` and `PersonalAddressBook.xsd`, respectively.

There are two additional XML data files, which correspond to the `BusinessAddressBook.xsd` and `PersonalAddressBook.xsd` schemas. These two XML files, `BusinessAddressBook.xml` and `PersonalAddressBook.xml`, are used as the Working XML Files of the corresponding SPS files.

The three XML files are the [Working XML Files](#) of the following SPS modules:

- `AddressBook.xml` => `AddressBook.sps`, `ContactPoints.sps`, `Address.sps`
- `BusinessAddressBook.xml` => `BusinessAddressBook.sps`
- `PersonalAddressBook.xml` => `PersonalAddressBook.sps`

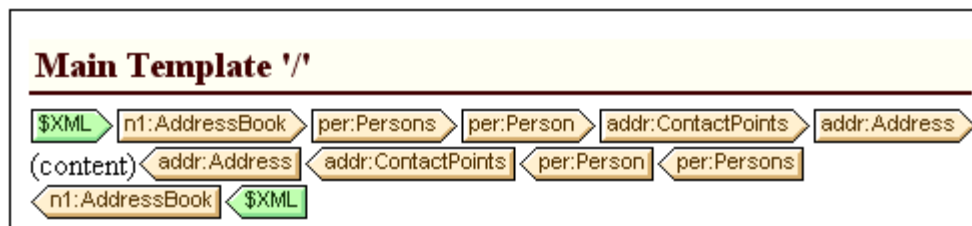
### The SPS modules

The description of the SPS modules starts with the most basic module (`Address.sps`) and progresses in compositionally incremental steps to the complete address book (`AddressBook.sps`). All the SPS modules use `AddressBook.xsd` as its schema.

### **Address.sps**

The key points to note are the use of the schema and the Working XML File.

- `Address.sps` uses `AddressBook.xsd` as its schema, but the schema could equally well have been `Address.xsd`, `ContactPoints.xsd`, `BusinessAddressBook.xsd`, or `PersonalAddressBook.xsd`—since the `Address` element is present in all these schemas and would be available as a global element. When the SPS module is added to another SPS module, the schema of the imported module is ignored, so which one is used is not important when the SPS is added as a module.
- The Working XML File is `AddressBook.xml`. Note that the main template in `Address.sps` specifies that only the `Address` element should be processed, and that global templates for `Address-EU`, `Address-US`, and `Address-Other` have been defined.

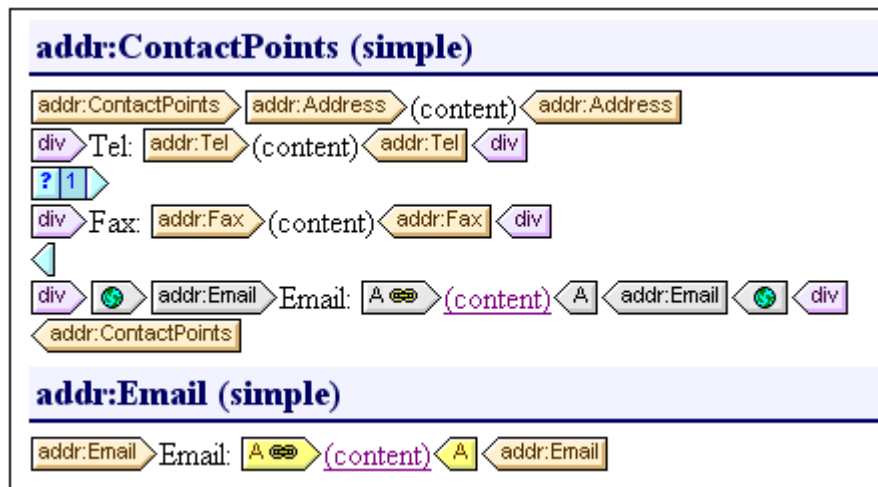


Because only the `Address` element is processed, the output previews show only the output of `Address`. When `Address.sps` is used as a module, the global templates are added and the main template is ignored.

### **ContactPoints.sps**

This SPS imports one module. Note the use of global templates within other global templates and the main template.

- `ContactPoints.sps` uses `AddressBook.xsd` as its schema and `AddressBook.xml` as its Working XML File.
- `Address.sps` is added as a module, thus making the global templates of the `Address-EU`, `Address-US`, and `Address-Other` elements available.
- Global templates for the `ContactPoints` and `Email` elements are defined. Note that the `ContactPoints` definition uses the global template of `Email` (screenshot below).



- The main template—required for the previews—uses the global template of the `ContactPoints` element, thus enabling previews of the `ContactPoints` output.

### ***BusinessAddressBook.sps and PersonalAddressBook.sps***

This SPS imports one module, which in turn imports another. Note that the main template simply applies global templates.

- Each of these two modules uses `AddressBook.xsd` as its schema. The Working XML Files are, respectively, `BusinessAddressBook.xml` and `PersonalAddressBook.xml`.
- `ContactPoints.sps` is added as a module. This causes `Address.sps` to be indirectly imported. All the global templates in these two modules are available to the referring SPS module.
- In `BusinessAddressBook.sps`, global templates are defined for the `Companies` and `Company` elements. Note that the `Company` definition uses the global template of `ContactPoints`.
- In `PersonalAddressBook.sps`, global templates are defined for the `Person` and `Persons` elements. The `Person` definition uses the global template of `ContactPoints`.

### ***AddressBook.sps***

There are two global templates for the `Email` element; any one can be activated..

- `AddressBook.sps` uses `AddressBook.xsd` as its schema. The Working XML File is `AddressBook.xml`.
- `BusinessAddressBook.sps` and `PersonalAddressBook.sps` are added as modules, and this causes `ContactPoints.sps` and `Address.sps` to be indirectly imported.
- A global template is defined for the `Email` element. This means that there are now two global templates for `Email`, one in `ContactPoints.sps` and the other in `AddressBook.sps` (see screenshot below).



- In the Global Templates list in the Design Tree (screenshot above), you can select

which of the two global templates should be active. StyleVision allows only one to be active at a time. Whichever is active is used within the `ContactPoints` global template.

- The main template contains some static content for the output header.

## 9.3 Templates and Design Fragments

The design document is composed of templates, and it is important to recognize the various types of templates that can be used.

- *Main templates and global templates:* The design document consists of one [main template](#) and, optionally, one or more [global templates](#). Global templates can be referenced via the main template.
- *Node-templates and variable iterators:* These are the templates that constitute the main template and global templates. A [node-template](#) matches a node in a schema source.
- *Design fragments:* These are templates that are designed separately and re-used in various parts of the design (main template or global templates).

In this section, we describe the role that templates and design fragments play in the structure of the design. We are not concerned here with the [presentation properties](#) in the design, only the structure.

**Note:** In Design View, the SPS can have several templates: the main template, global templates, and Design Fragments. You can control which of these template types is displayed in Design View by using [Template Display Filters](#), which are available as [toolbar icons](#). These display filters will help you optimize and switch between different displays of your SPS.

## Main Template

The [main template](#) determines the structure of the output. That is, the sequence in which the main template is laid out in the design is the sequence in which the output is laid out. In programming jargon, this is procedural processing. Processing starts at the beginning of the template and proceeds in sequence to the end. Along the way, nodes from the XML document are processed. The templates which process these nodes are called [local templates](#). After a local template is processed, the processor moves to the next component in the main template, and so on. Occasionally, a node may reference a [global template](#) for its processing. In such cases, after the global template is executed for that node, the processor returns to the position in the main template from which it branched out and continues in sequence from the next component onwards.

The entry point for the main template is the [document node](#) of the schema. StyleVision offers the option of selecting multiple root elements ([document elements](#)). This means that within the main template, there can be [local templates](#) for each of the active document elements. The one that is executed during processing will be that for the element which is the document element of the XML instance document being processed.

## Global Templates

A [global template](#) can be defined for any node or type in the schema, or for a node specified in an XPath pattern.

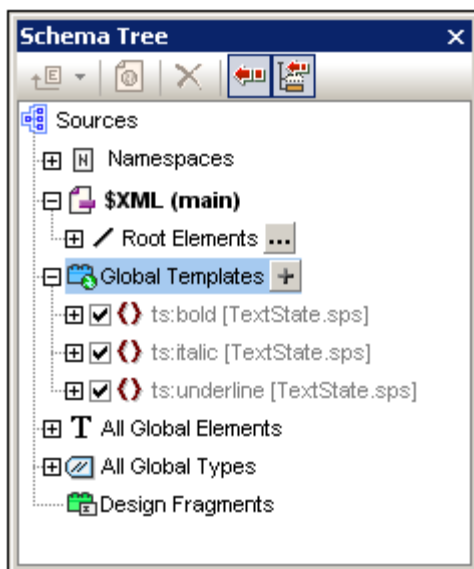
A global template specifies instructions for the selected node or type, and it is invoked by a call from the [main template](#), [design fragments](#), or other global templates. The processing model is similar to that of declarative programming languages, in that a single template is defined and invoked multiple times. In this way a single definition can be re-used multiple times. Global templates are invoked in two situations:

- When a node or type in the [main template](#) has been set to reference its global template (done by right-clicking the component in the design and selecting Make Global Template).
- When a [\(contents\)](#) or [\(rest-of-contents\)](#) is inserted within an element or type in a [local template](#), and the rest of the content of that element or type includes a node or type for which a [global template](#) exists.

Global templates are useful if a node (or type) occurs within various elements or in various locations, and a single set of instructions is required for all occurrences. For example, assume that a `para` element must be formatted the same no matter whether it occurs in a `chapter`, `section`, `appendix`, or `blockquote` element. An effective approach would be to define a global template for `para` and then ensure, that in the [main template](#) the global template for the `para` element is processed wherever required (for example, by including `//chapter/para` in the main template and specifying that `para` reference its global template; or by including `//chapter/title` and then including [\(contents\)](#) or [\(rest-of-contents\)](#) so that the rest of the content of the `chapter` element is processed with the available global templates and default templates). Also, a global template can be defined for a complex type (for example, one that defines an address model) or even for a simple type (for example, `xs:decimal`). In such cases, all occurrences of the type (complex or simple) that invoke the global template for that type will be processed according to the rules in the global template.

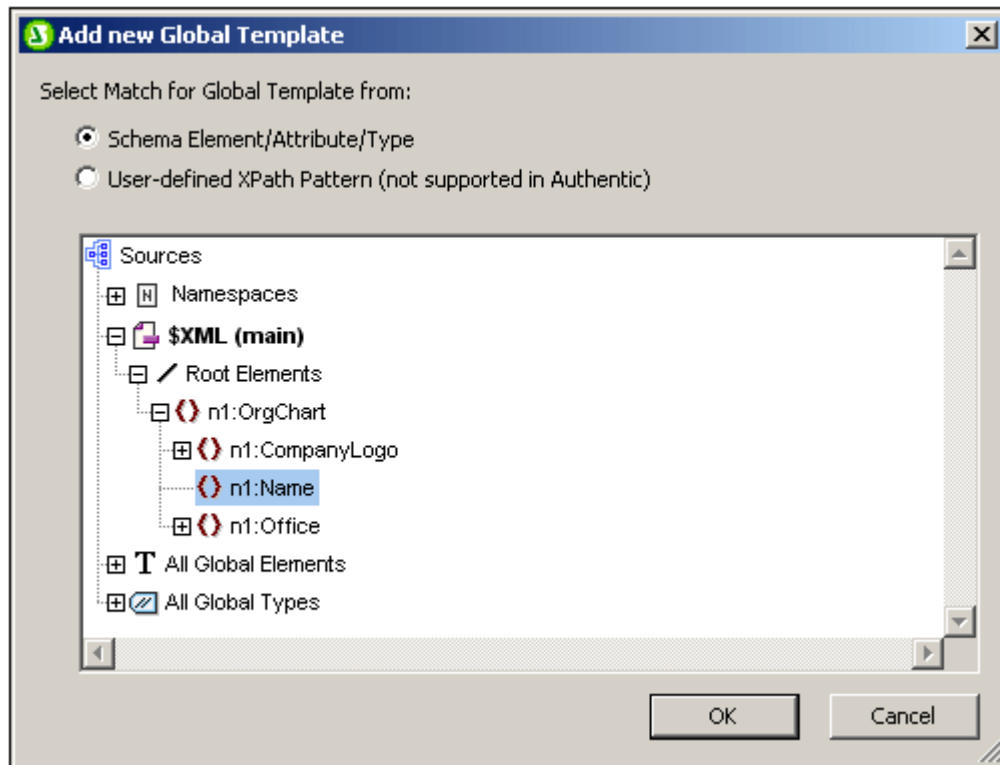
### Creating a global template

Global templates can be created for any node or type in the schema, or for a node specified in an XPath pattern., and are created from the Schema Tree sidebar (*screenshot below*).



A global template can be created in any of the following ways:

- Click the **Add New Global Template** button located at the right of the Global Templates item in the Schema Tree (see *screenshot above*). This pops up the Add New Global Template dialog (*screenshot below*). You can select an element, an attribute, or a type from the schema tree shown in the dialog, or you can enter an XPath pattern. This selects the node that must be created as the global template. Click **OK** to finish. The template will be created and appended to the already existing templates in Design View and can then be edited. In the Schema Tree, the schema node or type will be marked with a plus sign icon in front of it.



- Right-click the schema node or type component in the Schema Tree (under Root Elements, All Global Elements, or All Global Types, as appropriate), and select the command **Add New Global Template**. This pops up the Add New Global Template dialog, which is described above.
- Right-click the schema node or type component in the Schema Tree (under Root Elements, All Global Elements, or All Global Types, as appropriate), and select the command **Make/Remove Global Template**. The template will be created and appended to the already existing templates in Design View and can then be edited. In the Schema Tree, the schema node or type will be marked with a plus sign icon in front of it.
- Global templates can also be created from templates in the main template in Design View. Right-click the template (either in Design View or the Schema Tree sidebar) and select the command **Make Global Template**. A global template is created from the selected template (it is appended to the templates in Design View) and the template in the main template is automatically defined to **use** this global template (see below for an explanation of how global templates are *used*).

### Using a global template

After a global template has been created, it can be used when a node having the same qualified

name is inserted into the document (by dropping . Alternatively, if a local template is present in the design and a global template exists for a node having the same qualified name, then the global template can be used instead of the local template. To use a global template for a local template, right-click the local template in Design View and select the command **Use Global Template**. When a global template is used, its processing instructions are called and used by the local template at runtime.

Wherever a global template is used in the design, an XPath pattern can be created on the global template to filter the nodeset it addresses. To create such a filter, right-click the global template tag in the design, and select [Edit XPath Filter](#) in the context menu that appears. This pops up the [Edit XPath Expression dialog](#), in which the required expression can be entered.

### Copying a global template locally

After a global template has been created, its processing instructions can be copied directly to a template of the same qualified name in the main template. To do this, right-click the local template and select the command **Copy Global Template Locally**. Copying the global template locally is different than using the global template (at runtime) in that the processing instructions are merely copied in a one-time action. The global template has no further influence on the local template. Either, or both, the global template and local template can subsequently be modified independently of each other, without affecting the other. On the other hand, if it is specified that a global template should be *used* (at runtime) by a local template, then any modifications to the global template will be reflected in the local template at runtime.

### Activating and deactivating global templates

A global template can be activated by checking its entry in the global templates listing in the Schema Tree sidebar. It can be deactivated by unchecking the entry. If a global template has been activated (the default setting when the global template was created), it is generated in the XSLT stylesheet. If it has been deactivated, it is not generated in the XSLT stylesheet but is still saved in the SPS design.

Any local template that uses a deactivated global template will then—since it is not able to reference the missing global template—fall back on the default templates of XSLT, which have the collective effect of outputting the contents of descendant text nodes.

The advantages of the activation/deactivation feature are: (i) Global templates do not have to be deleted if they are temporarily not required; they can be reactivated later when they are required; (ii) If there are name conflicts with templates from imported stylesheets, then the global template that is not required can be temporarily deactivated.

### Removing a global template

To remove a global template, right-click the global template to be removed, either in Design View or the Schema Tree sidebar, and select the command **Make/Remove Global Template**.

### Simple global templates and complex global templates

Global templates are of two types: simple and complex. Complex global templates are available for reasons of backward-compatibility. If a global template in an SPS created with a version of StyleVision prior to version 2006 contains a table or list, then that global template will typically be opened in StyleVision 2006 and later versions as a complex global template.

A complex global template is different than a simple global template in the way the node for which the global template was created is processed. When the first instance of the node is encountered in the document, the complex global template processes all subsequent instances of that node immediately afterwards. A simple global template, on the other hand, processes



each node instance only when that node instance is individually encountered.

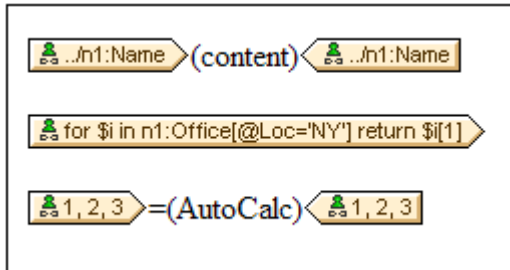
It is important to note that a simple global template will be automatically converted to a complex global template if a [predefined format](#) or newline is created **around** the element node for which the global template was created. This will result in the processing behaviour for complex global templates (described in the previous list item). To revert to the simple global template, the [predefined format](#) should be removed (by dragging the node outside the predefined format and then deleting the predefined format), or the newline should be removed (by deleting the item in the [Design Tree sidebar](#)), as the case may be. To avoid the automatic conversion from simple global template to complex global template, make sure that the [predefined format](#) or newline is added within the node tags of the element for which the simple global template was created.

### **Global templates in modular SPSs**

When an [SPS module is added to another SPS module](#), the global templates in the added module are available for use within the referring SPS. For more information about using modular SPSs, see the section [Modular SPSs](#).

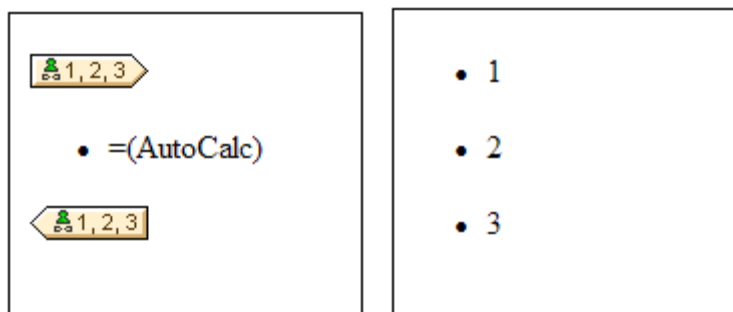
## User-Defined Templates

User-Defined Templates are templates for items generated by an XPath expression you specify. These items may be atomic values or nodes. In the screenshot below, which shows three User-Defined Templates, note the User-Defined Template icon on the left-hand side of the tags. User-Defined Templates are very useful because they provide extraordinary flexibility for creating templates.



The XPath expression of each of the three User-Defined templates shown in the screenshot above do the following:

- Selects a node in a source schema. By using an XPath expression, any node in any of the schema sources can be reached from within any context node. If StyleVision can unambiguously target the specified node, the template will be changed automatically from a User-Defined Template to a normal template. If it is a User-Defined Template, this will be indicated by the green User-Defined Template icon on the left-hand side of the template tags.
- Selects a node that fulfills a condition specified by the `for` construct of XPath 2.0. Such templates can never resolve to normal templates (but will remain User-Defined Templates) because the `for` construct does not allow StyleVision to unambiguously resolve the target from only the schema information it currently has at its disposal.
- Selects a sequence of atomic values `{1, 2, 3}`. While it is allowed to create a template for an atomic value, you cannot use the `contents` placeholder within such a template. This is because the `xsl:apply-templates` instruction (which is what the `contents` placeholder generates) can only be applied to node items (not atomic values). You could, however, use an Auto-Calculation in combination with some design element such as a list. For example, the User-Defined Template at left would generate the output at right.



**Note:** If the SPS uses XSLT 1.0, then the XPath expression you enter must return a node-set. Otherwise an error is reported.

### Advantage of using XPath to select template node

The advantage of selecting a schema node via an XPath expression (User-Defined Templates) is that the power of XPath's path selector mechanism can be used to select any node or

sequence of items, as well as to filter or set conditions for the node selection. As a result, specific XML document nodes can be targeted for any given template. For instance, the XPath expression `//Office/Department[@Location="NY"]` will select only those `Department` nodes that have `Location` attribute with a value of `NY`. Also see the other examples above.

**Note:** If an XPath expression contains multiple location path steps, then it is significant—especially for grouping and sorting—whether brackets are placed around the multiple location path steps or not. For example, the XPath expression `/Org/Office/Dept` will be processed differently than `(/Org/Office/Dept)`. For the former expression (without brackets), the processor loops through each location step. For the latter expression (with brackets), all the `Dept` elements of all `Office` elements are returned in one undifferentiated nodeset.

Bracket s	Underlying XSLT Mechanism	Effect
No	<pre>&lt;xsl:for-each select="Org"&gt;   &lt;xsl:for-each select="Office"&gt;     &lt;xsl:for-each select="Dept"&gt;       ...     &lt;/xsl:for-each&gt;   &lt;/xsl:for-each&gt; &lt;/xsl:for-each&gt;</pre>	Each <code>Office</code> element has its own <code>Dept</code> population. So grouping and sorting can be done within each <code>Office</code> .
Yes	<pre>&lt;xsl:for-each select="/Org/Office/Dept"&gt;   ... &lt;/xsl:for-each&gt;</pre>	The <code>Dept</code> population extends over all <code>Office</code> elements and across <code>Org</code> .

This difference in evaluating XPath expressions can be significant for grouping and sorting.

### Inserting a User-Defined Template

To insert a User-Defined Template, do the following:

1. Click the **Insert User-Defined Template** icon in the Insert Design Elements toolbar and then click the design location where you wish to insert the template. Alternatively, right-click the design location where you wish to insert the template and, from the context menu that appears, select the **Insert User-Defined Template** command.
2. In the [Edit XPath Expression](#) dialog that pops up, enter the XPath expression you want, and click **OK**. Note that the context node of the XPath expression will be the node within which you have clicked. An empty node template will be created. Sometimes a joined node is created. When a node is joined, the targeted instance nodes are selected as if at a single level, whereas if a node is not joined (that is if it is split into multiple hierarchic levels), then the node selection is done by looping through each instance node at every split level. The nodeset returned in both cases of selection (joined and split) is the same unless a grouping or sorting criterion is specified. For a discussion of the effect joined nodes have on the grouping and sorting mechanisms, see [Node-Template Operations](#).

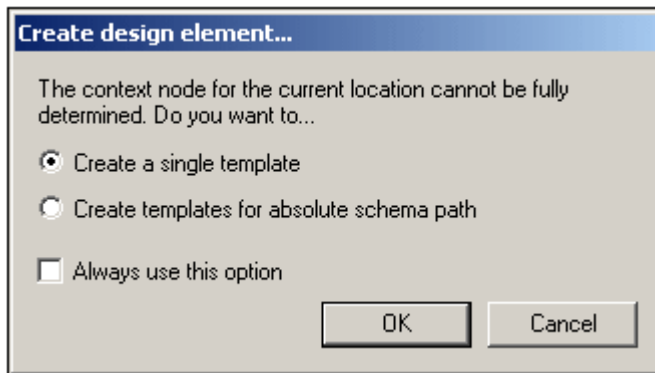
### Editing a Template Match

The node selection of any node template (user-defined or normal) can be changed by using an XPath expression to select the new match expression. To edit the template match of a node template, right-click the node template, then select the **Edit Template Match** command. This

pops up the Edit XPath Expression dialog, in which you enter the XPath expression to select the new node. Then click **OK**.

### Adding nodes to User-Defined Templates

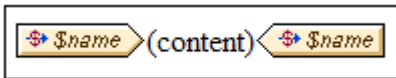
If a node from the schema tree is added to a User-Defined Template, the context for the new node will not be known if the User-Defined Template has been created for a node or sequence that cannot be placed in the context of the schema source of the SPS. You will therefore be prompted (*screenshot below*) about how the new node should be referenced: (i) by its name (essentially, a relative path), or (ii) by a full path from the root of the schema source.



Prompting for advice on how to proceed is the default behavior. This default behavior can be changed in the Design tab of the [Tool | Options dialog](#).

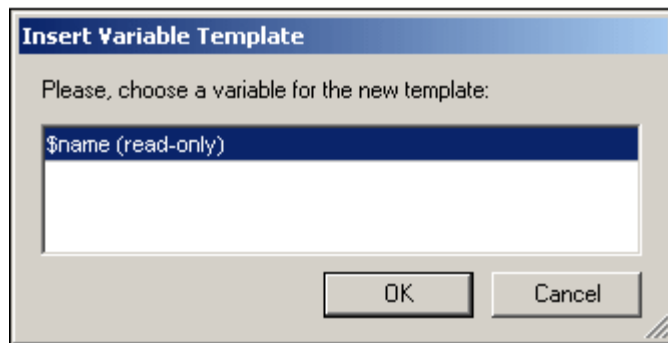
## Variable Templates

A **Variable Template** is a template that targets a variable and, by default outputs its content. It is inserted with the **Insert | Variable Template** or **Enclose with | Variable** command, which inserts, at the cursor insertion point, a template for a variable defined in the SPS. The variable template (*screenshot below*) contains a `content` placeholder by default, and this serves to output the contents of the variable. You can insert additional content (static as well as dynamic) in the variable template as required, or modify it as you would any other template.



To insert a variable template, do the following:

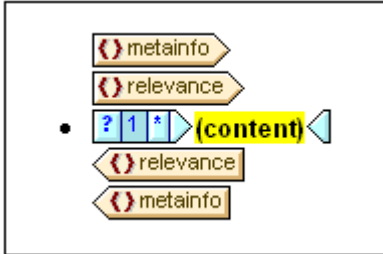
1. Place the cursor in the design at the location where the template is to be inserted.
2. Click the **Insert | Variable Template** command. This pops up the Insert Variable Template dialog (*screenshot below*).



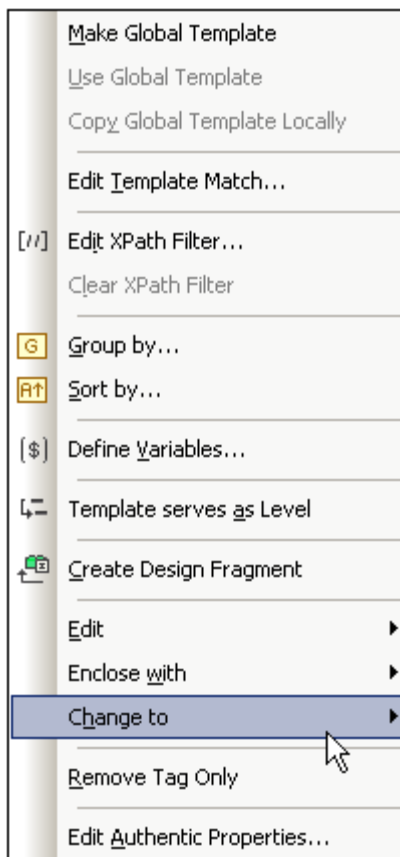
3. The dialog contains a list of all the [user-declared parameters and variables](#) defined in the SPS. Select the variable for which you wish to add a variable template.
4. Click **OK** to finish.

## Node-Template Operations

A node-template is a template in the design that specifies the processing for a node. In the design, node-templates are displayed with beige start and end tags (*screenshot below*). The screenshot below contains two node-templates: `metainfo` and `relevance`.



The operations that can be carried out on a node-template are accessible via the context menu of that node-template (accessed by right-clicking either the start or end tag of a node-template, see *screenshot below*).



The commands in this context menu are described below:

- [Global templates](#)
- [Template match](#)
- [XPath filters](#)
- [Group by, Sort by, Define variables, Template serves as level](#)
- [Create Design Fragment](#)
- [Remove Tag Only](#)

- [Edit, Enclose with, Change to, Authentic properties](#)

These menu commands are described below. Note that for a given node-template, some commands might not be available; these are grayed out in the context menu.

### Global templates: make, use, copy locally

A node-template in the main template can be changed to or associated with a global template via the following commands:

- *Make global template*: This option is available if the node-template represents an element that is defined as a global element in the schema. A global template will be created from the node-template. The node-template in the main template will use this global template and its tags will then be displayed in gray (indicating its use of the global template).
- *Use global template*: If a global template of the same qualified name as the node-template has been defined, the node-template will use the processing of the global template. The tags of the node-template will become gray.
- *Copy global template locally*: The processing instructions of a global template of the same qualified name as the node-template are copied physically to the node-template. The node-template is independent of the global template. Subsequently, both it and the global template can be modified independently of each other. Since the node-template does not reference a global template, it retains its beige color.

For more information, see the section [Global Templates](#).

### Editing the template match

The node for which a template has been created can be changed by using this command. The Edit Template Match command pops up the [Edit XPath Expression dialog](#), in which you can enter an XPath expression that selects another node in the schema. You can also enter any XPath expression to change the template to a [User-Defined Template](#).

### Edit/Clear XPath Filter

An XPath filter enables you to filter the nodeset on which a node-template is applied. XPath filters can also be applied to [global templates](#).

By default, a node-template will be applied to nodes (elements or attributes) corresponding to the node for which the node-template was created (having the same name and occurring at that point in the schema hierarchy). For example, a node-template for the `/Personnel/Office` node will select all the `/Personnel/Office` elements. If an XPath filter with the expression `1` is now created on the `Office` element (by right-clicking the `Office` element and editing its XPath Filter), this has the effect of adding a predicate expression to the `Office` element, so that the entire XPath expression would be: `/Personnel/Office[1]`. This XPath expression selects the first `Office` child of the `Personnel` element, effectively filtering out the other `Office` elements.

A filter can be added to any node-template and to multiple node-templates in the design. This enables you to have selections corresponding to such XPath expressions as: `/Personnel/Office[@country='US']/Person[Title='Manager']` to select all managers in the US offices of the company. In this example, a filter each has been created on the `Office` and on the `Person` node-templates, respectively.

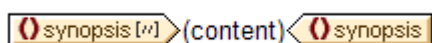
Wherever a global template is used—that is, called—an XPath filter can be applied to it. So, for

every instance of a global template that is used, an XPath filter can be applied to the global template in order to restrict the targeted nodeset.

To add an XPath Filter to a node-template, right-click the node-template and select **Edit XPath Filter**. Enter the XPath filter expression without quotes, square brackets, or delimiters of any kind. Any valid XPath expression can be entered. For example:

- 1
- @country=' US'
- Title=' Manager'

After an XPath Filter has been created for a node-template, this is indicated by a filter symbol in the start tag of the node-template. In the screenshot below, the `synopsis` node-template has a filter.



**Note:** Each node-template supports one XPath Filter.

### Group by, Sort by, Define variables, Template Serves as Level

The mechanisms behind these commands are described in detail in their respective sections:

- The **Group by** command enables instances of the node represented by the selected node-template to be grouped. The grouping mechanism is described in the section, [Grouping](#).
- The **Sort by** command enables instances of the node represented by the selected node-template to be sorted. The sorting mechanism is described in the section, [Sorting](#).
- The **Define Variables** command enables you to define variables that are on scope on the selected node-template. How to work with variables is described in the section, [Variables](#).
- The **Template Serves as Level** command is a toggle command that creates/removes a level on the node-template. Levels can be specified at various levels in order to structure the document into a hierarchy. This structure can then be used to generate a table of contents (TOC), automatic numbering, and text references. These features are described in detail in the section, [Table of Contents \(TOC\) and Referencing](#).

### Create Design Fragment

Creates a Design Fragment template from the selected template. The resulting Design Fragment template is added to the Design Fragment templates at the bottom of the design, and added to the Design Tree and Schema Tree. The Design Fragment is also applied at that point in the design where it was created.

### Remove (Template or Formatting) Tag Only

This command removes the selected template or formatting tag only. It does not remove any descendant nodes or formatting tags. This command is useful for removing a formatting tag or a parent element tag without removing all that is contained within the tag (which is what would happen if the **Delete** operation is carried out with a tag selected). Note, however, that removing a parent element might render descendant nodes of the deleted element invalid. In such cases, the invalid nodes are indicated with a red strike-through.



**Edit, Enclose with, Change to, Edit Authentic Properties**

These commands are described below:

- *Edit*: Pops out a submenu with the familiar Windows commands: cut, copy, paste, and delete.
- *Enclose with*: The node-template can be enclosed within the following design components, each of which is described in a separate section of this documentation: [paragraph](#), [special paragraph](#), [Bullets and Numbering](#), [Hyperlink](#), [Condition](#), [TOC Bookmark and Level](#).
- *Change to*: The Change-To feature enables you to change: (i) the node for which that template applies, or (ii) how the node is created in the design. It is described in detail in the section, [The Change-To Feature](#).

## Design Fragments

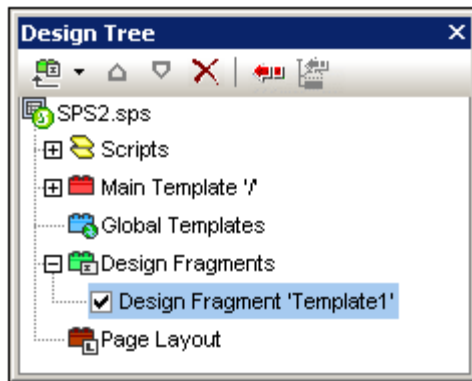
Design Fragments are useful for creating parts that can be re-used at different locations in the document, similar to the way functions are re-used. The usage mechanism is as follows:

1. [Create the Design Fragment in the design](#)
2. [Fill out the contents of the Design Fragment](#)
3. [Insert the Design Fragment at a location in a template.](#)

### Creating a Design Fragment

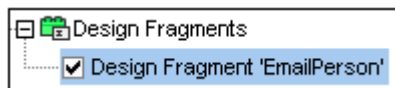
To create a Design Fragment do the following:

1. In the Design Tree, click the Add Design Fragment toolbar icon . This adds a Design Fragment item in the Design Fragments list of the design tree (*screenshot below*). **Also see note below.**



Notice that a Design Fragment template is also created in the SPS design. This template is appended to the templates already in the design. (If you wish to see only the Design Fragments that are in the design, hide the main template and global templates by clicking their [Show/Hide](#) icons in StyleVision's [Template Filter](#) toolbar.) Additionally, the Design Fragment templates are also listed in the schema tree for ready access from there.

2. Double-click the Design Fragment item (either in the design tree or the schema tree) so as to edit its name. Name the Design Fragment as required and press **Enter**. The edited name is entered in the Design Tree (*screenshot below*) and in the template in the design.



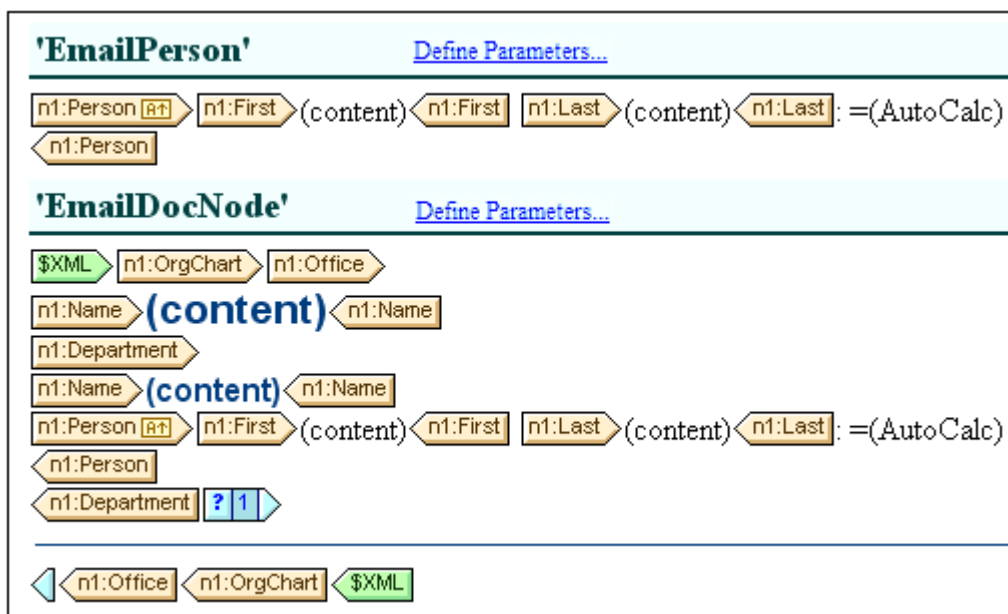
3. In the design, create the contents of the Design Fragment template. How to do this is described in the next section.

**Note:** If you wish to create a Design Fragment from an already existing template, right-click that template and select the command **Create Design Fragment** from the context menu that pops up. This creates a Design Fragment template from the selected template at that point in the design. The Design Fragment template is also appended to the existing Design Fragment templates at the bottom of the design and added to the Design Tree and Schema Tree. Creating a Design Fragment in this way also applies it directly at the point where it was created, there is no need to [insert it from the Design Tree or Schema Tree](#).

### Creating the contents of a Design Fragment

The contents of the Design Fragment template are created [as for any other template](#). To insert static content, place the cursor in the Design Fragment template and insert the required static content. To insert dynamic content, drag the required schema node into the Design Fragment template.

When dragging a node from the schema source you can drag the node either: (i) from the Global Elements tree, or (ii) from the Root Elements tree. The difference is significant. If a node is dragged from the Global Elements tree, it is created without its ancestor elements (in the screenshot below, see the `EmailPerson` Design Fragment) and, therefore, when used in a template, it will have to be used within the context of its parent. On the other hand, if a node is dragged from the Root Elements tree, it is created within a structure starting from the document node (in the screenshot below, see the `EmailDocNode` Design Fragment), and can therefore be used anywhere in a template.



The screenshot above shows two Design Fragment templates that produce identical output for the `Person` element. In the `EmailPerson` Design Fragment template, the `Person` node has been created by dragging the global element `Person` into the `EmailPerson` template. In the `EmailDocNode` Design Fragment template, the `Person` node has been dragged from the Root Elements tree, and is created with an absolute path (from `XML`, the document node).

When these Design Fragment templates are inserted in the main template, care must be taken that the `EmailPerson` template is called from within a context that is the parent of the `Person` node. You can experiment with these Design Fragments. They are in the example file `Email.sps`, which is in the folder `C:/Documents and Settings/<username>/My Documents/Altova/StyleVision2010/StyleVisionExamples/Tutorial/DesignFragments`.

You can also define a parameter with a default value on the Design Fragment. The parameter can be assigned a different value in every Design Fragment instance. See [Parameters for Design Fragments](#) for details.

After you have completed the design, notice that the components of the design are also graphically depicted in the Design Tree.

**Inserting a Design Fragment in a template**

To insert a Design Fragment, drag the Design Fragment from the Design Tree or Schema Tree to the required location. The location at which the Design Fragment is dropped should be such that it provides a correct context. If the contents of the Design Fragment were created from a global element, then the correct context in the main template would be the parent of the node dragged into the Design Fragment. See [Creating the contents of a Design Fragment](#) above.

Alternatively, right-click at the location where the Design Fragment is to be inserted and select **Insert Design Fragment** from the context menu.

**Note:** If a Design Fragment is referenced in the main template and if the name of the Design Fragment is changed subsequently, then the reference in the main template will no longer be correct and an XSLT error will result. In order to correct this, delete the original reference in the main template and create a fresh reference to the newly named Design Fragment.

**Deleting a Design Fragment**

To delete a Design Fragment, select it in the Design Tree and click the **Remove** toolbar icon of the Design Tree .

**Design Fragments in modular SPSs**

When an [SPS module is added to another SPS module](#), the Design Fragments in the added module are available for use within the referring SPS. For more information about using modular SPSs, see the section [Modular SPSs](#).

**Example file**

For an example SPS, go to the folder `C:/Documents and Settings/<username>/My Documents/Altova/StyleVision2010/StyleVisionExamples/Tutorial/DesignFragments`.

## 9.4 XSLT Templates

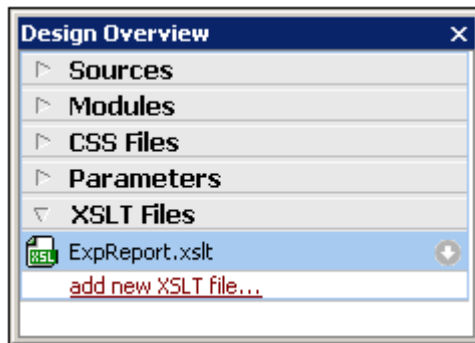
XSLT files can be imported into an SPS, and XSLT templates in them will be available to the stylesheet as global templates. If, during the processing of the XML document, one of the XML nodes is match to an imported XSLT template, then the imported XSLT template is applied to that node. If the imported XSLT file contains named templates, these are available for placement in the design.

**Note:** Imported XSLT templates cannot be modified in StyleVision.

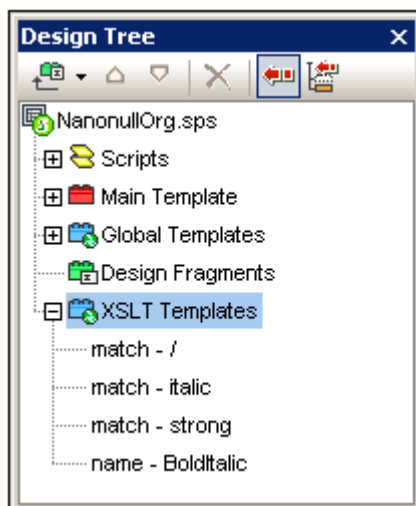
### Importing the XSLT file

To import an XSLT File, do the following:

1. In the Design Overview sidebar (*screenshot below*), click the **Add New XSLT File** link, and then the **Add XSLT File** command.



2. In the Open dialog that appears, browse for the required XSLT file, select it, and click **Open**. The XSLT file is imported. An `xsl:import` statement is added to the XSLT stylesheet, and, in the Design Tree sidebar (*screenshot below*), the XSLT Templates contained in the imported XSLT file are displayed under the XSLT Templates heading.



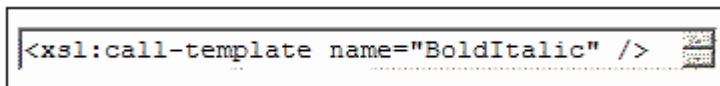
There are two types of imported XSLT templates: (i) match templates (indicated by *Match*), and (ii) named templates (indicated by *Name*). In the Design Tree, these two types are listed with (i) the value of the `select` attribute of match templates, and (ii) by the value of the `name` attribute of named templates, respectively.

**Match templates**

Match templates will be used when a template, in the course of processing, applies templates to a node in the XML document instance, and the match template is selected to be applied. This will happen when the qualified name of the XML node matches the qualified name of the imported match template. If a global template has been created in the SPS that has the same qualified name, then it has precedence over an imported template and will be used. If there are several imported XSLT files, the file imported first (and listed first in the XSLT code) has the lowest precedence, followed by the second lowest precedence for the file imported second, and so on.

**Named templates**

A named template can be dragged from the Design Tree to any location in the design. At this location, it will be created as an `xsl:call-template` element (*screenshot below*) that calls the named template.

A screenshot of a code editor showing an XSLT call-template element. The code is: `<xsl:call-template name="BoldItalic" />`. The code is enclosed in a rectangular box with a thin border. To the right of the code, there is a small icon of a document with a magnifying glass, indicating a search or find function.

The effect of this in the output is to implement the named template at that location in the design. This can be useful for inserting content that is independent of both the XML instance document as well as of the XSLT stylesheet.

## **Chapter 10**

---

### **SPS File: Advanced Features**

## 10 SPS File: Advanced Features

How to create the basic content and structure of the SPS design is described in the sections, [SPS File Content](#) and [SPS File Structure](#). Very often, however, you will also need to modify or manipulate the content and/or structure of source data in particular ways. For example, you might wish to sort a group of nodes, say nodes containing personnel information, on a particular criterion, say the alphabetical order of employee last names. Or you might wish to group all customers in a database by city. Or add up a product's sales turnover in a particular city. Such functionality is provided in StyleVision's advanced features, and these are described in this section.

Given below is a list of StyleVision's SPS file advanced features:

- [Auto-Calculations](#). Auto-Calculations are a powerful XPath-based mechanism to manipulate data and (i) present the manipulated data in the output as well as (ii) update nodes in the XML document with the result of the Auto-Calculation.
- [Conditions](#). Processing of templates and the content of templates can be conditional upon data structures or values in the XML, or upon the result of an XPath expression
- [Grouping](#). Processing can be defined for a group of elements that are selected with an XPath expression.
- [Sorting](#). A set of XML elements can be sorted on multiple sort-keys.
- [Parameters and Variables](#). Parameters are declared at the global SPS level with a default value. These values can then be overridden at runtime by values passed to the stylesheet from the command line. Variables can be defined in the SPS and these variables can be referenced for use in the SPS.
- [Table of Contents \(TOC\) and Referencing](#). Tables of Contents (TOCs) can be constructed at various locations in the document output, for all output formats. The TOC mechanism works by first selecting the items to be referenced in the TOC and then referencing these marked items in the TOC. Other features which use referencing are: (i) [Auto-Numbering](#) (repeating nodes in the document can be numbered automatically and the numbers formatted); (ii) [Text References](#) (text in the document can be marked for referencing and then referenced from elsewhere in the document); and (iii) [Bookmarks and Hyperlinks](#) (bookmarks mark key points in the output document, which can then be targeted by hyperlinks. Hyperlinks can also link to external resources using a variety of methods to determine the target URI (static, dynamic, a combination of both, and unparsed entity URIs).) All these referencing mechanisms are described in this section.



## 10.1 Auto-Calculations

The **Auto-Calculation** feature (i) displays the result of an XPath evaluation at any desired location in the output document, and (ii) optionally updates a node in the main XML document (the XML document being edited in Authentic View) with the result of the XPath evaluation.

The Auto-Calculation feature is a useful mechanism for:

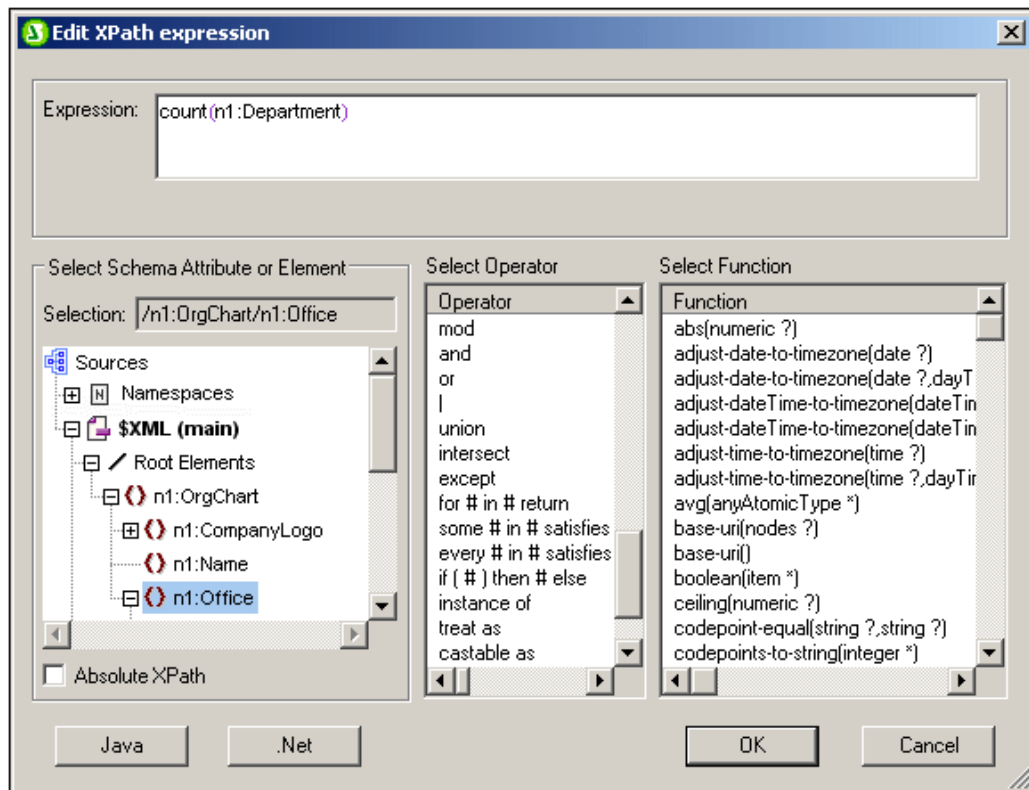
- Inserting calculations involving operations on dynamic data values. For example, you can count the number of `Employee` elements in an `Office` element (with `count( Employee )`), or sum the values of all `Price` elements in each `Invoice` element (with `sum( Price )`), or join the `FirstName` and `LastName` elements of a `Person` element (with `concat( FirstName, ' ', LastName )`). In this way you can generate new data from dynamically changing data in the XML document, and send the generated data to the output.
- Displaying information derived from the structure of the document. For example, you can use the `position()` function of XPath to dynamically insert row numbers in a dynamic table, or to dynamically number the sections of a document. This has the advantage of automatically generating information based on dynamically changing document structures.
- Inserting data from external XML documents. The `doc()` function of XPath 2.0 provides access to the document root of external XML documents, and thus enables node content from the external XML document to be inserted in the output.
- Updating the value of nodes in the main XML document. For example, the node `Addressee` could be updated with an XPath expression like `concat( Title, ' ', FirstName, ' ', LastName )`.
- Presenting the contents of a node at any location in the design.

## Editing and Moving Auto-Calculations

### Creating Auto-Calculations

To create an Auto-Calculation, do the following:

1. Place the cursor as an **insertion point** at the location where the Auto-Calculation result is to be displayed and click **Insert | Auto-Calculation**. In the submenu that appears, select Value if the result is to appear as plain text, select Input Field if it is to appear within an input field (i.e. a text box), or select Multiline Input Field if it is to appear in a multiline text box. (Note that the output of the Auto-Calculation is displayed as a value, or in an Input Field. It is an output in Authentic View, and cannot be edited there.) The Edit XPath Expression dialog pops up (*screenshot below*).

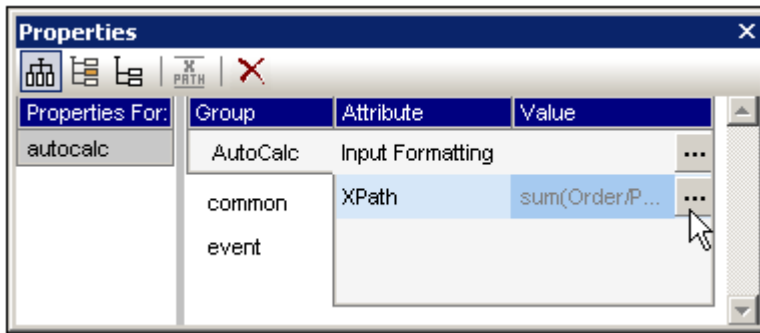


2. In the Expression pane, enter the XPath expression for the Auto-Calculation via the keyboard. Alternatively, enter the expression by double-clicking nodes, operators, and/or functions in the sidebar panes of the dialog. It is important to be aware of the context node at the insertion point; the context node is highlighted in the schema sources tree when the dialog pops up. (If you have selected XSLT 1.0 as the version of the XSLT language for your SPS, then you must use XPath 1.0 expressions; if you have selected XSLT 2.0, then you must use XPath 2.0 expressions.)

Click the **OK** button finish. In the Design tab, the Auto-Calculation symbol is displayed. To see the result of the Auto-Calculation, change to HTML View.

### Editing Auto-Calculations

To edit the XPath expression of the Auto-Calculation, select the Auto-Calculation and, in the Properties sidebar, click the **Edit** button of the `xPath` property in the *AutoCalc* group of properties (*screenshot below*). This pops up the Edit XPath Expression dialog (*screenshot above*), in which you can edit the XPath expression.



### Formatting Auto-Calculations

You can apply predefined formats and CSS styles to Auto-Calculations just as you would to normal text: select the Auto-Calculation and apply the formatting. Additionally, [input formatting](#) of an Auto-Calculation that is a numeric or date datatype can be specified via the Input Formatting property in the AutoCalc group of properties in the Properties window.

Note also that you can include carriage returns and/or linefeeds (CR/LFs) in the XPath expression. If the Auto-Calculation is enclosed in the `pre` special paragraph type, the output of a CR/LF will produce a new line in the output. An example of such an XPath expression is:

```
translate(' a;b;c', ' ;', codepoints-to-string(13) )
```

### Moving Auto-Calculations

You can move an Auto-Calculation to another location by clicking the Auto-Calculation (to select it) and dragging it to the new location. You can also use cut/copy-and-paste to move/copy an Auto-Calculation. Note, however, that the XPath expression will need to be changed if the context node in the new location is not the same as that in the previous location.

### Summary of important points

Note the following points:

- An Auto-Calculation can be inserted anywhere in the Design Document.
- The point at which you insert the Auto-Calculation determines the context node for the XPath evaluation.

## Example: An Invoice

The `SimpleInvoice.sps` example in the folder `C:/Documents and Settings/<username>/My Documents/Altova/StyleVision2010/StyleVisionExamples/Tutorial/Auto-Calculations\` demonstrates how Auto-Calculations can be used for the following purposes:

- Counting nodes
- Selecting a node based on input from the Authentic View user
- Creating complex calculations

In the example file, the Auto-Calculations have been highlighted with a yellow background color (see *screenshot below*).

### Counting nodes

In the `SimpleInvoice` example, each product in the list is numbered according to its position in the list of products that a customer has ordered (`Product 1`, `Product 2`, etc). This numbering is achieved with an Auto-Calculation (*screenshot below*).

Product 1:	Learning XML.Spy
Net price:	€ 35.00
Category:	<input type="text" value="Book"/>
VAT:	10%
Price including VAT:	€ 38.5
<hr/>	
Product 2:	Scooby Doo's Greatest Hits

In this particular case, the XPath expression `position()` would suffice to obtain the correct numbering. Another useful way to obtain the position of a node is to count the number of preceding siblings and add one. The XPath expression would be: `count(preceding-sibling::Product)+1`. The latter approach could prove useful in contexts where the `position()` function is difficult to use or cannot be used. You can test this Auto-Calculation in the example file by deleting products, and/or adding and deleting new products.

### Selecting a node based on user input

In the `SimpleInvoice` example, the product category (`Book`, `CD`, `DVD`, or `Electronics`) is contained in the `//Product/Category` node and is displayed in a combo box. This selection is entered in the `//Product/Category` node in the XML document. An Auto-Calculation then uses this value to reference a "lookup table" in the XML document and identify the node holding the VAT percentage for this product category. The XPath expression of this Auto-Calculation is:

```
for $i in Category return /Invoice/Categories/Category[. = $i]/@rate.
```

The VAT percentage is displayed at the Auto-Calculation location in the output. In the `Invoices` example, the lookup table is stored in the same XML document as the invoice data. However, such a table can also be stored in a separate document, in which case it would be accessed using the `doc()` function of XPath 2.0. Notice that the VAT value of different products are different (`Book=10%`; `CD=15%`; `DVD=15%`; `Electronics=20%`); they have been calculated by the

Auto-Calculation.

### Creating a complex Auto-Calculation

The VAT percentage, obtained by the Auto-Calculation described above, is required to calculate the gross price (net price + VAT amount) of each product. The formula to use would be derived as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Gross Price} &= \text{Net Price} + \text{VAT-amount} \\ \text{Since } \text{VAT-amount} &= \text{Net Price} * \text{VAT-percentage} \text{ div } 100 \\ \text{Gross Price} &= \text{Net Price} + (\text{Net Price} * \text{VAT-percentage} \text{ div } 100) \end{aligned}$$

The net price of a product is obtained from the `PriceNet` node. The VAT percentage is calculated by an Auto-Calculation as described above; it is not contained in any node. Since this value cannot be obtained directly from a node, it must be re-calculated in the gross price Auto-Calculation. The XPath expression to do this would be:

```
for $i in Category return PriceNet + (PriceNet * (/Invoice/Categories/
Category[. = $i]/@rate) div 100)
```

The XPath expression can be [viewed and edited in the Properties window](#). You can test the Auto-Calculation for the gross price by changing, in the XML file and then re-loading the SPS, either the price or product category of any product. Notice that the gross price (price including VAT) of the product also changes.

Product 6:	A Short History of the American Century
Net price:	€ 20.00
Category:	DVD
VAT:	15%
Price including VAT:	€ 23

## 10.2 Conditions

You can insert conditions anywhere in the design, in both the main template and global templates. A condition is an SPS component that is made up of one or more branches, with each branch being defined by an XPath expression. For example, consider a condition composed of two branches. The XPath expression of the first branch tests whether the value of the `Location` attribute of the context node is "US". The XPath expression of the second branch tests whether the value of the `Location` attribute is "EU". Each branch contains a template—a condition template. When a node is processed with a condition, the first branch with a test that evaluates to true is executed, that is, its condition template is processed, and the condition is exited; no further branches of that condition are evaluated. In this way, you can use different templates depending on the value of a node. In the example just cited, different templates could be used for US and EU locations.

This section consists of the following topics:

- [Setting Up the Conditions](#), which describes how to create a condition and its branches.
- [Editing Conditions](#), about how to edit the XPath expressions of condition branches after they have been created.
- [Conditions and Auto-Calculations](#), explains usage issues when conditions and Auto-Calculations are used in combination.

## Setting Up the Conditions

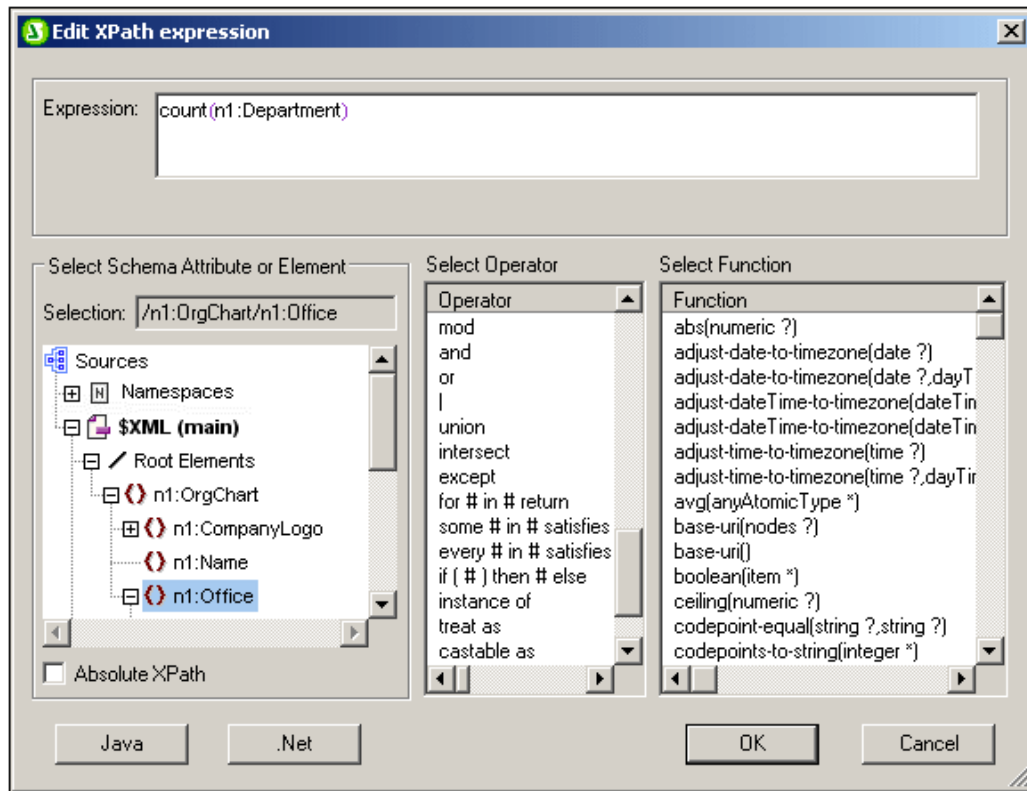
Setting up the condition consists of the following steps:

1. Create the condition with its first branch.
2. Create additional branches for alternative processing.
3. Create and edit the templates within the various branches of the condition.

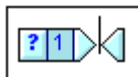
### Creating the condition with its first branch

Set up a condition as follows:

1. Place the cursor anywhere in the design or select a component and then select the menu command **Insert | Condition**. The Edit XPath Expression dialog pops up ( *screenshot below*).



2. In the Expression pane, enter the XPath expression for the condition branch via the keyboard. Alternatively, enter the expression by double-clicking nodes, operators, and/or functions in the sidebar panes of the dialog. It is important to be aware of the context node at the insertion point; the context node is highlighted in the schema sources tree when the dialog pops up.
3. Click **OK** to finish. The condition is created with its first branch; the XPath expression you entered is the XPath expression of the first branch. If the condition was inserted at a text insertion point, the first branch is empty (there is no template within it; see *screenshot below*). If the condition was inserted with a component selected, the condition is created around the component, and that component becomes the template of the first branch.



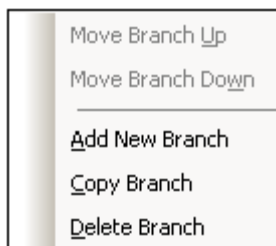
To select the entire condition, click the cell with the question mark. To select the first

branch, click the cell with the number one.

After creating a condition with one branch (which may or may not have a template within it), you can create as many additional branches as required.

### Creating additional branches

Additional branches are created one at a time. An additional branch is created via the context menu (*screenshot below*) and can be created in two ways: (i) without any template within it (**Add New Branch**); and (ii) with a copy of an existing template within the new branch (**Copy Branch**).



To create a new branch, right-click any branch of the condition and select **Add New Branch** from the context menu. The Edit XPath Expression dialog will pop up. After entering an XPath expression and clicking **OK**, a new empty branch is added to the condition. This is indicated in the design by a new cell being added to the condition; the new cell has a number incremented by one over the last branch prior to the addition.

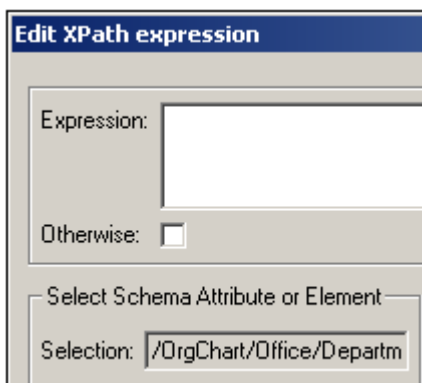
To create a copy of an existing branch, right-click the branch of the condition you wish to copy and select **Copy Branch**. The Edit XPath Expression dialog will pop up, containing the XPath expression of the branch being copied. After modifying the XPath expression and clicking **OK**, a new branch is added to the condition. The new branch contains a copy of the template of the branch that was copied. The new branch is indicated in the design by a new cell with a number incremented by one over the last branch prior to the addition.

### The Otherwise branch

The `Otherwise` branch is an alternative catch-all to specify a certain type of processing (template) in the event that none of the defined branches evaluate to true. Without the `Otherwise` branch, you would either have to create branches for all possible eventualities or be prepared for the possibility that the condition will be exited without any branch being executed.

To insert an `otherwise` branch, use either the **Add New Branch** or **Copy Branch** commands as described above, and in the Edit XPath dialog click the Otherwise check box (*screenshot below*).





### Moving branches up and down

The order of the branches in the condition is important, because the first branch to evaluate to true is executed and the condition is then exited. To move branches up and down relative to each other, select the branch to be moved, then right-click and select **Move Branch Up** or **Move Branch Down**.

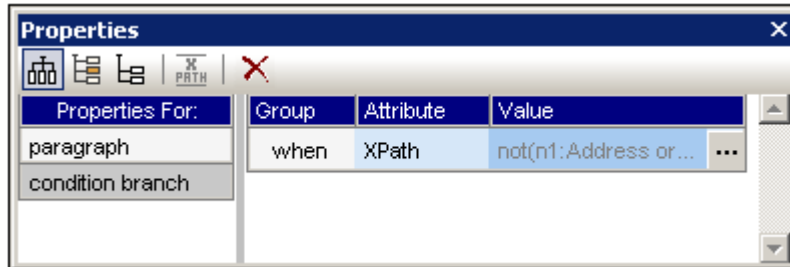
### Deleting a branch


To delete a branch, select the branch to be deleted, then right-click and select **Delete Branch**.

## Editing Conditions

To edit the XPath expression of a condition branch, do the following:

1. Select the condition branch (not the condition).
2. In the Properties sidebar, select `condition branch` in the Properties For column ( *screenshot below*).



3. Click the **Edit** button  of the `XPath` property in the *When* group of properties. This pops up the Edit XPath Expression dialog, in which you can edit the XPath expression for that branch of the condition.

## Conditions and Auto-Calculations

When using Conditions and Auto-Calculations together, there are a few issues to bear in mind. The two most fundamental points to bear in mind are:

- Only Auto-Calculations **in visible conditions**—that is the branch selected as true—are evaluated.
- Auto-Calculations are evaluated before Conditions.

Here are a few guidelines that summarize these issues.

1. If an Auto-Calculation updates a node, and if that node is involved in a Condition (either by being in the XPath expression of a branch or in the content of a conditional template), then keep the Auto-Calculation outside the condition if possible. This ensures that the Auto-Calculation is always visible—no matter what branch of the condition is visible. If the Auto-Calculation were inside a branch that is not visible, then it would not be triggered.
2. If an Auto-Calculation must be placed inside a condition, ensure (i) that it is placed in every branch of the condition, and (ii) that the various branches of the condition cover all possible conditions. There should be no eventuality that is not covered by a condition in the Conditional Template; otherwise there is a risk (if the Auto-Calculation is not in any visible template) that the Auto-Calculation might not be triggered.
3. If you require different Auto-Calculations for different conditions, ensure that all possible eventualities for every Auto-Calculation are covered.
4. Remember that the order in which conditions are defined in a conditional template is significant. The first condition to evaluate to true is executed. The `otherwise` condition is a convenient catch-all for non-specific eventualities.

## 10.3 Grouping

The grouping functionality is available in **XSLT 2.0** SPSs and for HTML output.

Grouping enables items (typically nodes) to be processed in groups. For example, consider an inventory of cars, in which the details of each car is held under a `car` element. If, for example, the `car` element has a `brand` attribute, then cars can be grouped by brand. This can be useful for a variety of reasons. For example:

- All cars of a single brand can be presented together in the output, under the heading of its brand name.
- Operations can be carried out within a group and the results of that operation presented separately for each group. For example, the number of models available for each brand can be listed.

Additionally, a group can be further processed in sub-groups. For example, within each brand, cars can be grouped by model and then by year.

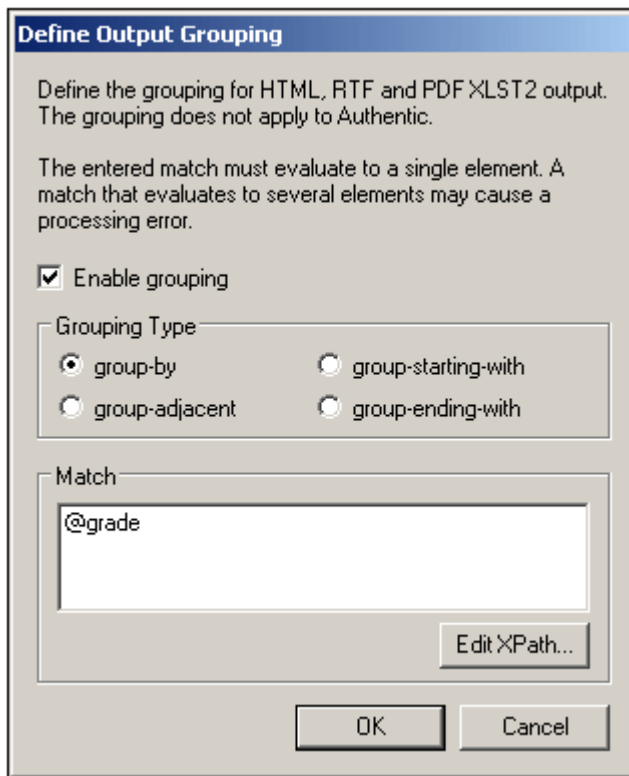
### Grouping criteria

Items can be grouped using two general criteria: (i) a grouping key, which typically tests the value of a node, and (ii) the relative position of items. The following specific grouping criteria are available:

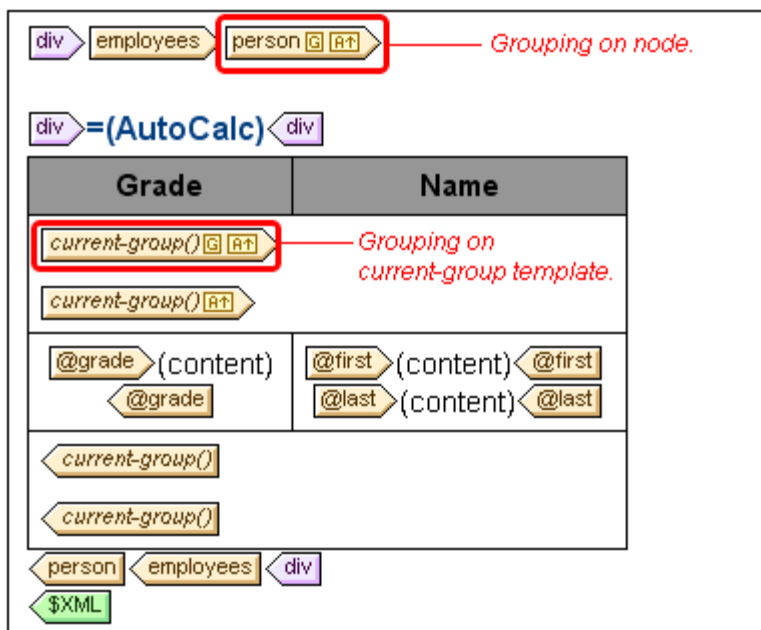
- **group-by**, which groups items on the basis of an XPath-defined key. For example, `car` elements can be grouped on the basis of their `brand` attributes. The grouping is set on the `car` element, and an XPath expression selects the `brand` attribute.
- **group-adjacent** uses a combination of grouping-key and position criteria. All adjacent items that have the same value for the grouping key are included in one group. If the grouping-key value of an item is different from that of the previous item, then this item starts a new group.
- **group-starting-with** starts a new group when a node matches a defined XPath pattern. If a node does not match the defined XPath pattern, then it is assigned to the current group.
- **group-ending-with** ends a group when a node matches a defined XPath pattern; the matching node is the last in that group. The next node starts a new group. If a node subsequent to that which starts a group does not match the defined XPath pattern it is assigned to the current group.

### Creating groups

Groups can be created on either a node or a current-group template via the context menu. To create a group, right-click the node or current-group template, and in the context menu that appears, select the **Group by** command. This pops up the Define Output Grouping dialog ( *screenshot below*).



In the dialog, check the Enable Grouping check box, then select the required Grouping Type and, in the Match text box, enter the XPath expression that defines the grouping key (for the *group-by* and *group-adjacent* options) or the desired match pattern (for the *group-starting-with* and *group-ending-with* options). When you click **OK**, a dialog pops up asking whether you wish to sort the group-set alphabetically (in ascending order). You can always sort group-sets subsequently or remove such sorting subsequently. The screenshot below shows nodes and current-group templates which have had grouping added to them.



In the screenshot above, the `person` node has been grouped and the resulting groups sorted. For example if the `person` elements have been grouped by department, then the various departments can be sorted in alphabetically ascending order. The groups thus created have been further grouped by creating grouping on the `current-group()` template. In this way `person` elements can be grouped, say, first by department, and then by employment grade.

### Sorting groups

After confirming a grouping definition, a pop-up asks you to confirm whether the groups should be sorted in ascending order or not. You can set sorting subsequently at any time, or modify or delete, at any time, the sorting set at this stage.

To set, modify, or delete sorting subsequently, right-click the required grouping template and select **Sort by**. This pops up the [Define Output Sort Order dialog](#). How to use this dialog is described in the section [Sorting](#). The important point to note is that to sort groups on the basis of their grouping-key, you must select the XPath function `current-grouping-key()` as the sorting key. For examples, see the files described in the following sections.

### Viewing and editing grouping and sorting settings

To view and edit the grouping and sorting settings on a template, right-click the template and select **Group by** or **Sort by**, respectively. This pops up the respective dialog, in which the settings can be viewed or modified.

## Example: Group-By (Persons.sps)

The `Persons.sps` example is based on the `Persons.xsd` schema and uses `Persons.xml` as its Working XML File. It is located in the `C:/Documents and Settings/<username>/My Documents/Altova/StyleVision2010/StyleVisionExamples/Tutorial/Grouping/Persons` folder. The XML document structure is as follows: an `employees` document element can contain an unlimited number of `person` employees. Each `person` employee is structured according to this example:

```
<person first="Vernon" last="Callaby" department="Administration" grade="C"/>
```

In the design we group persons according to department. Each department is represented by a separate table and the departments are sorted in ascending alphabetical order. Within each department table, persons are grouped according to grade (sorted in ascending alphabetical order) and, within each grade, persons are listed on in ascending alphabetical order of their last names.

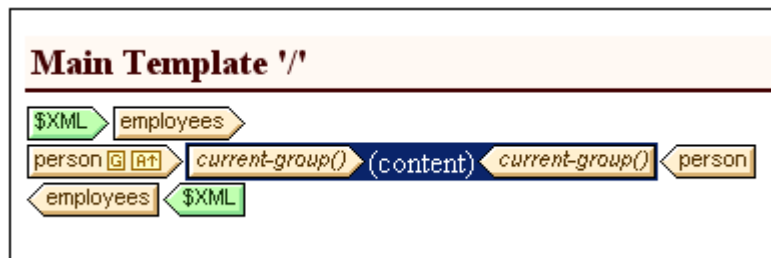
### Strategy

The strategy for creating the groups is as follows. The grouping is created on the `person` element with the `department` attribute being the grouping-key. This causes the `person` elements to be ordered in groups based on the value of the `department` attribute. (If sorting is specified, then the department groups can be organized in alphabetical order, for example, Administration first, and so on.) Since the departments are to be created as separate tables, the current-grouping (which is based on the department grouping-key) is created as a table. Now, within this grouped order of `Person` elements, we specify that each group must be further ordered with the `grade` attribute as the grouping-key.

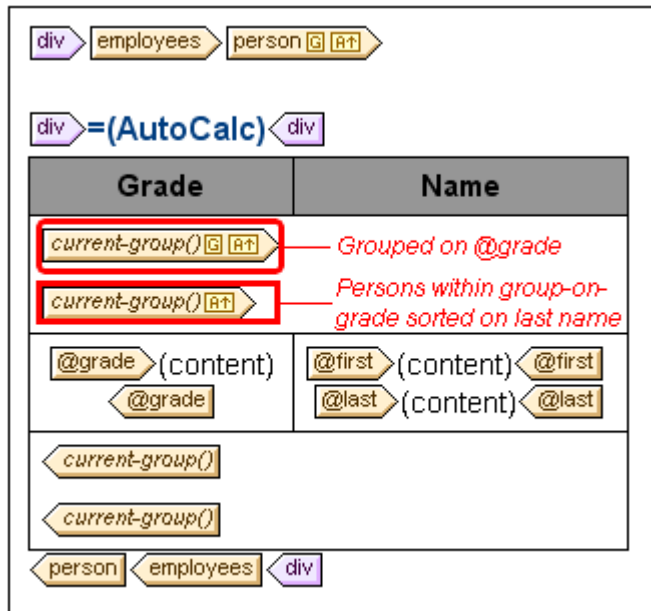
### Creating the SPS

The design was created as follows:

1. Drag the `person` element from the schema tree and create it as contents.
2. Right-click the `person` element tag and, in the context menu, select Group by.
3. In the Define Output Grouping dialog, select *group-by*, set the XPath expression in the Match text box to `@department`, and click **OK**.
4. A dialog pops up asking whether the groups should be sorted. Since we wish the groups to be sorted according to the default ascending alphabetical sorting, click **OK**. (Sorting can always be set, modified, or deleted subsequently.)
5. Since each group (which is a department) is to be created in a separate table, create the current group as a table. Do this by right-clicking the `current-group()` tag ( *screenshot below*), and selecting **Change to | Table**, selecting the child attributes `@last` and `@grade` as the columns of the table.



6. Re-organize the contents of the columns and cells of the table so that the first column contains `@grade` and the second column contains the `@first` and `@last` nodes (see *screenshot below*).
7. Within the current group, which is grouped by department, to group by grade, create a grouping for the `grade` attribute on the `current-group()` template. Confirm the default sorting.



8. Sort the current group (which is the sub-group of persons sorted by grade), on the `last` attribute.
9. Set formatting for the table.
10. Above the table provide a heading for the table. Since each table represents a department, the name of the department can be dynamically obtained from the current context by using an Auto-Calculation with an XPath expression that calls the `current-grouping-key()` function of XPath 2.0.
11. Repeat the entire process, to create similar output, but this this time grouping persons by grade and then by department.

To view or modify the grouping or sorting of a template, right-click that template and select **Group by** or **Sort by** from the context menu. This pops up the respective dialog, in which the settings can be viewed or modified.



### Example: Group-By (Scores.sps)

The `Scores.sps` example is based on the `Scores.xsd` schema and uses `Scores.xml` as its Working XML File. It is located in the `C:/Documents and Settings/<username>/My Documents/Altova/StyleVision2010/StyleVisionExamples/Tutorial/Grouping/Scores/` folder. The XML document structure is as follows: a `results` document element contains one or more `group` elements and one or more `match` elements. A `group` element contains one or more `team` elements, and a `match` element is structured according to this example:

```
<match group="A" date="2007-10-12">
  <team name="Brazil" for="2" points="3"/>
  <team name="Germany" for="1" points="0"/>
</match>
```

The design consists of three parts (*screenshot below*): (i) the match results presented by day (grouped on `//match/@date`); (ii) the match results presented by group (grouped on `//match/@group`); and (iii) group tables providing an overview of the standings by group (a dynamic table of the group element, with Auto-Calculations to calculate the required data).

### Match Results: Day-by-Day

#### **2007-10-12**

Brazil - Germany            2 - 1  
Italy - Holland            2 - 2

#### **2007-10-13**

Argentina - France        2 - 0  
England - Spain            0 - 0

### Match Results: By Group

#### **Group A**

Brazil - Germany            2 - 1  
Italy - Holland            2 - 2  
Brazil - Italy                1 - 2  
Germany - Holland        2 - 2  
Brazil - Holland            1 - 0  
Germany - Italy            1 - 1

### Group Tables

#### **Group A**

Team	P	W	D	L	F	A	Pts
Brazil	3	2	0	1	4	3	6
Italy	3	1	2	0	5	4	5
Germany	3	0	2	1	4	5	2
Holland	3	0	2	1	4	5	2

### **Strategy**

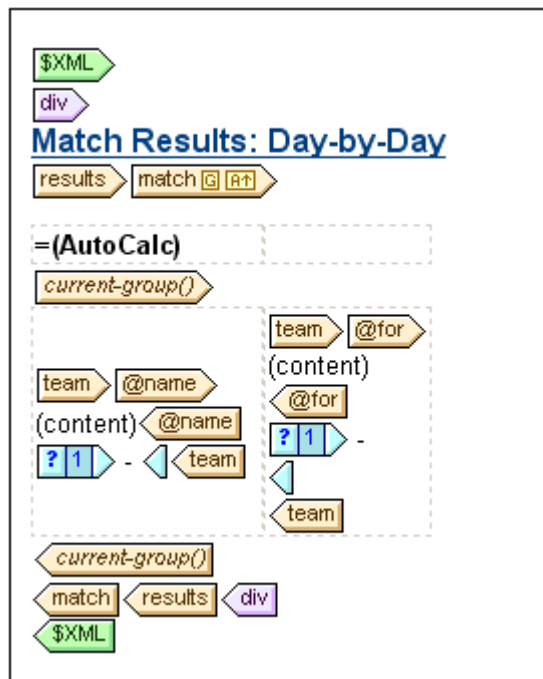
For the two sections containing the match results, we group matches by date and tournament-group. For members of each group (date and tournament group), we create borderless tables (for alignment purposes). So matches played on a single date will be in a separate table, and all the match results of a single tournament group will be in a separate table (for example, Group A matches). For the group-tables section, the `group` element is created as a dynamic table, with

Auto-Calculations providing the value of the required data.

### Creating the SPS

The design was created as follows:

1. Drag the `/results/match` element from the schema tree and create it as contents.
2. Right-click the `match` element tag and, in the context menu, select Group by.
3. In the Define Output Grouping dialog, select `group-by`, set the XPath expression in the Match text box to `@date`, and click **OK**.
4. A dialog pops up asking whether the groups should be sorted. Since we wish the groups to be sorted according to the default ascending alphabetical sorting, click **OK**. (Sorting can always be set, modified, or deleted subsequently.)
5. Since each group (which is a date) is to be created in a separate table, create the current group as a table. Do this by right-clicking the `current-group()` tag, selecting **Change to | Table**, and then selecting the descendant nodes `team/@name` and `team/@for` as the columns of the table (see screenshot below).



6. Set a hyphen in each cell that will be output if the match is not the last in the current group (using a conditional template with a condition set to `position() != last()`). This provides output such as: Brazil - Germany or 2 - 1.
7. Put an Auto-Calculation in the header that outputs the current grouping key for the respective group (XPath expression: `current-grouping-key()`).
8. Format the table as required.
9. To group the matches by tournament group, repeat the entire process, but group matches this time on the `group` attribute of `match`.
10. For the group tables (in the third section of the design), which contain the standings of each team in the group, create the `/results/group` element as a dynamic table. Add columns as required (using the **Table | Append Column** or **Table | Insert Column** commands). Set up Auto-Calculations in each column to calculate the required output (3 point for a win; 1 point for a draw; 0 points for a loss). And, finally, sort the table in descending order of total points obtained. To see the XPath expressions used to obtain these results, right-click the Auto-Calculation or sorted template, and select, respectively, the **Edit XPath** and **Sort by** commands.

## 10.4 Sorting

The sorting functionality is available in XSLT 1.0 and XSLT 2.0 SPSs and for HTML output.

A set of sibling element nodes of the same qualified name can be sorted on one or more sort-keys you select. For example, all the `Person` elements (within, say, a `Company` element) can be sorted on the `LastName` child element of the `Person` element. The sort-key must be a node in the document, and is typically a descendant node (element or attribute) of the element node being sorted. In the example mentioned, `LastName` is the sort-key.

If there are two elements in the set submitted for sorting that have sort-key nodes with the same value, then an additional sort-key could provide further sorting. In the `Person` example just cited, in addition to a first sort-key of `LastName`, a second sort-key of `FirstName` could be specified. So, for `Person` elements with the same `LastName` value, an additional sort could be done on `FirstName`. In this way, in an SPS, multiple sort instructions (each using one sort-key) can be defined for a single sort action.

The template is applied to the sorted set and the results are sent to the output in the sorted order. Sorting is supported in the HTML output.

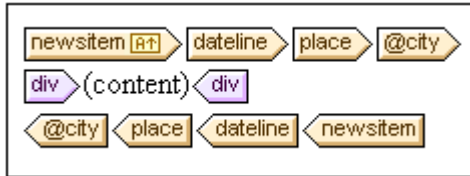
### In this section

- The [sorting mechanism](#) is described.
- An [example](#) demonstrates how sorting is used.

## The Sorting Mechanism

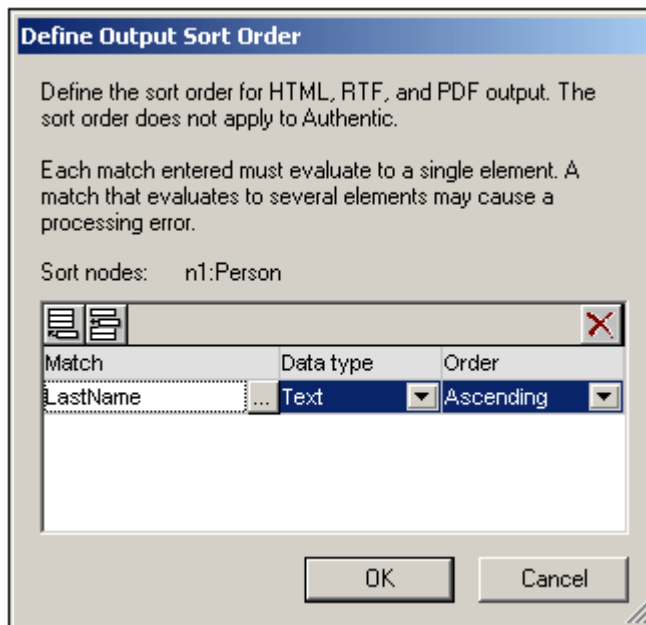
Setting up a schema element node for sorting consists of two steps:

1. In Design View, select the schema element node that is to be sorted. Note that it is the instances of **this** element in the XML document that will be sorted. Often it might not immediately be apparent which element is to be sorted. For example, consider the structure shown in the screenshot below.



Each `newsitem` has a `dateline` containing a `place` element with a `city` attribute. The `@city` nodes of all `newsitem` elements are to be output in alphabetical order. In the design, should the `@city` node be selected for sorting, or the `place`, `dateline`, or `newsitem` elements? With `@city` selected, there will be only the one `city` node that will be sorted. With `place` or `dateline` selected, again there will be just the one respective element to sort, since within their parents they occur singly. With `newsitem` selected, however, there will be multiple `newsitem` elements within the parent `newsitems` element. In this case, it is the `newsitem` element that should be sorted, using a sort-key of `dateline/place/@city`.

2. After selecting the element to sort, in the context menu (obtained by right-clicking the element selection), click the **Sort Output** command. This pops up the Define Output Sort Order dialog (screenshot below), in which you insert or append one or more sort instructions.



Each sort instruction contains: (i) a sort-key (entered in the Match column); (ii) the datatype that the sort-key node should be considered to be (text or number); (iii) and the order of the sorting (ascending or descending). The order in which the sort instructions are listed is significant. Sorting is carried out using each sort instruction in turn, starting with the first, and working down the list when multiple items have the same value. Any number of sort instructions are allowed.

For an example of how sorting is used, see [Example: Sorting on Multiple Sort-Keys](#).

**A note about sort-keys**

In both XSLT 1.0 and XSLT 2.0 SPSs, the XPath expression you enter for the sort-key must select a **single node** for each element instance—not a nodeset (XPath 1.0) or a sequence of items (XPath 2.0); the key for each element should be resolvable to a string or number value.

In an **XSLT 2.0** SPS, if the sort-key returns a sequence of nodes, an XSLT processing error will be returned. So, in the Person example cited above, with a context node of `Person`, an XPath expression such as: `../Person/LastName` would return an error because this expression returns all the `LastName` elements contained in the parent of `Person` (assuming there is more than one `Person` element). The correct XPath expression, with `Person` as the context node, would be: `LastName` (since there is only one `LastName` node for each `Person` element).

In **XSLT 1.0**, the specification requires that when a nodeset is returned by the sort-key selector, the text value of the first node is used. StyleVision therefore returns no error if the XPath expression selects multiple nodes for the sort-key; the text of the first node is used and the other nodes are ignored. However, the first node selected might not be the desired sort-key. For example, the XPath expression `../Person/LastName` of the example described above would not return an error. But neither would it sort, because it is the same value for each element in the entire sort loop (the text value of the first `LastName` node). An expression of the kind: `location/@*`, however, would sort, using the first attribute of the `location` child element as the sort-key. This kind of expression, however, is to be avoided, and a more precise selection of the sort-key (selecting a single node) is advised.

### Example: Sorting on Multiple Sort-Keys


In the simple example below (available in the application folder `C:/Documents and Settings/<username>/My Documents/Altova/StyleVision2010/StyleVisionExamples/Tutorial/Sorting/SortingOnTwoTextKeys.sps`), team-members are listed in a table. Each member is listed with first name, last name, and email address in a row of the table. Let us say we wish to sort the list of members alphabetically, first on last name and then on first name. This is how one does it.

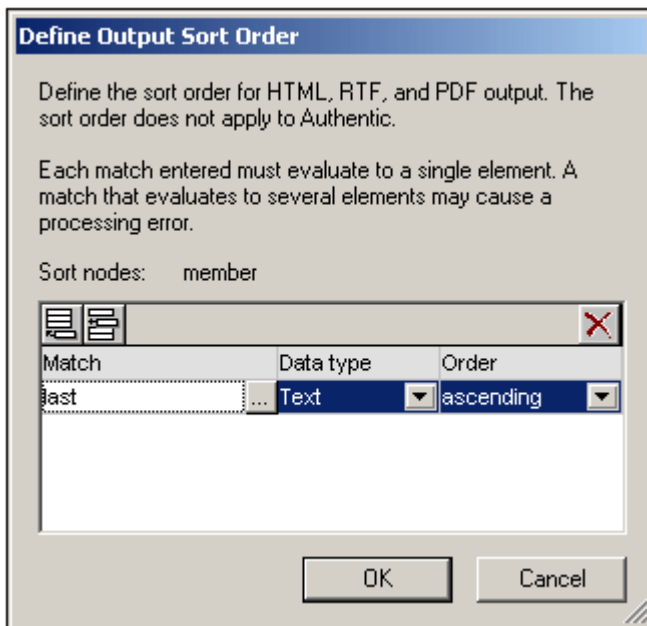
When the list is unsorted, the output order is the order in which the `member` elements are listed in the XML document (*screenshot below, which is the HTML output*).


First	Last	Email
Andrew	Bentinck	a.bentinck@nanonull.com
Nadia	Edwards	n.edwards@nanonull.com
John	Edwards	j.edwards@nanonull.com
Janet	Ashe	j.ashe@nanonull.com

In Design View, right-click the `member` element (*highlighted in screenshot below*), and from the context menu that appears, select the **Sort Output** command.

First	Last	Email
member		
first (content) first	last (content) last	email (content) email
member		
team		

This pops up the Define Output Sort Order dialog (*screenshot below*). Notice that the element selected for sorting, `members`, is named at the Sort Nodes entry. This node is also the context node for XPath expressions to select the sort-key. Click the Add Row button (at left of pane toolbar) to add the first sort instruction. In the row that is added, enter an XPath expression in the Match column to select the node `last`. Alternatively, click the Build button  to build the XPath expression. The Datatype column enables you to select how the sort-key content is to be evaluated: as text or as a number. The Order column lists the order of the sort: ascending or descending. Select `Text` and `Ascending`. Click **OK** to finish.

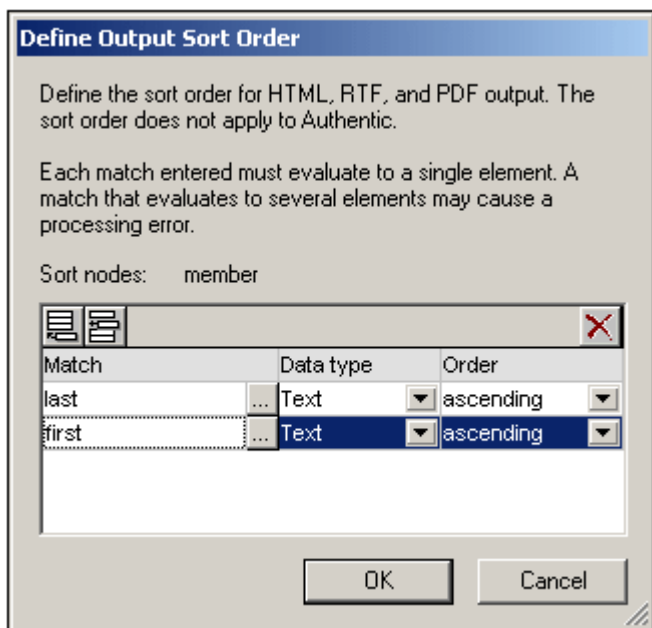


In Design View, the `member` tag displays an icon indicating that it contains a sort filter . The HTML output of the team-member list, sorted on last name, is shown below. Notice that the two Edwards are not alphabetically sorted (Nadia is listed before John, which is the order in the XML document). A second sort-key is required to sort on first name.

First	Last	Email
Janet	Ashe	j.ashe@nanonull.com
Andrew	Bentinck	a.bentinck@nanonull.com
Nadia	Edwards	n.edwards@nanonull.com
John	Edwards	j.edwards@nanonull.com

In Design View, right-click the `member` tag and select the **Sort Output** command from the context menu. The Define Output Sort Order dialog pops up with the `last` sort instruction listed. To add another sort instruction, append a new row and enter the `first` element as its sort-key ( *screenshot below*). Click **OK** to finish.





In the HTML output, the list is now sorted alphabetically on last name and then first name.

First	Last	Email
Janet	Ashe	j.ashe@nanonull.com
Andrew	Bentinck	a.bentinck@nanonull.com
John	Edwards	j.edwards@nanonull.com
Nadia	Edwards	n.edwards@nanonull.com

## 10.5 Parameters and Variables

Parameters and variables can be declared and referenced in the SPS. The difference between the two is that while a variable's value is defined when it is declared, a parameter can have a value passed to it (at run-time via the command line) that overrides the optional default value assigned when the parameter was declared.

In this section, we describe the functionality available for parameters and variables:

- [User-Declared Parameters](#) explains how user-defined parameters can be used in an SPS.
- [Parameters for Design Fragments](#) describes how parameters can be used with design fragments.
- [SPS Parameters for Sources](#) are a special type of parameter. They are automatically defined by StyleVision for schema sources (specifically, the Working XML Files of schemas). Since the name and value of such a parameter are known to the user, the parameter can be referenced within the SPS and a value passed to it at run-time from the command line.
- [Variables](#) enable you to: (i) declare a variable with a certain scope and define its value, and (ii) to reference the value of declared variables and create a template on a node or nodes selected by the variable.

## User-Declared Parameters

In an SPS, user-declared parameters are declared globally with a name and a default string value. Once declared, they can be used in XPath expressions anywhere in the SPS. The default value of the parameter can be overridden for individual XSLT transformations by passing the XSLT stylesheet a new global value via the [command line](#).

### Use of parameters

User-declared parameters are useful in the following situations:


- If you wish to use one value in multiple locations or as an input for several calculations. In this case, you can save the required value as a parameter value and use the parameter in the required locations and calculations.
- If you wish to pass a value to the stylesheet at processing time. In the SPS (and stylesheet), you use a parameter with a default value. At processing time, you pass the desired value to the parameter via the [command line](#).

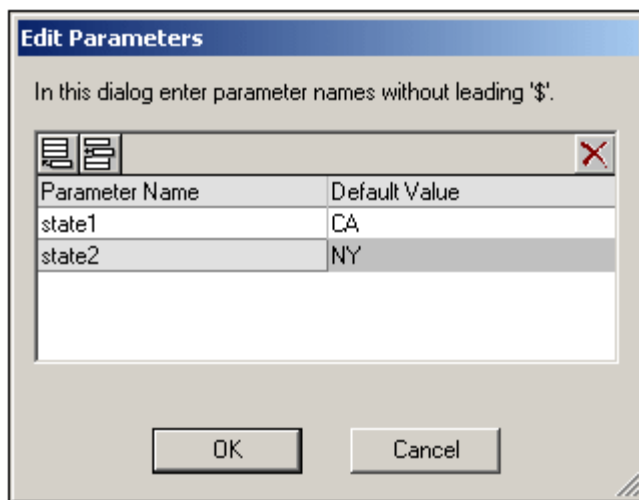
### Usage mechanism

Working with user-declared parameters in the SPS consists of two steps:

1. [Declaring the required parameters](#).
2. [Referencing the declared parameters](#).

### Declaring parameters

All user-defined parameters are declared and edited in the Edit Parameters dialog (*screenshot below*). The Edit Parameters dialog is accessed via: (i) the [Edit | Stylesheet Parameters](#) command and (iii) the Edit button  of the Parameters entry in the [Design Overview sidebar](#).



Declaring a parameter involves giving it a name and a string value—its default value. If no value is specified, the default value is an empty string. The default value will be used each time the parameter is referenced, and it is overridden only if a new value is passed for that parameter on the [command line](#).

To declare a parameter, do the following:

1. In the Edit Parameters dialog, append or insert a new parameter by clicking the Append or Insert buttons. A new line appears.

2. Enter the name of the parameter. Parameter names must begin with a letter, and can contain the characters A to Z, a to z, 0 to 9, and the underscore.
3. Enter a default value for that parameter. The value you enter is accepted as a text string.

You can insert any number of parameters and modify existing parameters at any time while editing the SPS.

**Note:**

- The Edit Parameters dialog contains all the user-defined parameters in an SPS.
- Parameters can also be declared in the [Design Overview sidebar](#).

**Referencing declared parameters**

Parameters can be referenced in XPath expressions by prefixing a \$ character before the parameter name. For example, you could reference a parameter in the XPath expression of an Auto-Calculation (e.g. `concat(' www. ', $company, ' . com' )`).

**Note:** While it is an error to reference an undeclared parameter, it is not an error to declare a parameter and not reference it.

## Parameters for Design Fragments

Parameters for Design Fragments enable you to define a parameter on a design fragment you have created and to give this parameter a default value. At each location where this design fragment is used in the design, you can enter a different parameter value, thus enabling you to modify the output of individual design fragments.

For example, a design fragment named `EmailAddresses` can be created with a parameter named `Domain` that has a default value of `altova.com`. Now, say this parameter is used in an Auto-Calculation in the design fragment to generate the email addresses of company employees. For the EU addresses, we could use the design fragment `EmailAddresses` and edit the value of the `Domain` parameter to be `altova.eu`. In the same way, in the template for Japanese employees, we could edit the value of the `Domain` parameter to be `altova.ja`. For the US employees of the company, we could leave the parameter value of `Domain` unchanged, thus generating the default value of `altova.com`.

Using parameters for design fragments consists of two parts:

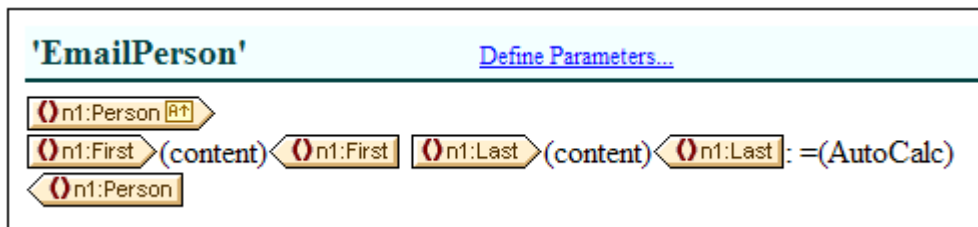
1. [Defining the parameter](#) with a default value on the design fragment where it is created.
2. [Editing the parameter value](#) where the design fragment is used.

These parts are explained in detail below.

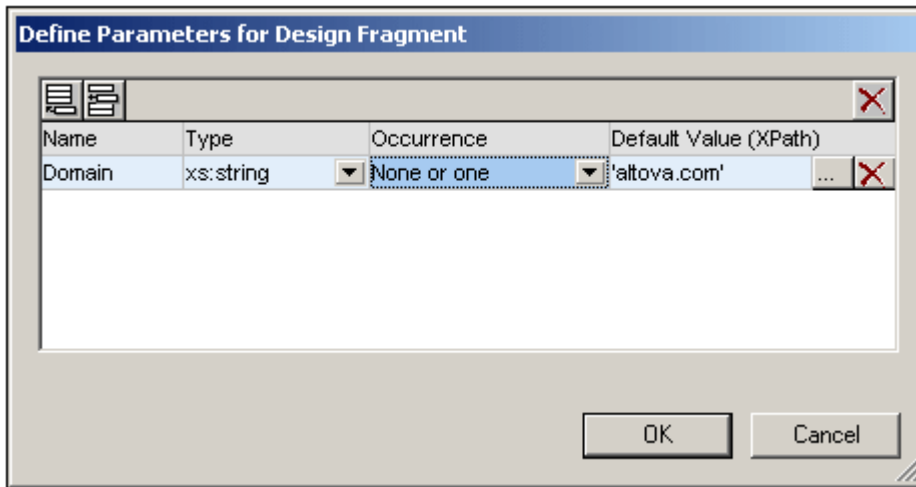
**Note:** Parameters for Design Fragments are supported in Authentic View only in the Enterprise Editions of Altova products.

### Defining the parameter

Each design fragment can be assigned any number of parameters. To do this, click the Define Parameters link in the title bar of the design fragment (see *screenshot below*).



This pops up the Define Parameters for Design Fragments dialog (*screenshot below*). Click the **Append** or **Insert** icon at top left to add a parameter entry line. Enter or select the name, datatype, number of occurrences, and default value of the parameter. The *Occurrence* attribute of the parameter specifies the number of items returned by evaluating the XPath expression specified as the default value of the parameter. The *Occurrence* attribute is optional and is, by default, exactly one. You can add as many parameters as you like.

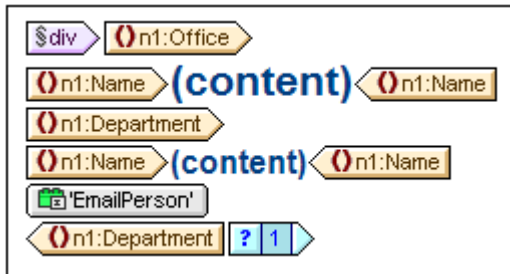


There are two types of **Delete** icon. The Delete icon to the right of each parameter entry deletes the default value of that parameter. The **Delete** icon at the top right of the pane deletes the currently highlighted parameter.

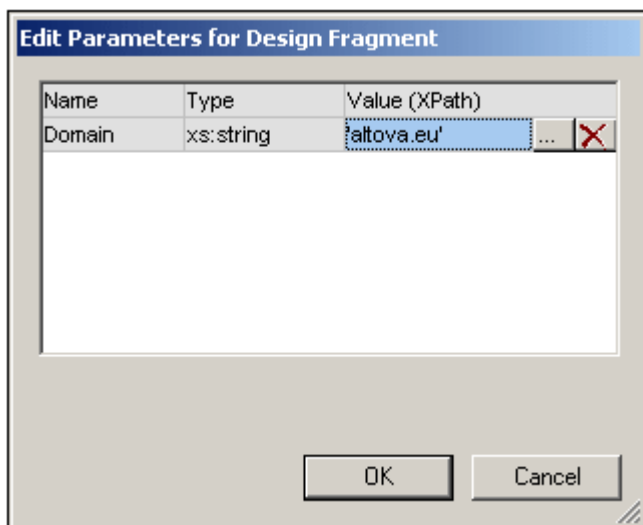
**Note:** If the SPS uses XSLT 1.0, then the XPath expression you enter must return a node-set. Otherwise an error is reported.

### Using the parameter

After a design fragment has been created, it can be inserted at multiple locations in the design (by dragging it from the Design Tree or Schema Tree). The screenshot below shows the design fragment `EmailAddress`, inserted after the `n1: Name` element.



If a parameter has been defined for this design fragment, then its value can be edited for this particular usage instance of the design fragment. Do this by right-clicking the design fragment and selecting the command **Edit Parameters**. This pops up the Edit Parameters for Design Fragments dialog (*screenshot below*).



You can edit the value of the parameter in this dialog. Click **OK** to finish. The new parameter value will be used in this usage instance of the design fragment. If the parameter value is not edited, the original (or default) parameter value will be used.

**Note:** If XSLT 1.0 is being used, then the XPath expression must return a node-set. Otherwise an error is reported.

## SPS Parameters for Sources

An SPS can have multiple schema sources, where a schema could be a DTD or XML Schema on which an XML document is based, or an XML Schema that is generated from a DB and on which the DB is based.

In each SPS, there is one main schema, and, optionally, one or more additional schemas. When you add a new schema source, StyleVision automatically declares a parameter for that schema and assigns the parameter a value that is the URI of the Working XML File you assign to that schema. In the case of DBs, StyleVision generates a temporary XML file from the DB, and sets the parameter to target the document node of this temporary XML file.

### Referencing parameters for sources

Each SPS parameter for a schema source addresses the document node of an XML file corresponding to that schema. In StyleVision, the XML file for each schema is the Working XML File or the XML file generated from a DB. SPS parameters for sources can therefore be used in two ways:

1. In XPath expressions within the SPS, to locate nodes in various documents. The parameter is used to identify the document, and subsequent locator steps in the XPath expression locate the required node within that document. For example, the expression: `count($XML2//Department/Employee)` returns the number of `Employee` elements in all `Department` elements in the XML document that is the Working XML File assigned to the schema source designated `$XML2`.
2. On the command line, the URI of another XML file can be passed as the value of an SPS parameter for sources. Of course, the new XML file would have to be based on the schema represented by that parameter. For example, if `FileA.xml` and `FileB.xml` are both valid according to the same schema, and `FileA.xml` is the Working XML File assigned to a schema `$XML3` used in an SPS, then when an XSLT transformation for that SPS is invoked from the command line, `FileB.xml` can be substituted for `FileA.xml` by using the parameter `$XML3="FileB.xml"`. You should also note that, on the command line, values should be entered for all SPS parameters for sources except the parameter for the main schema. The XML file corresponding to the main schema will be the entry point for the XSLT stylesheet, and will therefore be the XML file on which the transformation is run.



## Variables

Using variables consists of two parts: (i) [declaring the variable](#), and (ii) [using the variable](#).

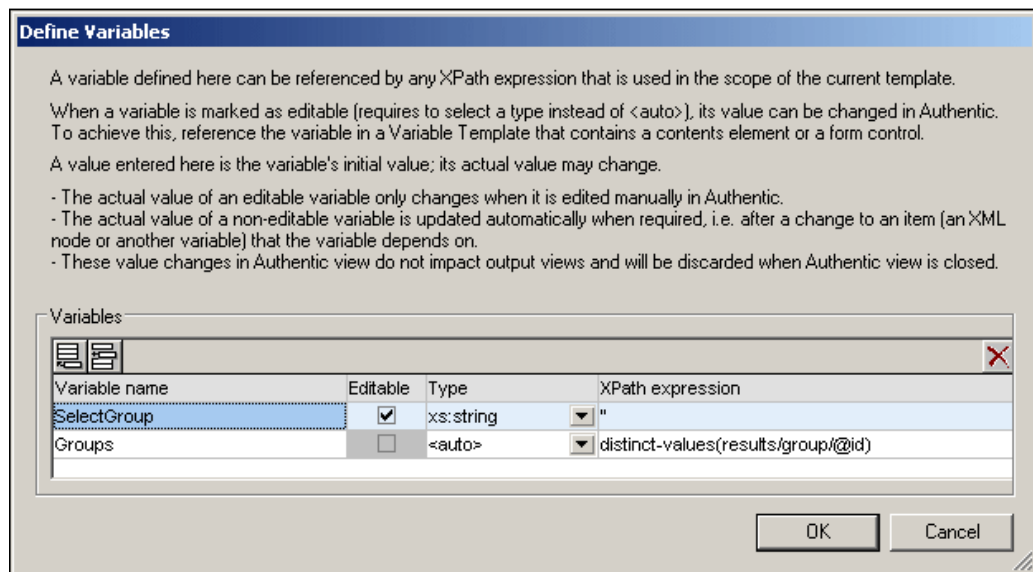
**Note:** Variables are supported in Authentic View only in the Enterprise Editions of Altova products.

### Declaring a variable

A variable can be declared on any template included in the design. It is given a name, a datatype, and a value. Additionally, you can specify whether it is to be editable in the Enterprise editions of Authentic View. The variable will then be in scope on this template and can be used within it. To declare a variable so that it is in scope for the entire document, declare the variable on the root template. A major advantage of declaring a variable only on the template where it is needed is that XPath expressions to locate a descendant node will be simpler.

Declare a variable as follows:

1. Right-click the node template on which the variable is to be created and select the command **Define Variables**.
2. In the Define Variables dialog that appears (*screenshot below*), click the **Append Variable** icon in the top left of the Variables pane, then enter a variable name. The value of the variable is given via an XPath expression. If you wish to enter a string as the value of the variable (as in the first variable in the screenshot below), then enclose the string in quotation marks. In the screenshot below, the value of the `SelectGroup` variable is the empty string. Otherwise, the text will be read as a node name or a function-call.



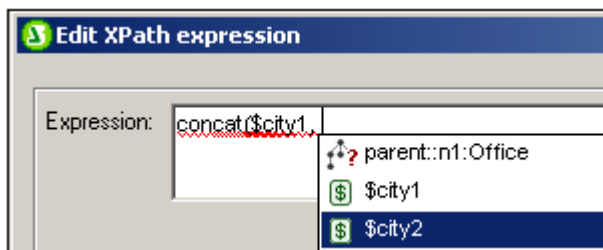
3. Setting a variable to Editable (by checking the *Editable* check box) enables the variable to be edited in Authentic View (which is available as a preview only in Enterprise and Professional editions of StyleVision). In this case, you must also set the datatype value to the correct type, such as `xs:string`.
4. You can add as many variables as you like, but the name of a variable must not be the name of an already declared in-scope variable. To delete a variable click the **Delete** icon in the top right of the pane.
5. Click **OK** when done. The template tag will now have a \$ icon to indicate that one or more variables have been declared on it.

In this way, variables can be created for each node template that is present in the design. Each of these variables will have a name and a value, and will be in scope within the template on which it was declared. To edit a variable subsequently, right-click the node template on which the variable was created and select the command **Define Variables** to access the Define Variables dialog.

### Using a variable

For a variable to be used at any location, it must be in scope at that location. This means that a variable can only be used within the template on which it was defined. Variables can also be edited in Authentic View so that users can control the display. The edited value is discarded when the SPS is closed.

A variable can be used in any XPath expression, and is referenced in the XPath expression by prefixing its name with a `$` symbol. For example, the XPath expression `$VarName/Name` selects the `Name` child element of the node selected by the variable named `VarName`.



When you enter an XPath expression in the Edit XPath Expression dialog, in-scope variables appear in a pop-up (see *screenshot above*). Selecting a variable in the pop-up and pressing **Enter** inserts the variable reference in the expression.

## 10.6 Table of Contents, Referencing, Bookmarks


The Table of Contents (TOC) and referencing mechanisms work by creating anchors at the required points in the design document and then referring back to these references from TOCs, text references, auto-numbering sequences, and hyperlinks. Two types of mechanism are used:

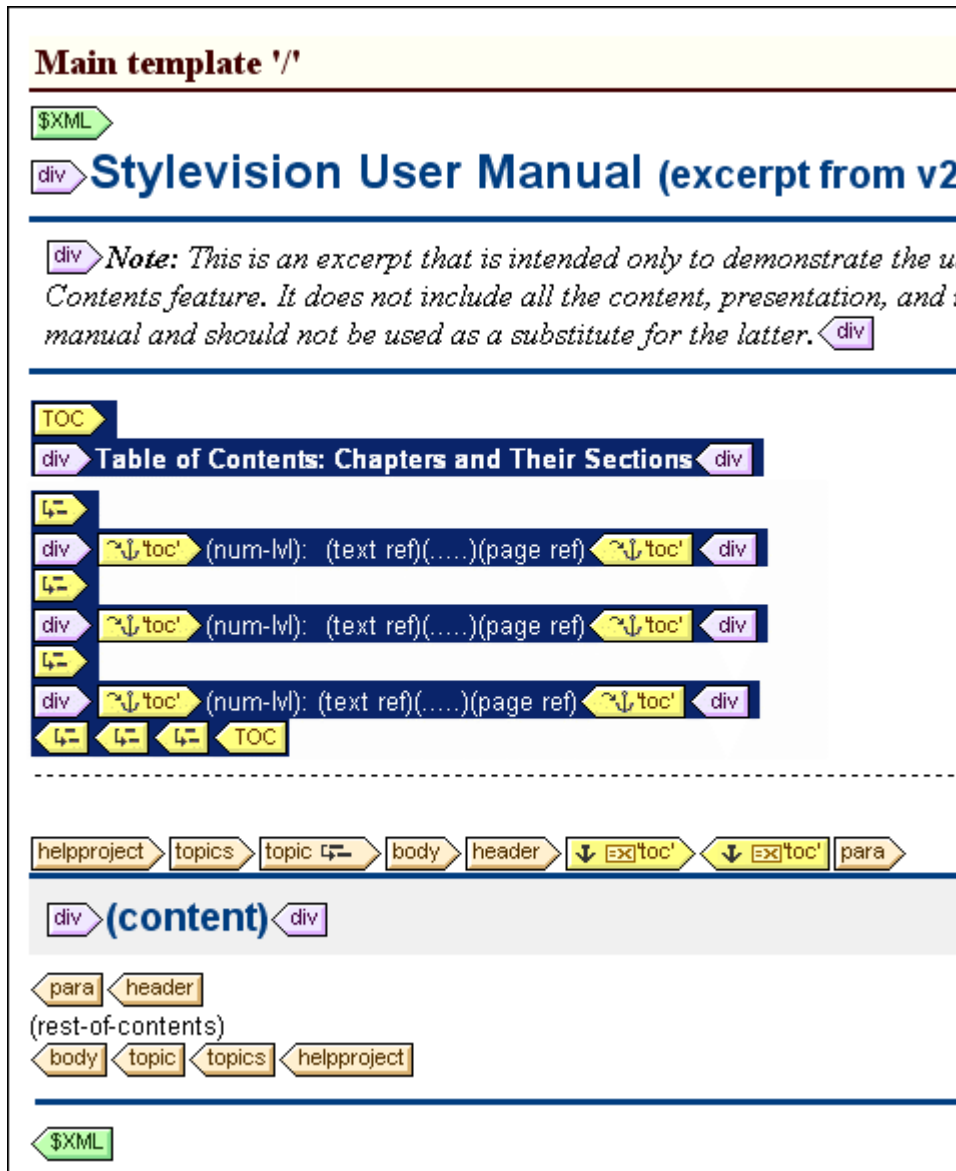
- A simple anchor is created at a point in the design document. The anchor (or bookmark) is given a unique name and this name is used as the target of links that point to this document fragment. This mechanism is used for the [Bookmarks and Hyperlinks](#) feature. Links can additionally point to URLs outside the document.
- For more complex referencing, such as for TOCs and the auto-numbering of document sections, building the anchor involves two parts. First, the document is structured into the hierarchy required for the TOC. This is achieved by assigning levels to different points in the document structure. Second, the text that will appear in the referencing component must be defined. After the levels and the reference text have been defined, the referencing component can be designed. This mechanism is broadly described below, under [The TOC mechanism](#).

The various referencing features are explained in detail in the rest of this section.

### The TOC mechanism

If you have selected [XSLT 2.0](#) (not XSLT 1.0) as the XSLT version of your SPS, you can create a table of contents (TOC) at any location in the design. The mechanism for creating the TOC consists of two parts, which are described in the sub-sections of this section:

- The items from the design that are to be included in the TOC are [marked in the design](#). These items can be static content or dynamic content. In the bottom half of the screenshot below, yellow TOC bookmark tags  within the `header` tag marks the `header` item for inclusion in the TOC.
- A [template is created for the TOC](#) (*highlighted in screenshot below*). The TOC template contains the design of the TOC; it can be located anywhere in the design. In the example shown in the screenshot below, the TOC template is located near the top of the document.



Either of these two parts can be created first, or both parts can be created concomitantly.

The TOC is displayed in the HTML output. Also note that: (i) TOCs can be created with a flat or a hierarchical structure (with corresponding numbering), and (ii) multiple TOCs can be created within a design. As a result, a stylesheet designer can create a document with, say, one (hierarchical) TOC at the book level and others (also hierarchical) at the chapter level, plus (flat) lists of figures and tables.

**Procedure for creating TOCs**


Given below is one step-by-step way of creating a TOC, in which items are first marked for inclusion, and the TOC template is constructed subsequently. (Alternatively, you can create the TOC template first, and then mark items for inclusion; or you can create the TOC template and select items for inclusion in parallel.)

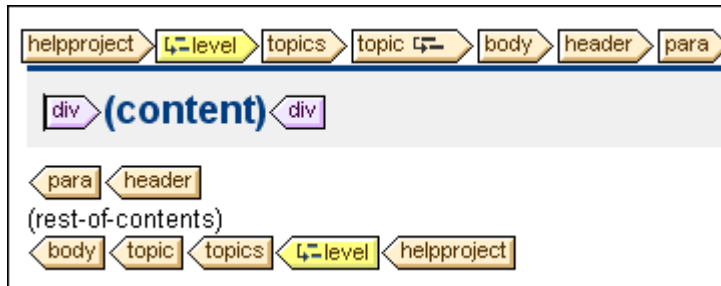
1. Make sure that [XSLT 2.0](#) is the selected XSLT version.




2. [Structure the document in levels](#). If the TOC is to have multiple levels, structure the design in a hierarchy of nested levels. If the TOC is to have a flat structure (that is, one level only), then create at least one level that will enclose the TOC bookmarks.
3. [Create one or more TOC bookmarks](#) within each level in the document design. The TOC bookmarks identify the components within each level that are to appear in the TOC.
4. [Create a TOC template](#). The TOC template should have the required number of TOC reference levels (reflevels). In the case of a multi-level TOC, the reflevels in the TOC template should be nested (*see screenshot above*).
5. [Create TOCrefs](#). In the TOC template, set up a TOCref for each level. Each TOCref will reference, by name, the required TOC bookmarks within that level in the document; alternatively, the TOCref may additionally reference TOC bookmarks in other levels.
6. [Format the TOC items](#). Each TOC item (in the TOC template) can contain item numbering (including hierarchical), the TOC item text, a leader, and, for paged media, a page number. Each TOC item and its parts can be formatted as required. Note that you can include numbering not only in the TOC template, but also within a TOC bookmark in the main body of the document.

## Marking Items for TOC Inclusion

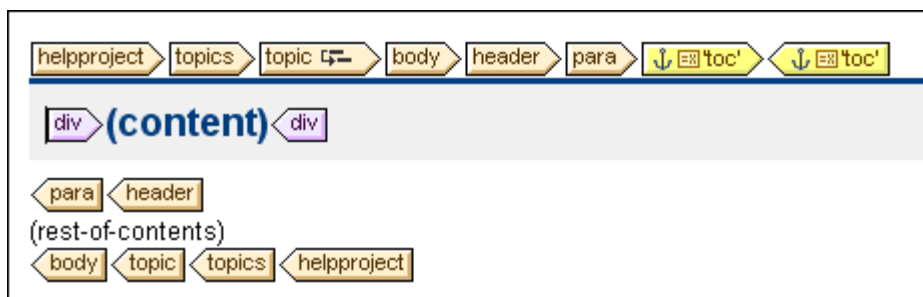
Marking an item in the design for inclusion in a TOC consists of two steps, which can be done in any order:

1. [Structuring the design document in a hierarchy of nested levels](#). A level is created in the design either on a template or around a design component. In the screenshot below, a level has been created on the `topic` template .




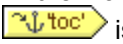
When a level is created on a template, this is indicated by the level icon inside the start tag of the template. For example, `topic` . When a level is created around a component it is indicated by level tags `level`  `level` . In the screenshot above, the `topics` template component is enclosed by a level. The difference between the two ways of marking levels is explained in the section [Structuring the Design in Levels](#). When the [TOC template is created](#), it must be structured in a hierarchy of levels, with the levels in the TOC template corresponding to the levels you have created in the design. Even for TOCs with a flat structure (one level), the design must have a corresponding level.

2. [Creating a TOC bookmark](#) in the design with a name and TOC-item text. The TOC bookmark can either enclose or not enclose a design component; in the latter case it is empty. In the screenshot below, the TOC bookmark does not enclose a design component.

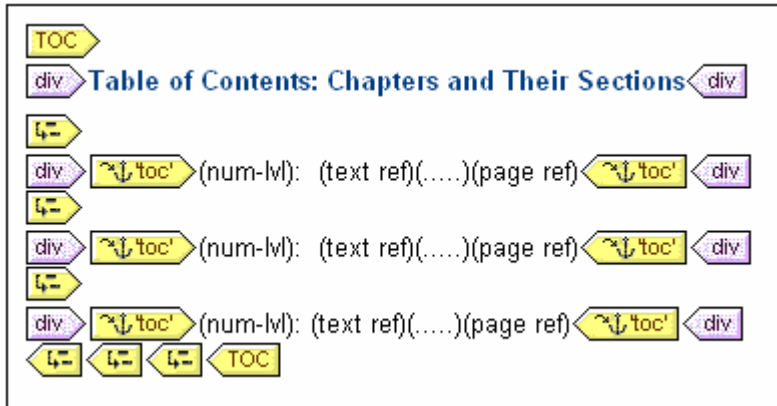


The TOC bookmark serves as an anchor in the document. In the screenshot above, the TOC bookmark (and anchor) is located at the start of `para` element instances. The TOC bookmark has two attributes: (i) a name that will be used to reference the TOC bookmark when creating the TOC item in the TOC template, and (ii) a text string that will be used as the text of the corresponding TOC item. How these two attributes are assigned is described in the section, [Creating TOC Bookmarks](#).

### How marked items are referenced in the TOC template

The [TOC template](#) is structured in nested levels (called reference levels (reflevels) to differentiate them from the levels created in the main body of the design template). Within each reflevel , a TOC reference (TOCref)  is inserted (see screenshot below). The TOCref within a level references TOC bookmarks using the TOC bookmark's name. Each TOC bookmark with that name and which is within the corresponding level in the XML document will

be created as a TOC item at this level in the TOC (when the scope of the TOCref is specified to be the current level). For example, the TOCref indicated with the tag `<tocref 'chapters'>` references all TOC bookmarks named `chapters` in the corresponding level in the XML document (when the scope of the TOCref has been set to `current`). The text attribute of the respective instantiated TOC bookmark will be output as the text of the TOC item.



In the screenshot above of a TOC template, there are three nested relevels, within each of which is a TOCref that contains the template for the TOC item of that level. For example, in the first level, there is a TOCref that references TOC bookmarks that have a name of `toc`. As a result, all TOC bookmarks in the first level (as structured in the design) and named `toc` will be accessed for output at this level in the TOC. The TOCref within the second level also references TOC bookmarks having a name of `toc`. As a result, all TOC bookmarks in the second level of the document (as structured in the design) and that are named `toc` will be used for second-level items in the TOC. The third level works in the same way: TOC bookmarks named `toc` that occur within the document's third level are referenced for third-level items in the TOC.


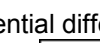

In the sub-sections of this section, we describe: (i) how [the design is structured into levels](#), and (ii) how [bookmarks are created](#). How the [TOC template is created](#) is described in the section, [Creating the TOC Template](#).

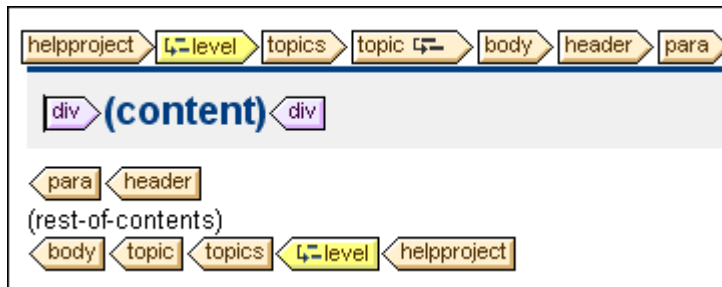
## Structuring the Design in Levels

The hierarchical structure you wish to design for the TOC is specified as a set of **nested levels**. As such it is a hierarchical structure which, although related to the XML document structure, is separate from it. This structure is specified in the SPS document design. The TOC template that you construct will use a structure corresponding to this hierarchical structure. In the case of a TOC with a flat structure (one level only), the design document must have at least one level. If more than one level exists in the document, a flat TOC can then be created for any of these levels or for multiple levels.

Levels can be created in the main template, in global templates, or in a combination of main template and global templates. The important thing to note is that wherever created, these levels must together, in combination, define a hierarchical structure for the output of the SPS.

### Creating levels

Each level is created separately. In the design document, levels can be created on a template or around a component. In the screenshot below, one level has been created on the `topic` template (indicated by ) and another around the `topics` element (indicated by ). The essential difference between these two ways of creating levels is that the `enclose-within-a-level` option  enables levels to be created around components other than templates.



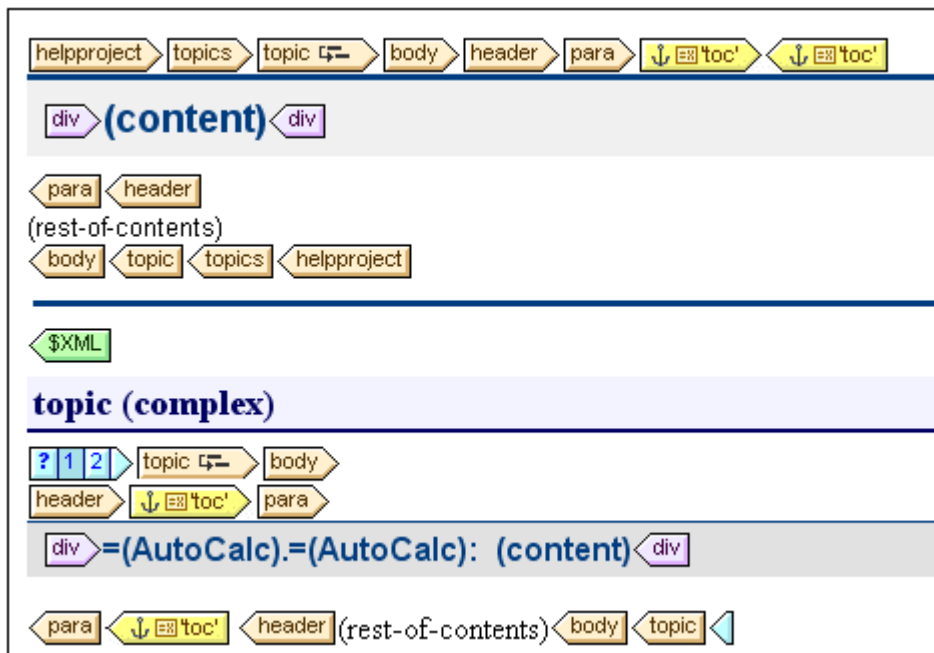
To create a level, do the following:

1. Select the component (template or other).
2. Right-click, and from the context menu select **Template Serves As Level** (enabled when a template is selected) or **Enclose With | Level**. Both these options are also available in the **Insert | Insert Table of Contents** menu: **Level** or **Template Serves as Level**.

### Levels in global templates

Levels can also be set in global templates. In these cases, care must be taken to ensure that the levels created in various global templates, as well as those in the main template, **together** define a hierarchical structure when the SPS is executed. The screenshot below shows two levels, one in the main template (on the `topic` template) and one in the global template for `topic` (on the `topic` template).





In the content model represented by the screenshot above, `topic` is a recursive element, that is, a `topic` element can itself contain a descendant `topic` element. In the main template (the end of which is indicated by the `<$XML` tag), a level has been set for the first level of `topic` (`topic`). The `rest-of-contents` instruction in the main template specifies that templates will be applied for all child elements of `topic/body` except `header`. This means that the global template for `topic` children of `topic/body` will be processed. In the global template for `topic`, a level has been set on the `topic` template (indicated by `topic`). This second level of the TOC hierarchy, which occurs on the second level of `topic` elements, is nested within the first level of the TOC hierarchy. Since this global template also has a `rest-of-contents` instruction, the global template for `topic` will be applied to all recursive `topic` elements, thus creating additional nested levels in the TOC hierarchy.

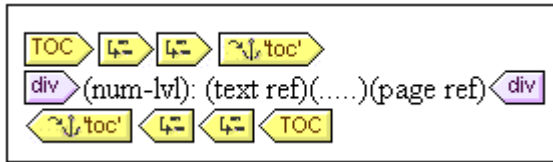
As a designer, you should be aware of the number of levels created in the design, because when the TOC template is constructed, you will need to explicitly specify how TOC items for each level will be selected and formatted.

### Levels in a flat TOC hierarchy

In a flat TOC hierarchy, the TOC items will be output at a single level; the outline of the document in the TOC will be a simple list of items. In the TOC template, the items to be listed are referenced in the usual way in the design document: by their name and the level in which they occur. Therefore, the document design must contain at least one level, and this level must contain all the required TOC bookmarks.

If the design contains more than one level, and the flat TOC is required, say, for items in the second level, then the TOC template could have two `reflevels` with a `TOCref` within the second level (*screenshot below*).

For example, consider the design document shown in the screenshot above: It has one level on the `topic` template in the main template and sub-levels on the `topic` template in the global template. The TOC template shown in the screenshot below will produce a flat TOC of the second-level topic headers (assuming that the bookmark name is `toc`).



This is because the TOCref in the TOC template references TOC bookmarks named `toc` that are within the second level. Notice that in the TOC template the TOCref item is created within the second relevel of the TOC template. Since only one level is output (there is no output for the first relevel), the resulting TOC will be flat.

**Note:** Alternatively, [the scope attribute of TOCrefs](#) can be used to specify what level/s in the design document should be looked up for bookmarks of a given name.

## Creating TOC Bookmarks

TOC bookmarks are created within a [TOC level](#) in the document design. They can be created in the main template and/or in global templates. A TOC bookmark serves two purposes:

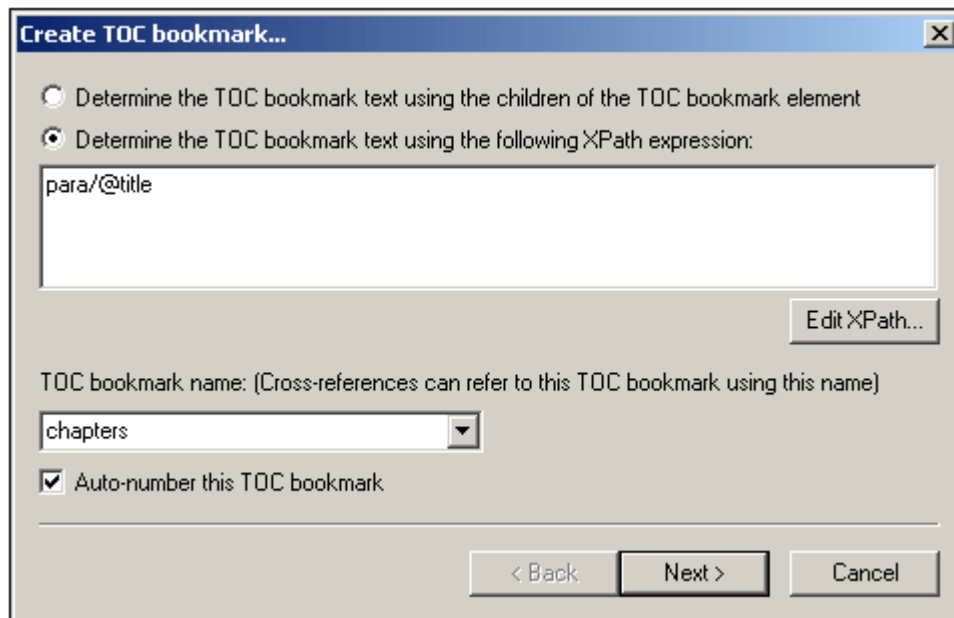
- It marks a (static or dynamic) component in the design with a static name you assign. It can either enclose or not enclose a design component; in the latter case it is empty. In the output, the TOC bookmark is instantiated as an anchor identified by a name.
- It defines the text string that will be used as the text for the TOC item/s. This text string can be the content of child elements of the node where the marker is located, or it can be the output of an XPath expression.

You can create the TOC bookmark in two ways: (i) by using the [Create Marker Wizard](#), which enables you to specify the TOC bookmark's name; its text entry; whether auto-numbering should be used; and the level within which it appears; and (ii) by [inserting an empty TOC bookmark](#), the properties of which will be defined subsequently.

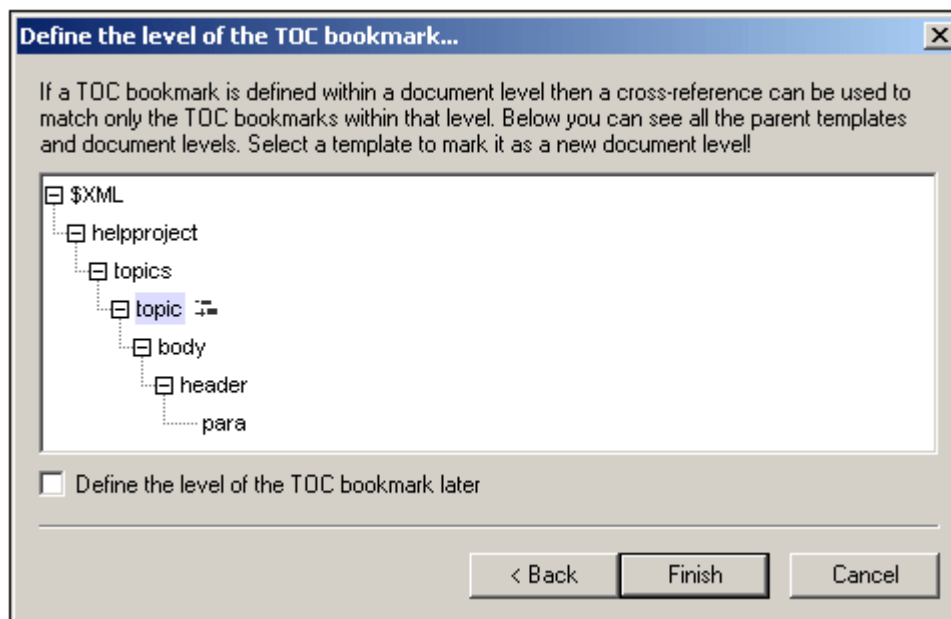
### Creating the TOC bookmark with the Create Marker Wizard

To create a TOC bookmark using the TOC Bookmark Wizard, do the following:

1. Place the cursor at the point in the design document where you wish to insert the TOC bookmark, or select the design component around which you wish to insert the TOC bookmark.
2. From the **Insert** menu, select **Insert Table of Contents | TOC Bookmark (Wizard)**. This pops up the Create Marker Wizard (*screenshot below*).



1. In the wizard's first screen (*screenshot above*) you: (i) define the text entry for the TOC item; (ii) set the TOC bookmark (or marker) name; and (iii) specify whether this marker should be numbered in the output. For the text entry you can select whether the text of child elements should be used, or the result of an XPath expression. For the name of the marker, you can enter text directly or select from a dropdown list containing the names of already specified marker names. When you are done, click **Next**.
2. In the wizard's second screen (*screenshot below*), you can select the level within which the TOC bookmark is to be inserted.



Ancestor templates on which levels are assigned are indicated with a level icon (in the screenshot above, the `topic` template has a level). Select a template-level within which the TOC bookmark is to be created. If a level already exists for this template, the TOC bookmark will be created within this level, otherwise a new level will be created on the selected template. Alternatively, you can choose to define the level later by checking the Define Level Later check box. When you are done, click **Finish**.

### Creating a TOC bookmark

To create a TOC bookmark without attributes, do the following:

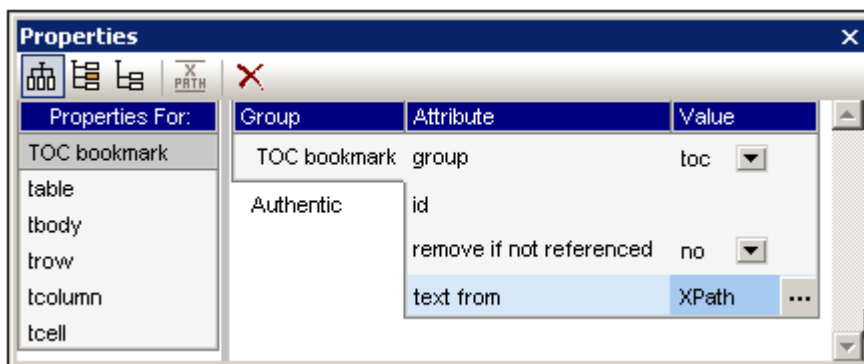
1. Place the cursor at the point in the design document where you wish to insert the TOC bookmark, or select the design component around which you wish to insert the TOC bookmark.
2. From the **Insert** menu, select **Insert Table of Contents | TOC Bookmark**. A TOC bookmark is inserted. This TOC bookmark has neither a name nor a text entry. These can be defined subsequently using the [Edit commands](#).

### Inserting hierarchical or sequential numbering for a component

Hierarchical or sequential numbering can be inserted within a TOC bookmark's tags. Right-click at the location where you wish to insert the numbering, then select **Insert Table Of Contents | Hierarchical / Sequential Numbering**. Since numbering can only be inserted at locations within a TOC bookmark, it is better, for numbering purposes, that a TOC bookmark be created around a component rather than be empty. This would allow greater layout flexibility in the placement of the numbering.

### Editing the name and text entry of a TOC bookmark

The name and text entry of the TOC bookmark can be edited in the Properties window ( *screenshot below*). To edit these properties, select the TOC bookmark, and either directly edit the property in the [Property window](#) or right-click the TOC bookmark and select the property you wish to edit.



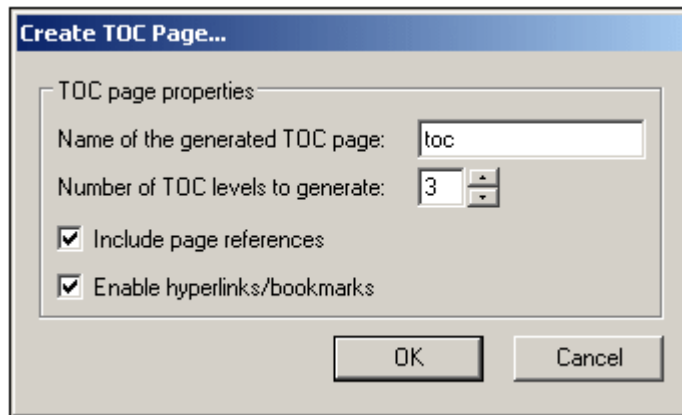
The TOC bookmark has three properties: (i) an option (*Text From*) to specify the text entry, which could come from the bookmark's content or from an XPath expression; (ii) the name of the TOC bookmark group (*Group*); and (iii) an option to remove the bookmark if it is not referenced.

## Creating the TOC Template

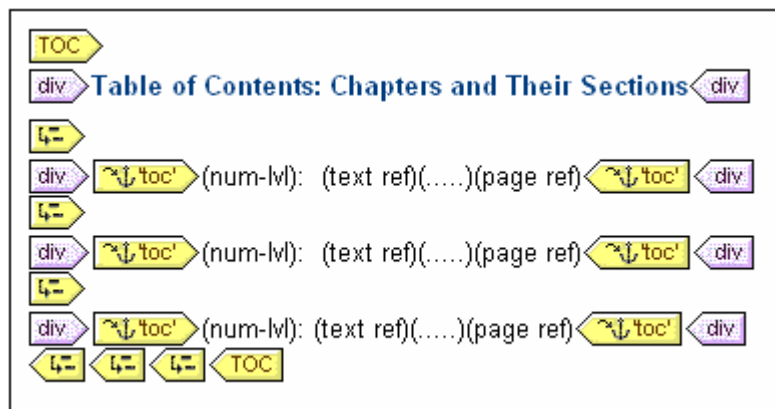
The TOC template is the template that produces the table of contents in the output. It can be created anywhere within the SPS design, and multiple TOC templates can be created in a single SPS design.

The steps to create a TOC template are as follows:

1. Place the cursor at the location where the TOC template is to be inserted.
2. Click the menu command **Insert | Insert Table of Contents | Table of Contents**. This pops up the Create TOC Page dialog (*screenshot below*). (Alternatively, this command can be accessed via the context menu, which appears when you right-click.)



3. Enter the information requested in the dialog: (i) The name of the generated TOC page is the (TOCref) name that will be used to reference the [TOC bookmarks](#) in the design document. If you select multiple levels for the TOC (next option), the same TOCref name will be used in all levels (though individual TOCref names can be [edited subsequently](#)). (ii) The number of [TOC relevels](#) specifies how many levels the TOC is to have. (iii) For printed media, the option to output page references (i.e. page numbers) is available. (iv) The text entries in the TOC can be used as links to the TOC bookmarks.
4. Click **OK** to finish. The TOC template is created with the specified number of relevels (*screenshot below; the formatting of the TOC template has been modified from that which is created initially*).



Within each relevel is a TOCref having a name that identifies TOC bookmarks that are to be the TOC items for that TOC template relevel. Within each TOCref is a default template for the TOC item, which you can [edit at any time](#).

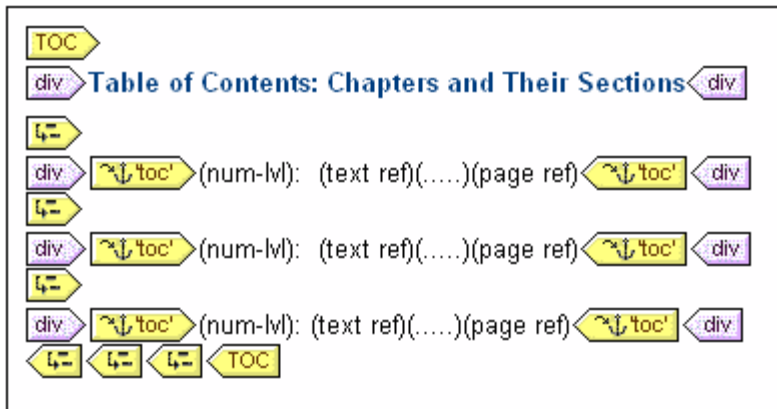
**Editing the TOC template**

The following editing options are available:

- The TOC template can be dragged to another location in the SPS. Note, however, that a change of context node could affect XPath expressions within the TOC template.
- [Relevels](#) can be added to or deleted from the structure of the TOC template.
- The [properties of individual TOC references](#) (TOCrefs) can be edited. The name and scope of a TOCref can be changed, and you can choose whether the TOC item corresponding to the TOCref is created as a hyperlink or not.
- [TOCrefs](#) can be added to or deleted from any relevel in the TOC template.
- The [TOC item](#) within a TOCref can be formatted with CSS properties using the standard [StyleVision mechanisms](#).
- Standard SPS features (such as images, Auto-Calculations, and block-formatting components) can be inserted anywhere in the TOC template.

### Relevels in the TOC Template

The [TOC template](#) is structured in **level references (or relevels)**; see *screenshot below*. These levels are initially created when the TOC template is created, and the number of relevels are the number you specify in the [Create TOC Page dialog](#).



Notice that the relevels are nested. For the purposes of the TOC design there is a one-to-one correspondence between the relevels in the TOC template and the levels in the SPS design. Thus, the first relevel of the TOC template corresponds to the first level in the SPS design, the second relevel in the TOC template to the second level in the SPS design, and so on. The TOCrefs within a given relevel of the TOC template identify [TOC bookmarks](#) within a [specified scope](#) in the SPS design.

### Inserting and removing relevels

Relevels can be inserted in or deleted from the TOC template after the TOC template has been created.

To insert a relevel, select the content in the TOC template around which a relevel is to be created, then select **Insert | Insert Table of Contents | Level Reference**. Alternatively, from the context menu, select **Enclose With | Level Reference**. A relevel can also be inserted at a cursor insertion point in the TOC template.

To remove a relevel from the TOC template, select the relevel to be removed and either press the **Delete** key or select **Remove** from the context menu. Note that only the relevel will be removed—not its contents.



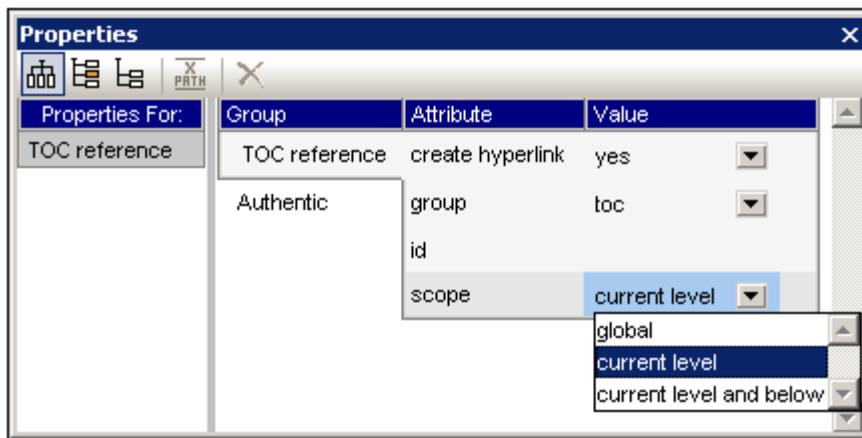
### TOC References: Name, Scope, Hyperlink

TOC references (TOCrefs) occur within level references (reflevels) and have three properties:

- A **name**, which identifies TOC bookmarks of the same name that occur within the specified scope as the items to be included at that level of the TOC.
- A **scope**, which specifies to which corresponding levels in the SPS design the TOCref applies. Three options are available: global, current level, current level and descendant levels.
- A **hyperlink** property which can be toggled between `yes` and `no` to specify whether the corresponding TOC items are created as hyperlinks or not.

To insert a TOCref, place the cursor within a reflevel and, from the **Insert** menu or context menu, select **Insert Table of Contents | TOC Reference**.

To edit a TOCref property, right-click the TOCref tag in the TOC template and select the property you wish to edit (*Create Hyperlink*, *Edit Group*, or *Edit Scope*). This pops up the Properties window with the specified property selected for editing (*screenshot below*).

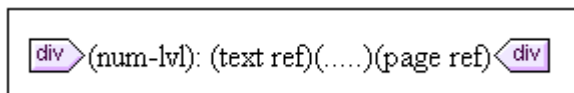


Alternatively, with the TOCref tag selected, go directly to the required property in the Properties window (*TOC reference* group of properties).

### Formatting TOC Items

The TOC item can contain up to four standard components, plus optional user-specified content. The four standard components are (*see also screenshot below*):

- the text entry of the TOC item, indicated in the TOC template by ( `text ref` )
- the leader between the text entry and the page number (for paged media output), indicated by ( `.....` )
- the page reference of the TOC item, indicated by ( `page ref` )
- hierarchical or sequential numbering, indicated by ( `num-lvl` ) and ( `num-seq` ) , respectively



When the TOC template is initially created, the text entry is automatically inserted within TOCrefs. If the Include Page Reference option was selected, then the leader and page reference components are also included. Subsequently, components can be inserted and deleted from the TOC item. To insert a component, place the cursor at the desired insertion point within the TOC item, and in the context menu, select **Insert Table Of Contents | TOC Reference | Text Entry / Leader / Page Reference** or **Insert Table Of Contents | Hierarchical Numbering / Sequential Numbering** as required. To delete a component, select it and press the **Delete** key.

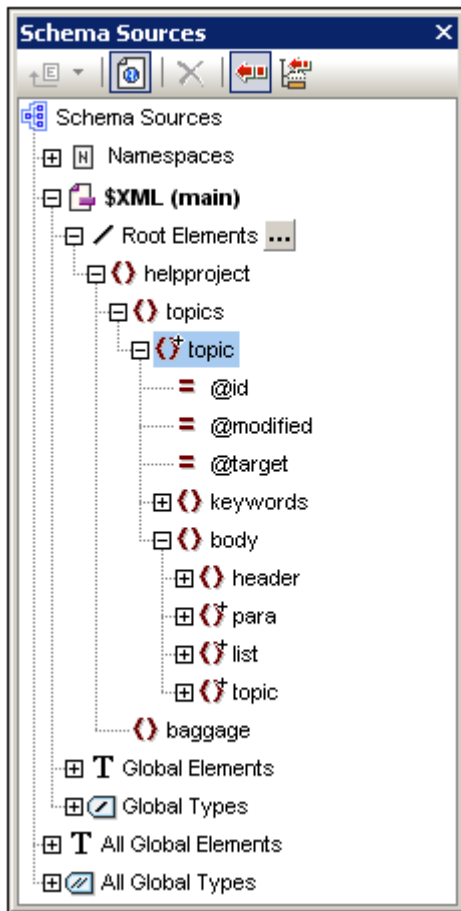
Additionally, you can insert static content (e.g. text) and dynamic content (e.g. Auto-Calculations) within the TOC item.

### Formatting the TOC item

The TOC item can be formatted with [CSS styles](#) via the [Styles sidebar](#). Individual TOC item components can be separately formatted by selecting the component and assigning it [style properties](#) in the Styles sidebar.

## Example: Hierarchical and Sequential TOCs

An example SPS file to demonstrate the use of TOCs, called `Chapters.sps`, is in the folder `C:/Documents and Settings/<username>/My Documents/Altova/StyleVision2010/StyleVisionExamples/Tutorial/TOC`. This SPS is based on a schema that defines the content model of a large chapter-based document. The schema structure is shown in the screenshot below and can be viewed in the Schema Tree window of StyleVision when you open `Chapters.sps`.



The document element is `helpproject`, which contains a child `topics` element. The `topics` element can contain an unlimited number of `topic` elements, each of which can in turn contain descendant `topic` elements. The first level of `topic` elements can be considered to be the chapters of the document, while descendant `topic` elements are sections, sub-sections, and so on.

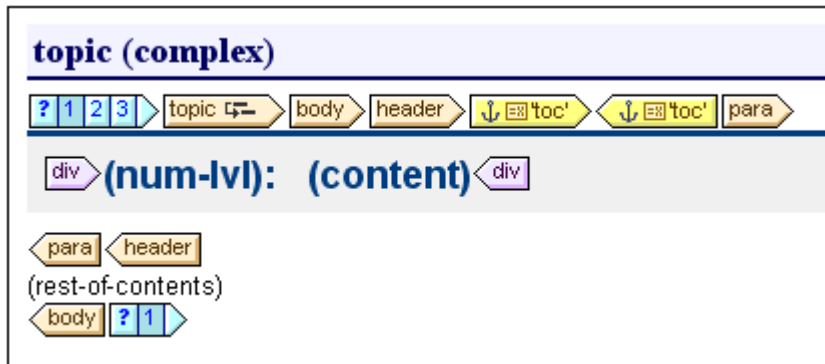
The SPS contains three TOCs, located at the top of the document, in the following order:

1. [Chapters at a glance](#), which lists the names of each chapter (the first-level topics).
2. [Chapters and their sections](#), which lists each chapter with its descendants sections (first-level topics, plus each topic's hierarchy of sub-topics down to the lowest-level topic, which in the accompanying XML document, `chapters.xml`, is the third-level topic)
3. [List of images](#), which is a flat list of all images in the document (except the first), listed by file name.

### SPS structure

Before considering the TOCs in detail, take a look at the structure of the design. Notice that the main template (with the green `$XML` tags) contains the TOCs. The rest of the main template specifies, through the `rest-of-contents` instruction, that global and default templates are to be applied.

The TOC definitions are in the global templates for `topic` and `image`. In the global template for `topic` (*screenshot below*), a level has been created on the `topic` element, and a bookmark has been created within the `header` child element (but outside the `para` element).



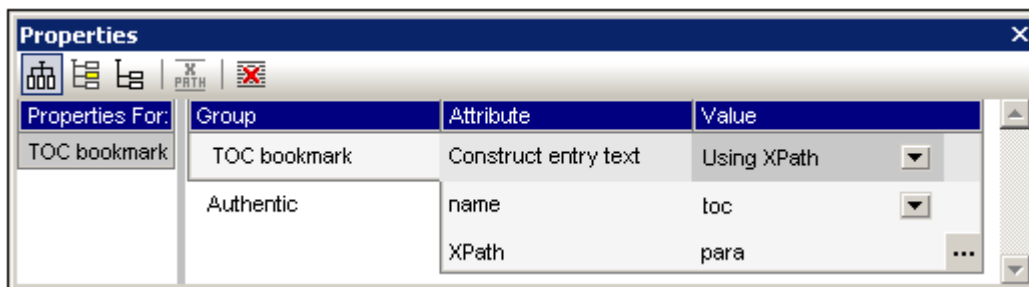
Since the `topic` element is recursive, the levels and the bookmark will also recurse. This means that a new hierarchically subordinate level and a new bookmark is created for each descendant topic. Since the formatting of the header (the topic title) for each level is to be different, we have enclosed each level within a separate branch of a condition with three branches. Each branch tests for the level at which a topic occurs: first, second, or third level.

Notice that hierarchical numbering (`num-lvl`) has been inserted within the level. This is done by right-clicking at the required location and selecting **Insert Table of Contents | Hierarchical Numbering**. The effect is to insert the correct hierarchical number before each topic title in the **document's text flow**, for example, 3.1 or 4.2.3.


### TOC descriptions

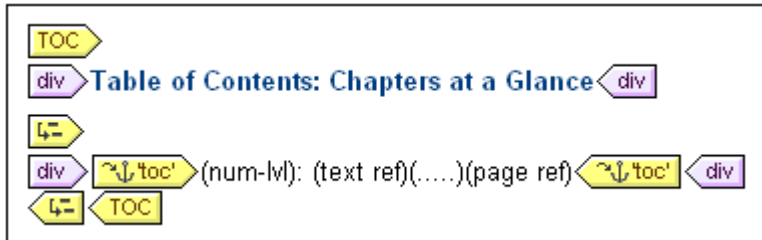
Given below is a brief description of each TOC and the points to note about them.

**Chapters at a glance:** Select the TOC bookmark in the global template for `topic`. In the Properties sidebar (*screenshot below*), notice that the entry text has been set to be constructed using an XPath expression, and that the XPath expression has been defined as: `para`. This means that the contents of the `para` child of `header` (since the bookmark has been inserted within the `header` element) will be used as the text of the TOC item.



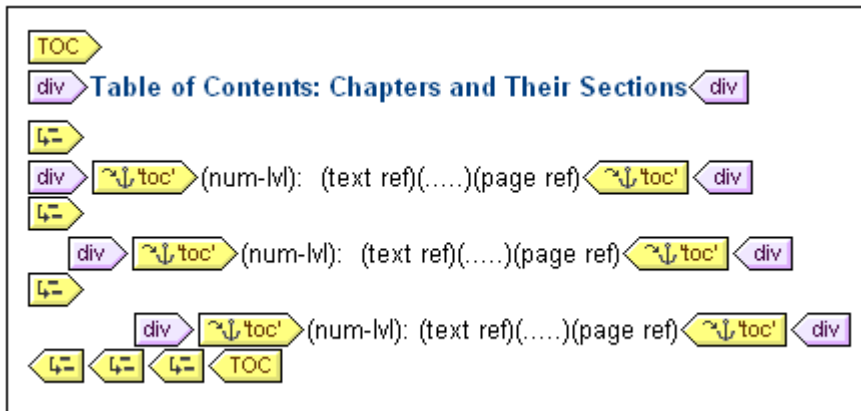
The TOC template itself (*screenshot below*) contains one `reflevel` , and the `TOCref` within

that `reflevel`  has been set to select TOC bookmarks named `toc` within the scope of the current level only—which is the first level. As a result, TOC items will be created only for first-level topics.



Notice also that the numbering has been defined as hierarchical numbering.

**Chapters and their sections:** In this TOC (*screenshot below*), notice that three nested `reflevels` have been defined, each containing a `TOCref` for which the scope is the current level.



Since each TOC item is contained in a `div` block, formatting properties (including indentation) can be set for the block.

**List of images:** The list of images is a flat list. First of all, consider within which levels images will occur in the instantiated document. The `image` element is a child of the `para` element. Since levels have been created on `topic` elements, `image` elements will occur within the first, second, and/or third levels of the document. There is therefore no need to create any level for the `image` element.

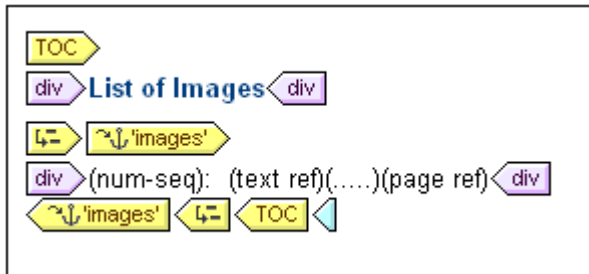
In the global template for `image`, the condition (*see screenshot below*) enables separate processing for (i) the first image (which is presented in this example), and (ii) the other images (which, for purposes of economy, are not presented in this example).



Notice that the TOC bookmark is placed only within the second branch of the condition; this means that the images selected in the first branch are not bookmarked. Also, the sequential numbering (`num-seq`) of the images, inserted with **Insert Table of Contents | Sequential Numbering**, will start with the second image (because the first image is selected in the first branch of the condition). Another feature to note is that the numbering can be formatted, as has been done in this case. To see the formatting, right-click (`num-seq`), and select **Edit Format**. In

the dialog box that pops up, you will see that the formatting has been set to 01, indicating that a 0 will be inserted in front of single-digit numbers.

In the TOC template for images (*screenshot below*), notice that there is a single TOCref identifying bookmarks named `images`, and that this TOCref is within a single relevel. The scope of the TOCref (editable in the Properties window when the TOCref is selected) has been set to: `current level and below`. The current level, determined by the relevel, is the first level. The levels below will be the second, third, and so on. In this way, all images from the first level downward are selected as items in the TOC.



Since the selected numbering is sequential, the images are numbered sequentially in a flat list. These numbers can also be formatted.

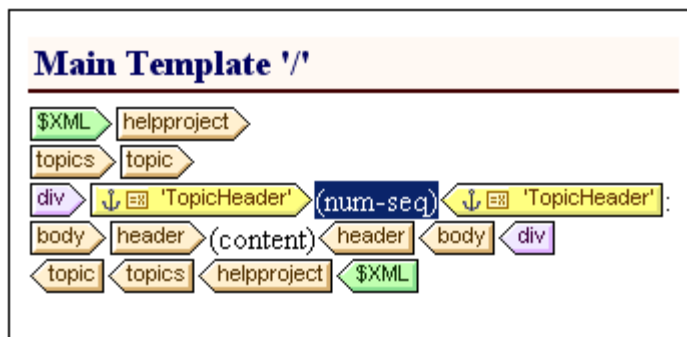
## Auto-Numbering

Repeating instances of a node can be numbered automatically using StyleVision's Auto-Numbering feature. For example, in a `Book` element that contains multiple `Chapter` elements, each `Chapter` element can be numbered automatically using the Auto-Numbering feature. This is an easy way to insert numbering based on the structure of the XML document. Auto-Numbering can be either flat or hierarchical, and there is a wide variety of formatting available for the numbers.

### Flat (sequential) numbering

Flat numbering can be inserted within a [TOC Reference](#) or within a [TOC Bookmark](#). Within a TOC Reference, flat numbering will point back to a bookmark in the document; it would be a TOC entry and is described in the [Table of Contents \(TOC\) section](#). In this section, we describe how to create flat numbering within a TOC Bookmark in the document. Such numbering can be independent of a TOC. To create flat numbering in a document, do the following:

1. Place the cursor within the node that has to be numbered and create the TOC Bookmark (right-click, and select **Insert Table of Contents | TOC Bookmark**). The TOC Bookmark will be created.
2. Place the cursor within the tags of the TOC Bookmark, right-click, and select **Insert Table of Contents | Sequential Numbering**. This inserts the Auto-Numbering placeholder for flat (sequential) numbering, `( num-seq )` (highlighted within the TOC Bookmark 'TopicHeader' in the screenshot below).



3. Right-click the TOC Bookmark and toggle off the command **Construct Entry Text Using XPath**. This is because: (i) the TOC Bookmark is being used solely for flat numbering and not for TOC entries; no text entry for TOC entries is required; and (ii) to ensure that no faulty XPath expression—that can cause a transformation error—is used.
4. There is no need to name the TOC Bookmark (since it will not be referenced from a TOC template), but you could name it if you wish (right-click the TOC Bookmark and select the **Edit Name** command).

In the example shown in the screenshot above, flat numbering has been set on the `Topic` node. The result is that each `Topic` element receives a sequential number, as shown in the screenshot below.

```
1: Altova StyleVision 2007
2: About this Documentation
3: Introduction
4: User Interface
```

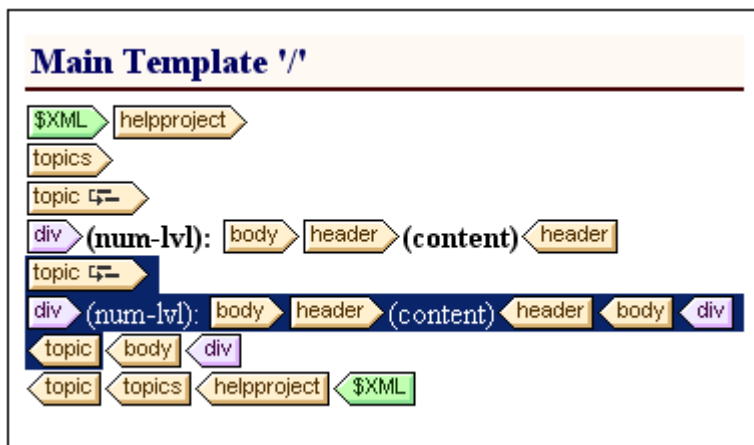
**Note:** If the flat numbering must be continued on another set of nodes, then use a TOC Bookmark that has the same name as that of the TOC Bookmark from which the numbering is to be continued.

### Hierarchical numbering

Hierarchical numbering can be inserted within a [Reflevel](#) or within a [Level in the design](#). Within a Reflevel, hierarchical numbering will point back to a TOC bookmark in the document; it would be a TOC entry and is described in the [Table of Contents \(TOC\) section](#). In this section, we describe how to create hierarchical numbering within levels in the document. Such hierarchical numbering can be independent of a TOC.

To create hierarchical numbering in a document, you must first structure the document in levels and create levels as described in the section [Structuring the Design in Levels](#). The following points should be borne in mind:

- Levels must be created either on the node to be numbered or within it.
- Levels must be nested according to the hierarchy of the numbering required (see *screenshot below*).
- The hierarchical numbering placeholder must be inserted within the corresponding level in the design (see *screenshot below*).



In the screenshot above, there are two levels. The `topic` element is recursive, and a level has been created on two `topic` elements (by right-clicking the node tag and selecting **Template Serves as Level**). One `topic` element (*highlighted in the screenshot above*) is nested within the other. As a result, the levels are nested. Within each level, a hierarchical numbering placeholder (`num-lvl`) has been inserted (right-click within the level and select **Insert Table of Contents | Sequential Numbering**).

The result of the design shown in the screenshot above will look like this.



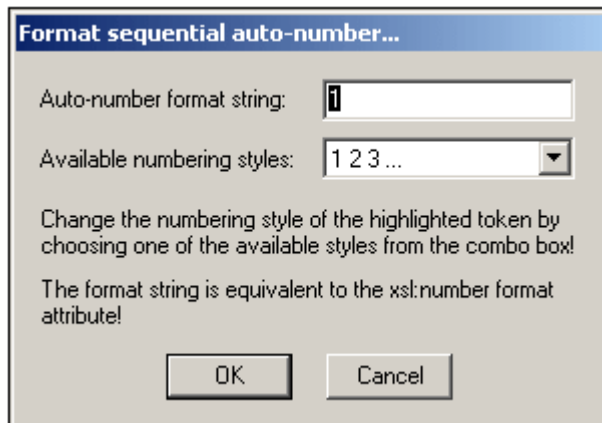
<p><b>1: Altova StyleVision 2007</b></p> <p><b>2: About this Documentation</b></p> <p><b>3: Introduction</b></p> <p>3.1: What Is an SPS?</p> <p>3.2: Product Features</p> <p>3.3: Setting up StyleVision</p> <p><b>4: User Interface</b></p> <p>4.1: Main Window</p> <p>4.2: Design Entry Helpers</p>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

The first level is shown in bold, the second in normal.

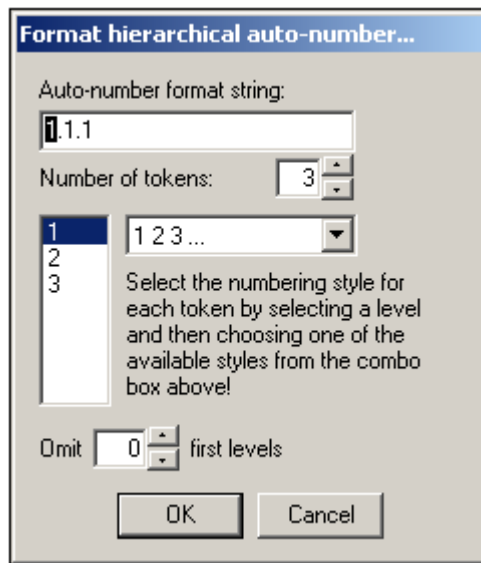
### Formatting

To format the Auto-Numbering, right-click the Auto-Numbering placeholder (`{ num-seq }` or `{ num-lvl }`) and select Edit Format. This pops up the respective dialogs (screenshots below), in which you can select the required formatting from a range of options.

- Sequential numbering: Select a numbering style. The selection is displayed in the Format String box and can be modified there if required.



- Hierarchical numbering: First select the numbering style and then the number of tokens. The resulting format string is displayed in the Format String box. Levels can be omitted by entering the required number of levels to be omitted in the Omit Levels box.



Click **OK** when done.

## Text References

Anchors can be created on nodes in a document and can be given dynamic names. These anchors can then be referenced by their dynamic names. This means, in effect, that text can be marked for referencing and then referenced from elsewhere in the document


In the GUI, these anchors with dynamic names (the text references) are created by means of TOC Bookmarks, which can use XPath expressions to dynamically locate the text to be referenced. The design can then contain TOC References that identify the required TOC Bookmarks by their names. In this way, the TOC Reference identifies the text reference and links to it.

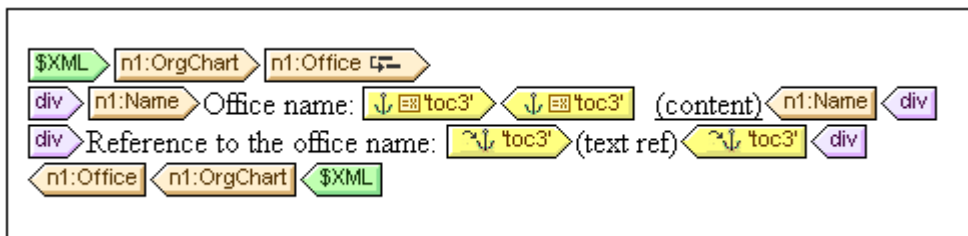
TOC References can be located within Levels and within Reference Levels. The latter case is used in TOCs and is described in the section [Table of Contents \(TOC\)](#). In this section, we describe how references are created within levels in the design document, thus enabling them to be used as cross-references.

### Step 1: Levels

The document is structured into levels as described in the section [Structuring the Design in Levels](#). The levels will be used during referencing to specify the scope of the referencing. In the screenshot below, a level has been created on the `n1:Office` element.

### Step 2: Creating TOC Bookmarks

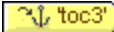
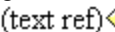
Within a level, a TOC Bookmark is created with a name and an XPath expression that identifies the node in the document, the contents of which is the text reference to be located. In the screenshot below, the TOC Bookmark within the `n1:Name` element  has a name of `toc3` and an XPath expression that locates the current node. This means that the text reference will be the contents of the `n1:Name` node.



When the XML document is processed, for every `n1:Office/n1:Name` element an anchor is created with a text reference that is the value of the `n1:Office/n1:Name` element.

A TOC Bookmark is inserted in the document by placing the cursor at the required location, right-clicking, and selecting **Insert Table of Contents | TOC Bookmark**.

### Step 3: Creating TOC References

A TOC Reference is inserted (context menu, **Insert Table of Contents | TOC Reference**) to create a link to text references generated by a TOC Bookmark. In the screenshot above, the selected location of  (text ref)  is within the same level as that in which the TOC Bookmark was created (the `Office` level). When defining the TOC Reference, you specify two things. First, the name of the TOC Bookmark to point to; in the case of the screenshot above, the name is `toc3`. Second, the scope of the referencing; in the example shown above, the scope is the current level. This means that TOC Bookmarks within the current level are targeted by this reference.

The output will look something like this:

Office name: <u>Nanonull, Inc.</u> Reference to the office name: <u>Nanonull, Inc.</u> Office name: <u>Nanonull Europe, AG</u> Reference to the office name: <u>Nanonull Europe, AG</u>
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

The purple text is that generated by the (text\_ref) placeholder of the TOC Reference. The content of the text reference is derived from the XPath expression in the TOC Bookmark referenced by the TOC Reference.

In the above example, the scope was set to the current level. There are two other possibilities for the scope: (i) a global scope, (ii) scope for the current level and below. With these options, it is possible to also target TOC Bookmarks in other levels of the design.

## Bookmarks and Hyperlinks

In the SPS document, bookmarks can be inserted anywhere within the design. These bookmarks are transformed into anchors in the output, which can be linked to from hyperlinks. Hyperlinks can not only link to bookmarks, but also to external resources like Web pages. StyleVision offers considerable flexibility in the way target URIs for hyperlinks can be built.

In this section, we describe:

- How [bookmarks](#) can be inserted in the SPS.
- How [hyperlinks](#) can be inserted in the SPS and how they link to the target pages.

## Inserting Bookmarks

A bookmark (or anchor) can be inserted anywhere in the SPS, at a cursor insertion point or around an SPS component.

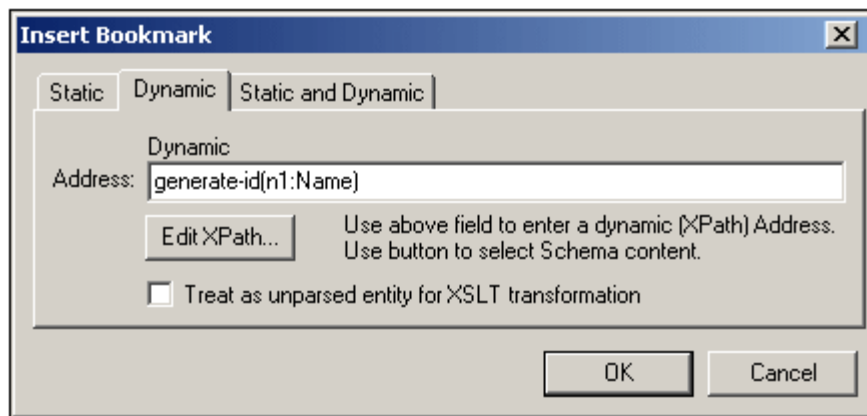
Bookmarks are created in the SPS via the Insert Bookmark dialog (*screenshot below*). In this dialog you define the name of the bookmark. The name can be a static name, or it can be a dynamic name that is (i) derived from XML document content, or (ii) generated arbitrarily with an XPath expression.

Bookmarks are created at the location specified in the design. If that location is within an element that repeats, a bookmark is created within each instance of that repeating element. If a static name is given, then each bookmark will have the same name. Therefore, it is better in such cases (of repeating elements) to give a dynamic name, which can be, for example, the content of a child element of the context node (the element within which the bookmark is created). If the node selected for the dynamic name might have the same content across multiple instances, then the uniqueness of the bookmark name can be ensured by using the `generate-id()` function to generate the name (see *screenshot below*). To reference the bookmark, the same ID can be generated as the `href` value of a [hyperlink](#).

## Creating a bookmark

To insert a bookmark, do the following:

1. Place the cursor at the location where you wish to create the bookmark.
2. Select the menu command [Insert | Bookmark](#), or right-click and select **Insert | Bookmark**.
3. In the Insert Bookmark dialog (*screenshot below*), select a tab according to whether the name of the bookmark should be static (Static tab), dynamically obtained from the XML document or arbitrarily generated from an XPath expression (Dynamic), or composed of both static and dynamic parts (Static and Dynamic). In the screenshot below a dynamic bookmark is created, which has a name that is a unique ID for each `Name` child of the context node.



4. Click **OK**. The bookmark is defined.

After a bookmark has been created, it can be [linked to by a hyperlink](#).

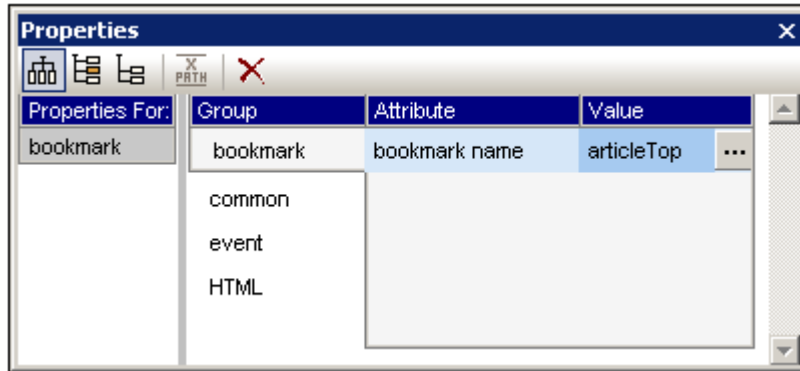
**Note:** Bookmarks are created at the location specified in the design. If that location is within an element that repeats, a bookmark is created within each instance of that repeating element. If a static name is given, then each bookmark will have the same name. Therefore, it is better in such cases (of repeating elements) to give a dynamic name, which can be, for example, the name of a child element of the context node (the

element within which the bookmark is created). If the node selected for the dynamic name might have the same content across multiple instances, then the uniqueness of the bookmark name can be ensured by using the `generate-id()` function to generate the name (see *screenshot above*). To reference such a bookmark, the same ID can be generated as the `href` value of a [hyperlink](#). In this case make sure you use the fragment-identifier `#` in front of the `generate-id()` function. The XPath expression would be: `concat('#', generate-id(nodeXXX))`.

### Modifying a bookmark

After a bookmark has been created, its name can be modified via the Edit Bookmarks dialog. This dialog is accessed as follows:

1. Select the bookmark in the design.
2. In the Properties sidebar, click the **Edit** button of the `Bookmark Name` property ( *screenshot below*) in the *Bookmark* group of properties. This pops up the Edit Bookmark dialog, which is identical to the Insert Bookmark dialog described above (see *screenshot above*).



3. In the Edit Bookmark dialog, edit the name of the bookmark in either the Static, Dynamic, or Static and Dynamic tab.

### Deleting a bookmark

To delete a bookmark, select it in the design and press the **Delete** key.



## Defining Hyperlinks

Hyperlinks can be created around SPS components such as text or images. The targets of hyperlinks can be: (i) bookmarks in the SPS design, or (ii) external resources, such as web pages or email messages. In this section, we first discuss the content of the hyperlink (text, image, etc) and then the target of the hyperlink.

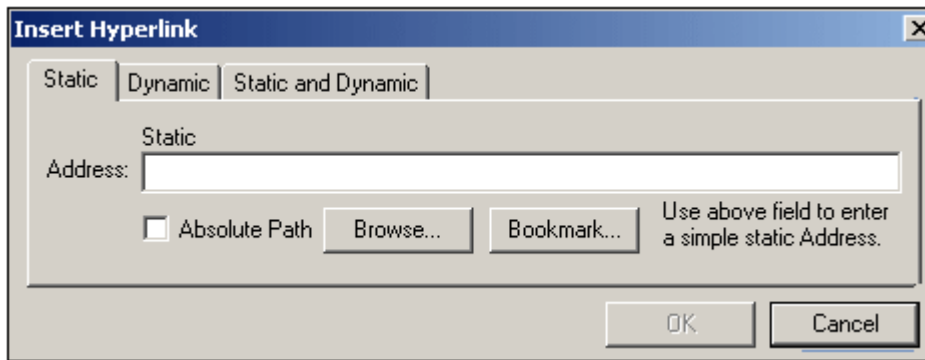
### Creating hyperlinks

A hyperlink can be created in the following ways:

- Around text (static or dynamic), nodes, images, conditional templates, Auto-Calculations, and blocks of content or nodes; it cannot be created around a data-entry device such as an input field or combo box—though it can be created around a node or conditional template in which that data-entry device is. This is the content of the link, which, when clicked, jumps to the target of the link. To create a hyperlink around a component in the SPS, select that component and use the **Enclose With | Hyperlink** menu command.
- A new hyperlink can be inserted via the **Insert | Hyperlink** menu command. The content of the link will need to be subsequently added within the tags of the newly created hyperlink.

### Defining the target of the hyperlink

The target of the hyperlink is created in the Insert Hyperlink dialog (*screenshot below*), which is accessed via the [Enclose With | Hyperlink](#) or [Insert | Hyperlink](#).



The target of a link can be either:

- A [bookmark](#) in the same SPS design (in which case the target URI must be a fragment identifier),
- [Dynamically generated](#) to match bookmark anchors (these URIs are also fragment identifiers),
- An [external resource](#); the URI can be static (directly entered), dynamic (taken from a node in an XML document), a combination of static and dynamic parts, or the value of an unparsed entity.

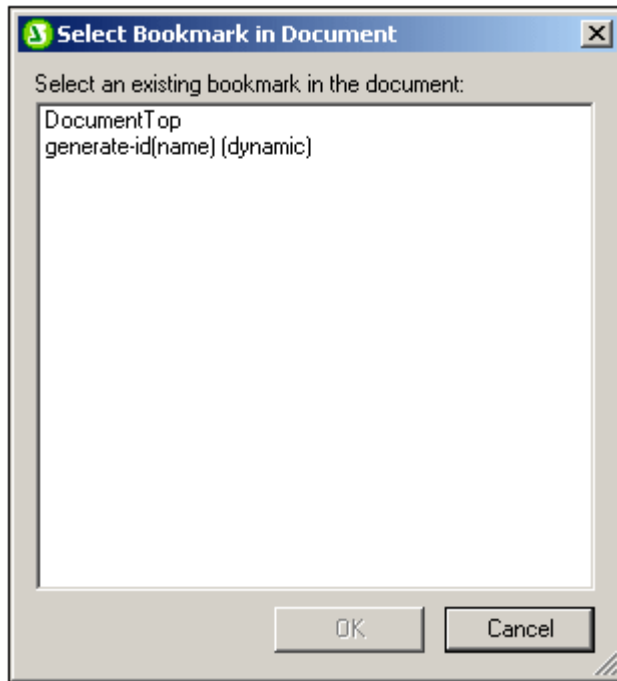
How these targets are defined is explained below. After the URI has been defined in the Insert/Edit Hyperlink dialog, click **OK** to finish.

### Linking to bookmarks

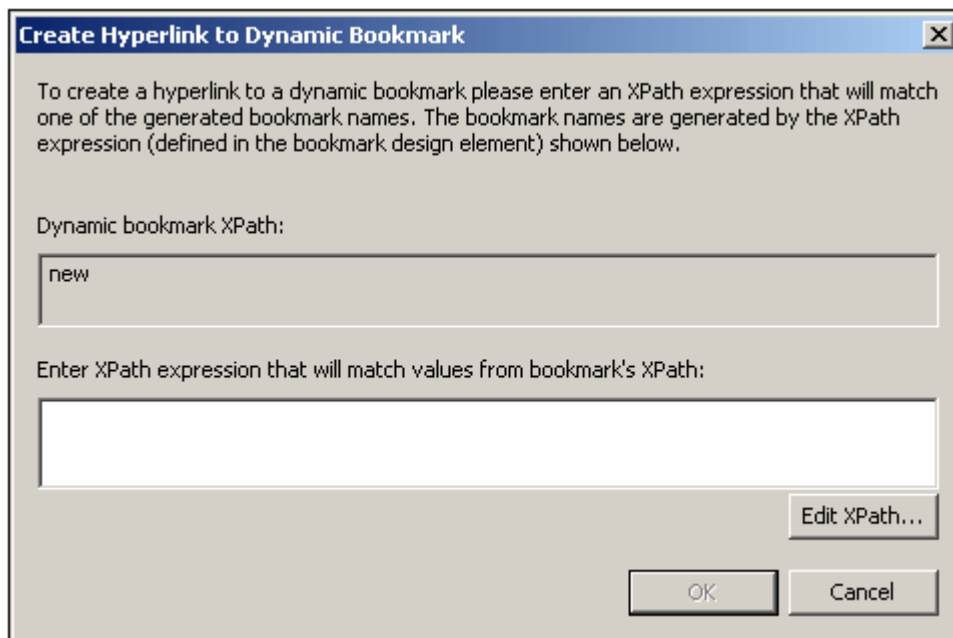
To link to a bookmark, do the following:

1. In the Static tab of the Insert Hyperlink dialog, click the **Bookmark** button. This pops up

the Select Bookmark in Document dialog (*screenshot below*). The screenshot below shows two bookmarks: one static, one dynamic.



2. To select a static bookmark as the target URI, double-click the static bookmark and click **OK**. If you double-click a dynamic bookmark, you will be prompted to enter an XPath expression to match the selected dynamic bookmark (*see screenshot below*).



The [dynamic bookmark](#) is actually an XPath expression that generates the name of the bookmark; it is not itself the name of the bookmark. The Create Hyperlink to Dynamic Bookmark dialog, displays the XPath expression of the dynamic bookmark and enables you to construct an XPath expression that will generate a name to match that of the targeted bookmark. Click **OK** when done.

### Linking to dynamically generated ID bookmarks

Bookmarks can have [dynamically generated ID anchors](#). If one wishes to link back to such a bookmark, the problem then is this: Since the names of dynamically generated anchors are generated at runtime and therefore unknown at design time, how is one to set the `href` value of a [hyperlink](#) that targets such an anchor? The answer is to use the `generate-id()` function once again, this time within the `href` value of the [hyperlink](#). The key to understanding why this works lies in a property of the `generate-id()` function. In a single transformation, each time the `generate-id()` function is evaluated for a specific node, it always generates the same ID. Because of this the IDs generated in the bookmark and the hyperlink will be the same.

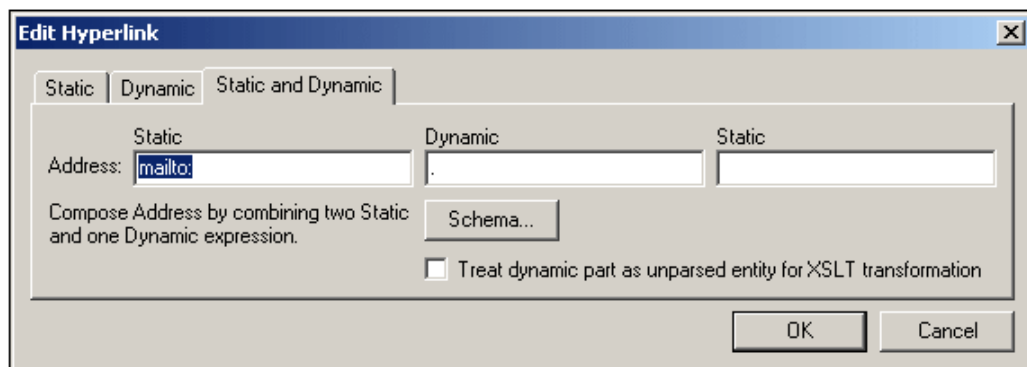
Two points should be borne in mind:

- Since the `generate-id()` function must be evaluated as an XPath expression, use the Dynamic tab of the Insert Hyperlink dialog (see *screenshot below*) to set the target of the hyperlink.
- The evaluated value of the `href` attribute must start with # (the fragment identifier). Consequently the XPath expression will be: `concat('#', generate-id(nodeXXX))`. Alternatively, in the Static and Dynamic tab, enter # in the static part of the address and `generate-id(nodeXXX)` in the dynamic part.

### Linking to external resources

URIs that locate external resources can be built in the following ways:

- By entering the URI directly in the Static tab of the Insert Hyperlink dialog. For example, a link to the Altova home page (<http://www.altova.com>) can be entered directly in the Address input field of the Static tab.
- By selecting a node in the XML document source in the Dynamic tab of the Insert Hyperlink dialog. The node in the XML source can provide a text string that is either: (i) the URI to be targeted, or (ii) the name of an [unparsed entity](#) which has the required URI as its value. For example, the Altova website address can be contained as a text string in a node.
- By building a URI that has both static and dynamic parts in the Static and Dynamic tab of the Insert Hyperlink dialog. This can be useful for adding static prefixes (e.g. a protocol) or suffixes (e.g. a domain name). For example, email addresses can be created using a static part of `mailto:` and a dynamic part that takes the string content of the `//Contact/@email` node (*screenshot below*).



How to use unparsed entities is described in the section [Unparsed Entity URIs](#).

### Editing hyperlink properties

To edit a hyperlink, right-click either the start or end hyperlink (A) tag, and select Hyperlink Properties from the context menu. This pops up the Edit Hyperlink dialog (*screenshot above*). The Edit Hyperlink dialog can also be accessed via the `URL` property of the *Hyperlink* group of properties in the Properties window.

**Removing and deleting hyperlinks**

To delete a hyperlink, select the hyperlink (by clicking either the start or end hyperlink (A) tag), and press the **Delete** key. The hyperlink and its contents are deleted.

## **Chapter 11**

---

**SPS File: Presentation**

## 11 SPS File: Presentation

In the SPS design, a single set of styling features is defined for components. These styles are converted to the corresponding style markup in the respective outputs (*Authentic View, HTML, RTF, PDF and Word 2007+ in the Enterprise Edition; Authentic View, HTML and RTF in the Professional Edition; HTML in the Standard Edition*).

### Styling of SPS components

All styling of SPS components is done using CSS2 principles and syntax. Styles can be defined in external stylesheets, globally for the SPS, and locally on a component. The cascading order of CSS2 applies to the SPS, and provides considerable flexibility in designing styles. How to work with CSS styles is described in detail in the [Working with CSS Styles](#) sub-section of this section.

The values of style properties can be entered directly in the Styles or Properties sidebars, or they can be set via [XPath expressions](#). The benefits of using XPath expressions are: (i) that the property value can be taken from an XML file, and (ii) that a property value can be assigned conditionally according to a test contained in the XPath expression.

Additionally, in the SPS design, certain HTML elements are available as markup for SPS components. These [predefined formats](#) are passed to the HTML output. The formatting inherent in such markup is therefore also used to provide styling to SPS components. When CSS styles are applied to predefined formats, the CSS styles get priority over the inherent style of the predefined format. Predefined formats are described in the [Predefined Formats](#) sub-section of this section.

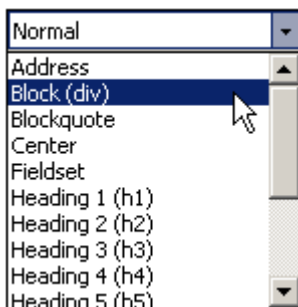
## 11.1 Predefined Formats

StyleVision provides a number of pre-defined formats, each of which corresponds to an HTML element (*screenshot below*). When you apply a Predefined Format to a component in the Design, that component is marked up as a component having the corresponding HTML semantics. This has two effects:

- Formatting inherent to the selected predefined format is applied.
- The component is contained in the component type, *paragraph*, which [makes it available for local styling](#) by component type.

### Assigning Predefined Formats

Predefined formats can be assigned by clicking **Insert | Special Paragraph**, and then the required format, or by selecting the required format from the Format drop-down list in the Toolbar (shown below).



### Inherent styles

The predefined formats used in StyleVision have either one or both of the following two styling components:

- a text-styling component
- a spacing component.

For example, the predefined `para ( p )` format has a spacing component only; it puts vertical space before and after the selected component, and does not apply any text styling. On the other hand, the predefined `Heading 1 ( h1 )` format has both a text-styling component and a spacing component.

The following styling points about predefined formats should be noted:

- The spacing component of a predefined format applies for any type of SPS component, but the text styling only if it can be applied. For example, if you select an image and apply a predefined format of `Heading 1 ( h1 )` to it, then the spacing component will take effect, but the text-styling component will not.
- The text-styling component of predefined formats does not apply to data-entry devices.
- Only one predefined format applies to a component at any given time.
- The `Preformatted` predefined format (`pre`) applies formatting equivalent to that applied by the `pre` tab of HTML: linebreaks and spacing in the text are maintained and a monospaced font (such as Courier) is used for the display. In the case of run-on lines with no linebreaks, such as in a paragraph of text, the `Preformatted ( pre )` predefined format will display lines of text without wrapping. If you wish to wrap the text, use the predefined format `Preformatted, wrapping ( pre-wrap )`.

### Defining additional styling for a predefined format

Styles additional to the inherent styling can be defined for a predefined format by selecting it and applying a [local style via the Styles sidebar](#).



## 11.2 Output Escaping

A character in a text string is said to be escaped when it is written as a character reference or entity reference. Both types of references (character and entity) are delimited by an ampersand at the start and a semicolon at the end. For example:

- the hexadecimal (or Unicode) character reference of the character `A` is `&#x41;`
- the decimal character reference of the character `A` is `&#65;`
- the HTML (and XML) entity reference of the character `&` is `&amp;`
- the hexadecimal (or Unicode) character reference of the character `&` is `&#x26;`
- the decimal character reference of the character `&` is `&#38;`
- the HTML (and XML) entity reference of the character `<` is `&lt;`

### Output escaping

Output escaping refers to the way characters that are **escaped in the input** are represented in the output. A character is said to be output-escaped when it is represented in the output as a character or entity reference. Note that a character can only be output-escaped when it is escaped in the input (see *table below for examples*). In an SPS, output-escaping can be enabled or disabled for:

- Fragments of static text,
- The `contents` placeholder, and
- Auto-Calculations

This is done with the `disable-output-escaping` attribute of the *Text* group of properties. The default value of this property is `no`, which means that output-escaping will not be disabled. So characters that are escaped in the input will be escaped in the output by default (see *table below for examples*).

To disable output escaping, do the following:

1. Select the (i) static text, or (ii) fragment of static text, (iii) `contents` placeholder, or (iv) Auto-Calculation for which you wish to disable output escaping.
2. In the Properties sidebar, select the *Text* group of properties for the *Text* item, and set the `disable-output-escaping` attribute to `yes` for the various outputs individually or for all outputs. The available values are:
  - For **HTML** (to set `disable-output-escaping` to `yes` for HTML output).
  - For **Authentic** (to set `disable-output-escaping` to `yes` for Authentic output). Note that disabling output escaping for Authentic View is enabled **only in Enterprise editions of Authentic View** (that is, in the Enterprise editions of StyleVision, Authentic Desktop, Authentic Browser, and XMLSpy).
  - For **all** (to set `disable-output-escaping` to `yes` for all outputs).

When output escaping is disabled for a particular output format (for example, HTML output), the selected text will not be escaped in that output format, but will be escaped in the other output formats.

Given below are some examples of text with output escaping disabled and/or enabled.

Static text	disable-output-escaping	Output text
<code>&amp; amp;</code>	<code>no</code>	<code>&amp; amp;</code>
<code>&amp; amp;</code>	<code>yes</code>	<code>&amp;</code>
<code>&amp;</code>	<code>no</code>	<code>&amp;</code>

&	yes	&
&lt;	no	&lt;
&lt;	yes	<
&#65;	no	&#65;
&#65;	yes	A
& amp; lt;	no	& amp; lt;
& amp; lt;	yes	<
& amp; amp; lt;	yes	&lt;
& amp; &lt;	yes	&<

**Note:** Disable-Output-Escaping is supported in Authentic View only in the Enterprise Editions of Altova products.

### Using disabled output-escaping across output formats

If output-escaping is disabled, the text string can have significance in one output but no significance at all in another output. For example, consider the following input text, which has escaped characters (highlighted):

```
&lt;b&gt; This text is bold. &lt;/b&gt;
```

If output-escaping is disabled, this text will be output as:

```
<b>This text is bold.</b>
```

If output-escaping is disabled for HTML output and this output is viewed in a browser (as opposed to a text editor), the markup will be significant for the HTML browser and the text will be displayed in bold, like this:

**This text is bold.**

However, if viewed in another output format, such as PDF, the markup that was significant in HTML will not necessarily be of significance in this other output format. In the particular case cited above, the unescaped text (output escaping disabled) will be output in PDF format as is, like this:

```
<b>This text is bold.</b>
```

As the example above demonstrates, the output text obtained by disabling output-escaping might be interpretable as code in one output format but not in another. This should be clearly borne in mind when using the Disable-Output-Escaping property.

## 11.3 Value Formatting (Formatting Numeric Datatypes)

Value Formatting enables the contents of numeric XML Schema datatype nodes (see [list below](#)) to be displayed in a format other than the lexical representation of that datatype. (For example, the lexical representation of an `xs:date` datatype node is `YYYY-MM-DD`, with an optional timezone component, such as `+02:00`.) The Value Formatting is displayed in the HTML output. Value Formatting can also be used to format the result of an Auto-Calculation if the result of the Auto-Calculation is in the lexical format of one of the numeric datatypes (see [list below](#)) for which Value Formatting is available.

In the sub-sections of this section, we describe:

- how the [Value Formatting mechanism works](#), and
- the [syntax](#) for defining the Value Formatting.

**Note:** Value Formatting does not change the format in which the data is stored in the XML document. In the valid XML document, the data is always stored in the lexical format appropriate to the datatype of the node. Value Formatting is applied to the display in the output.

### Numeric datatypes for which Value Formatting is available

Value Formatting is available for the following datatypes:

- `xs:decimal`; `xs:integer`; the 12 built-in types derived from `xs:integer`
- `xs:double` and `xs:float` when values are between and including 0.000001 and 1,000,000. Values outside this range are displayed in scientific notation (for example: `1.0E7`), and cannot have Value Formatting applied to them.
- `xs:date`; `xs:dateTime`; `xs:duration`
- `xs:gYear`; `xs:gYearMonth`; `xs:gMonth`; `xs:gMonthDay`; `xs:gDay`

**Note:** Not all formats are available in Standard Edition since Authentic View is not supported in Standard Edition.

## The Value Formatting Mechanism


Value Formatting can be applied to:

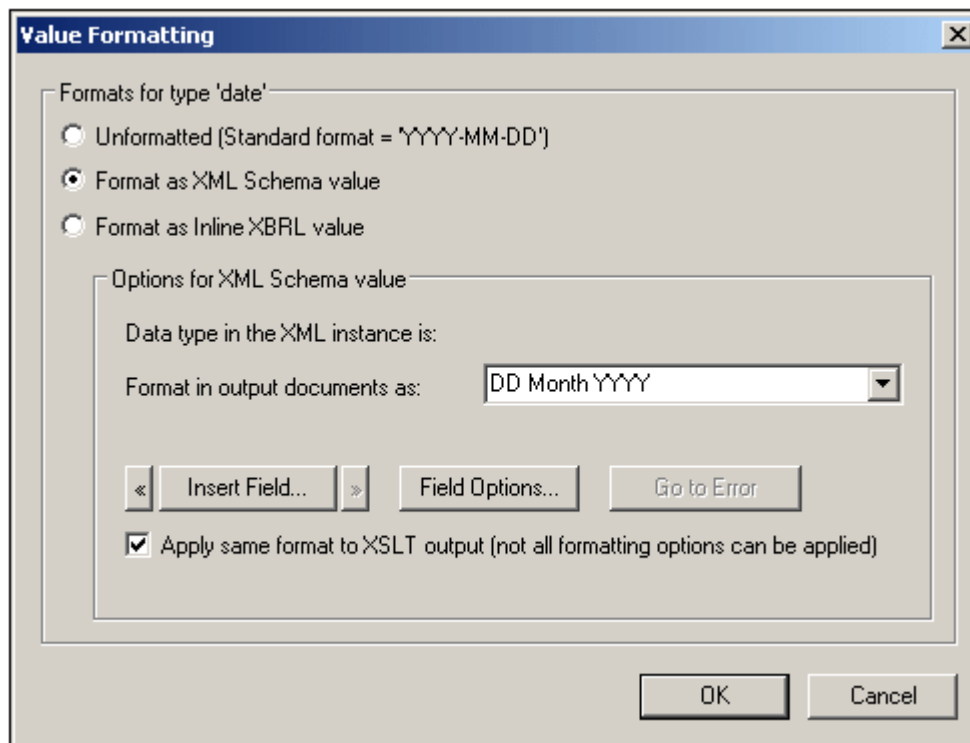
- A [numeric datatype node](#), such as `xs:decimal` or `xs:date` that is present in the SPS **as contents or an input field**.
- An Auto-Calculation that evaluates to a value which has the lexical format of a [numeric datatype](#).

### Defining Value Formatting

To define Value Formatting for a node or Auto-Calculation in the SPS, do the following:

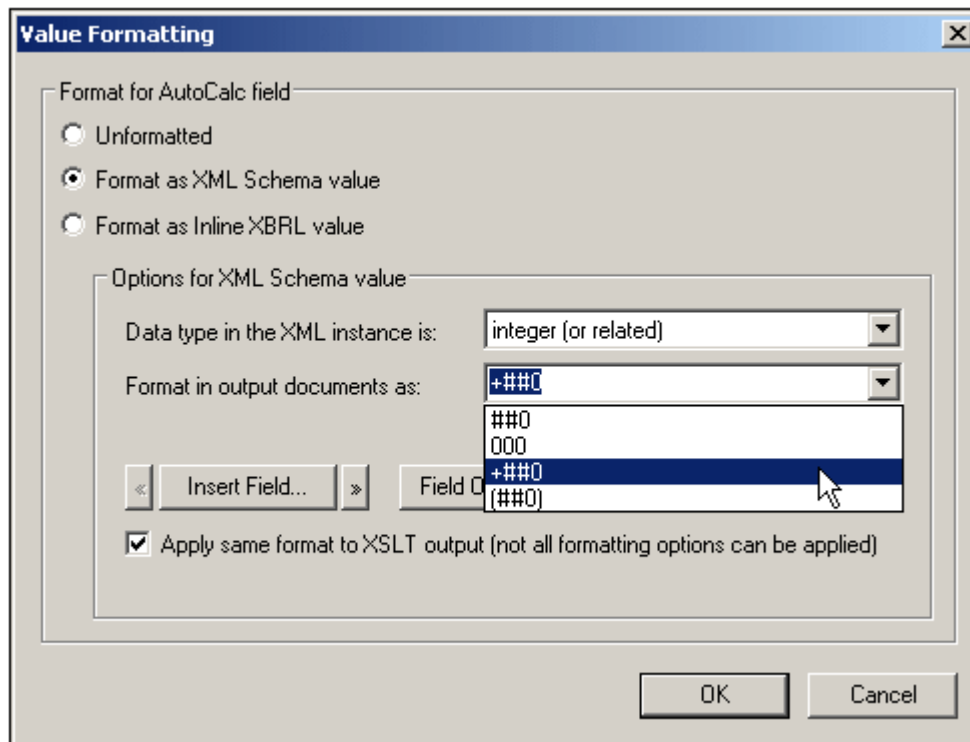
1. Select the `contents` placeholder or input field of the node, or the Auto-Calculation.
2. In the Properties sidebar, select the item, and then the *Content* group (or *AutoCalc*

group) of properties. Now click the Edit button  of the *Value Formatting* property. Alternatively, right-click and select **Edit Value Formatting** from the context menu. The Value Formatting dialog appears (*screenshot below*). It is different according to whether the selected component was a node or an Auto-Calculation. If the selected component was a node, then a dialog like the one below appears. The node represented in the screenshot below is of the `xs:date` datatype.



Note that the screenshot above contains the line: *Formats for type 'date'* and that the standard format for the `xs:date` datatype is given alongside the *Unformatted* check box. For a node of some other datatype, this information would be correspondingly different.

If the selected component was an Auto-Calculation, the following dialog appears.



3. You now specify whether the display of the component's value is to be unformatted or formatted. If you wish to leave the output unformatted, select the *Unformatted* radio button. Otherwise select the *Format as XML Schema Value* radio button. (If the value is unformatted, the output has the standard formatting for the datatype of the selected node or the datatype of the Auto-Calculation result. If you specify *Formatting as XML Schema Value* for an Auto-Calculation, you have to additionally select (from a dropdown list) the datatype of the expected Auto-calculation result.
4. Enter the Value Formatting definition. This definition can be entered in three ways: (i) by selecting from a dropdown list of available options for that datatype (see the 'Format in Output Documents' input field in the screenshots above); (ii) by entering the definition directly in the input field; and (iii) by using the **Insert Field** and **Field Options** buttons to build the definition correctly. See [Value Formatting Syntax](#) for a full description of the various formatting options.

### Errors in syntax

If there is an error in syntax, the following happens:

- The definition is displayed in red.
- An error message, also in red, is displayed below the input field.
- The **OK** button in the Value Formatting dialog is disabled.
- The **Go to Error** button in the Value Formatting dialog is enabled. Clicking it causes the cursor to be placed at the point in the format definition where the syntax error is.

### Mismatch of data and datatype formats

If the data entered in an XML node does not match the lexical format of that node's datatype, or if the result of an Auto-Calculation does not match the lexical format of the expected datatype, then the formatting will be undefined and will not be displayed correctly in the output.

### Applying Value Formatting to the output

The Value Formatting that you define applies to Authentic View, which is supported in the Enterprise and Professional editions.

Some Value Formatting definitions—not all—can also, additionally, be applied to HTML output. To do this, check the Apply Same Format to XSLT Output check box. If this option is not checked, or if it is not available, then only Authentic View will display the Value Formatting, while the output will display the value in the standard format for the datatype of the component (the lexical format).

## Value Formatting Syntax

The syntax for Value Formatting is:

```
( [ prefix character/s ] field [ suffix
  character/s ] [ { field-option1, field-option2, ... } ] ) +
```

where **prefix character/s** and **suffix character/s** are optional specifiers used to control alignment and the display of positive/negative symbols; **field** can be any datatype-specific formatting or text; and **{ field-option(s) }** is an optional qualifier, that enables additional formatting options.

### Explanation of definition syntax

The Value Formatting definition is constructed as follows:

- The definition is composed of one or more fields. For example, the definition `DD Month YYYY` has three fields.
- Fields can be run together, or they can be separated by the following characters: space, hyphen, comma, colon, period, or by a text string in single or double quotes. For example, in the definition: `DD-Month' in the year 'YYYY`, the fields `DD` and `Month` are separated by a hyphen, and the fields `Month` and `YYYY` are separated by a text string enclosed in single quotes.
- A field can have optional prefix and/or suffix character/s. For example: `<+###, ##0.00.`
- A field can have one or more optional field-options. The field-option/s for each field must be contained in a single set of curly braces, and must follow the field without any intervening space. Multiple field-options for a single field are separated by ", " (comma). For example, in the definition: `DD Month{uc,ro} YYYY`, the curly-brace-enclosed `uc` and `ro` are field-options for the field `Month`.

### Examples

Example of Value Formatting for an `xs: decimal` datatype:

```
"$( ##0.00)
```

Examples of the output would be:

```
$ 25.00
$ 25.42
$267.56
```

Example of Value Formatting for an `xs: date` datatype:

```
DD Month{uc,ro} YYYY
```

where `uc` and `ro` are field-options for making the `Month` field uppercase and read-only, respectively

An example of the output would be:

```
24 SEPTEMBER 2003
```

### Field types

A field type represents a component of the data and the way that component is to be formatted. The formatting inherent in the field type can be modified further by prefix and suffix modifiers as well as by field options. The following tables list the available field types. Note that, in the drop-down menu of the Value Formatting dialog, there are type-specific and field-only Value Formatting definitions. You can select one of these and modify them as required by adding prefix modifiers, suffix modifiers, and/or field options.

Field Type	Explanation
#	Space if no digit at position
0	Zero if no digit at position
,	Digit separator
Y	Year
y	year (base = 1930); see Note below
MM	Month, must have length of 2
DD	Day, must have length of 2
W	Week number
d	Weekday number (1 to 7)
i	Day in the year (1 to 366)
hh	Hour (0 to 23), must have length of 2
HH	Hour (1 to 12), must have length of 2
mm	Minute, must have length of 2
ss	Second, must have length of 2
AM	AM or PM
am	am or pm
AD	AD or BC
ad	ad or bc
CE	CE or BCE
ce	ce or bce



Field Type	Explanation
Weekday	Weekday (Sunday, Monday...)
WEEKDAY	Weekday (SUNDAY, MONDAY...)
weekday	Weekday (sunday, monday...)
Wkd	Weekday (Sun, Mon...)
WKD	Weekday (SUN, MON...)
wkd	Weekday (sun, mon...)
Month	Month (January, February...)
MONTH	Month (JANUARY, FEBRUARY...)
month	Month (january, february...)
Mon	Month (Jan, Feb...)
MON	Month (JAN, FEB...)
mon	Month (jan, feb...)

#### Notes on field length and entry length

The following points relating to the length of data components should be noted:

**Length of date fields:** When fields such as MM, DD, HH, hh, mm, and ss are used, they must have a length of 2 in the definition. When the  $\underline{y}$  or  $\underline{Y}$  fields are used, the number of  $\underline{y}$  or  $\underline{Y}$  characters in the definition determines the length of the output. For example, if you specify  $\underline{YYY}$ , then the output for a value of 2006 would be 006; for a definition of  $\underline{YYYYYY}$ , it would be 002006. See also Base Year below.

**Extending field length:** The \* (asterisk) symbol is used to extend the length of a non-semantic numeric field (integers, decimals, etc). In the case of decimals, it can be used on either or both sides of the decimal point. For example, the Value Formatting \*0.00\* ensures that a number will have zeroes as specified in the formatting if these digit locations are empty, as well as any number of digits on both sides of the decimal point.

**Note:** If a field does not render any text, this might be because of your region setting in Windows. For example, Windows returns an empty string for the AM/PM field if the regional language setting is German.

**Prefix and suffix modifiers**

Prefix and suffix modifiers are used to modify the textual alignment and positive/negative representations of fields. The following table lists the available prefix and suffix modifiers.

Prefix	Suffix	Explanation
<		Left aligned; default for text. For numbers, which are aligned right by default, this is significant if there are a fixed number of leading spaces.
>		Right aligned; default for numbers.
?		Minus symbol adjacent to number if negative; nothing otherwise. This is the default for numbers.
<?		Minus symbol left-aligned if negative; nothing otherwise. Number left-aligned, follows minus sign.
<?>		Minus symbol left-aligned if negative; nothing otherwise. Number right-aligned.
-	-	Minus symbol adjacent to number if negative; space otherwise. Located before number (prefix), after number (suffix).
<-	>-	Minus symbol if negative; space otherwise. Number and sign adjacent. Left-aligned (prefix); right-aligned (suffix).
<->		Minus symbol left-aligned if negative; space otherwise. Number right-aligned.
+	+	Plus or minus sign always, located adjacent to number; before number (prefix), after number (suffix).
<+	>+	Plus or minus sign always, located adjacent to number; left-aligned (prefix), right-aligned (suffix).
<+>		Plus or minus sign always, left-aligned; number right-aligned.
(	)	Parentheses if negative; space otherwise. Adjacent to number.
<(		Parentheses if negative; space otherwise. Adjacent to number. Left-aligned.
<( >		Parentheses if negative; space otherwise. Left parentheses left-aligned; number and right parentheses adjacent and right-aligned.
[	]	Parentheses if negative; nothing otherwise. Adjacent to number.
*	*	Extendable number of digits to left (prefix) or to right (suffix)
–	–	Space
^	^	Fill character (defined in options)
	th	Ordinality of number in EN (st, nd, rd, or th)
	TH	Ordinality of number in EN (ST, ND, RD, or TH)

**Field options**

Field options enable advanced modifications to be made to fields. The following options are available:

Option	Explanation
uc	Make uppercase
lc	Make lowercase
left	Left aligned
right	Right aligned
ro	Read (XML) only; no editing allowed
edit	The field is editable (active by default)
dec=<char>	Specify a character for the decimal point (default is point)
sep=<char>	Specify a character for the place separator (default is comma)
fill=<char>	Specify fill character
base=<year>	Base year for year fields ( <i>see note below</i> )
pos	Show only positive numbers; input of negative numbers allowed

Field options should be used to generate number formatting for European languages, which interchange the commas and periods of the English language system: for example, 123.456,75

The Value Formatting to use to obtain the formatting above would be:

```
###,###.##{ dec=, , sep=. }
```

Notice that the field retains the English formatting, while it is the field options `dec` and `sep` that specify the decimal symbol and place separator.

## 11.4 Working with CSS Styles

The SPS design document is styled with CSS rules. Style rules can be specified:

- In [external CSS stylesheets](#). External CSS stylesheets can be added via the [Design Overview](#) sidebar and via the [Style Repository](#) sidebar.
- In [global stylesheets](#) for the SPS, which can be considered to be defined within the SPS and at its start. (In the HTML output these global styles are defined within the `style` child element of the `head` element.)
- [Locally](#), on individual components of the document. In the HTML output, such rules are defined in the `style` attribute of individual HTML elements.

Each of the above methods of creating styles is described in detail in the sub-sections of this section ([links above](#)).

### Terminology

A CSS stylesheet consists of one or more style rules. For example:

```
H1 { color: blue }
```

or

```
H1 { color: blue;  
    margin-top: 16px; }
```

Each rule has a selector (in the examples above, `H1`) and a declaration (`color: blue`). The declaration is a list of properties (for example, `color`) with values (`blue`). In StyleVision, CSS styles can be defined in the [Styles](#) sidebar (local styles) and [Style Repository](#) sidebar (global styles).

### Cascading order

The cascading order of CSS applies. This means that precedence of rules are evaluated on the basis of:

1. **Origin.** External stylesheets have lower precedence than global styles, and global styles have lower precedence than local styles. External stylesheets are considered to be imported, and the import order is significant, with the latter of two imported stylesheets having precedence.
2. **Specificity.** If two rules apply to the same element, the rule with the more specific selector has precedence.
3. **Order.** If two rules have the same origin and specificity, the rule that occurs later in the stylesheet has precedence. Imported stylesheets are considered to come before the rule set of the importing stylesheet.

### CSS styles in modular SPSs

When an SPS module is added to another SPS, then the CSS styles in the referring SPS have priority over those in the added module. When multiple modules are added, then CSS styles in those modules located relatively lower in the module list have priority. For more information about modular SPSs, see the section, [Modular SPSs](#).

### CSS support in Internet Explorer

Versions of Internet Explorer (IE) prior to IE 6.0 interpret certain CSS rules differently than IE 6.0 and later. As a designer, it is important to know for which version of IE you will be designing. IE 6.0 and later offers support for both the older and newer interpretations, thus enabling you to use even the older interpretation in the newer versions (IE 6.0 and later). Which interpretation is

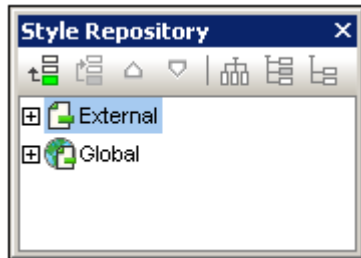
used by IE 6.0 and later is determined by a switch in the HTML document code. In an SPS, you can specify whether the HTML output documents should be styled according to Internet Explorer's older or newer interpretation. You should then set CSS styles according to the selected interpretation. For more details, see [Properties: CSS Support](#).

**Note:** For more information about the CSS specification, go to <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-CSS2/>.

## External CSS Stylesheets

To assign an external CSS stylesheet to the SPS, do the following:

1. In Design View, select the External item in the Style Repository window (*screenshot below*).



2. Click the **Add** button at the top left of the Style Repository toolbar (*see screenshot above*).
3. In the Open dialog that pops up, browse for and select the required CSS file, then click **Open**. The CSS file is added to the External item as part of its tree structure (*see tree listing and screenshot below*).
4. To add an additional external CSS stylesheet, repeat steps 1 to 3. The new CSS stylesheet will be added to the External tree, after all previously added external CSS stylesheets.


**Note:** You can also add an external CSS stylesheet via the [Design Overview](#) sidebar.

### Viewing and modifying the tree of external CSS stylesheets

The tree of external CSS stylesheets is structured as follows (*also see screenshot below*):

```

- CSS-1.css
  - Location of file (editable in Style Repository window)
  - Media (can be defined in Style Repository window)
  - Rules (non-editable; must be edited in CSS file)
    - Selector-1
      - Property-1
      - ...
      - Property-N
    - ...
    - Selector-N
+ ...
+ CSS-N.css
  
```

Each CSS-file-location item can be edited in the Style Repository window; do this by clicking the Edit button  and selecting the required CSS file. The media to which that particular stylesheet is applicable can also be edited in the Style Repository window; do this by clicking the down arrow to the right of the item and selecting the required media from the dropdown list). The rules defined in the external CSS stylesheet are displayed in the Style Repository window, but cannot be edited. The Stylesheet, Rules, and individual Selector items in the tree can be expanded and collapsed by clicking the + and - symbols to the left of each item (*see screenshot below*).



To delete an external stylesheet, select the stylesheet and click the **Reset** button in the Style Repository toolbar.

**Note:** Style rules with certain selectors will not be applied to RTF and PDF output. Such rules are commented: Will be discarded in PDF, RTF.

### Changing the precedence of the external CSS stylesheets


The external CSS stylesheets that are assigned in the Style Repository window will be imported into the HTML output file using the `@import` instruction. In the HTML file, this would look something like this:

```
<html>
  <head>
    <style>
      <!--
        @import url("ExternalCSS-1.css");
        @import url("ExternalCSS-2.css") screen;
        @import url("ExternalCSS-3.css") print;
      -->
    </style>
  </head>
  <body/>
</html>
```

The order in which the files are listed in the HTML file corresponds to the order in which they are listed in the External tree of the Style Repository. To change the order of the CSS stylesheets in the External tree, select the stylesheet for which the precedence has to be changed. Then use the **Move Up**  and **Move Down**  buttons in the Style Repository toolbar to reposition that stylesheet relative to the other stylesheets in the tree.

**Important:** What is important to note is that the lowermost stylesheet has the highest import precedence, and that the import precedence decreases with each previous stylesheet in the listing order. The order of import precedence in the listing shown above is: (i) `ExternalCSS-3.css`; (ii) `ExternalCSS-2.css`; (iii) `ExternalCSS-1.css`. When two CSS rules, each in a different stylesheet, address the same node, the rule in the stylesheet with the higher import precedence applies.

### Editing the properties of external CSS stylesheets

An external CSS stylesheet can be quickly replaced by another by clicking the **Edit** button  and browsing for the required stylesheet. The media to which an external CSS stylesheet is to be applied can be selected by pressing the dropdown box of the Media item of an external stylesheet, and there selecting the required media from the list of options.

## Defining CSS Styles Globally

Global styles are defined for the entire SPS design in the Style Repository and are listed in the Style Repository under the Global heading. They are passed to the HTML output document as CSS rules. In the HTML document, these CSS rules are written within the `/html/head/style` element.

In the Style Repository, a global style is a single CSS rule consisting of a selector and CSS properties for that selector. Creating a global style, therefore, consists of two parts:

- Adding a new style and declaring the CSS selector for it.
- Defining CSS properties for the style (or selector).

### Supported selectors

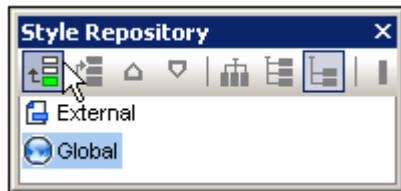
The following [selectors](#) are supported:

- *Universal selector*: written as `*`
- *Type selectors*: element names, such as `h1`
- *Attribute selectors*: for example, `[ class=maindoc]`
- *Class selectors*: for example, `. maindoc`
- *ID selectors*: for example, `#header`

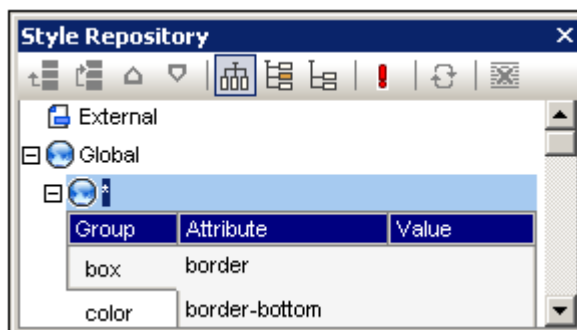
### Adding a global style

To add a global style to the SPS design, do the following:

1. In Design View, select the Global item in the Style Repository window (*screenshot below*).



2. Click the **Add** button at the top left of the Style Repository toolbar (see *screenshot above*). A global style is inserted into the Global tree with a `*` selector (which selects all HTML elements); the universal selector is the default selector for each newly inserted global style.
3. To change the selector from the default universal selector, either: (i) right-click and select an option from the Add Selector submenu, or (ii) click the selector and edit it.



4. Now set the CSS property values for the selector. How to do this is explained in the section [Setting CSS Property Values](#).
5. To add another global style, repeat steps 1 to 4. The new global style will be added to



the Global tree, after all previously added global styles.

**Note:**

- Global styles can also be inserted before a selected global style in the Global tree by clicking the **Insert** button in the Style Repository window. The **Add** and **Insert** buttons are also available via the context menu that appears when you right-click a global style or the Global item in the Style Repository window.
- A global style with a selector that is an HTML element can be inserted by right-clicking an item in the Global tree, then selecting **Add Selector | HTML | HTML<ElementName>**.

**Editing and deleting global styles**

Both, a style's selector as well as its properties can be edited in the Style Repository window.

- To edit a selector, double-click the selector name, then place the cursor into the text field, and edit.
- For information about defining and editing a style's property values, see [Setting CSS Property Values](#). (The style properties can be displayed in three possible views. These views and how to switch between them are described in [Views of Property Definitions](#).)

To delete a global style, select the style and click the **Reset** button in the Style Repository toolbar.

**Changing the precedence of global styles**

Global styles that are assigned in the Style Repository window are placed as CSS rules in the `/html/head/style` element. In the HTML file, they would look something like this:

```
<html>
  <head>
    <style>
      <!--
        h1    { color: blue;
              font-size: 16pt;
            }
        h2    { color: blue;
              font-size: 14pt;
            }
        .main { color: green; }
      -->
    </style>
  </head>
  <body/>
</html>
```

The order in which the global styles are listed in Authentic View and the HTML document corresponds to the order in which they are listed in the Global tree of the Style Repository. The order in Authentic View and the HTML document has significance. If two selectors select the same node, then the selector which occurs lower down the list of global styles has precedence. For example, in the HTML document having the partial listing given above, if there were an element `<h1 class="main">`, then two global styles match this element: that with the `h1` selector and that with the `.main` selector. The color property of `.main` selector will apply because it occurs after the `h1` selector in the style listing. The font-size of the `h1` style will, however, apply to the `<h1>` element because there is no selector with a higher precedence that matches the `<h1>` element and has a font-size property.

To change the precedence of a global style, select that style and use the **Move Up** and **Move Down** buttons in the Style Repository toolbar to reposition that global style relative to the other

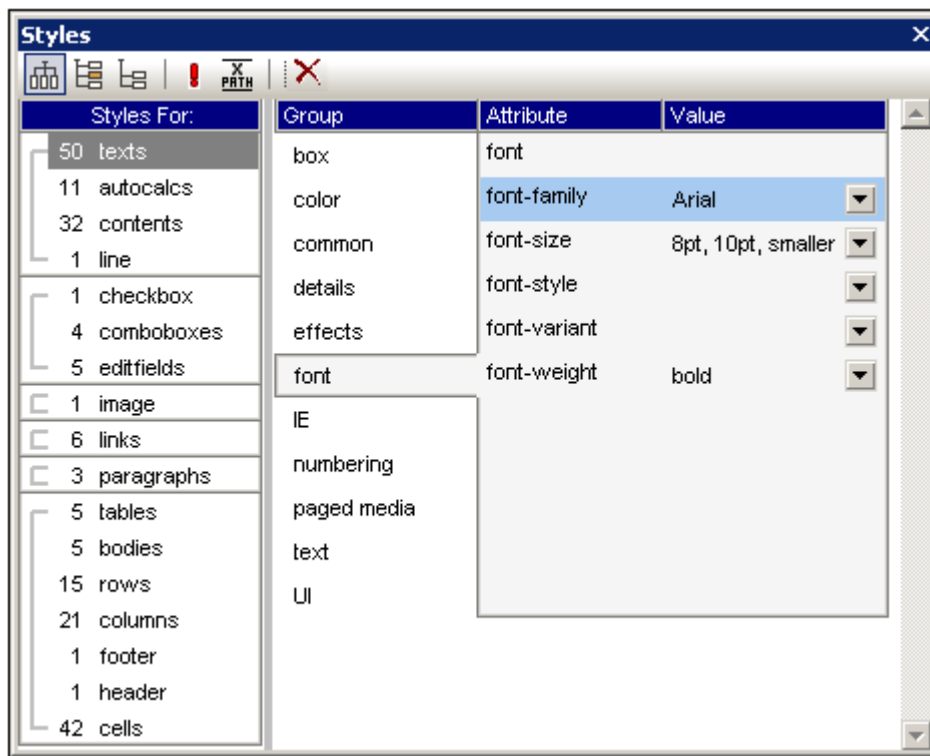
global styles in the tree. For example, if the `.main` global style were moved to a position before the `h1` style, then the color property of the `h1` style would have precedence over that of the `.main` style.

## Defining CSS Styles Locally

When styles are defined locally, the style rules are defined directly on the component. These local rules have precedence over both global style rules and style rules in external CSS stylesheets that select that component. Locally defined styles are CSS styles and are defined in the [Styles](#) sidebar. (This is as opposed to global styles, which are defined in the [Style Repository](#) sidebar.)

Defining a style locally consists of two parts:

1. The component or components to be styled are selected in the design (Design View). You can select multiple by keeping the Shift key depressed while selecting components. These components are each of a particular component type. In the selection you make, all components of a single component type are listed together by component type (for example: 50 `texts` in the screenshot below).



2. After making the selection in Design View, you [select the component type](#) (in the Styles For) column. If there is more than one component for that component type, then styles will be applied to all these components. How to make a selection for local styling is described in [Selecting SPS Components to Style](#).
3. After selecting the components to style in the Styles For column of the Styles window, the styles for that selection are defined in the [Property Definitions column](#). How to do this is described in the section [Setting CSS Property Values](#).

## Selecting SPS Components to Style

Any component in the SPS design (except node tags) can be selected for the definition of a style. Components that can be styled are: (i) a static SPS component such as an [Auto-Calculation](#) or a text string; or (ii) a [predefined format](#) (represented in the Design View by [its start and end tags](#)).

Each SPS component may:

- be of a single component type (for example, a [horizontal line](#) component is of the *line* component type; a ( *contents* ) placeholder is of the *content* component type; a combo box is of the *combobox* component type);
- have structurally mandatory component subtypes (for example, a [table](#) component will be of the component type *table*, and will have the mandatory component subtypes *body*, *row*, *column*, and *cell*, and optionally, the *header* and *footer* component subtypes).

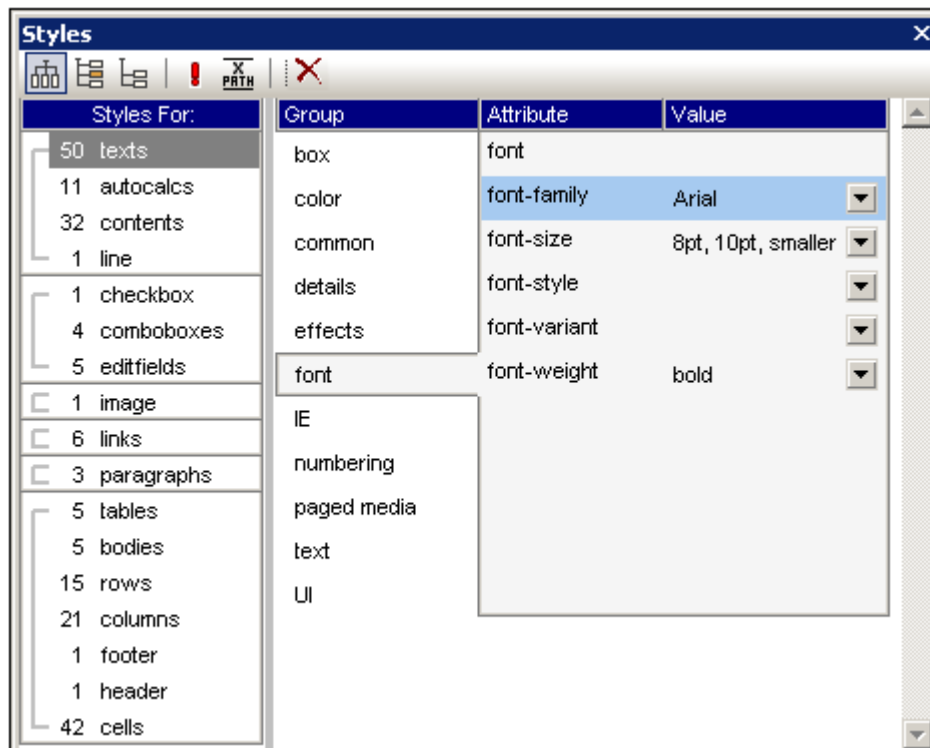
The component or components to style are selected in two steps:

1. [Select the SPS component](#) in the design (Design View).
2. [Select a component type](#) from the contained component types; this selection is done in the Styles For column of the Styles sidebar.

These two steps are described in detail below.

## Selecting the SPS component

When an SPS component is selected in the design (by clicking it), its component type is listed in the Styles For column of the [Styles sidebar](#). If multiple components are selected in the design, all components of one component type are listed together in the Styles For column of the Styles sidebar (*screenshot below*).



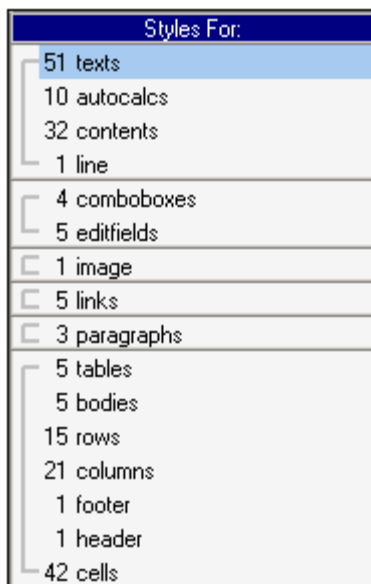
In the Styles For column, the selected component types are organized into the following categories (each category separated from the next by a line):

- **Textual components.** These include: [static text strings](#) entered directly in the SPS (*texts*); [Auto-Calculations](#) (*autocalcs*); [dynamic text](#) which is included in the SPS using the `( contents )` placeholder (*contents*); and [horizontal lines](#) inserted directly in the SPS (*lines*).
- **Data-entry devices.** These include: input fields (*editfields*); multiline input fields (*multiline editfields*); combo-boxes (*comboboxes*); check boxes (*checkboxes*); radio buttons (*radiobuttons*); and buttons (*buttons*). See [Using Data-Entry Devices](#).
- **Images.** These are images inserted in the SPS via the [Insert | Image](#) command.
- **Bookmarks and links.** Both bookmarks and hyperlinks are indicated as *links*. See [Bookmarks and Hyperlinks](#).
- **Predefined formats.** All predefined formats (such as `div`, `p`, `h1`, and `pre`) are indicated as *paragraphs*. See [Predefined Formats](#).
- **Table components.** These include the structural components of a [table](#) from the *table* component type down to the *cell* component type. Each subtype is differentiated and listed separately.

**Note:** The [conditional template and condition](#) components are not listed because they are filters. Not being present in the output, they do not need to be styled.

### Selecting the component type for styling

When a component in the SPS design is selected, it is listed by its type in the Styles For column of the [Styles sidebar](#). If multiple components are selected, all instances of a single component type within that selection are listed together and can be styled in one go. In the Styles For column, you can select any one of the listed component types and define styling for all instances of this component type. For example, in the screenshot below, the 51 text components have been selected. You can now [define styling in the Styles sidebar](#) for all the selected 51 instances of static text strings. This selection method is useful if a single style definition is required for all instances of a component type within a component.



After selecting the required component type, you can [define the required style](#).

**Note:** If a component type instance is inserted into the design after a style has been defined for that component type, then this instance must either be styled separately or the style definition for the component type must be redone with the newly inserted instance included in the selection.

**Selecting a single component for styling**

To define styling for a single component, click the required component to select it. In the case of [static text](#), placing the cursor anywhere within the text string suffices to select it.

### How Styles Are Applied to Components

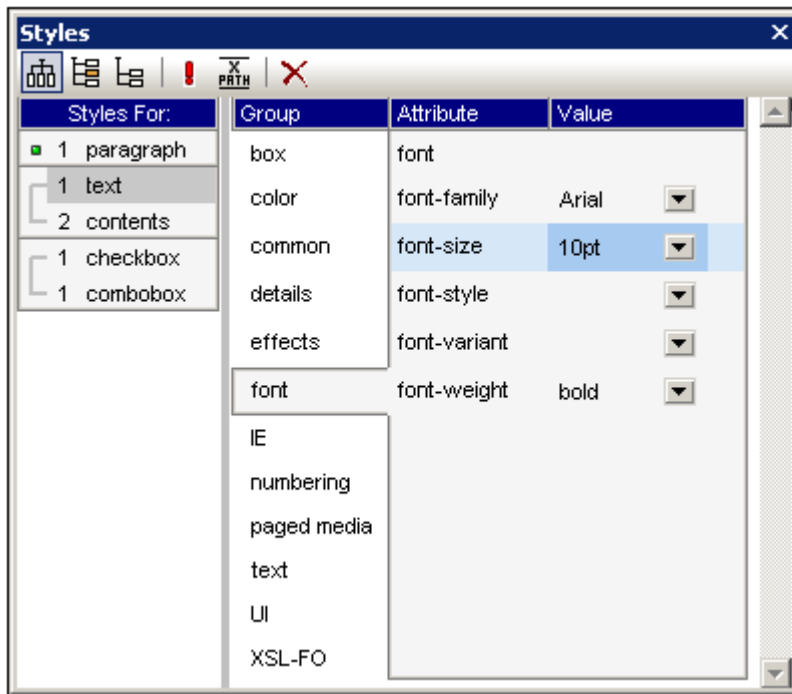
The CSS styles that are applied via the Styles sidebar are applied to certain components on the block level and to other components on the inline level. Knowing at which level styles are applied to a component (block or inline) will help you to define styles efficiently. For example, defining vertical margins (the `margin-top` and `margin-bottom` properties) for inline styles will have no effect on the output.

The table below shows how styles are applied to each SPS component type.

Component type	Style application
Static text	Inline
Auto-Calculations	Inline
XML node content created as ( contents)	Inline
Links	Inline application to content of link. Link itself has no styling.
Predefined formats	Applied to the predefined format element, which are all block elements.
Horizontal lines	Block
XML nodes created as data-entry device	Block
Images	Block
Tables and table sub-components	Block

## Setting CSS Property Values

Style properties are defined in the [Styles sidebar](#) (screenshot below) for the selected component or components. The selection is made in two steps. First, the [component is selected](#) in the SPS. This causes the descendant component types and any associated predefined formats to appear in the Styles For column of the [Styles sidebar](#) (see screenshot below). Second: In the Styles For column, the [descendant component type is selected](#). In the screenshot below, the *paragraph* component type (the predefined format) is selected. Now style properties can be defined for the predefined format. If, in the screenshot below, the 3 *comboboxes* entry had been selected, style properties could have been defined for all three combo boxes in one go.



### Style property groups

The available style properties are CSS properties and are defined in 11 groups:

Style Group	Properties
box	Border, margin, and padding settings.
color	Color of node content; background properties.
common	Includes <code>class</code> , <code>display</code> , <code>position</code> , <code>float</code> , <code>z-index</code> among others.
details	Height, width, and vertical alignment properties.
effects	The <code>clip</code> , <code>overflow</code> , and <code>visibility</code> properties.
font	Font specifications, such as family, size, style, weight.
IE	Internet Explorer-specific properties.
numbering	List markers, counters, and quotes.
paged media	Settings for page-breaks, orphans, and widows.



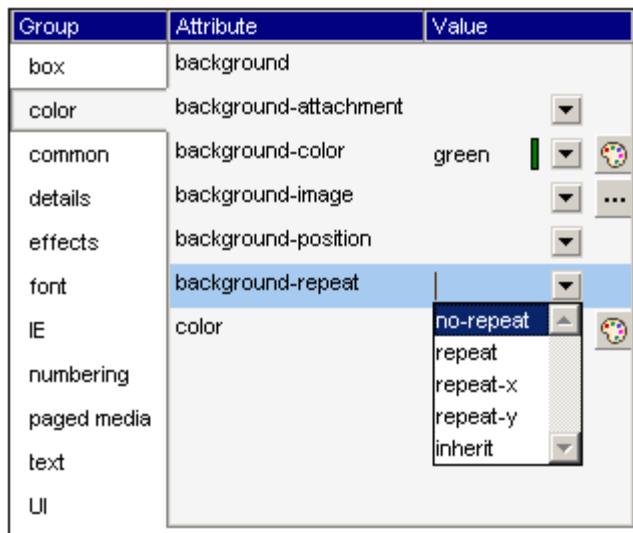
Style Group	Properties
text	Text properties such as <code>text-align</code> , <code>text-decoration</code> , and <code>text-transform</code> , as well as other text-related properties such as <code>letter-spacing</code> and <code>word-spacing</code> .
UI	Cursor style setting for user interface.

**Note:** The `visibility`, `display`, `float`, and `position` properties are not applied in Design View and Authentic View.

### Entering property values

Property values can be entered in one, two, or three ways, depending on the property:

- Entered directly in the Value column. To do this, select a property, double-click in its Value column, enter the value using the keyboard, and press **Enter** or click anywhere in the GUI.
- By selecting a value from the dropdown list of the combo box for that property. Click the down arrow of the combo box to drop down the list of property-value options. In the screenshot below, the options for the `background-repeat` property are displayed. Select the required value from the dropdown list.
- By using the sidebar at the right-hand side of the Value column for that property. Two types of sidebar are available, and these are available only for properties to which they are relevant: (i) a color palette for selecting colors (in the screenshot below, see `color` and `background-color` properties), and (ii) a dialog for browsing for files (in the screenshot below, see the `background-image` property).



### Modifying or deleting a property value

If a property value is entered incorrectly or is invalid, both the property and the value are displayed in red. To modify the value, use any of the applicable methods described in the previous section, [Entering Property Values](#).

To delete a property value, double-click in the Value column of the property, delete the value using the **Delete** and/or **Backspace** key, and then press **Enter**.

## 11.5 Style Properties Via XPath

Styles can be assigned to design components via XPath expressions. This enables property values to be taken from XML data or from the XPath expression itself. Using the `doc()` function of XPath 2.0, nodes in any accessible XML document can be addressed. Not only can style definitions be pulled from XML data; this feature also enables style choices that are conditional upon the structure or content of the XML data. For example, using the `if...else` statement of XPath 2.0, two different background colors can be selected depending on the position of an element in a sequence. Thus, when these elements are presented as rows in a table, the odd-numbered rows can be presented with one background color while the even-numbered rows are presented with another. Also, depending on the content of a node, the presentation can be varied.

### Properties for which XPath expressions are enabled

XPath expressions can be entered for the following styling properties:

- All properties available in the Styles sidebar
- The *Common*, *Event*, and *HTML* groups of properties in the Properties sidebar

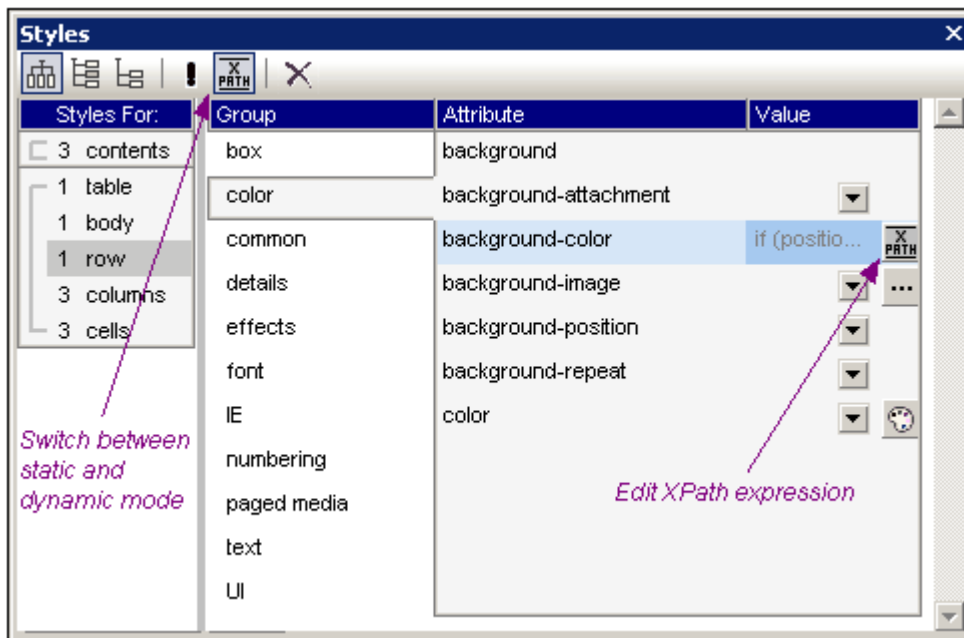
### Static mode and dynamic (XPath) mode for property values

For those properties where [XPath expressions are enabled](#), two mode are available:

- Static mode, where the value of the property is entered directly in the sidebar. For example, for the background-color of a design component, the value `red` can be entered directly in the sidebar.
- Dynamic, or XPath mode, where an XPath expression is entered. The expression is evaluated at runtime, and the result is entered as the value of the property. For example, for the background color of a design component, the following XPath expression can be entered: `/root/colors/color1`. At runtime, the content of the node `/root/colors/color1` will be retrieved and entered as the value of the background-color property.

### Switching between static and dynamic (XPath) modes

For each property for which XPath expressions are enabled, static mode is selected by default. To switch a property to dynamic (XPath) mode, select that property and click the XPath icon in the toolbar of the sidebar (*screenshot below*).



If a static value was present for that property, it is now cleared and the mode is switched to dynamic. The [Edit XPath Expression dialog](#) appears. It is in this dialog that you enter the XPath expression for the property. Click **OK** when finished.

After you enter an XPath expression for the property, an Edit XPath expression button appears in the Value column for that property (*screenshot above*). Click this button to subsequently edit the XPath expression. If you wish to switch back to static mode, click the XPath icon in the toolbar. This will clear the XPath expression and switch the property to static mode.

**Note:** There are two important points to note. First, only one mode (static or dynamic), and the value/expression for that mode, is active at any time. Any value/expression that previously existed for the other mode is cleared; so switching to the other mode will present that mode with an empty entry field. (In order to go back to a previous value/expression, use the [Undo command](#).) Second, if you reselect a property after further editing the SPS, then that property will be opened in the mode it was in previously.

### Creating and editing the XPath definition

The XPath definition is created and edited in the [Edit XPath Expression dialog](#). This dialog is accessed in two ways:

- Each time you switch to the dynamic mode of a property from static mode (by clicking the XPath icon in the toolbar of the sidebar), the [Edit XPath Expression dialog](#) appears. You can now create the XPath expression. (Note that clicking the toolbar icon when already in dynamic mode switches the mode to static mode; it does not pop up the Edit XPath Expression dialog.)
- The [Edit XPath Expression dialog](#) also pops up when you click the Edit XPath Expression button in the Value field of a property that already has an XPath expression defined for it. The dialog will contain the already defined XPath expression for that property, which you can now edit.

After you enter or edit the XPath expression in the entry field, click **OK** to finish.

### Values returned by XPath expressions

The most important benefits of using XPath expressions to set a property value are that: (i) the property value can be taken from an XML file (instead of being directly entered); and/or (ii) an XPath expression can test some condition relating to the content or structure of the XML document being processed, and accordingly select a value. XPath expressions return values in the following two categories:

- *XML node content*  
The XPath expression can address nodes in: (i) the XML document being processed by the SPS, or (ii) any accessible XML document. For example the expression `Format/@color` would access the `color` attribute of the `Format` child of the context node. The value of the `color` attribute will be set as the value of the property for which the XPath expression was defined. A node in some other XML document can be accessed using the `doc()` function of XPath 2.0. For example, the expression `doc('Styles.xml')//colors/color-3` would retrieve the value of the element `color-3` in the XML document `Styles.xml` and set this value as the value of the property for which the XPath expression was defined.
- *XPath expression*  
The value of the property can come from the XPath expression itself, not from the XML document. For example, the background color of an element that is being output as a row can be made to alternate depending on whether the position of the row is odd-numbered or even-numbered. This could be achieved using the XPath 2.0 expression: `if (position() mod 2 = 0) then 'red' else 'green'`. Note that the return value of this expression is either the string `red` or the string `green`, and it will be set as the value of the property for which the XPath expression was defined. In the example just cited, the property values were entered as string literals. Alternatively, they could come from an XML document, for example: `if (position() mod 2 = 0) then doc('Styles.xml')//colors/color-1 else doc('Styles.xml')//colors/color-2`. Conversely, the XPath expression could be a straightforward string, for example: `'green'`. However, this is the same as entering the static value `green` for the property.

## **Chapter 12**

---

### **SPS File: Additional Functionality**

## 12 SPS File: Additional Functionality

Additional to the [content editing](#), [structure](#), [advanced](#), and [presentation](#) procedures described in this documentation, StyleVision provides a range of miscellaneous additional features. These are listed below and described in detail in the sub-sections of this section.

- [Global Resources](#). Global resources provide flexibility in selecting resources. For example, multiple resources (such as files), can be assigned to an alias. When an alias is used as a source (XML, XSD, etc) of an SPS, the resource can be switched among the multiple resources assigned to the alias.
- [Working with Dates](#). Dates can be manipulated and formatted as required.
- [Unparsed Entity URIs](#). URIs can be stored in unparsed entities in the DTD on which an XML document is based. The Unparsed Entity URI feature enables images and hyperlinks to use these URIs as target URIs.
- [Using Scripts](#). StyleVision contains a JavaScript Editor in which JavaScript functions can be defined. These functions are then available for use as event handlers anywhere within the SPS, and will take effect in the output HTML document.
- [HTML Import](#). An HTML file can be imported into StyleVision and an XML, XSD, and SPS files can be created from it.

## 12.1 Altova Global Resources

Altova Global Resources is a collection of aliases for file, folder, and database resources. Each alias can have multiple configurations, and each configuration maps to a single resource

Therefore, when a global resource is used as an input, the global resource can be switched among its configurations. This is done easily via controls in the GUI. For example, if an XSLT stylesheet for transforming an XML document is assigned via a global resource, then we can set up multiple configurations for the global resource, each of which points to a different XSLT file. After setting up the global resource in this way, switching the configuration would switch the XSLT file used for the transformation.

A global resource can not only be used to switch resources within an Altova application, but also to generate and use resources from other Altova applications. So, files can be generated on-the-fly in one Altova application for use in another Altova application. All of this tremendously eases and speeds up development and testing.

Using Altova Global Resources involves two processes:

- [Defining Global Resources](#): Resources are defined and the definitions are stored in an XML file. These resources can be shared across multiple Altova applications.
- [Using Global Resources](#): Within an Altova application, files can be located via a global resource instead of via a file path. The advantage is that the resource being used can be instantly changed by changing the active configuration in StyleVision.

### Global resources in other Altova products

Currently, global resources can be defined and used in the following individual Altova products: XMLSpy, StyleVision, MapForce, and DatabaseSpy.

## Defining Global Resources

Altova Global Resources are defined in the Manage Global Resources dialog, which can be accessed in two ways:

- Click Tools in the menu bar to pop up the **Tools** menu (*screenshot below*), and select the command **Global Resources**. This pops up the Global Resources dialog.
- Click the menu command **View | Toolbars | Global Resources** to display the Global Resources Toolbar (*screenshot below*).



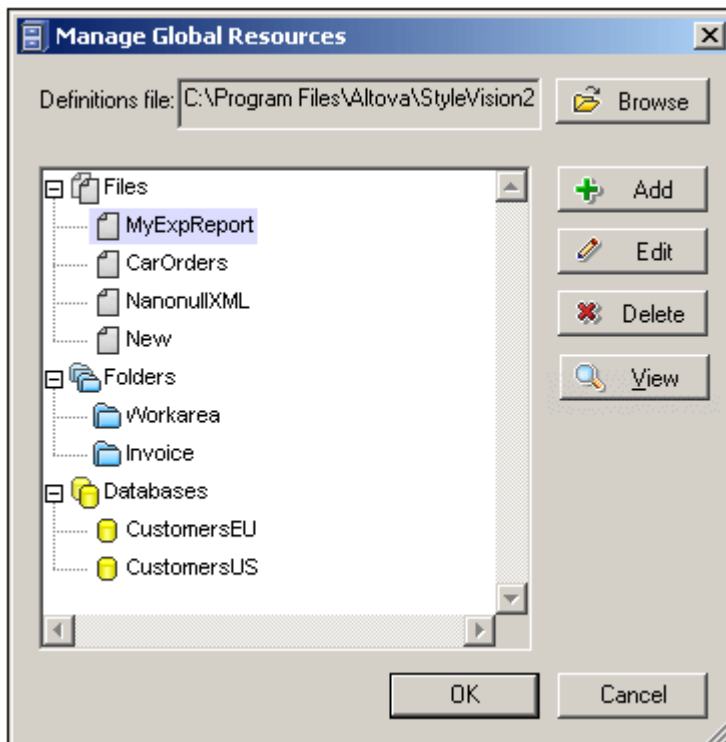
Once the toolbar is displayed, click the Manage Global Resources icon. This pops up the Global Resources dialog.

### The Global Resources XML File

Information about global resources that you define is stored in an XML file. By default, this XML file is called `GlobalResources.xml`, and it is stored in the folder `C:\Documents and Settings\<username>\My Documents\Altova\`. This file is set as the default Global Resources XML File for all Altova applications. As a result, a global resource defined in any application will be available to all Altova applications—assuming that all applications use this file.

You can also re-name the file and save it to any location, if you wish. Consequently, you may have multiple Global Resources XML files. However, only one of these Global Resources XML File can be active at any time, and only the definitions contained in this file will be available to the application.

To select a Global Resources XML file to be the active file, in the Manage Global Resources dialog (*screenshot below*), browse for it in the Definitions File entry and select it.





### Managing global resources: adding, editing, deleting

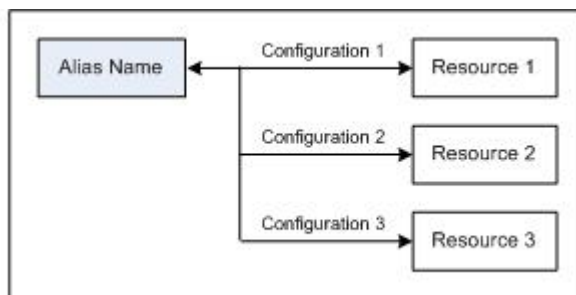
In the Manage Global Resources dialog (*screenshot above*), you can add a global resource to the selected Global Resources XML File, or edit or delete a selected global resource. The Global Resources XML File organizes the aliases you add into a list of several sections: files, folders, and databases (*see screenshot above*).

To add a global resource, click the **Add** button and define the global resource in the **Global Resource** dialog that pops up (*see description below*). After you define a global resource and save it, the global resource (or alias) is added to the library of global definitions in the selected Global Resources XML File. To edit a global resource, select it and click **Edit**. This pops up the **Global Resource** dialog, in which you can make the necessary changes (see the descriptions of [files](#), [folders](#), and [databases](#) in the sub-sections of this section). To delete a global resource, select it and click **Delete**.

After you finish adding, editing, or deleting, make sure to click **OK** in the **Manage Global Resources** dialog to save your modifications to the Global Resources XML File.

### Adding a global resource

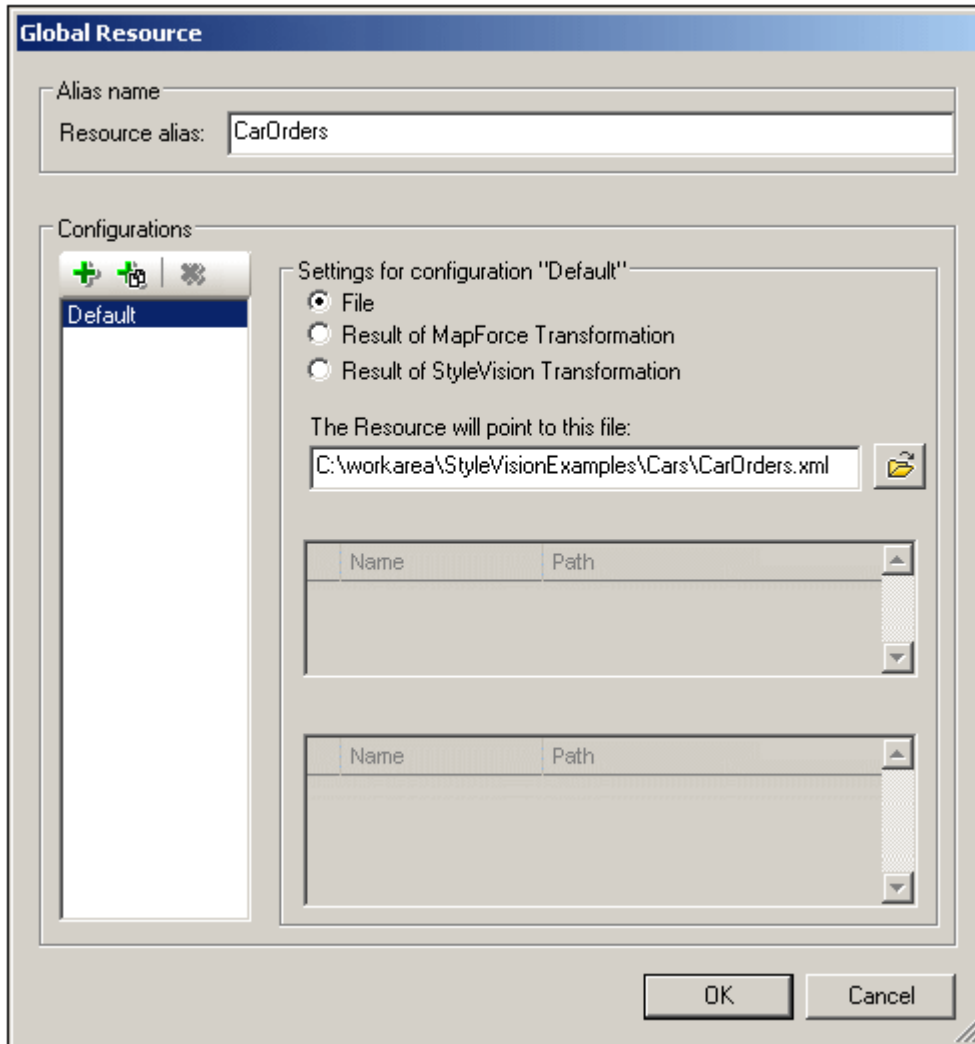
Creating a global resource involves mapping one alias name to one or more resources (file, folder, or database). Each mapping is called a configuration. A single alias name can therefore be associated with several resources via different configurations (*screenshot below*).




In the **Manage Global Resources** dialog (*screenshot above*), when you click the **Add** button, you can select whether you wish to add a file-type, folder-type, or database-type resource. How to add and edit each type of resource is described in the sub-sections of this section.

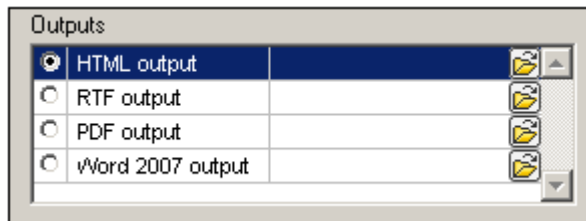
## Files


In the Global Resource dialog for Files (*screenshot below*), you can add a file resource as follows:



1. Enter an alias name.
2. The Configurations pane will have a configuration named Default (*screenshot above*). This Default configuration cannot be deleted nor have its name changed. You can enter as many additional configurations for the selected alias as you like. Add a configuration by clicking the **Add Configuration** icon  and, in the **Add Configuration** dialog which pops up, enter the configuration name. Click **OK**. The new configuration will be listed in the Configurations pane. Repeat for as many configurations as required for this particular alias (global resource). You can also copy a configuration (using the Add Configuration as Copy icon) and then modify it.
3. Select one of the configurations in the Configurations pane and then define the resource to which this configuration will map. In the Settings for Configuration X pane, you can select whether the resource is a file, or the result of either an Altova MapForce or Altova StyleVision transformation. After selecting the resource type by clicking its radio button, browse for the file, MapForce file, or StyleVision file. Where multiple inputs or outputs for the transformation are possible, a selection of the options will be presented. For example, if the Result of StyleVision Transformation was selected as the resource type, the output options are displayed according to the what edition of

StyleVision is installed (*the screenshot below shows the outputs for Enterprise Edition*).




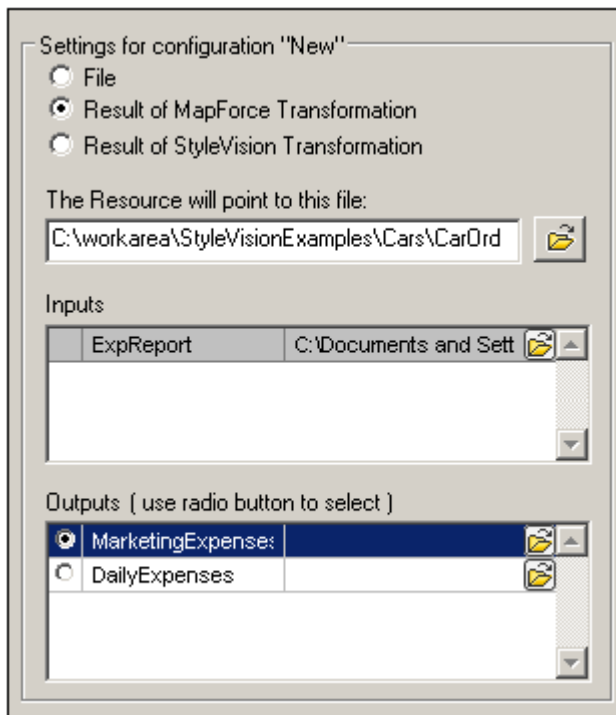
Select the radio button of the desired option (in the screenshot above, 'HTML output' is selected). The result of a transformation can itself be saved as a global resource or as a file path (click the  icon and select, respectively, Global Resource or Browse). If neither of these two saving options is selected, the transformation result will be loaded as a temporary file when the global resource is invoked.


4. Specify a resource for each configuration (that is, repeat Step 3 above for the various configurations you have created).
5. Click **OK** in the Global Resource dialog to save the alias and all its configurations as a global resource. The global resource will be listed under Files in the Manage Global Resources dialog.

### Selecting Result of MapForce transformations as a global resource

Altova MapForce maps one or more (already existing) schemas to one or more (new) schemas designed by the MapForce user. XML files corresponding to the input schemas are used as data sources, and an output XML file based on the user-designed schema can be generated by MapForce. This generated output file (Result of MapForce Transformation) is the file that will be used as a global resource.

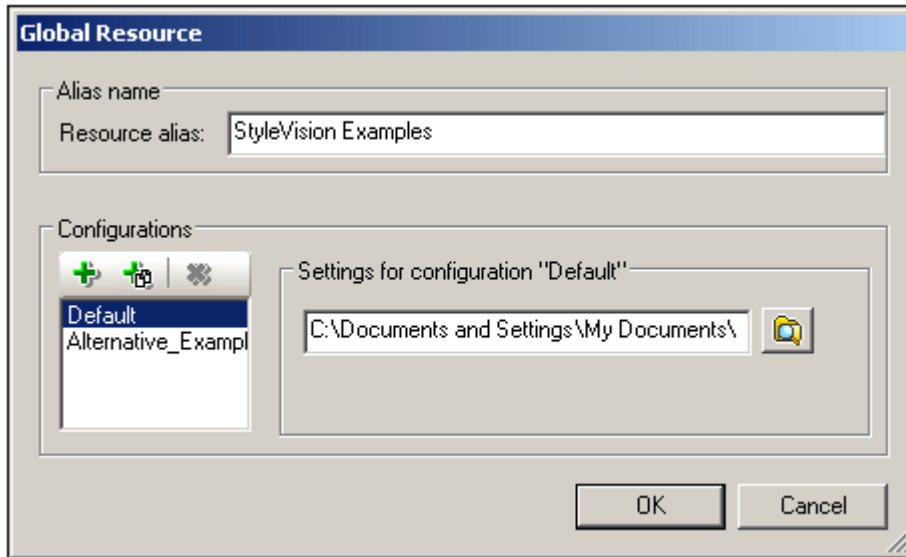
In a MapForce transformation that has multiple output schemas, you can select which one of the output schemas should be used for the global resource by clicking its radio button (*screenshot below*). The XML file that is generated for this schema can be saved as a global resource or as a file path (click the  icon and select, respectively, Global Resource or Browse). If neither of these options is selected, a temporary XML file is created when the global resource is used.




Note that each Input can also be saved as a global resource or as a file path (click the  icon and select, respectively, Global Resource or Browse).

## Folders


In the Global Resource dialog for Folders (*screenshot below*), you can add a folder resource as follows:



Enter an alias name.

1. The Configurations pane will have a configuration named Default (*screenshot above*). This Default configuration cannot be deleted nor have its name changed. You can enter as many additional configurations for the selected alias as you like. Add a configuration by clicking the **Add Configuration** icon  and, in the **Add Configuration** dialog which pops up, enter the configuration name. Click **OK**. The new configuration will be listed in the Configurations pane. Repeat for as many configurations as required for this particular alias (global resource).
2. Select one of the configurations in the Configurations pane and browse for the folder you wish to create as a global resource.
3. Specify a folder resource for each configuration (that is, repeat Step 3 above for the various configurations you have created).
4. Click **OK** in the Global Resource dialog to save the alias and all its configurations as a global resource. The global resource will be listed under Folders in the Manage Global Resources dialog.

### Copying Configurations

The Manage Global resources dialog allows you to duplicate existing configurations for all types of resources. To do so, select a configuration and click the **Copy Configuration** icon . Then select or enter a configuration name and click **OK**. This creates a copy of the selected configuration which you can now change as required.

## Using Global Resources

There are several types of global resources (file-type, folder-type, and database-type). Particular scenarios in StyleVision allow the use of particular types of global resources. For example, you can use file-type or folder-type global resources for a Working XML File or a CSS file. Or you can use a database-type resource to create a new DB-based SPS. The various scenarios in which you can use global resources in StyleVision are listed in this section: [Files and Folders](#) and [Databases](#).

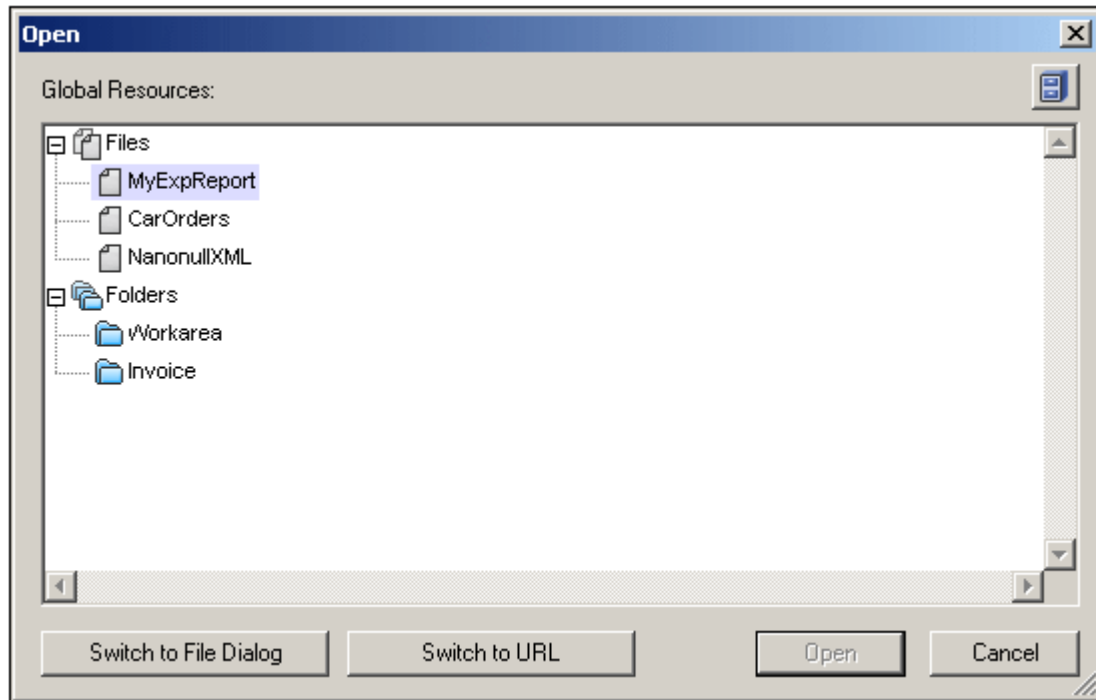
### Selections that determine which resource is used

There are two application-wide selections that determine what global resources can be used and which global resources are actually used at any given time:


- *The active Global Resources XML File* is selected in the [Global Resource dialog](#). The global-resource definitions that are present in the active Global Resources XML File are available to all files that are open in the application. Only the definitions in the active Global Resources XML File are available. The active Global Resources XML File can be changed at any time, and the global-resource definitions in the new active file will immediately replace those of the previously active file. The active Global Resources XML File therefore determines: (i) what global resources can be assigned, and (ii) what global resources are available for look-up (for example, if a global resource in one Global Resource XML File is assigned but there is no global resource of that name in the currently active Global Resources XML File, then the assigned global resource (alias) cannot be looked up).
- *The active configuration* is selected via the menu item [Tools | Active Configuration](#) or via the [Global Resources toolbar](#). Clicking this command (or drop-down list in the toolbar) pops up a list of configurations across all aliases. Selecting a configuration makes that configuration active application-wide. This means that wherever a global resource (or alias) is used, the resource corresponding to the active configuration of each used alias will be loaded. The active configuration is applied to all used aliases. If an alias does not have a configuration with the name of the active configuration, then the default configuration of that alias will be used. The active configuration is not relevant when assigning resources; it is significant only when the resources are actually used.

## Assigning Files and Folders

In this section, we describe how file-type and folder-type global resources are assigned. File-type and folder-type global resources are assigned differently. In any one of the [usage scenarios](#) below, clicking the **Switch to Global Resources** button pops up the Open Global Resource dialog (*screenshot below*).



Selecting a *file-type global resource* assigns the file. Selecting a *folder-type global resource* causes an Open dialog to open, in which you can browse for the required file. The path to the selected file is entered relative to the folder resource. So if a folder-type global resource were to have two configurations, each pointing to different folders, files having the same name but in different folders could be targeted via the two configurations. This could be useful for testing purposes.

In the Open Global Resource dialog, you can switch to the file dialog or the URL dialog by clicking the respective button at the bottom of the dialog. The **Manage Global Resources**  icon in the top right-hand corner pops up the [Manage Global Resources](#) dialog.

### Usage scenarios

File-type and folder-type global resources can be used in the following scenarios:

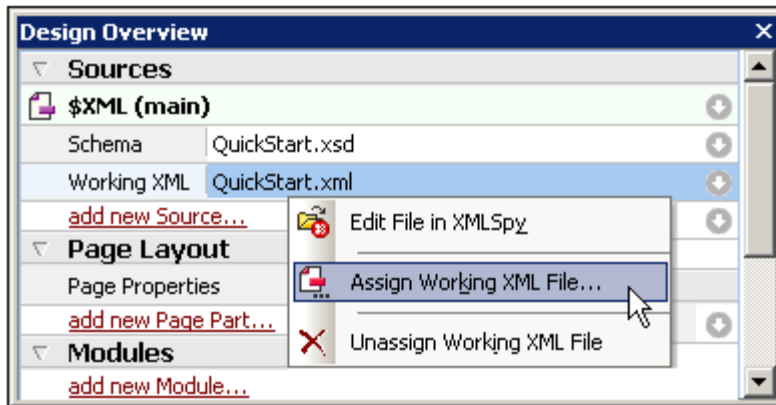
- [Adding and modifying schema sources and Working XML Files](#)
- [Saving as Global Resource](#)
- [Adding modules and CSS files](#)
- [Adding global resources to a project](#)

### Schema, Working XML File

In the Design Overview sidebar (*screenshot below*), the context menus for the Schema and Working XML File contains an entry that pops up the Open dialog in which you can assign the [schema](#) or [Working XML File](#) via a global resource. Clicking the **Switch to Global Resources**



button pops up a dialog with a list of all file-type global resources that are defined in the Global Resources XML File currently active in StyleVision. (How to set the currently active Global Resources XML File is described in the section [Defining Global Resources](#).)



If a global resource has been selected as the file source, it is displayed in the relevant entry in the Design Overview sidebar (*screenshot below*).

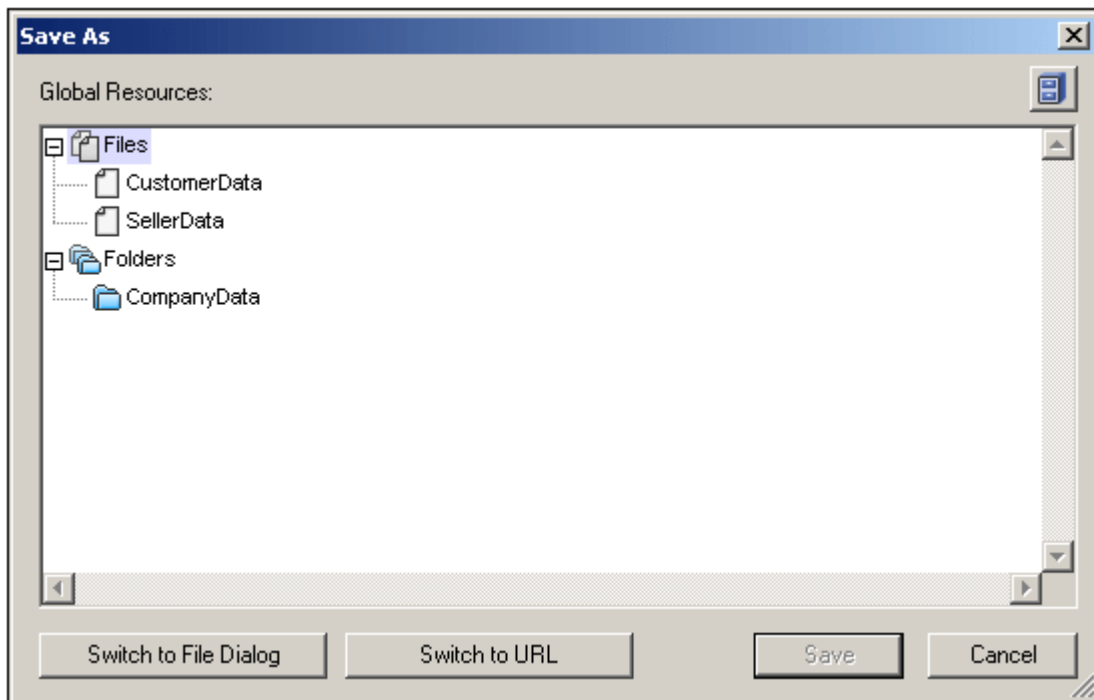


### Adding modules and CSS files from a global resource

In the Design Overview sidebar, the **Add New Module** and **Add New CSS File** commands pop up the Open dialog, in which you can click **Switch to Global Resources** to select a Global Resource to be used. Modules and CSS files can then be changed by changing the configuration.

### Saving as global resource

A newly created file can be saved as a global resource. Also, an already existing file can be opened and then saved as a global resource. When you click the **File | Save** or **File | Save As** commands, the Save dialog appears. Click the **Switch to Global Resource** button to access the available global resources (*screenshot below*), which are the aliases defined in the current Global Resources XML File.



Select an alias and then click Save. If the alias is a [file alias](#), the file will be saved directly. If the alias is a [folder alias](#), a dialog will appear that prompts for the name of the file under which the file is to be saved. In either case the file will be saved to the location that was defined for the [currently active configuration](#).

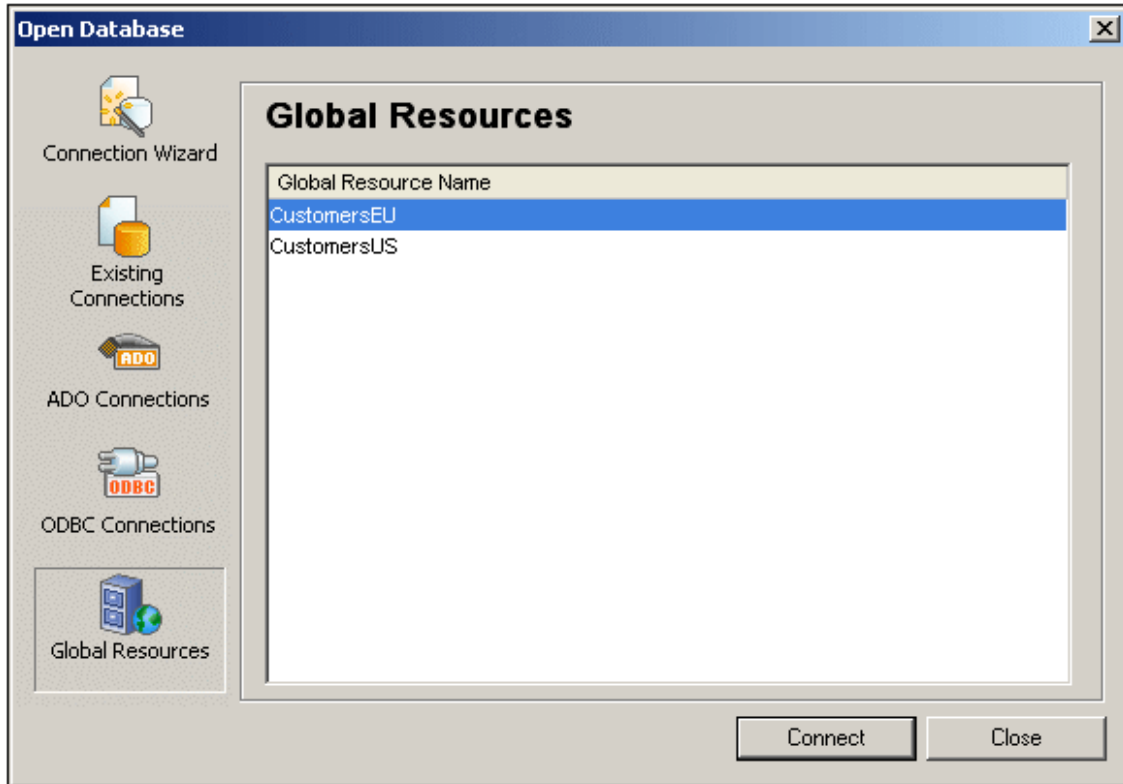
**Note:** Each configuration points to a specific file location, which is specified in the definition of that configuration. If the file you are saving as a global resource does not have the same filetype extension as the file at the current file location of the configuration, then there might be editing and validation errors when this global resource is opened in StyleVision. This is because StyleVision will open the file assuming the filetype specified in the definition of the configuration.

### Global Resources in projects

Global resources can also be added to the currently active project via the **Project | Add Global Resource to Project** command. This pops up a dialog listing the file-type global resources in the currently active [Global Resources XML File](#). Select a global resource and click **OK** to add it to the project. The global resource appears in the Project sidebar and can be used like any other file.

## Assigning Databases

When an SPS is created from a database (DB) with the **File | New from DB** command, you can select the option to use a global resource (*screenshot below*).



When you click the Global Resources icon in the Open Database dialog, all the database-type global resources that have been defined in the currently active [Global Resources XML File](#) are displayed. Select the required global resource and click **Connect**. If the selected global resource has more than one configuration, then the database resource for the currently active configuration (check **Tools | Active Configuration** or the Global Resources toolbar) is used, and the connection is made. You must now select the data structures and data to be used as described in DB Data Selection.

---

### See also:

[Defining Global Resources](#), for information about defining Global Resources.

[Tools | Global Resources](#), for the menu command to access the Altova Manage Global Resources dialog.

[Tools | Active Configuration](#), for the menu command to change the active configuration of the application.

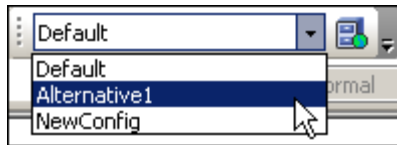
---

## Changing Configurations

One global resource configuration can be active at any time, and it is active application-wide. This means that the active configuration is active for all aliases in all currently open files. If an alias does not have a configuration with the name of the active configuration, then the default configuration of that alias will be used.

As an example of how to change configurations, consider the case in which a Working XML File has been assigned to an SPS via a global resource with multiple configurations. The Working XML File can be switched merely by changing the configuration of the global resource. This can be done in two ways:

- When you hover over the menu command **Tools | Active Configuration**, a submenu with a list of all configurations in the Global Resources XML File pops out. Select the required configuration.
- In the combo box of the Global Resources toolbar (*screenshot below*), select the required configuration. (The Global Resources toolbar can be toggled on and off with the menu command **View | Toolbars | Global Resources**.)



The Working XML File will be changed immediately.

In this way, by changing the active configuration, you can change source files that are assigned via a global resource. Note, however, that the newly selected files must agree schematically with the SPS in order for the SPS to function correctly.

## 12.2 Working with Dates

If the source document contains nodes that take date values, using the `xs:date` or `xs:dateTime` datatypes in the underlying XML Schema makes available the powerful date and time manipulation features of XPath 2.0 (see [examples below](#)). StyleVision supports the `xs:date` or `xs:dateTime` datatypes by providing a wide range of [date formatting](#) possibilities via the [Input Formatting](#) feature.

**Note:** Date and time data cannot be manipulated with XPath 1.0. However, with XPath 1.0 you can still use Input Formatting to provide [date formatting](#).

### Date calculations with XPath 2.0

Data involving dates can be manipulated with XPath 2.0 expressions in [Auto-Calculations](#). Given below are a few examples of what can be achieved with XPath 2.0 expressions.

- The XPath 2.0 functions `current-date()` and `current-dateTime()` can be used to obtain the current date and date-time, respectively.
- Dates can be subtracted. For example: `current-date() - DueDate` would return an `xdt:dayTimeDuration` value; for example, something like `P24D`, which indicates a positive difference of 24 days.
- Time units can be extracted from durations using XPath 2.0 functions. For example: `days-from-duration(xdt:dayTimeDuration('P24D'))` would return the integer 24.

Here is an XPath 2.0 expression in an Auto-Calculation. It calculates a 4% annual interest on an overdue amount on a per-day basis and returns the sum of the principal amount and the accumulated interest:

```
if      (current-date() gt DueDate)
then   (round-half-to-even(InvoiceAmount +
      (InvoiceAmount*0.04 div 365 *
        days-from-duration((current-date() - DueDate))), 2))
else   InvoiceAmount
```

Such a calculation would be possible with XPath 2.0 only if the `DueDate` element were defined to be of a date type such as `xs:date` and the content of the element is entered in its lexically correct form, that is, `YYYY-MM-DD[ ±HH: MM]`, where the timezone component (prefixed by `±`) is optional.

## Formatting Dates


A date in an XML document is saved in the format specific to the datatype of its node. For example, the value of an `xs:date` node will have the format `YYYY-MM-DD[ ±HH: MM]`, while the value of an `xs:dateTime` node will have the format `YYYY-MM-DDTHH: MM: SS[ ±HH: MM]`. These formats are said to be the lexical representations of that data. By default, it is the lexical representation of the data that is displayed in Authentic View and the output. However, in the SPS, the Value Formatting feature can be used to display dates in alternative formats in Authentic View and, in some cases, optionally in the output.

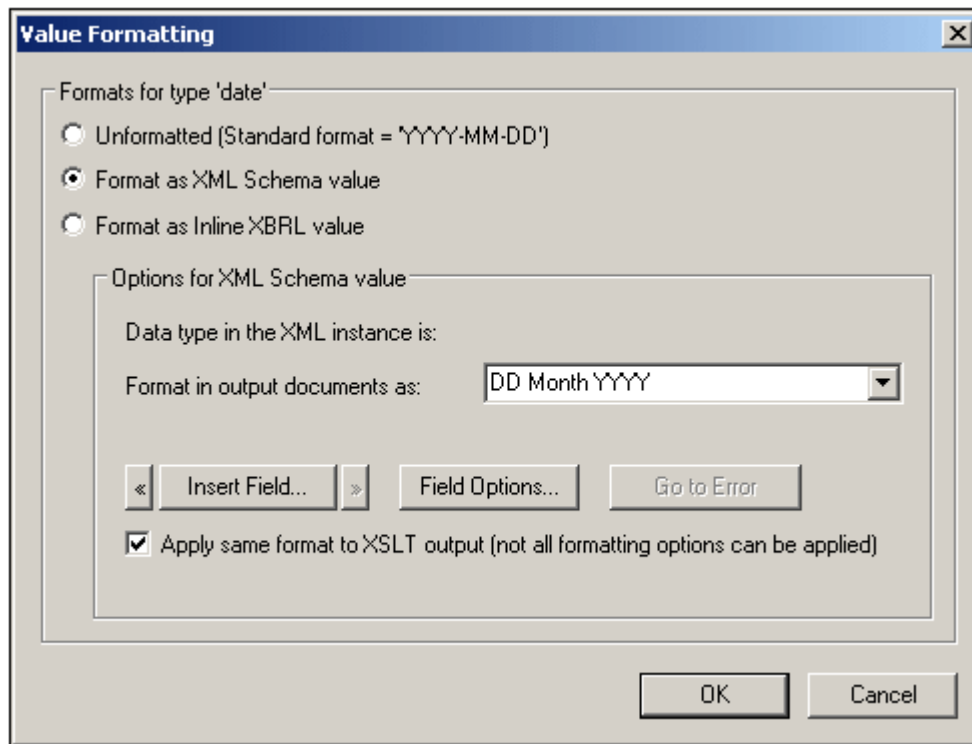
Value Formatting for dates can be used to define custom formats for nodes and Auto-Calculations of the following datatypes:

- `xs:date`
- `xs:dateTime`
- `xs:duration`
- `xs:gYear`
- `xs:gYearMonth`
- `xs:gMonth`
- `xs:gMonthDay`
- `xs:gDay`

### Using Value Formatting to format date nodes

To format dates alternatively to the lexical format of the date node, do the following:

1. Select the `contents` placeholder or input field of the node. Note that value formatting can only be applied to nodes created **as contents or an input field**.
2. In the Properties sidebar, select the `content` item, and then the *Content* group of properties. Now click the Edit button  of the *Value Formatting* property. This pops up the Value Formatting dialog (*screenshot below*).




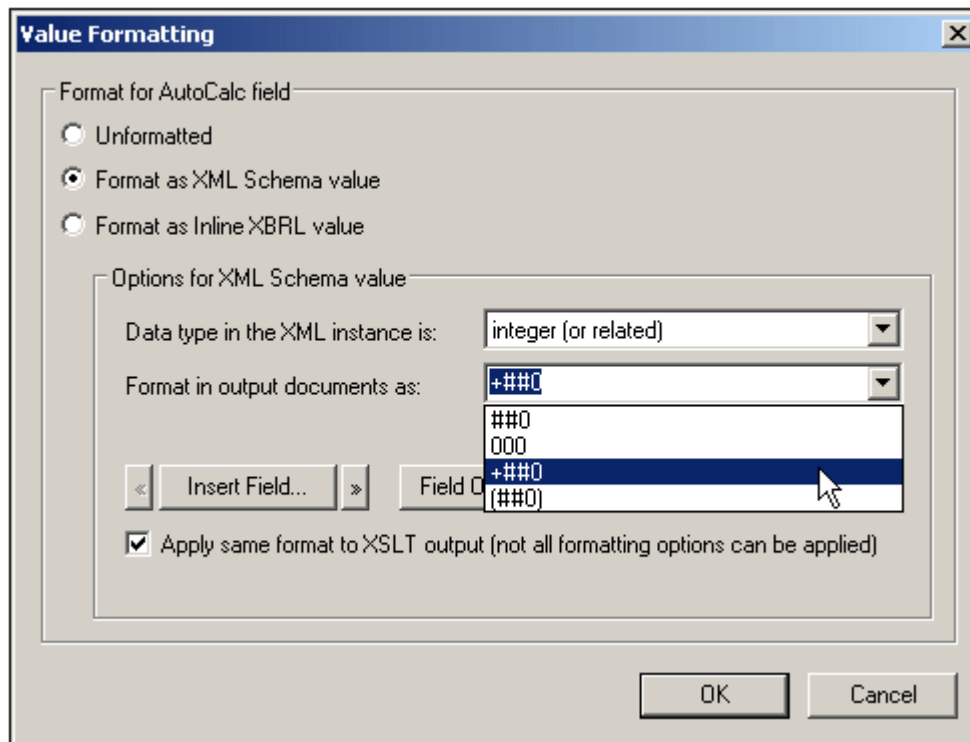
By default, the *Unformatted* radio button (the standard lexical format for the node's datatype) is selected.

3. To define an alternative format, select the *Format* radio button.
4. You can now select a predefined date format from the drop-down list of the combo box (*screenshot below*), or define your own format in the input field of the combo box. See [Value Formatting Syntax](#) for details about the syntax to use when defining your own format.

### Using Value Formatting to format Auto-Calculations

When Auto-Calculations evaluate to a value that is a lexical date format, Value Formatting can be used to format the display of the result. Do this as follows:

1. Select the Auto-Calculation in the design.
2. In the Properties sidebar, select the `content` item, and then the *AutoCalc* group of properties. Now click the Edit button  of the *Value Formatting* property. This pops up the Value Formatting dialog (*screenshot below*).



By default, the *Unformatted* radio button is selected.

3. To define an alternative format, select the *Format* radio button.
4. In the Options for XML Schema value pane, in the *Datatype* combo box, select the `date` datatype to which the Auto-Calculation will evaluate. In the *Format* combo box, you can then select a predefined date format from the drop-down list (available options depend on the selected datatype), or define your own format in the input field of the combo box. See [Value Formatting Syntax](#) for details about the syntax to use when defining your own format.

### Applying Value Formatting to the output

The Value Formatting that you define applies to Authentic View. Additionally, some Value Formatting definitions—not all—can also be applied to HTML output. To do this, check the Apply Same Format to XSLT Output check box. If this option is not checked or if it is not available, then only Authentic View will display the Value Formatting; the output will display the value in its lexical format (for nodes) or, in the case of Auto-Calculations, in the format to which the Auto-Calculation evaluates.



## 12.3 Unparsed Entity URIs

If you are using a DTD and have declared an unparsed entity in it, you can use the URI associated with that entity for image and hyperlink targets in the SPS. This is useful if you wish to use the same URI multiple times in the SPS. This feature makes use of the XSLT function `unparsed-entity-uri` to pass the URI of the unparsed entity from the DTD to the output.

Using this feature requires that the DTD, XML document, and SPS documents be appropriately edited, as follows:

1. In the DTD, the [unparsed entities must be declared](#), with (i) the URI, and (ii) the notation (which indicates to StyleVision the resource type of the entity).
2. In the XML document, the unparsed entity must be [referenced](#). This is done by giving the names of the required unparsed entities.
3. In the SPS, unparsed entities can be used to target [images](#) and [hyperlinks](#) by [correctly accessing the relevant dynamic node values as unparsed entities](#).

### Declaring and referencing unparsed entities

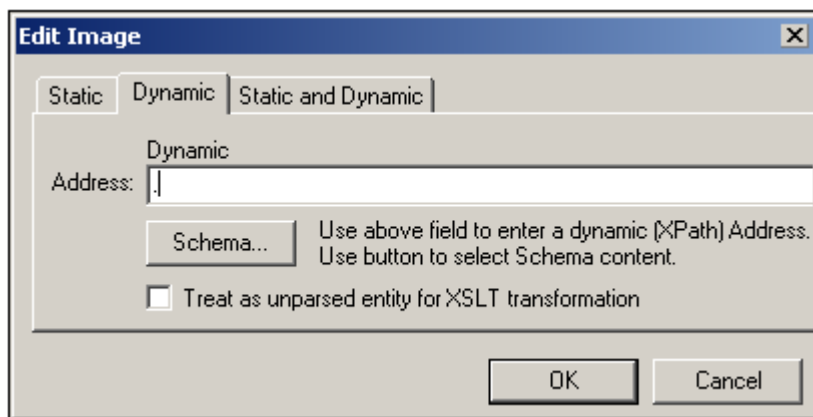
Given below is a cut-down listing of an XML document. It has an internal DTD subset which declares two unparsed entities, one with a `GIF` notation (indicating a GIF image) and the other with an `LNK` notation (indicating a hyperlink). The `img/@src` and `link/@href` nodes in the XML code reference the unparsed entities by giving their names.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE document SYSTEM "UEURIDoc.dtd" [
<! ENTITY Picture SYSTEM "nanonull.gif" NDATA GIF>
<! ENTITY AltovaURI SYSTEM "http://www.altova.com" NDATA LNK>
]>
<document>
  <header>Example of How to Use Unparsed Entity URIs</header>
  <para>...</para>
  
  <link href="AltovaURI">Link to the Altova Website.</link>
</document>
```

### SPS images and hyperlinks that use unparsed entities

Images and hyperlinks in the SPS that reference unparsed entity URIs are used as follows:

1. Insert the image or hyperlink via the **Insert** menu.
2. In the Edit dialog of each, select the Dynamic tab properties (*screenshot below*), and enter an XPath expression that selects the node containing the name of the unparsed entity. In the XML document example given above, these nodes would be, respectively, the `//img/@src` and `//link/@href` nodes.



3. Then check the Treat as Unparsed Entity check box at the bottom of the dialog. This causes the content of the selected node to be read as an unparsed entity. If an unparsed entity of that name is declared, the URI associated with that unparsed entity is used to locate the resource (image or hyperlink).

When the stylesheet is processed, the URI associated with the entity name is substituted for the entity name.

**Note:** Note that if the URI is a relative URI, the XSLT processor expands it to an absolute URI applying the base URI of the DTD. So if the unparsed entity is associated with the relative URI "nanonull.gif", then this URI will be expanded to `file:///c:/someFolder/nanonull.gif`, where the DTD is in the folder `someFolder`.

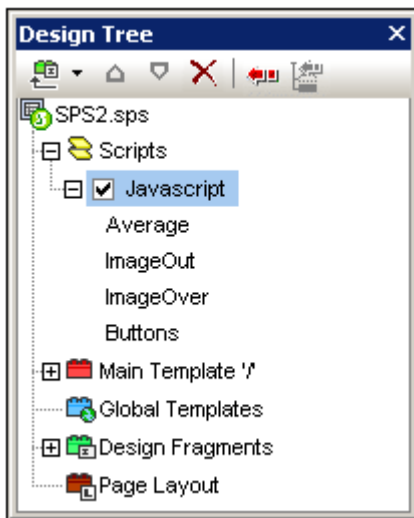
## 12.4 Using Scripts

In StyleVision, you can define JavaScript functions for each SPS in a JavaScript editor (available as a tab in the Design View). The function definitions created in this way are stored in the header of the HTML document and can be called from within the body of the HTML document. Such functions are useful when:

- You wish to achieve a complex result using multiple script statements. In this case it is convenient to write all the required scripts, as separate functions, in one location (the header) and refer to the functions subsequently in the design document.
- You wish to use a particular script at multiple locations in the design document.

How to define functions in the JavaScript Editor is described in the sub-section [Defining JavaScript Functions](#).

In the GUI, all JavaScript functions which are defined for a given SPS in the JavaScript Editor are listed in the Design Tree window under the Scripts entry (*screenshot below*). The screenshot below indicates that four JavaScript functions, `Average`, `ImageOut`, `ImageOver`, and `Buttons`, are currently defined in the active SPS.



The functions defined in the JavaScript Editor are available as event handler calls within the GUI. When a component in the design document is selected, any of the defined functions can be assigned to an event handler property in the Event property group in the Properties sidebar. How to assign a JavaScript function to an event handler is described in the section [Assigning Function to Event Handlers](#).

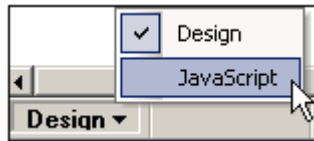
### Scripts in modular SPSs

When an [SPS module is added to another SPS module](#), the scripts in the added module are available within the referring SPS, and can be used as event handlers via the Properties sidebar for components in the referring SPS. For more information about using modular SPSs, see the section [Modular SPSs](#).

## Defining JavaScript Functions

To define JavaScript functions, do the following:

1. In Design View, switch to the JavaScript Editor by clicking the Design View tab and selecting JavaScript (*screenshot below*).



2. In the JavaScript Editor, type in the function definitions (*see screenshot below*).

```

1  function DisplayTime()
2  {
3      now = new Date();
4      hours = now.getHours();
5      mins = now.getMinutes();
6      secs = now.getSeconds();
7      result = hours + ":" + mins + ":" + secs;
8      alert(result);
9  }
10
11 function ClearStatus()
12 {
13     window.status="";
14 }
  
```

The screenshot above shows the definitions of two JavaScript functions: `DisplayTime` and `ClearStatus`. These have been described for the active SPS. They will be entered in the header of the HTML file as follows:

```

<script language="javascript">

<!-- function DisplayTime()
{
    now = new Date();
    hours = now.getHours();
    mins = now.getMinutes();
    secs = now.getSeconds();
    result = hours + ":" + mins + ":" + secs;
    alert(result)
}

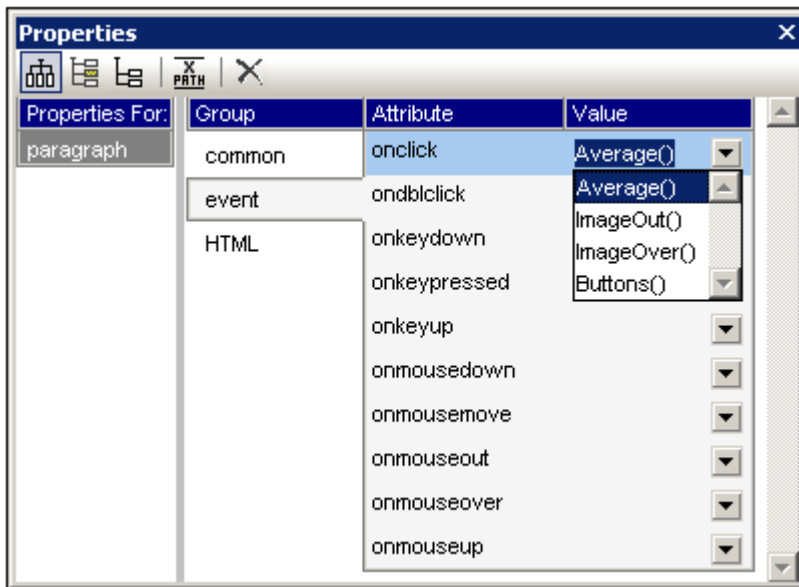
function ClearStatus()
{
    window.status="";
}
-->

</script>
  
```

These functions can now be called from anywhere in the HTML document. In StyleVision, all the defined functions are available as options that can be assigned to an event handler property in the *Event* property group in the Properties sidebar. See [Assigning Function to Event Handlers](#) for details.

## Assigning Functions as Event Handlers

In the StyleVision GUI, you can assign JavaScript functions as event handlers for events that occur on the HTML renditions of SPS components. These event handlers will be used in the HTML output. The event handler for an available event—such as `onclick`—is set by assigning a global function as the event handler. In the Properties sidebar, global functions defined in the JavaScript Editor are available as event handlers in the dropdown boxes of each event in the *Events* property group for the selected component (*screenshot below*).



To assign a function to an event handler, do the following:

1. Select the component in the SPS for which the event handler is to be defined. The component can be a node or content of any kind, dynamic or static.
2. In the Properties sidebar select the *Event* group. This results in the available events being displayed in the Attribute column (*screenshot above*).
3. In the Value column of the required event, click the down arrow of the combo box. This drops down a list of all the functions defined in the JavaScript Editor.
4. From the dropdown list, select the required function as the event handler for that event.

## External JavaScript Files

An SPS can access external JavaScript files in two ways:

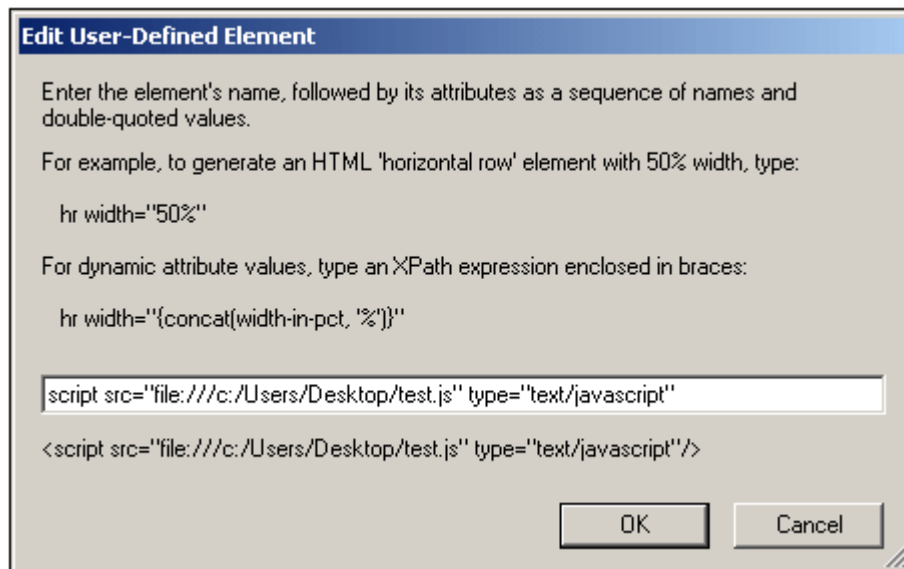
1. [By creating a User-Defined Element or User-Defined XML Block](#). These design objects can contain a `SCRIPT` element that accesses the external JavaScript file. Note that location of the User-Defined Element or User-Defined XML Block is within the `BODY` element of the design (and therefore within the `BODY` element of the HTML output, not within the `HEAD` element).
2. [By adding a script in the Javascript Editor](#) that accesses the external file. A script that is added in this way will be located in the `HEAD` element of the HTML output.

### User-Defined Elements and User-Defined XML Blocks

External JavaScript files can be accessed by means of [User-Defined Elements](#) and [User-Defined XML Blocks](#). Using these mechanisms, a `SCRIPT` element that accesses the external JavaScript file can be inserted at any location within the `BODY` element of the output HTML document.

A [User-Defined Element](#) could be inserted as follows:

1. Place the cursor at the location in the design where the `SCRIPT` element that accesses the JavaScript file is to be inserted.
2. From the **Insert** menu or context menu, select the command for inserting a [User-Defined Element](#).



3. In the dialog that pops up (see screenshot above), enter the `SCRIPT` element as shown above, giving the URL of the JavaScript file as the value of the `src` attribute of the `SCRIPT` element: for example, `script type="text/javascript" src="file:///c:/Users/mam/Desktop/test.js"`
4. Click **OK** to finish.

You can also use a [User-Defined XML Block](#) to achieve the same result. To do this use the same procedure as described above for User-Defined Elements, with the only differences being (i) that a [User-Defined XML Block](#) is inserted instead of a [User-Defined Element](#), and (ii) that the `SCRIPT` element is inserted as a complete XML block, that is, with start and end tags.

**JavaScript Editor**

The [JavaScript Editor](#) enables you to insert an external script in the `HEAD` element of the HTML output. Do this by entering, in the JavaScript Editor, the following script fragment, outside any other function definitions that you create.

```
var script = document.createElement('script');
script.type = 'text/javascript';
script.src = 'file:///c:/Users/Desktop/test.js';
var head = document.getElementsByTagName('head')[0];
head.appendChild(script)
```

The external JavaScript file that is located by the URL in `script.src` is accessed from within the `HEAD` element of the output HTML document.

## 12.5 HTML Import

In StyleVision you can import an HTML file and create the following documents based on it:

- An SPS document based on the design and structure of the imported HTML file.
- An XML Schema, in which HTML document components are created as schema elements or attributes. Optionally, additional elements and attributes that are not related to the HTML document can be created in the user-defined schema.
- An XML document with: (i) a structure based on the XML Schema you have created, and (ii) content from the HTML file.
- XSLT stylesheets based on the design in Design View.

### HTML-to-XML: step-by-step

The HTML Import mechanism, which enables the creation of XML files based on the imported HTML file, consists of the following steps:

1. [Creating New SPS via HTML Import](#). When an HTML file is imported into StyleVision, a new SPS document is created. The HTML document is displayed in Design View with HTML markup tags. A user-defined XML Schema with a document element called `Root` is created in the Schema Tree window. This is the schema on which the SPS is based. The HTML document content and markup that is displayed in Design View at this point is included in the SPS as static content.
2. [Creating the Schema and SPS Design](#). Create the schema by (i) dragging components from the HTML document to the required location in the schema tree (in the Schema Tree window); and, optionally, (ii) adding your own nodes to the schema tree. In the Design Window, HTML content that has been used to build nodes in the schema tree will now be displayed with schema node tags around the content. HTML content that has no corresponding schema node will continue to be displayed without schema node tags.
3. In the Design Document, assign formatting to nodes, refine processing rules, or add static content as required. These modifications will have an effect only on the SPS and the generated XSLT. It will not have an effect on either the generated schema or XML file.
4. After you have completed the schema tree and the design of the SPS, you can [generate and save](#) the following:
  - an XML Schema corresponding to the schema tree you have created;
  - an XML data file with a structure based on the schema and content for schema nodes that are created with the `(content)` placeholder in the SPS design;
  - a SPS (`.sps` file) and/or XSLT stylesheet based on your design.

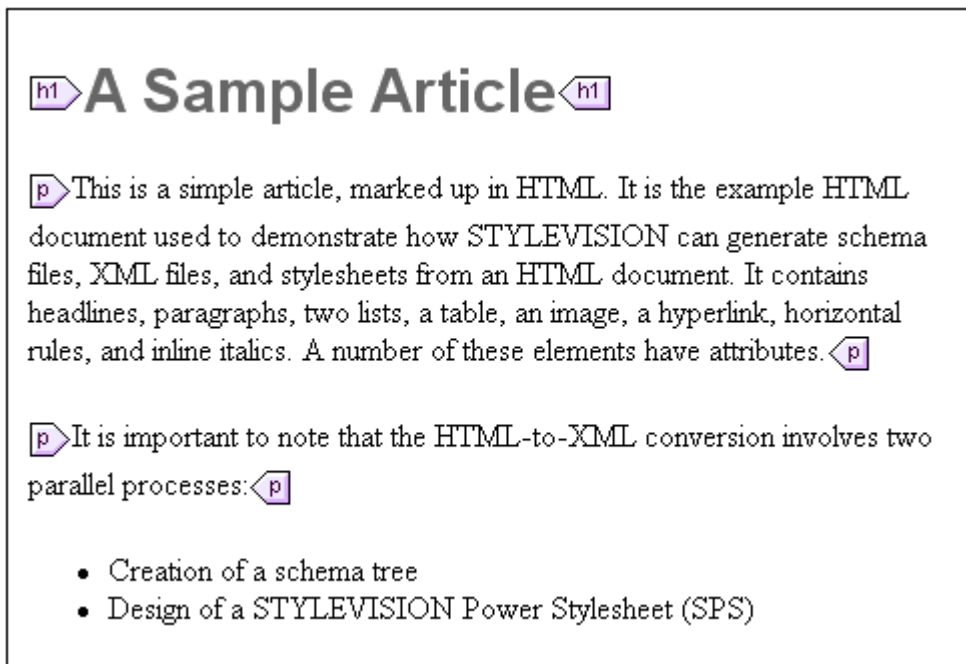


## Creating New SPS via HTML Import

To create a new SPS file from an HTML document, do the following:

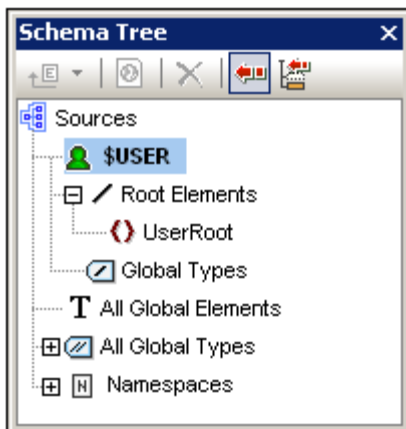
1. Select the menu command **File | New | New from HTML File**.
2. In the Open dialog that pops up, browse for the HTML file you wish to import. Select it and click **Open**.
3. You will be asked whether relative paths should be converted to absolute paths. Make your choice and click **OK**.

A new SPS document is created. The document is displayed in Design View and is marked up with the predefined HTML formats available in StyleVision (*screenshot below*).



Note that the HTML document is displayed within the main template. There is no global template.

In the Schema Tree sidebar, a user-defined schema is created (*screenshot below*) with a root element (document element) called `Root`.



Note that there is no global element in the All Global Elements list.

### SPS structure and design

The SPS contains a single template—the main template—which is applied to the document node of a temporary internal XML document. This XML document has the structure of the user-defined schema which was created in the Schema Tree window. In Design View, **at this point**, the HTML document components within the main template are included in the SPS as static components. The representation of these HTML components in Authentic View will be as non-editable, non-XML content. The XSLT stylesheets will contain these HTML components as literal result elements. The schema, at this point, has only the document element `Root`; consequently, the temporary internal XML document contains only the document element `Root` with no child node.

When you create HTML selections as elements and attributes in the user-defined schema, you can do this in either of two ways:

1. By **converting** the selection to an element or attribute. In the design, the node tags are inserted with a `( content )` placeholder within the tag. In the schema, an element or attribute is created. In the XML document, the selection is converted to the text content of the schema node which is created in the XML document. The contents of the node created in the XML document will be inserted dynamically into the output obtained via the SPS.
2. By **surrounding** the selection with an element or attribute. In the design, the selection is surrounded by the node tags; no `( content )` placeholder is inserted. This means that the selection is present in the SPS design as static content. In the schema, an element or attribute is created. In the XML document, the node is created, but is empty. The static text which is within the schema node tags in the design will be output; no dynamic content will be output for this node unless a `( content )` placeholder for this node is explicitly inserted in the design.

The significance of the `( content )` placeholder is that it indicates locations in the design where data from the XML document will be displayed (in the output) and can be edited (in Authentic View).

## Creating the Schema and SPS Design

The schema is created by dragging selections from Design View into the user-defined schema. You do this one selection at a time. The selection is dropped on a node in the schema tree (relative to which the new node will be created, either as a child or sibling). You select the type of the node to be created (element or attribute) and whether the selection is to be converted to the new node or surrounded by it.

### The selection

The selection in Design View can be any of the following:



- A node in the HTML document.
- A text string within a node.
- Adjacent text strings across nodes.
- An image.
- A link.
- A table.
- A list.
- A combination of any of the above.

In this section we explain the process in general for any selection. The special cases of tables and lists are discussed in more detail in the section [Creating Tables and Lists as Elements/Attributes](#).

To make a selection, click an HTML document component or highlight the required text string. If multiple components are to be selected, click and drag over the desired components to highlight the selection. Note that StyleVision extends the selection at the beginning and end of the selection to select higher-level elements till the first and last selected elements belong to the same parent.

### The location in the schema tree

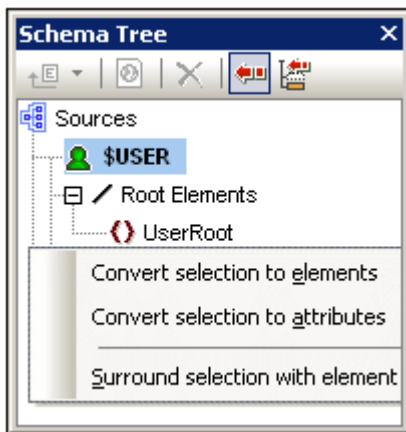
On dragging the selection over the desired schema tree node, one of the following symbols will appear together with the popup message: `Create new schema item`.

- Dropping the node when the Create as Sibling symbol  appears, creates the selection as a sibling node of the node on which the selection is dropped.
- Dropping the node when the Create as Child symbol  appears, creates the selection as a child node of the node on which the selection is dropped.

You should select the node on which the selection is to be dropped according to whether the selection is to be created as a sibling or child of that node.

### Selecting how the node is created

When you drop the selection (*see previous section*), a context menu pops up (*screenshot below*) in which you make two choices: (i) whether the node is to be created as an element or attribute; (ii) whether the selection is to be converted to the node or whether the node is to simply surround the selection.



The following points should be noted:

- When a selection is converted to a node (element or attribute), the node tags, together with a `contained ( content)` placeholder, replace the selection in the design. In the design and the output the text content of the selection is removed from the static content. In the output, the text of the selection appears as dynamic content of the node in the XML document.
- If an HTML node is converted to an XML node, the XML node tags are inserted within the HTML node tags.
- When a selection (including HTML node selections) is surrounded by an XML node, the XML node tags are inserted before and after the selection. In the design and the output, the text content of the selection is retained as static text. In the schema tree (in the Schema Tree sidebar), such an XML node is indicated by parentheses containing an ellipsis.
- The inserted node tags are inserted with the necessary path (that is, with ancestor node tags that establish a path relative to the containing node). The path will be absolute or relative depending on the context of the node in the design.
- How to create nodes from table and list selections are described in [Creating Tables and Lists as Elements/Attributes](#).

### Adding and deleting nodes in the schema

You can add additional nodes (which are not based on an HTML selection) to the user-defined schema. Do this by right-clicking on a node and selecting the required command from the context menu. Alternatively, you can use the toolbar icons of the Schema Tree sidebar.

To delete a node, select the node and then use either the context menu or the toolbar icon. Note, however, that when a node is deleted, some paths in the design could be invalidated.

### Modifying the design

You can modify the structure of the design by dragging components around and by inserting static and dynamic components. Styles can also be modified using the various styling capabilities of StyleVision.

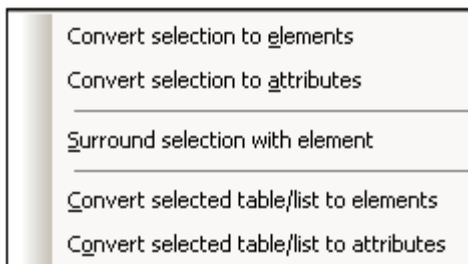
## Creating Tables and Lists as Elements/Attributes

Tables and lists in the HTML document can be converted to element or attribute nodes in the XML Schema so that they retain the table or list structure in the schema.

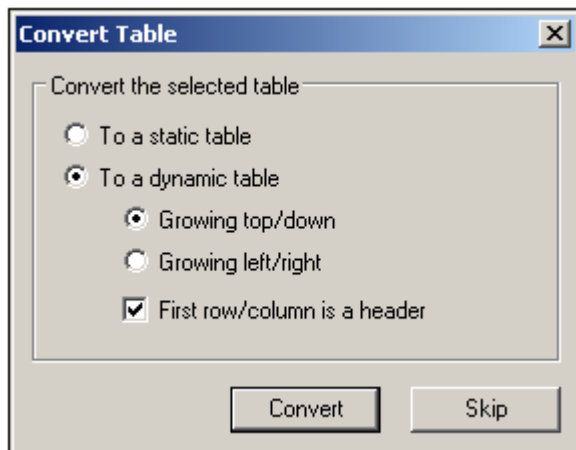
### Converting a table to elements/attributes

To convert a table to schema nodes, do the following:

1. Select the HTML table by highlighting some text in it.
2. Drag it to the node in the schema tree as a sibling or child of which you want to create it.
3. Drop the node when the Create as Sibling symbol ↓ or Create as Child symbol ↘ appears.
4. In the context menu that now pops up (*screenshot below*), select the command **Convert selected table/list to elements** or **Convert selected table/list to attributes** according to whether you wish to create the contents of table cells as elements or attributes, respectively.



5. In the Convert Table dialog that pops up (*screenshot below*), select whether the table created in the SPS should be a static table or dynamic table.



If the **static table** option is selected, then for each cell in the table, a schema node is created. In the design, each node is inserted with the `(content)` placeholder. The data in the table cells is copied to the temporary internal XML document (and to the generated XML document). The **dynamic table** option is available when the structure of all rows in the table are identical. When created in the SPS, the rows of the dynamic table are represented by a single row in the design (because each row has the same structure). The table data will be copied to the XML file. The dynamic table can grow top/down (rows are arranged vertically relative to each other) or left/right (rows become columns and extend from left to right). If you indicate that the first row/column is a header, then (i) a header row containing the column headers as static text is included in the design; and (ii) the schema element/attribute nodes take the header texts as their

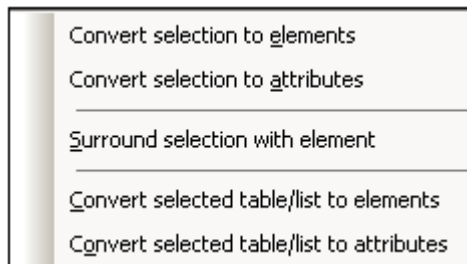
names. If the first row/column is not indicated as a header, then no header row is included in the design.

6. After you have selected the required option/s, click **Convert** to finish.

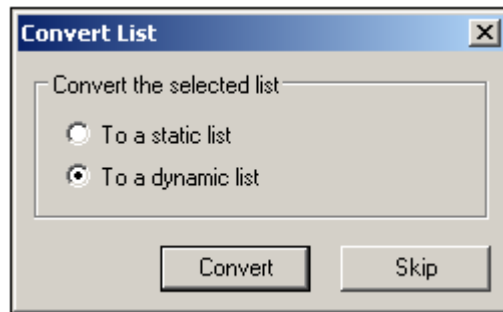
### Converting a list to elements/attributes

To convert a list to schema nodes, do the following:

1. Select the HTML list by highlighting some text in it.
2. Drag it to the node in the schema tree as a sibling or child of which you want to create it.
3. Drop the node when the Create as Sibling symbol ↓ or Create as Child symbol ↘ appears.
4. In the context menu that now pops up (*screenshot below*), select the command **Convert selected table/list to elements** or **Convert selected table/list to attributes** according to whether you wish to create the contents of table cells as elements or attributes, respectively.



5. In the Convert List dialog that pops up (*screenshot below*), select whether the table created in the SPS should be a static table or dynamic table.



If the **static list** option is selected, then for each list item, a schema node is created. In the design, each node is inserted with the text of the HTML list item included as static content of the list item. If the **dynamic list** option is selected, then each list item is represented by a single list item node in the design. In the design, the list item element is inserted with the ( content) placeholder.

6. After you have selected the required option, click **Convert** to finish.

## Generating Output

After completing the SPS, you can generate the following output using the **File | Save Generated Files** command:

- Generated user-defined schema, which is the schema you have created in the Schema Tree sidebar.
- Generated user-defined XML data, which is an XML document based on the schema you have created and containing data imported from the HTML file.
- XSLT stylesheets for HTML output.
- HTML output.





## **Chapter 13**

---

### **Automated Processing**

## 13 Automated Processing

The functionality of StyleVision together with the various XSLT and output files generated by StyleVision provide powerful automation possibilities. This section describes these capabilities.

### StyleVision's file-generation functionality

After you have created an SPS design with StyleVision, you can generate several kinds of XSLT and output files from within the GUI, depending on which edition of StyleVision you are using (Enterprise, Professional, or Standard). The following files can be generated with the [File | Save Generated Files](#) command:

- XSLT files for HTML output.
- HTML output.

As you will notice from the list above, the files that can be saved with StyleVision are of two types:

1. The XSLT files generated by the SPS design, and
2. The final output files (such as HTML).

The processes to generate the final HTML output files are all one-step processes in which the XML document is transformed by an XSLT stylesheet to the output format.

### StyleVisionBatch and AltovaXML: generating files from outside the GUI

Additionally to generating XSLT stylesheets and the required output formats via the StyleVision GUI ([File | Save Generated Files](#) command), you can generate output files using two other methods:

1. With the [StyleVisionBatch utility](#), which calls StyleVision's file generation functionality without opening the GUI, You can use various input parameters to produce various kinds of output. One parameter you can specify is the SPS file itself, from which all XSLT stylesheets can be generated, and hence all end output formats. (The Enterprise and Professional Editions offer multiple output formats.) StyleVisionBatch is used from the command line and thus enables the automation of StyleVision's file-generation functionality. How to use StyleVisionBatch is explained in the sub-section, [Command Line Interface: StyleVisionBatch](#).
2. With [AltovaXML](#), a free, standalone Altova application that contains the Altova XML Validator, Altova XSLT Engines (1.0 and 2.0), and Altova XQuery 1.0 Engine. The XSLT Engines in AltovaXML can be used for transformations of XML to an output format by processing XML documents with XSLT stylesheets. As a result, the XSLT file will have to be created in advance so that it can be provided as an input parameter to AltovaXML. (AltovaXML does not take an SPS as an input parameter.) The advantages of using AltovaXML are: (i) the savings on time and memory overheads compared to using StyleVisionBatch; and (ii) in addition to a command line interface, AltovaXML provides interfaces for COM, Java, and .NET, and can therefore be easily called from within these environments. How to use AltovaXML for transformations is explained in the sub-section [AltovaXML](#).

### Automation with scheduled tasks

Since both [StyleVisionBatch](#) and [AltovaXML](#) can be called from the command line, their functionality can be automated and scheduled. How to do this is explained in the section, [How to Automate Processing](#).

## 13.1 Command Line Interface: StyleVisionBatch

StyleVision's file-generation functionality can be called via the StyleVisionBatch utility, which is included in your StyleVision installation. The utility is named `StyleVisionBatch.exe` and is located in the StyleVision application folder. The syntax for invoking StyleVision commands via StyleVisionBatch is explained in the [StyleVisionBatch Syntax](#) sub-section. When a command is executed StyleVision runs silently (i.e. without the GUI being opened), generates the required output files, and closes.

### Output files

Using StyleVisionBatch, you can generate one or more of the following files:

- XSLT-for-HTML (`.xslt`) file from the specified SPS
- HTML (`.html`) file using the XML and XSLT files in the specified SPS or using alternative XML and/or XSLT files

### How to use the command line

There are two ways you can use the command line:

- Commands can be entered singly on the command line and be executed immediately. For example, in a DOS window you can go to the directory in which the StyleVisionBatch utility is, then enter a command such as: `StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -OutXSLT=Test.xslt.`, and press **Enter** to execute the command.
- A series of commands can be entered in a **batch file** for batch processing. For example:

```
@ECHO OFF
CLS
StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -inpXSLT=EN.xslt -OutHTML=TestEN.html
StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -inpXSLT=DE.xslt -OutHTML=TestDE.html
StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -inpXSLT=FR.xslt -OutHTML=TestFR.html
```

When the batch file is processed, the commands are executed and the files generated.

### StyleVision functionality in scheduled tasks

Using the Scheduled Tasks tool of Windows, StyleVisionBatch commands can be set to execute according to a predefined schedule. Either a single command or a batch file can be specified as the task to be executed. How to create such StyleVisionBatch commands as a scheduled task is described in [How to Automate Processing](#).

## StyleVisionBatch Syntax

The syntax for the command line interface utility StyleVisionBatch is:

```
StyleVisionBatch [ <Stylevision exe> ] [ <options> ]
```

where

StyleVisionBatch	is the CLI utility, which is located in the StyleVision application folder
<Stylevision exe>	is the StyleVision executable file; it needs to be specified only if the StyleVision executable is <b>not</b> named <code>stylevision.exe</code> <b>or</b> is not located in the same folder as <code>StyleVisionBatch.exe</code> . If specified, the name must end in <code>.exe</code> .
<options>	One or more of the options listed below.

### StyleVisionBatch options

StyleVisionBatch options may be entered in any order. In the listing below they are organized into groups so as to provide a better overview. Note that FO, RTF, PDF, and Word 2007+ output-related options are available in the Enterprise edition, or the Enterprise and Professional editions only; these options are indicated with the words *Enterprise edition* or *Enterprise and Professional editions* in the list below.

- **Utility**

<code>-help</code> <b>or</b> <code>-?</code>	Displays syntax at the command line
<code>-verbose</code> <b>or</b> <code>-v</code>	Displays processing information at runtime
<code>-FOPBatFile=&lt;file&gt;</code>	Sets FOP processor batch file ( <i>Enterprise edition</i> )

- **SPS and Parameters**

<code>&lt;stylesheet&gt;</code>	Sets SPS (. <code>sps</code> ) stylesheet
<code>\$&lt;paramname&gt;=&lt;value&gt;</code>	Assigns a value to a stylesheet parameter. If the value contains a space, enclose the value in double quotes. For example: <code>\$paramname="A value"</code> . Multiple parameters are separated by spaces.

- **XSLT file output**

<code>-OutXSLT=&lt;file&gt;</code>	Writes XSLT-for-HTML to the specified file
<code>-OutXSLRTF=&lt;file&gt;</code>	Writes XSLT-for-RTF to the specified file ( <i>Enterprise and Professional editions</i> )
<code>-OutXSLFO=&lt;file&gt;</code>	Writes XSLT-for-FO to the specified file ( <i>Enterprise edition only</i> )
<code>-</code>	Writes XSLT-for-Word 2007+ to the specified file
<code>OutXSLWord2007=&lt;file&gt;</code>	( <i>Enterprise edition only</i> )

- **Input files**

-InpXML=<file>	Sets input XML file
-InpXSLT=<file>	Sets input XSLT-for-HTML file
-InpXSLRTF=<file>	Sets input XSLT-for-RTF file
-InpXSLFO=<file>	Sets input XSLT-for-FO file ( <i>Enterprise edition</i> )
-	Sets input XSLT-for-Word 2007+ file ( <i>Enterprise edition</i> )
InpXSLWord2007=<file>	

- **Output files**

-OutHTML=<file>	Writes HTML output to the specified file
-OutRTF=<file>	Writes RTF output to the specified file ( <i>Enterprise and Professional editions</i> )
-OutFO=<file>	Writes FO output to the specified file ( <i>Enterprise edition</i> )
-OutPDF=<file>	Writes PDF output to the specified file ( <i>Enterprise edition</i> )
-OutWord2007=<file>	Writes Word 2007+ output to the specified file ( <i>Enterprise edition</i> )

### Explanatory points

The following points provide supplementary information about StyleVisionBatch syntax and the command line process.

- When `StyleVisionBatch` is called, it looks in the current directory for `StyleVision.exe`. If your `StyleVision` executable is named otherwise or located in another folder, use the `<Stylevision exe>` argument to specify the executable.
- Paths may be absolute or relative and should use backslashes.
- Options are prefixed either with a minus sign (for example: `-OutHTML`) or a forward slash (for example: `/OutHTML`).
- If the filename or the path to it contains a space, then the entire path should be enclosed in quotes. For example: `"c:\My Files\MyXML.xml"` or `"c:\MyFiles\MyXML.xml"`.
- Commands, paths, and folder and file names are case-insensitive.
- If the SPS file is specified, the Working XML File associated with it and the XSLT stylesheet generated from it will be used to generate output; therefore no input XML or XSLT file is required. If, however, the SPS file is not specified, an input XML file and input XSLT file must be specified as options. An input XML File must also be specified if the SPS file does not have a Working XML File assigned to it.
- Parameter declarations refer to parameters in the XSLT stylesheet. Parameter names and values are case-sensitive. Each parameter declaration on the command line must be prefixed with a `$`, and, if multiple parameters are used, they must be separated from each other with a space. If the value of the parameter contains a space, then the value must be enclosed in double quotes.
- No default output is specified, so you must specify the required output. For example: `OutHTML=Test.html`.
- If you specify only the output file (no XML file or XSLT file), the Working XML File specified in the SPS is used for the source XML, and the required XSLT is generated from the SPS.
- Any temporary files that are created are deleted at the end of the processing.
- The `-verbose` option provides a detailed report of all steps carried out during the processing of the command.
- When specifying HTML output, make sure that the generated file is placed in a location

in which relative paths to images, etc, will point correctly to their targets. The same applies to hyperlinks.

## StyleVisionBatch Examples

The examples below are organized according to output.

### XSLT stylesheets

XSLT stylesheets can be generated from the SPS files. The only input required is the SPS file.

- The XSLT-for-HTML file is generated from the SPS.  
`StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -OutXSLT=Test.xslt`

### HTML output

HTML output is obtained by transforming an XML file with an XSLT stylesheet. The XML file may be the Working XML File assigned in the SPS or may be specified on the command line. The XSLT file may be that generated from the SPS or may be specified on the command line.

- Working XML file in SPS transformed with XSLT stylesheet generated from SPS.  
`StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -OutHTML=Test.html`
- Specified XML file transformed with XSLT stylesheet generated from SPS.  
`StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -InpXML=External.xml -OutHTML=Test.html`
- Working XML file in SPS transformed with specified XSLT stylesheet.  
`StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -InpXSLT=External.xslt -OutHTML=Test.html`
- Specified XML file transformed with specified XSLT stylesheet.  
`StyleVisionBatch -v -InpXML=External.xml -InpXSLT=External.xslt -OutHTML=Test.html`  
`StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -InpXML=External.xml -InpXSLT=External.xslt -OutHTML=Test.html`

### Parameter Usage

For the XSLT transformation, parameters can be passed to the XSLT stylesheet from the command line.

- Parameters passed to XSLT stylesheet generated from the SPS.  
`StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -OutHTML=Test.html $myparam=MyText`  
`StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -inpXML=External.xml -OutHTML=Test.html $myparam="My Text"`  
`StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -OutHTML=Test.html -OutFO=Test.fo $myparam="MyText"`  
`StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -OutHTML=Test.html $myparam=2006`  
`StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -OutHTML=Test.html $myparam="2006"`
- Parameters passed to specified XSLT stylesheet.  
`StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -inpXSLT=External.xslt -OutHTML=Test.html $myparam=MyText`  
`StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -inpXSLT=External.xslt -OutHTML=Test.html $myparam="My Text"`

## 13.2 Using AltovaXML

AltovaXML is a free product that contains the Altova XML Validator, XSLT 1.0 and 2.0 Engines, and XQuery 1.0 Engine. It is downloadable from the [Altova website](#). AltovaXML can be run from the command line and has interfaces for COM, Java, and .NET. You can therefore easily use AltovaXML from within these environments to validate XML documents, perform XSLT transformations, and execute XQuery documents.

The functionality of AltovaXML that would be most relevant to StyleVision users is the XSLT 1.0 and 2.0 transformation functionality. Typically, this functionality would be used as follows:

1. An XSLT stylesheet is generated from an SPS with the [File | Save Generated Files](#) command or by using [StyleVisionBatch](#). Note that AltovaXML cannot be used to generate XSLT stylesheets from an SPS file in the way that [StyleVisionBatch](#) does.
2. The generated XSLT stylesheet is used to transform XML documents with AltovaXML.

With AltovaXML you can generate HTML output.

### Advantages of AltovaXML

The advantages of using AltovaXML are as follows:

- AltovaXML is a leaner package than [StyleVisionBatch](#) and therefore provides faster validation and XSLT transformation. This is because StyleVisionBatch uses the Altova Validator and XSLT Engines in StyleVision, and requires more memory and time overhead as a result.
- Easy use with command line, COM, Java, and .NET interfaces.
- Automation and scheduling with the use of batch files and the scheduling processes such as the Scheduled Tasks process of Windows.

### In this section

This section is organized into the following sub-sections:

- [XSLT 1.0 CLI Transformations](#) describes the syntax for calls to the Altova XSLT 1.0 Engine of AltovaXML and provides examples of use.
- [XSLT 2.0 CLI Transformations](#) describes the syntax for calls to the Altova XSLT 2.0 Engine of AltovaXML and provides examples of use.

For a description of how AltovaXML can be used to automate the production of output documents (such as HTML) from XML source documents, see the section [How to Automate Processing](#).

For additional and more detailed information about using AltovaXML, including how to use AltovaXML's COM, Java, and .NET interfaces, see the [AltovaXML user documentation](#).



## XSLT 1.0 CLI Transformations

### Syntax

The syntax to invoke XSLT 1.0 transformations is:

```
AltovaXML -xslt1 xsltfile -in xmlfile [-out outputfile] [options]
```

where

AltovaXML	Calls the application.
-xslt1	Specifies that the Altova XSLT 1.0 Engine is to be used for an XSLT transformation; the engine uses the XSLT 1.0 file <i>xsltfile</i> for the transformation.
-in	Specifies the XML file <i>xmlfile</i> to be transformed and its location.
-out	Specifies the output file <i>outputfile</i> and its location. If this option is omitted, the output is written to standard output.

The following options are available:

-param	Takes the instruction <code>paramname=XPath expression</code> . The <code>-param</code> switch is used before each global parameter. Double quotes must be used if a space is included in an XPath expression—whether in a path expression itself or in a string literal in the expression. See examples.
-xslstack	The stack size is the maximum depth of executed instructions, and can be changed with the <code>-xslstack</code> value. The minimum allowed value is 100. The default stack size is 1000. If the stack size is exceeded during a transformation, an error is reported.
-namedTemplate (or -n)	Sets the initial named template. A space separates the argument from its value. Example: <code>-namedTemplate MyTemplate</code>
-mode (or -m)	Sets the initial template mode. A space separates the argument from its value. Example: <code>-mode MyMode</code>

### Note:

- The XSLT file must be specified in the command line instruction; an XSLT file referenced in an `<?xml-stylesheet?>` processing instruction in the XML document is not automatically used.
- If the `-out` parameter is omitted, output is written to the standard output.

### Examples

- `AltovaXML -xslt1 test.xslt -in test.xml -out testout.xml`
- `AltovaXML -xslt1 test.xslt -in test.xml -out testout.xml -param date=//node/@att1`
- `AltovaXML -xslt1 test.xslt -in test.xml -out testout.xml -param date="//node/@att1 | //node/@att2"`
- `AltovaXML -xslt1 test.xslt -in test.xml -out testout.xml -param date=node/@att1 -param title='stringwithoutspace'`
- `AltovaXML -xslt1 test.xslt -in test.xml -out testout.xml -param date=node/@att1 -param title="'string with spaces' "`

## XSLT 2.0 CLI Transformations

### Syntax

The syntax to invoke XSLT 2.0 transformations is:

```
AltovaXML -xslt2 xsltfile -in xmlfile [-out outputfile] [options]
```

where

AltovaXML	Calls the application.
-xslt2	Specifies that the Altova XSLT 2.0 Engine is to be used for an XSLT transformation; the engine uses the XSLT 2.0 file <i>xsltfile</i> for the transformation.
-in	Specifies the XML file <i>xmlfile</i> to be transformed and its location.
-out	Specifies the output file <i>outputfile</i> and its location. If this option is omitted, the output is written to standard output.

The following options are available:

-param	Takes the instruction <code>paramname=XPath expression</code> . The <code>-param</code> switch is used before each global parameter. Double quotes must be used if a space is included in an XPath expression—whether in a path expression itself or in a string literal in the expression. See examples.
-xslstack	The stack size is the maximum depth of executed instructions, and can be changed with the <code>-xslstack</code> value. The minimum allowed value is 100. The default stack size is 1000. If the stack size is exceeded during a transformation, an error is reported.
-namedTemplate (or -n)	Sets the initial named template. A space separates the argument from its value. Example: <code>-namedTemplate MyTemplate</code>
-mode (or -m)	Sets the initial template mode. A space separates the argument from its value. Example: <code>-mode MyMode</code>

### Note:

- The XSLT file must be specified in the command line instruction; an XSLT file referenced in an `<?xml-stylesheet?>` processing instruction in the XML document is not automatically used.
- If the `-out` parameter is omitted, output is written to the standard output.
- The XSLT 2.0 Engine can be used in its backward compatibility mode to process an XSLT 1.0 stylesheet. The output, however, could be different than that produced by the XSLT 1.0 Engine processing the same XSLT 1.0 stylesheet.

### Examples

- `AltovaXML -xslt2 test.xslt -in test.xml -out testout.xml`
- `AltovaXML -xslt2 test.xslt -in test.xml -out testout.xml -param date=//node/@att1`
- `AltovaXML -xslt2 test.xslt -in test.xml -out testout.xml -param date="//node/@att1 | //node/@att2"`
- `AltovaXML -xslt2 test.xslt -in test.xml -out testout.xml -param date=node/@att1 -param title='stringwithoutspace'`
- `AltovaXML -xslt2 test.xslt -in test.xml -out testout.xml -param date=node/@att1 -param title=""string with spaces' "`

### 13.3 How to Automate Processing

Processing can be automated in two ways:

- Commands can be specified to execute one after another. This automates the execution of a sequence of commands. Such automation is easily achieved by means of batch files, and is described in the sub-section, [Creating Batch Files](#).
- A command or a set of commands can be specified to execute at a given time. This is achieved through the Scheduled Tasks tool of Windows, described in the sub-section [Automating with Scheduled Tasks](#).

## Creating Batch Files

A batch file (a text file saved with the file extension `.bat`) contains a sequence of commands that will be executed from the command line. When the batch file is executed, each command in the batch file will be executed in turn, starting with the first and progressing through the sequence. A batch file is therefore useful in the following situations:

- Executing a series of commands automatically (see *below*).
- Creating a chain of processing commands, where a command requires input produced by a preceding command. (For example, an XML file produced as output of one transformation is used as the input of a subsequent transformation.) See *below*.
- Scheduling a sequence of tasks to be executed at a particular time. See [Automating with Scheduled Tasks](#).

### Batch file with sequence of commands

A sequence of commands to be executed is entered as follows:

```
@ECHO OFF
CLS
StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -inpXSLT=EN.xslt -OutHTML=TestEN.html
StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -inpXSLT=DE.xslt -OutHTML=TestDE.html
StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -inpXSLT=FR.xslt -OutHTML=TestFR.html
```

When the batch file is processed, the commands are executed and the files generated. The batch file above uses `StyleVisionBatch` to generate three HTML outputs, each being generated with a different XSLT stylesheet. The input file is the Working XML File of the SPS file.

### Batch file that uses output from preceding command

This batch file calls `AltovaXML` to generate an XML file and then uses this XML file as input for an XSLT transformation with `StyleVisionBatch`. (For the sake of simplicity, assume that the calls to `AltovaXML` and `StyleVisionBatch` correctly locate the executables.)

```
@ECHO OFF
CLS
AltovaXML -xslt2 Test.xslt -in Test.xml -out TestOut.xml
StyleVisionBatch -v Test.sps -inpXML=TestOut.xml -OutHTML=TestOut.html
```

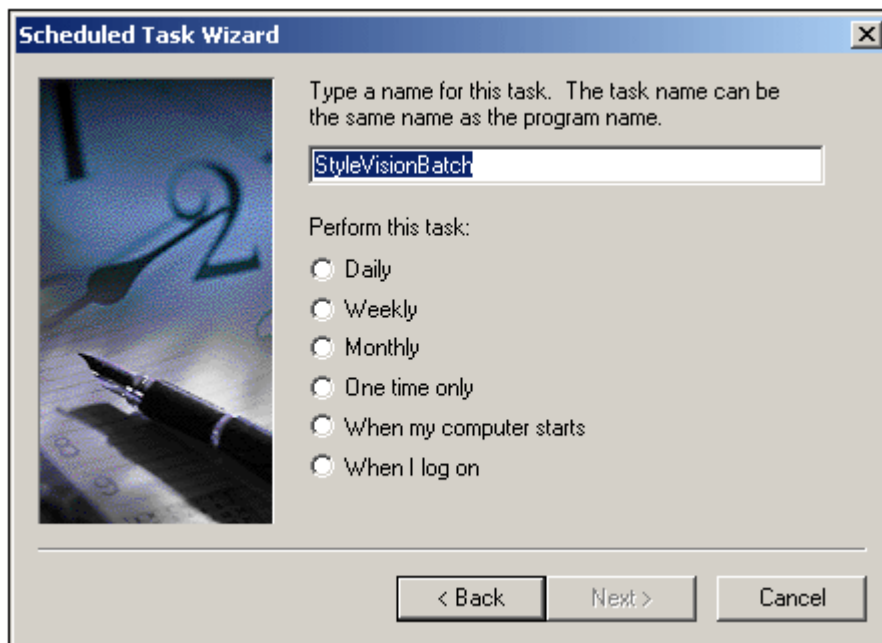
When the batch file is processed, `TestOut.xml` is generated by the first command. The second command takes `TestOut.xml` as its input XML file and processes it with the XSLT-for-HTML stylesheet generated on the fly by the SPS file `Test.sps`. The output is the HTML file `TestOut.html`.

## Automating with Scheduled Tasks (Windows XP)

A command or set of commands (that call StyleVisionBatch or AltovaXML, for example) can be set up to run to a pre-determined schedule. This scheduling is done with the Scheduled Tasks tool of Windows. The Scheduled Task tool opens the utility or application called and executes the command specified in the task.

To create a scheduled task, do the following. The example below uses StyleVisionBatch as the program to call; to use AltovaXML, simply substitute AltovaXML for StyleVisionBatch.

1. If you plan to run a *set* of StyleVisionBatch commands as a scheduled task—as opposed to a single command—these commands should be created in a batch file (see [Creating Batch Files](#)) and the batch file should be specified as the command to execute. If a single StyleVisionBatch command is to be scheduled, skip Step 1 (this step) and go to Step 2.
2. Open the Scheduled Task Wizard of Windows (**Start | Control Panel | Scheduled Tasks | Add Scheduled Task**).
3. Click **Next** to start setting up the task.
4. In the window to select the program to run, you select either `StyleVisionBatch.exe` (for a single StyleVisionBatch command) or a batch file (containing multiple StyleVisionBatch commands). Browse for the required file and select it. The next screen (*screenshot below*) appears.

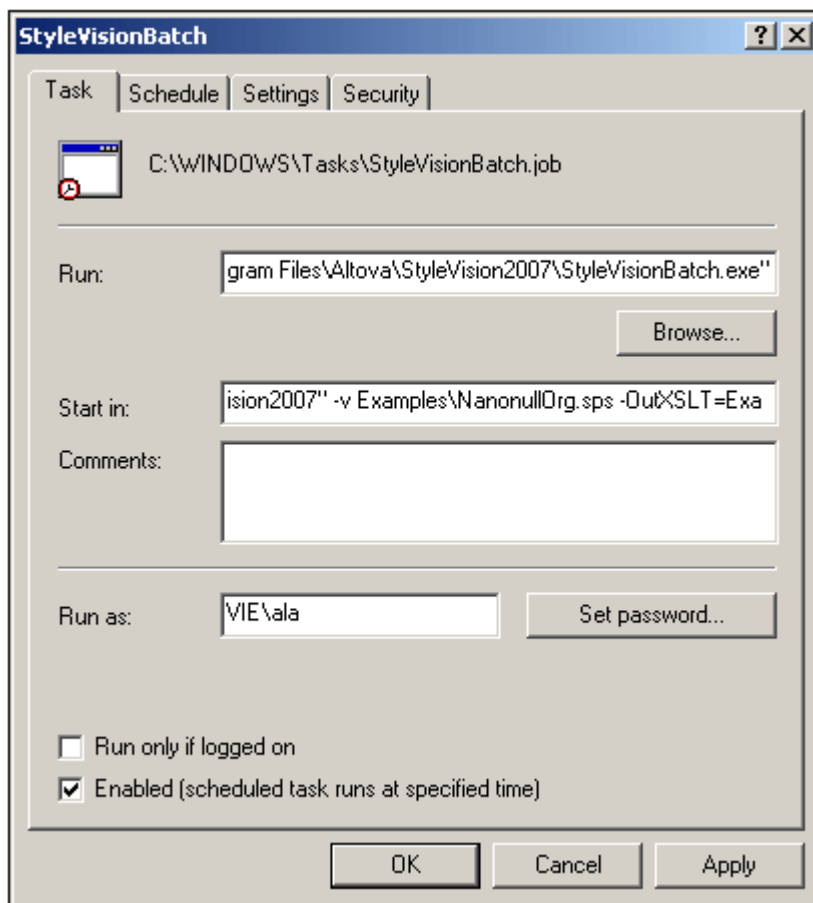


5. Assign a name for the task, and set a frequency for it. Then click **Next**.
6. Select the starting day and time for the schedule. Then click **Next**.
7. Enter the appropriate user name and password. Then click **Next**.
8. In the finishing screen (*screenshot below*), if you are scheduling a single StyleVisionBatch command and have therefore selected `SVBATCH%.exe` as the program to run, check the Open Advanced Properties... check box. (It is in the Advanced Properties dialog that the StyleVisionBatch command is specified.) Then click **Finish**.



If you have specified a batch file as the program to run for the task, there is no need to set any advanced properties and you can leave the Open Advanced Properties check box unchecked. In this case, the scheduling of the task is now complete.

9. This step is required only if you are scheduling a single StyleVisionBatch command as your task. On clicking **Finish** with the Open Advanced Properties... check box checked, a dialog showing the properties of the task pops up (*screenshot below*).



In the Start In text field (*screenshot above*) enter the required StyleVisionBatch command, for example: "C:\Program Files\Altova\StyleVision2007" -v Examples\NanonullOrg.sps -OutXSLT=Examples\Nano1.xslt. Use quotes if there are spaces in your file or folder names, and, in your paths, use backslashes. If desired, enter a comment describing the task. Click **OK** to finish.

### Deleting a scheduled task

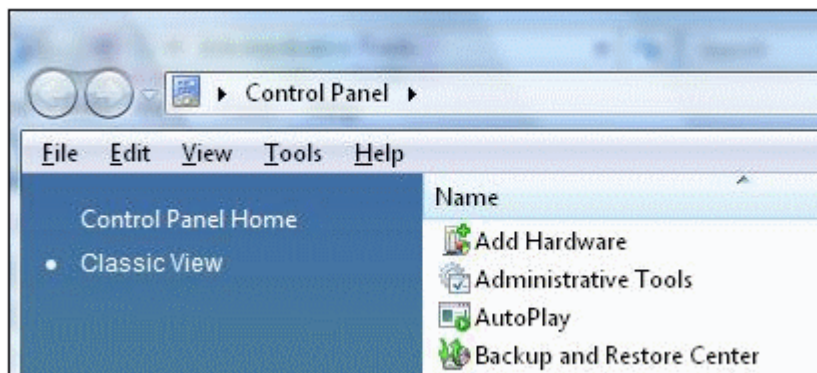
To delete a scheduled task, open the Scheduled Tasks window (**Start | Control Panel | Scheduled Tasks**), select the task and either click the **Delete** icon or press the **Delete** key.

## Automating with Scheduled Tasks (Windows Vista)

A command or set of commands (that call StyleVisionBatch or AltovaXML, for example) can be set up to run to a pre-determined schedule. This scheduling is done with the Scheduled Tasks tool of Windows. The Scheduled Task tool opens the utility or application called and executes the command specified in the task.

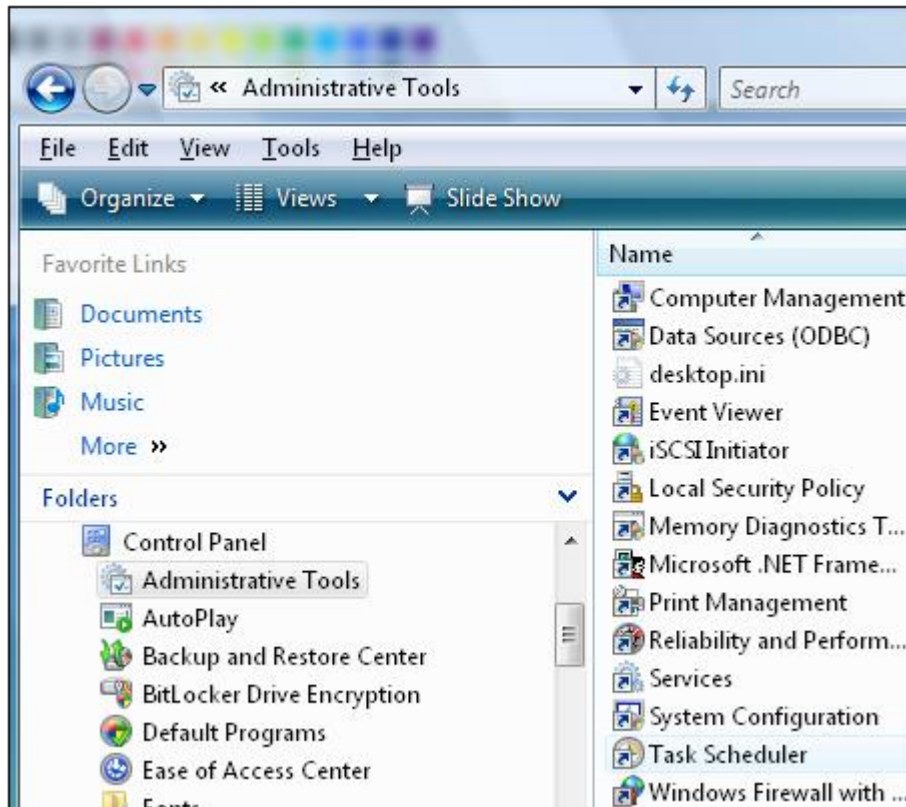
To create a scheduled task on a Windows Vista machine, do the following. The example below uses StyleVisionBatch as the program to call; to use AltovaXML, simply substitute AltovaXML for StyleVisionBatch.

1. If you plan to run a *set* of StyleVisionBatch commands as a scheduled task—as opposed to a single command—these commands should be created in a batch file (see [Creating Batch Files](#)) and the batch file should be specified as the command to execute. If a single StyleVisionBatch command is to be scheduled, skip Step 1 (this step) and go to Step 2.
2. Select **Start | Settings | Control Panel**.
3. Double-click **Administrative Tools** (see *screenshot below*).

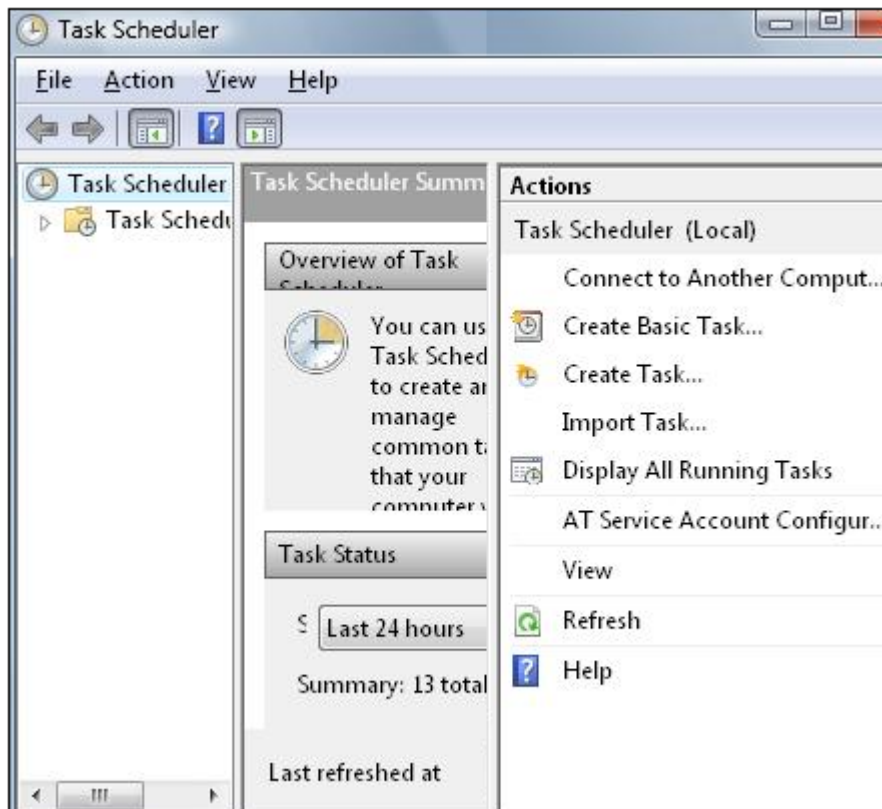


4. In the Administrative Tools window, double-click **Task Scheduler** (*screenshot below*).

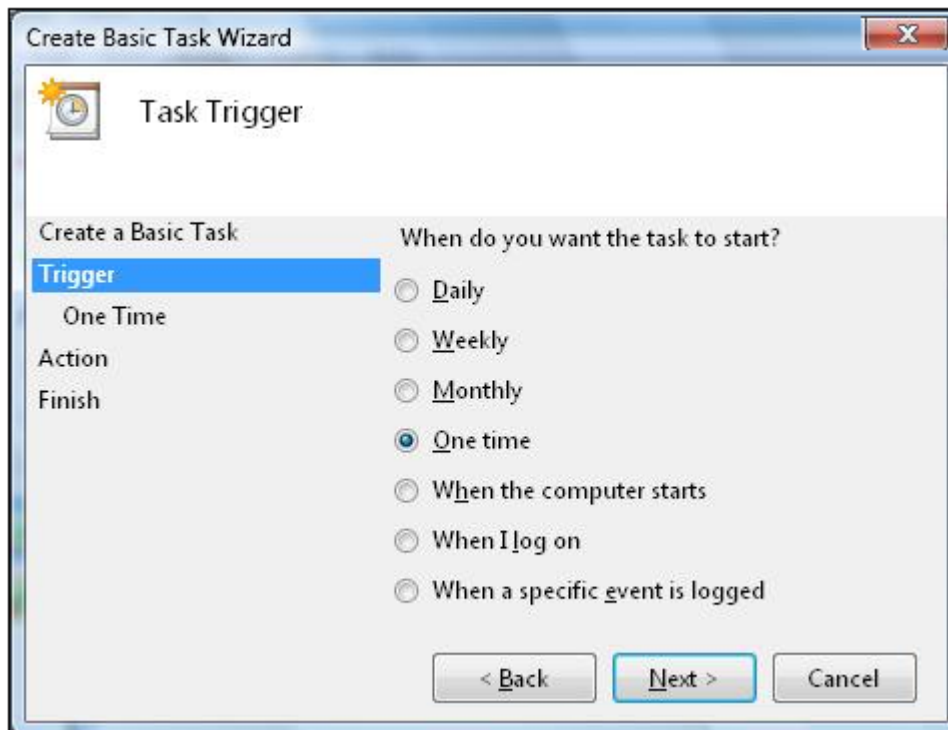




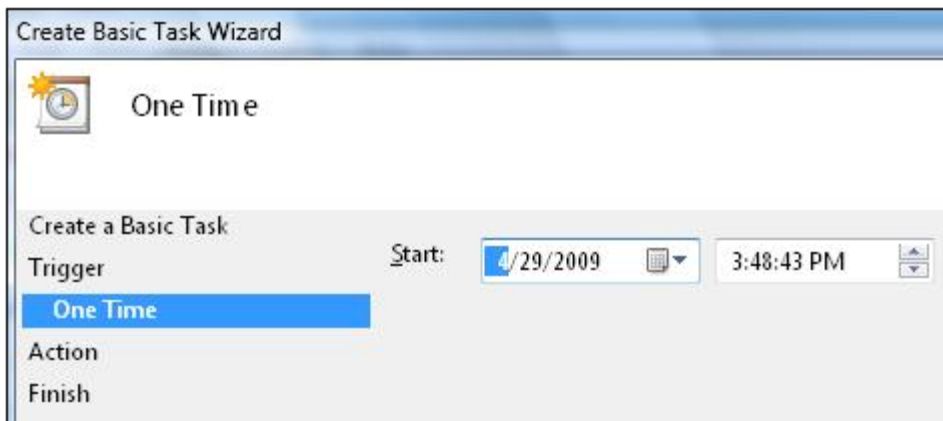
5. The Task Scheduler window appears (screenshot below). Double-click **Create Basic Task**.



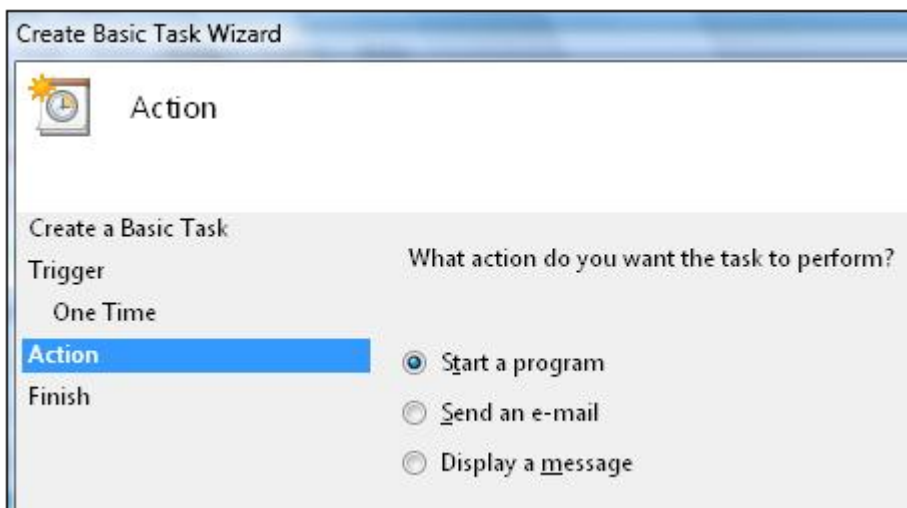
6. In the Create Basic Task window (*screenshot below*), select **Trigger** and set the trigger as required. In the screenshot below, the trigger has been set to *One time*. Then click **Next**.



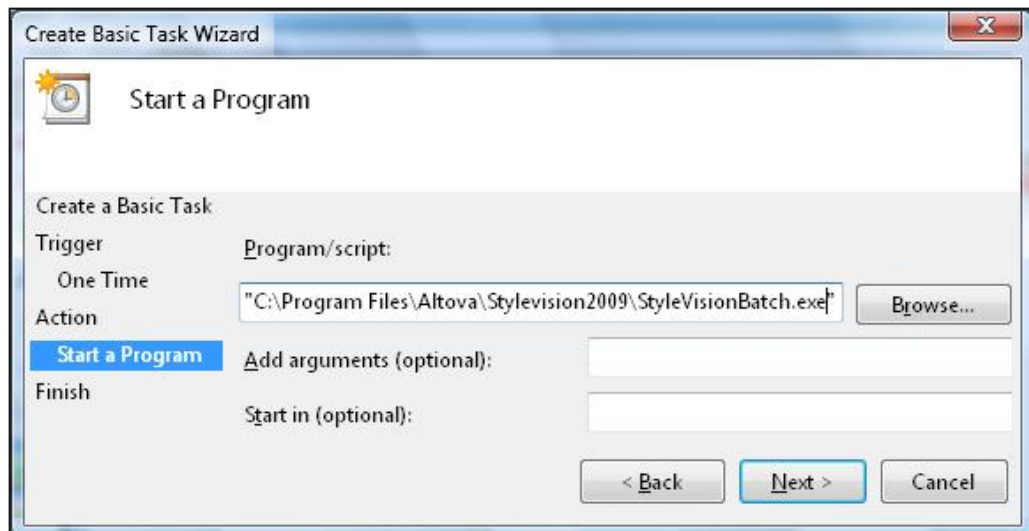
- 7. Select One Time in the menu bar (screenshot below) and set the time. Then click **Next**.



- 8. Select Action in the menu bar (screenshot below) and click *Start a program*. Then click **Next**.

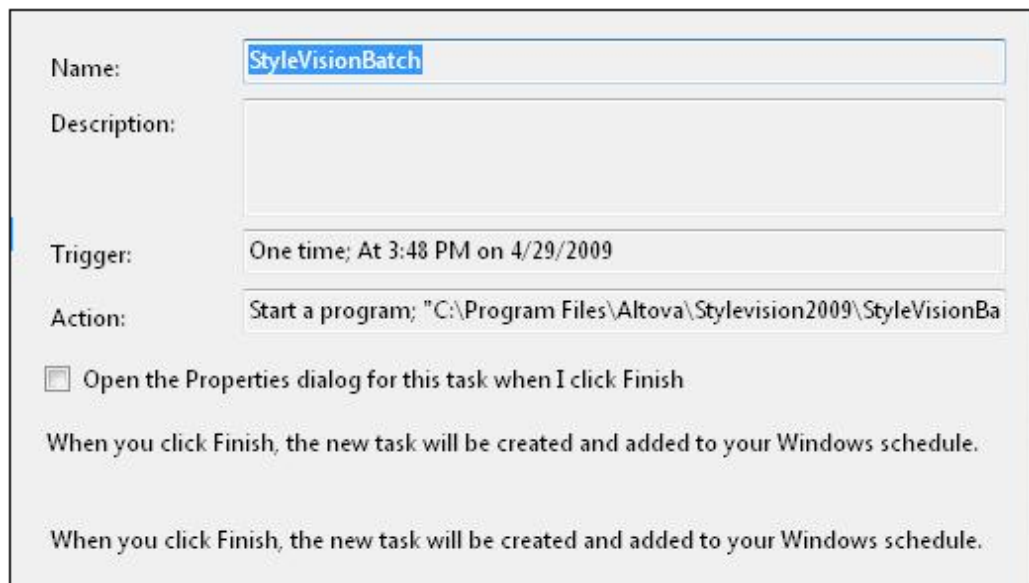


- 9. Select *Start a program* in the menu bar (screenshot below) and select either `StyleVisionBatch.exe` (for a single `StyleVisionBatch` command) or a batch file (containing multiple `StyleVisionBatch` commands). Browse for the required file and select it.



If you are using StyleVisionBatch (and not a batch file), then, in the *Start In* text field ( *screenshot above*), enter the required StyleVisionBatch command, for example: "C:\Program Files\Altova\StyleVision2007" -v Examples\NanonullOrg.sps -OutXSLT=Examples\Nano1.xslt. Use quotes if there are spaces in your file or folder names, and, in your paths, use backslashes. If you are using a batch file, the *Start In* text field should be left empty. Then click **Next**.

10. In the Finish window ( *screenshot below*), assign a name for the task and create a description of it. If you are scheduling a single StyleVisionBatch command and have therefore selected `SVBATCH%.exe` as the program to run, check the *Open the Properties dialog...* check box. Then click **Finish**.



If you have specified a batch file as the program to run for the task, you can leave the *Open the Properties* check box unchecked. In this case, the scheduling of the task is now complete.

11. This step is required only if you are scheduling a single StyleVisionBatch command as your task. On clicking **Finish** with the *Open Properties* check box checked, a dialog showing the properties of the task pops up. Check that the command you have specified for StyleVisionBatch to execute is correct.

## **Chapter 14**

---

### **Reference**

## 14 Reference

This section contains a complete description of StyleVision toolbars, Design View symbols, and menu commands. It is divided into the following broad parts:

- A description of all the [toolbars with their icons](#), as well as a description of how to customize the views of the toolbars.
- Descriptions of [symbols used in Design View](#) and of the [Edit XPath Expression dialog](#).
- All menu commands.

While the User Reference section contains a description of individual commands, the mechanisms behind various StyleVision features are explained in detail in the relevant sections. The mechanisms have been organized into the following groups::

- [SPS File Content](#)
- [SPS File Structure](#)
- [SPS File Advanced Features](#)
- [SPS File Presentation](#)
- [SPS File Additional Functionality](#)

For command line usage, see [Command Line Interface: StyleVisionBatch](#).

## 14.1 Toolbars

A number of StyleVision commands are available as toolbar shortcuts, organized in the following toolbars:

- [Formatting](#)
- [Table](#)
- [Design Filter](#)
- [Global Resources](#)
- [Standard](#)

The icons in each toolbar are listed in the sub-sections of this section, each with a brief description of the corresponding command.

### Positioning the toolbars

A toolbar can float freely on the screen or can be placed in a toolbar area along any edge of the GUI. Toolbars are most commonly placed along the top edge of the GUI, just below the Menu bar. However, they can also be placed along the side or bottom edges of the GUI.

To position a toolbar in a toolbar area, do the following:

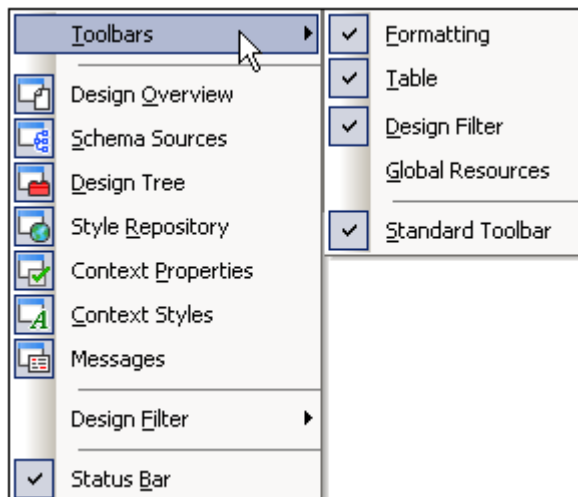
1. Grab the toolbar by its handle (if the toolbar is already in a toolbar area) or by its title bar (if the toolbar is floating).
2. Drag the toolbar to the desired toolbar area, if it exists, and drop it at the desired location in that toolbar area. If no toolbar area exists at the edge along which you wish to place the toolbar, dragging the toolbar to that edge will automatically create a toolbar area there when the toolbar is dropped.

To make a toolbar float freely grab it by its handle, drag it away from the toolbar area, and drop it anywhere on the screen except at an edge or in an existing toolbar area.

### Switching the display of toolbars on and off

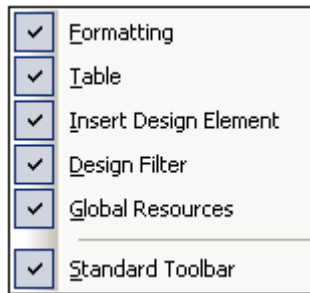
The display of individual toolbars can be switched on and off using any of the following three methods:

- In the **View | Toolbars** menu (*screenshot below*), select or deselect a toolbar to, respectively, show or hide that toolbar.



- Right-click any toolbar area to display a context menu (*screenshot below*) that allows

you to toggle the display of individual toolbars on and off.

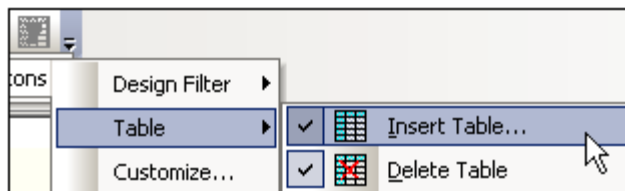


- In the Toolbars tab of the [Customize dialog \(Tools | Customize\)](#), toggle the display of individual toolbars on or off by clicking a toolbar's check-box. When done, click the **Close** button to close the dialog.

### Adding and removing toolbar buttons

Individual toolbar buttons can be added to or removed from a toolbar, that is, they can be made visible or be hidden. To add or remove a button from a toolbar, do the following:

1. In the toolbar where the button to be added or removed is, click the **More Buttons** button (if the toolbar is in a toolbar area) or the **Toolbar Options** button (if the toolbar is a floating toolbar). The **More Buttons** button is an arrowhead located at the right-hand side of the toolbar (in horizontal toolbar areas) or at the bottom of the toolbar (in vertical toolbar areas). The **Toolbar Options** button is an arrowhead located at the right-hand side of the floating toolbar.
2. In the **Add or Remove Buttons** menu that pops up, place the cursor over the **Add or Remove Buttons** menu item (*screenshot below*). This rolls out a menu which contains the names of the toolbars in that toolbar area plus the **Customize** menu item (*screenshot below*).



3. Place the cursor over the toolbar that contains the toolbar button to be added or removed (*screenshot above*).
4. In the menu that rolls out (*screenshot above*), click on the name of the toolbar button to add or remove that button from the toolbar.
5. Clicking the **Customize** item pops up the [Customize dialog](#).

The **Reset Toolbar** item below the list of buttons in each toolbar menu resets the toolbar to the state it was in when you downloaded StyleVision. In this state, all buttons for that toolbar are displayed.

**Note:** The buttons that a toolbar contains are preset and cannot be disassociated from that toolbar. The process described above displays or hides the button in the toolbar that is displayed in the GUI.



## Formatting

The **Formatting toolbar** (*screenshot below*) contains commands that assign commonly used inline and block formatting properties to the item/s selected in the SPS.



### Predefined HTML formats

The HTML format selected from the dropdown list is applied to the selection in Design View. For example, a selection of `div` applies HTML's `<div>` element around the current selection in Design View.

### Text properties

The bold, italic, and underline inline text properties can be directly applied to the current selection in Design View by clicking on the appropriate button.

### Alignment

Alignment properties (left-aligned, centered, right-aligned, and justified) can be directly applied to the selection in Design View.

### Lists

Lists can be inserted at the cursor insertion point, or the selection in the SPS can be converted to a list.

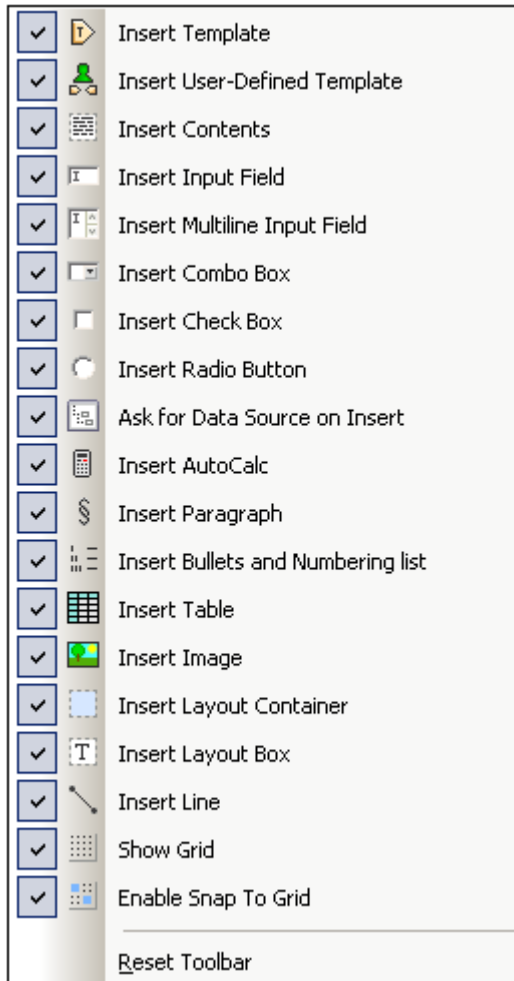
### Hyperlinks

Inserts a hyperlink at the cursor insertion point. See [Hyperlink](#) for a description of how to use this command.

## Insert Design Elements

The **Insert Design Elements toolbar** contains icons for commands to insert design elements in the SPS design, and for related commands. The various design elements that can be inserted via these toolbar icons are shown in the screenshot below. There are three types of items in the toolbar:

1. [Design elements](#), which are context-node-sensitive (the majority of elements in the toolbar),
2. [Layout elements](#), which are independent of node context, and
3. [Grid-related toggles](#) to aid design.



### Design elements

The design elements are the context-node-sensitive elements that are available in the **Insert** menu. To insert a design element using its toolbar icon, do the following:

1. Select the toolbar icon for the element you wish to insert.
2. Click the location in the design where the element is to be inserted. A Insert Design Element for the selected design element (*screenshot below*) pops up. This displays the schema tree with the context node highlighted. The context node is the node within which the cursor has been placed for the insertion of the design element.

3. If you wish to insert the design element within the currently selected context node, click **OK**. If you wish to select another context node, do so in the schema tree and then click **OK**.
4. In the case of some design elements, such as Auto-Calculations, a further step is required, such as the definition of an Auto-Calculation. In other cases, such as the insertion of a user-defined template, the Insert Design Element dialog is skipped. In such cases, another dialog, such as the [Edit XPath Expression](#) dialog will pop up. Carry out the required step and press the dialog's **OK** button.

The design element will be inserted at the end of Step 3 or Step 4, depending on the kind of design element being inserted.

### Layout elements

There are three layout element commands in the Insert Design Elements toolbar: to insert (i) a layout container; (ii) a layout box; and (iii) a line. Note that layout boxes and lines can only be inserted within a layout container.

To insert a layout container, select the **Insert Layout Container** icon and then click at the location in the design where you wish to insert the layout container. You will be prompted about the size of the layout container, on selecting which the layout container will be inserted. To insert a layout box, click the **Insert Layout Box** icon, then move the cursor to the location within the layout container at which you wish to insert the layout box and click. The layout box is inserted. Click inside the layout box to start typing. To insert a line, click the **Insert Line** icon, then move the cursor to the location within the layout container at which you wish to start drawing the line. Click to define the start point of the line and then drag the cursor to the desired endpoint. Release the cursor at the end point. The line is inserted and extends from the indicated start point to the indicated end point.

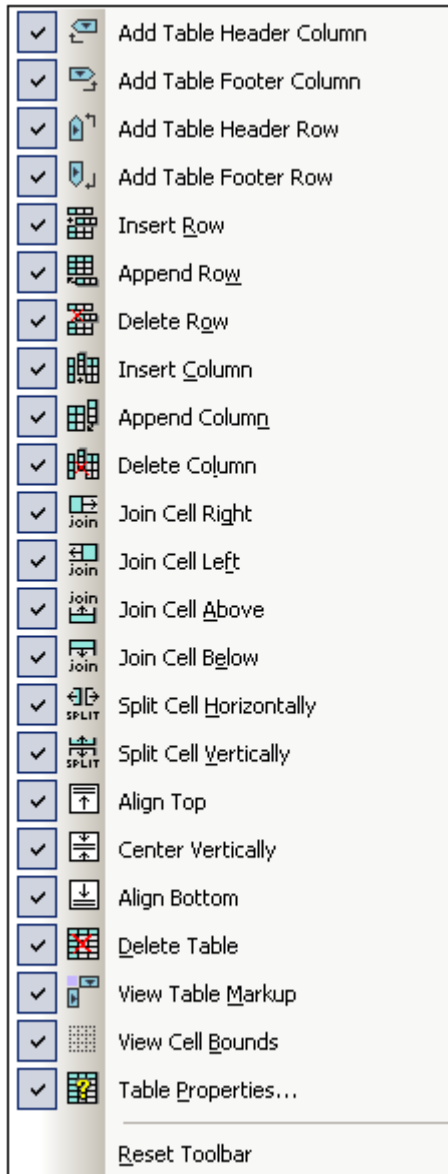
To re-size layout containers and layout boxes, place the cursor over the right or bottom border of the layout container or layout box and drag the border so as to obtain the desired size. To move a layout box, place the cursor over the top or left border of the layout box and, when the cursor turns to a cross, drag the layout box to the new location.

### Grid-related toggles

The **Show Grid** command toggles the display of the drawing grid on and off. When the **Snap to Grid** command is toggled on, elements created within the layout container, such as layout boxes and lines, snap to grid lines and grid line intersections. The properties of the grid can be set in the Design tab of the Options dialog (**Tools | Options**).

## Table

The **Table toolbar** contains commands to structure and format static and dynamic tables in Design View. These commands are shown in the screenshot below (which is that of the Table toolbar).



### Row and Column operations

Rows and columns in any SPS table (static or dynamic) can be inserted, appended, or deleted with reference to the cursor location. Rows and columns are inserted before the current cursor location or appended after all rows/columns. The row/column in which the cursor is can also be deleted. These operations are achieved with the **Insert Row/Column**, **Append Row/Column**, or **Delete Row/Column** buttons. You can also add table headers and footers as either columns or rows **Add Table Header/Footer Column/Row**.

**Cell operations**

An SPS table cell in which the cursor is located can be joined to any one of the four cells around it. The joining operation is similar to that of spanning table cells in HTML. The buttons to be used for these operations are **Join Cell Right/Left/Above/Below**. Also, an SPS table cell in which the cursor is located can be split, either horizontally or vertically, using the **Split Cell Horizontally** and **Split Cell Vertically** buttons, respectively. SPS table cell content can be aligned vertically at the top, in the middle, and at the bottom. The display of cell borders can be switched on and off with the **View Cell Bounds** toggle.

**Table operations, properties, display**

Placing the cursor in a static or dynamic table and clicking [Delete Table](#) deletes that table. Table markup can be toggled on and off with the View Table Markup command. The Table Properties command pops up the Table Properties dialog, in which properties of the table can be defined.

## Design Filter

The **Design Filter toolbar** (*screenshot below*) contains commands that enable you to filter which templates are displayed in the design. Each icon in the toolbar is explained below.



Icon	Command	Description
	<b>Show only one template</b>	Shows the selected template only. Place the cursor in a template and click to show that template only.
	<b>Show all template types</b>	Shows all templates in the SPS (main, global, named, and layout) .
	<b>Show imported templates</b>	Toggles the display of imported templates on and off.
	<b>Show/Hide main template</b>	Toggles the display of the main template on and off.
	<b>Show/Hide global templates</b>	Toggles the display of global templates on and off.
	<b>Show/Hide Design Fragments</b>	Toggles the display of Design Fragments on and off.

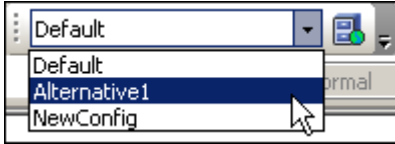
The Design Filter combo box (*screenshot below*) displays a list of all the templates in the SPS.



Selecting a template in the combo box causes the template to be selected in the design. The combo box, therefore, enables you to quickly navigate to the desired template in the design, which is useful if the design has several templates, some of which might be currently hidden.

## Global Resources


















The **Global Resources toolbar** (*screenshot below*) enables you: (i) to select the active configuration for the application, and (ii) to access the [Altova Global Resources dialog](#).



Select the active configuration from among the options in the dropdown list of the combo box. Click the Manage Global Resources icon to access the Altova Global Resources dialog.

## Standard

The **Standard toolbar** contains buttons for commands that provide important file-related and editing functionality. These icons are listed below with a brief description. For a fuller description of a command, click the command to go to its description in the Reference section.

Btn	Command	Shortcut	Description
	<a href="#">New from XML Schema / DTD</a>	Ctrl+N	Creates a new SPS document based on a schema. Clicking the dropdown arrow enables you to create the SPS from a DB or an HTML document, or an empty SPS.
	<a href="#">Open</a>	Ctrl+O	Opens an existing SPS document.
	<a href="#">Save Design</a>	Ctrl+S	Saves the active SPS document.
	<a href="#">Save All</a>	Ctrl+Shift+S	Saves all open SPS documents.
	<a href="#">Print</a>	Ctrl+P	Prints the Authentic View of the Working XML file.
	<a href="#">Print Preview</a>		Displays a print preview of the Authentic View of the Working XML File.
	<a href="#">Cut</a>	Shift+Del	Cuts the selection and places it in the clipboard.
	<a href="#">Copy</a>	Ctrl+C	Copies the selection to the clipboard.
	<a href="#">Paste</a>	Ctrl+P	Pastes the clipboard item to the cursor location.
	<a href="#">Delete</a>	Del	Deletes the selection.
	<a href="#">Undo</a>	Alt+Backspace	Undoes an editing change. An unlimited number of Undo actions can be performed at a time.
	<a href="#">Redo</a>	Ctrl+Y	Redoes an undo.
	<a href="#">Find</a>	Ctrl+F	Finds text in Authentic View and Output Views.
	<a href="#">Find Next</a>	F3	Finds the next occurrence of the searched text.
	<a href="#">XSLT 1.0</a>		Sets XSLT 1.0 as the stylesheet language.
	<a href="#">XSLT 2.0</a>		Sets XSLT 2.0 as the stylesheet language.
	<a href="#">Spelling</a>		Runs a spelling check on the SPS document.



## 14.2 Design View

The Design View is where the SPS is structured and where presentation properties are assigned. It provides you with a graphical representation of your design. The symbols that are used to denote the various components of the SPS are important for understanding the structure and layout of the SPS. These symbols are explained in the [Symbols](#) sub-section of this section. A key mechanism used to access nodes in XML documents is XPath, and a number of StyleVision features use XPath. A dialog used in common by all these features is the Edit XPath Expression dialog, in which you can build XPath expressions. The Edit XPath Expressions dialog is explained in detail in the [XPath Dialog](#) sub-section of this section.

## Symbols

An SPS design will typically contain several types of component. Each component is represented in the design by a specific symbol. These symbols are listed below and are organized into the following groups:

- [Nodes in the XML document](#)
- XML document content
- Data-entry devices
- Predefined formats
- XPath objects
- URI objects

Each of these component types can:

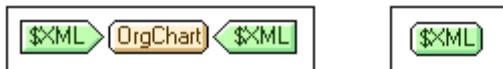
- be moved using drag and drop;
- be cut, copied, pasted, and deleted using (i) the commands in the [View menu](#), or (ii) the standard Windows shortcuts for these commands;
- have formatting applied to it;
- have a context menu pop up when right-clicked.

### Nodes in the XML document

Element and attribute nodes in the XML document are represented in the SPS design document by tags. Each node has a start tag and end tag. Double-clicking either the start or end tag collapses that node. When a node is collapsed all its contents are hidden. Double-clicking a collapsed node expands it and displays its content.

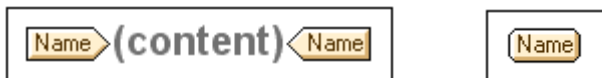
The following types of node are represented:

- **Document node**



The **document node** (indicated with  $\$XML$ ) represents the XML document as a whole. It is indicated with a green  $\$XML$  tag when the schema source is associated with an XML document, and with  $\$DB$  when the schema source is associated with a DB. The document node in the screenshot at left is expanded and contains the `OrgChart` element, which is collapsed. The document node in the screenshot at right is collapsed; its contents are hidden.

- **Element node**



An **element node** is inserted together with all its ancestor elements if the ancestors are not present at the insertion point. In the screenshot above, the `Name` element node is shown expanded (*left*) and collapsed (*right*).

- **Attribute node**



An **attribute node** is inserted together with all its ancestor elements if the ancestors are not present at the insertion point. Attribute names contain the prefix @. In the screenshot above, the `href` attribute node is shown expanded (*left*) and collapsed (*right*).

### XML document content

XML document content is represented by two placeholders:

- ( `contents` )
- ( `rest-of-contents` )

The `contents` placeholder represents the contents of a single node. All the text content of the node is output. If the node is an attribute node or a text-only element node, the value of the node is output. If the node is an element node that contains mixed content or element-only content, the text content of all descendants is output. In XSLT terms, the `contents` placeholder is equivalent to the `xsl:apply-templates` element with its `select` attribute set for that node..

**Note:** When applied to an element node, the `contents` placeholder does not output the values of attributes of that element. To output attribute nodes, you must explicitly include the attribute in the template (main or global).

The `rest-of-contents` placeholder applies templates to the rest of the child elements of the current node. The template that is applied for each child element in this case will be either a global template (if one is defined for that element) or the default template for elements (which simply outputs text of text-only elements, and applies templates to child elements). For example, consider an element `book`, which contains the child elements: `title`, `author`, `isbn`, and `pubdate`. If the definition of `book` specifies that only the `title` child element be output, then none of the other child elements (`author`, `isbn`, and `pubdate`) will be output when this definition is processed. If, however, the definition of `book` includes the `rest-of-contents` placeholder after the definition for the `title` element, then for each of the other child elements (`author`, `isbn`, and `pubdate`), a global template (if one exists for that element), or the default template for elements, will be applied.

### Data-entry devices

In order to aid the Authentic View user edit the XML document correctly and enter valid data, data-entry devices can be used in the design. You can assign any of the following data-entry devices to a node:

- **Input fields (single line or multi-line)**



- **Combo boxes**



- **Check boxes**



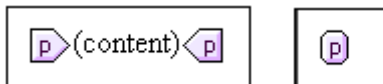
- **Radio buttons**



These tags can be collapsed and expanded by double-clicking an expanded and the collapsed tag, respectively. For a detailed description of how each of these data-entry devices is used, see [Data-Entry Devices](#).

### Predefined formats

Predefined formats are shown in mauve tags, which can be expanded/collapsed by double-clicking.

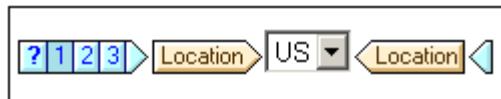


The screenshot above shows tags for the predefined format `p (para)`, expanded (*at left*) and collapsed (*at right*). To apply a predefined format, highlight the items around which the predefined format is to appear (by clicking a component and/or marking text), and [insert the predefined format](#).

### XPath objects

StyleVision features two mechanisms that use XPath expressions:

- **Conditional templates**



**Condition** tags are blue. The start tag contains cells. The leftmost cell contains a question mark. Other cells each contain either (i) a number, starting with one, for each *when* condition; and/or (ii) an asterisk for the optional *otherwise* condition. A condition branch can be selected by clicking it. The number of the selected condition branch is highlighted in the start tag, and the template for that branch is displayed (within the start and end tags of the condition). The XPath expression for the selected condition branch is also highlighted in the Design Tree. Note that tags for conditions cannot be expanded/collapsed.

- **Auto-Calculations**



**Auto-Calculations** are represented in Design View by the `= (AutoCalc)` object (see *screenshot above*). The XPath expression for the selected Auto-Calculation is highlighted in the Design Tree. The dialog to edit the Auto-Calculation is [accessed via the Properties sidebar](#).

### URI objects

There are three URI-based objects that can be inserted in a design:

- **Images**

If an image is inserted in the SPS design and can be accessed by StyleVision, it becomes visible in Design View. If it cannot be accessed, its place in the SPS is marked by an image placeholder.

- **Bookmarks (Anchors)**



**Bookmark** tags are yellow and indicated with the character  $\text{A}$  (screenshots above). A bookmark is created with the command **Insert | Bookmark**, and can be empty or contain content. Content must always be inserted after the anchor is created. Anchor tags can be expanded (screenshot above left) or collapsed (screenshot above right).

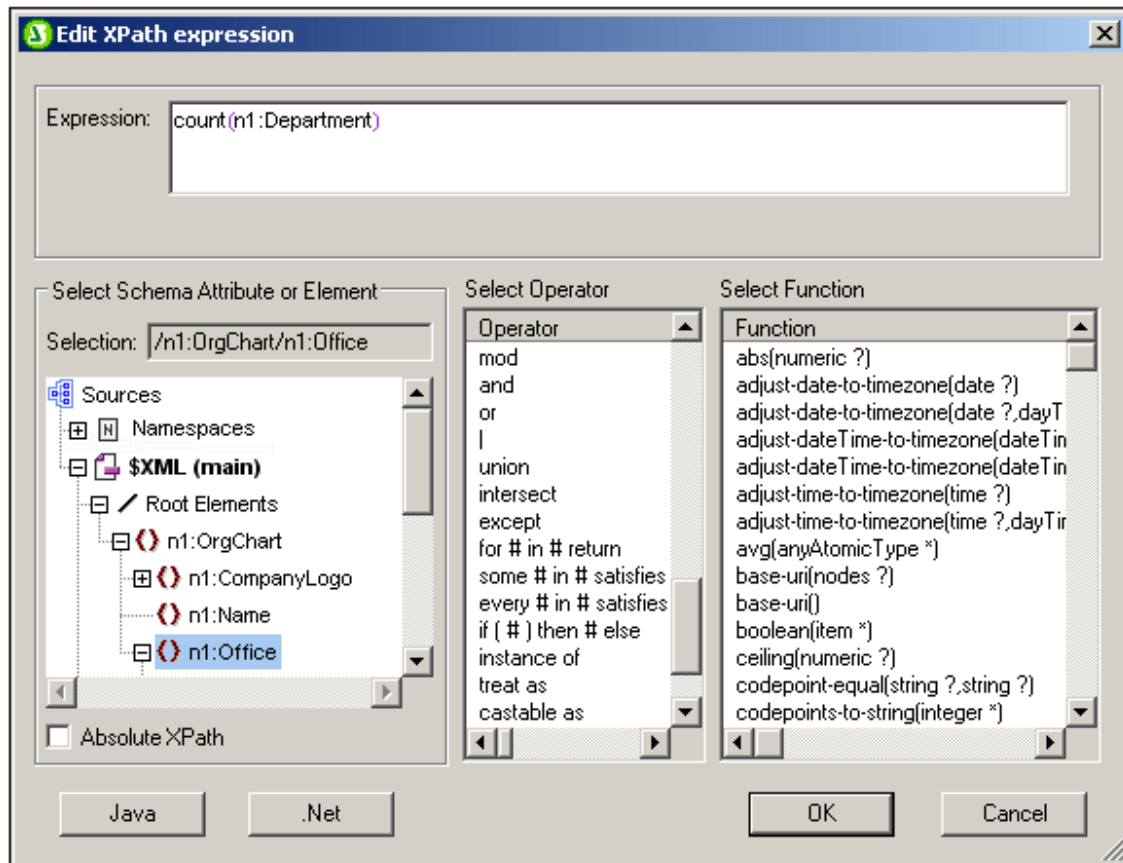
- **Links**



**Link** tags are yellow and indicated with the character  $\text{A}$  (screenshots above). A link is created with the command **Insert | Hyperlink**. The link item can be created before or after the link is created. If an item is to be created as a link, it should be selected and the link created around it. Link tags can be expanded (screenshot above left) or collapsed (screenshot above right).

## Edit XPath Expression

The **Edit XPath Expression** dialog (*screenshot below*) is used to edit and assign XPath expressions for a range of features.



In the Edit XPath Expression dialog, you can (i) enter an expression in the Expression text box via the keyboard, or (ii) you can insert nodes, operators, and functions by double-clicking them from their respective lists. XPath axes are listed under operators, and XML Schema constructor functions under functions. The lists for operators and functions automatically displays XPath 1.0 operators and functions or XPath 2.0 operators and functions according to the XSLT version selected for the SPS (XPath 1.0 for XSLT 1.0, and XPath 2.0 for XSLT 2.0). If you enter a part of the expression incorrectly, this will be displayed with a red underline, and in the case of spelling errors, correct alternatives will appear in a popup.

The Edit XPath Expression dialog helps you to build XPath expressions in the following ways.

- Context node**  
 The context node for the XPath expression is shown in the Selection text box in the Select Schema Attribute or Element pane. The Condition, Auto-Calculation, etc, for which the expression is being created, will be inserted at a location within this context, and the XPath expression will be evaluated with this node as its context.
- Inserting a node from the schema in the expression**  
 In the Select Schema Attribute or Element pane, the entire schema is displayed. You can insert a node from the schema into the XPath expression by double-clicking the required node. If the Absolute XPath check box is not checked, the selected node will be inserted with a location path expression that is relative to the context node. For

example, in the screenshot above, the `Location` element, which is a child of the `Office` element (the context node), has been inserted with a location path that is relative to the context node (that is, as `Location`). If the Absolute XPath check box were checked, the `Location` node would have been inserted as `/OrgChart/Office/Location`.

- **Inserting XPath operators**

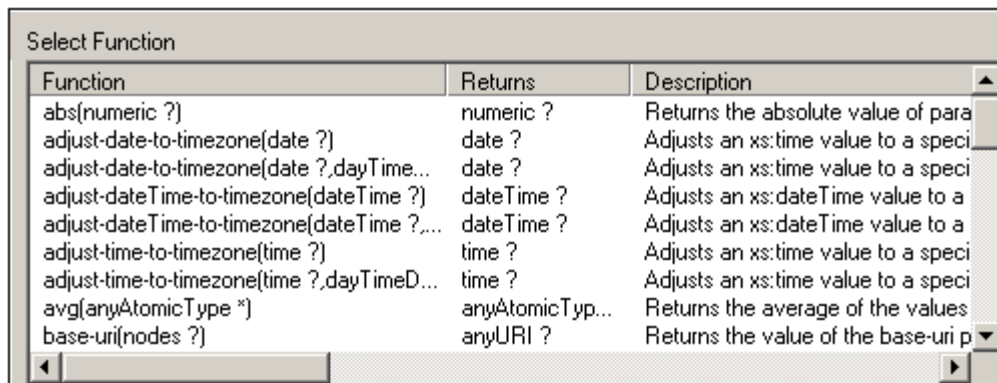
The Select Operator pane automatically lists XPath 1.0 or XPath 2.0 operators according to whether XSLT 1.0 or XSLT 2.0 has been selected as the XSLT version for the SPS. To insert an operator in the XPath expression, double-click the required operator.

- **Namespace information**

The schema tree in the Select Schema Node pane contains a Namespace item. Expanding this item displays all the namespaces declared in the stylesheet. This information can be useful for checking the prefixes of a namespace you might want to use in an XPath expression.

- **Inserting XPath functions**

The Select Function pane (*screenshot below*) is at the right of the Edit XPath Expression dialog and automatically lists XPath 1.0 or XPath 2.0 functions according to whether XSLT 1.0 or XSLT 2.0 has been selected as the XSLT version for the SPS. Each function is listed with its signature. If a function has more than one signature, that function is listed as many times as the number of signatures (see `adjust-date-to-timezone` in screenshot below). Arguments in a signature are separated by commas, and arguments can have an occurrence indicators (? indicates a sequence of zero or one items of the specified type; \* indicates a sequence of zero or more items of the specified type). The functions list also includes the return type of that function and a brief description of the function.



Function	Returns	Description
<code>abs(numeric ?)</code>	numeric ?	Returns the absolute value of para
<code>adjust-date-to-timezone(date ?)</code>	date ?	Adjusts an xs:time value to a speci
<code>adjust-date-to-timezone(date ?,dayTime...</code>	date ?	Adjusts an xs:time value to a speci
<code>adjust-dateTime-to-timezone(dateTime ?)</code>	dateTime ?	Adjusts an xs:dateTime value to a
<code>adjust-dateTime-to-timezone(dateTime ?,...</code>	dateTime ?	Adjusts an xs:dateTime value to a
<code>adjust-time-to-timezone(time ?)</code>	time ?	Adjusts an xs:time value to a speci
<code>adjust-time-to-timezone(time ?,dayTimeD...</code>	time ?	Adjusts an xs:time value to a speci
<code>avg(anyAtomicType *)</code>	anyAtomicTyp...	Returns the average of the values
<code>base-uri(nodes ?)</code>	anyURI ?	Returns the value of the base-uri p

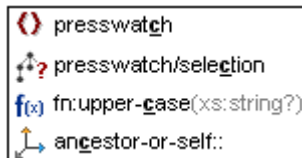
To insert a function in the XPath expression, double-click the required function.

- Java and .NET extension functions can be used in XPath expressions, enabling you to access the functions of these programming languages. The **Java** and **.NET** buttons at the bottom of the dialog, pop up info boxes with explanations about how to use Java and .NET extension functions in XPath expressions. For more information about this, see the Extension Functions section of this **documentation**.

**Note:** **Java and .NET extension functions** are not supported in the Community Edition of Altova's Authentic View products. They are supported in the Enterprise Editions of these products.

### XPath expression entry options

As an expression is being entered into the Expression text box, the available options are displayed in a popup (*screenshot below*).



These include elements (such as `presswatch` in the screenshot above), descendant nodes ( `presswatch/selection` in the screenshot above), XPath functions (`fn:upper-case` above) and XPath axes (`ancestor-or-self` above). The list of available options becomes more restricted as the expression is entered in the Expression text box.

### The Otherwise check box

The Otherwise check box below the input field for the XPath expression appears when a second or subsequent condition is being added to a conditional template. Checking the Otherwise check box inserts the optional Otherwise condition of a conditional template. For details of how to use the Otherwise condition, see [Conditional Templates](#).

### XPath expressions containing carriage returns / linefeeds

You can include carriage returns and/or linefeeds (CR/LFs) in the XPath expression in order to set part of the output on separate lines. However, in order for the CR/LF to be visible in the output, the component containing the XPath expression must be enclosed in the `pre` special paragraph type. An example of such an XPath expression is:

```
translate('a;b;c', ';', codepoints-to-string(13) )
```



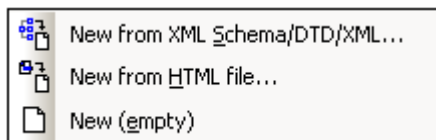
## 14.3 File Menu

The **File** menu contains commands for working with SPSs and related files. The following commands are available:

- [New](#), to create a new SPS from a variety of sources.
- [Open, Reload, Close, Close All](#), to open and close the active file, and to reload the active file.
- [Save Design, Design As, All](#), which are commands to save the active SPS and all open SPS files.
- [Save Generated Files](#), to save output files that can be generated using the SPS.
- [Assign/Unassign Working XML File](#), to assign/unassign the Working XML File that will be used to generate the previews in StyleVision.
- [Properties](#), to set the encoding of the output documents, the CSS compatibility mode of the browser, how relative image paths in Authentic View should be resolved, and whether images should be embedded or linked in the RTF (*Enterprise and Professional editions*) and Word 2007+ (*Enterprise edition only*) outputs.
- [Print Preview, Print](#), enabled in output views, these commands print what is displayed in the previews.
- [Most Recently Used Files, Exit](#), respectively, to select a recently used file to open, and to exit the program.

## New

Placing the cursor over the **New** command pops out a submenu (*screenshot below*) that enables you to create a new SPS document of one of two types:



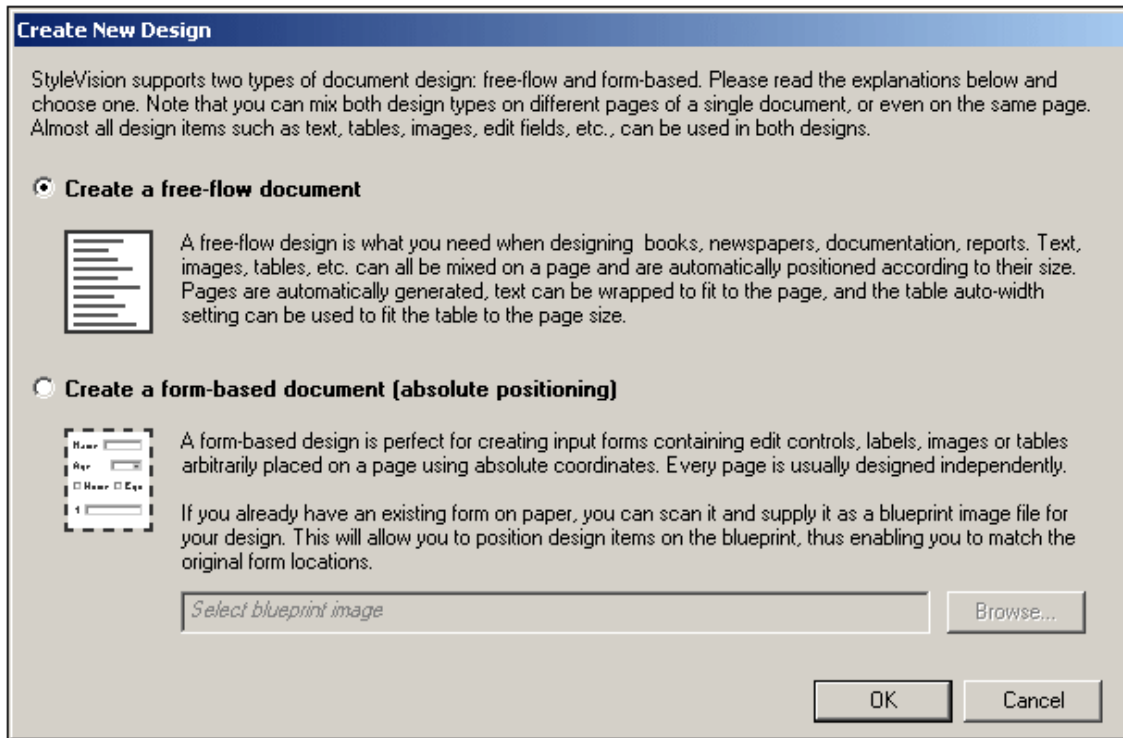
- A new SPS file based on an XML Schema or DTD or XML Schema generated from an XML file (**New from XML Schema / DTD / XML**). The selected schema is added to the [Design Overview sidebar](#) and a graphical tree representation is added to the schema tree (in the [Schema Tree sidebar](#)). In [Design View](#), the SPS is created with an empty main template. A new SPS can also be created from a file (schema or XML) via a URL or global resource (*see below*).
- A new SPS based on a user-defined schema you create node-by-node from an HTML file (**New from HTML File**). The user-defined schema is added to the [Design Overview sidebar](#) and [Schema Tree sidebar](#). In the schema tree, it will have a single document element (root element), and the HTML file is loaded in [Design View](#).
- A new empty SPS (**New (empty)**). No schema is added to either the Design Overview sidebar or the schema tree. An empty main template will be created in [Design View](#).

**Note:** A [global resource](#) can be used to locate a file or DB resource.

### Selecting the type of design

After you have selected (XSD and XML) sources files, if required, the Create New Design dialog appears.

The Create New Design dialog (*screenshot below*) prompts you to select either: (i) a free-flowing document design, or (ii) a form-based document design (in which components are positioned absolutely, as in a layout program).

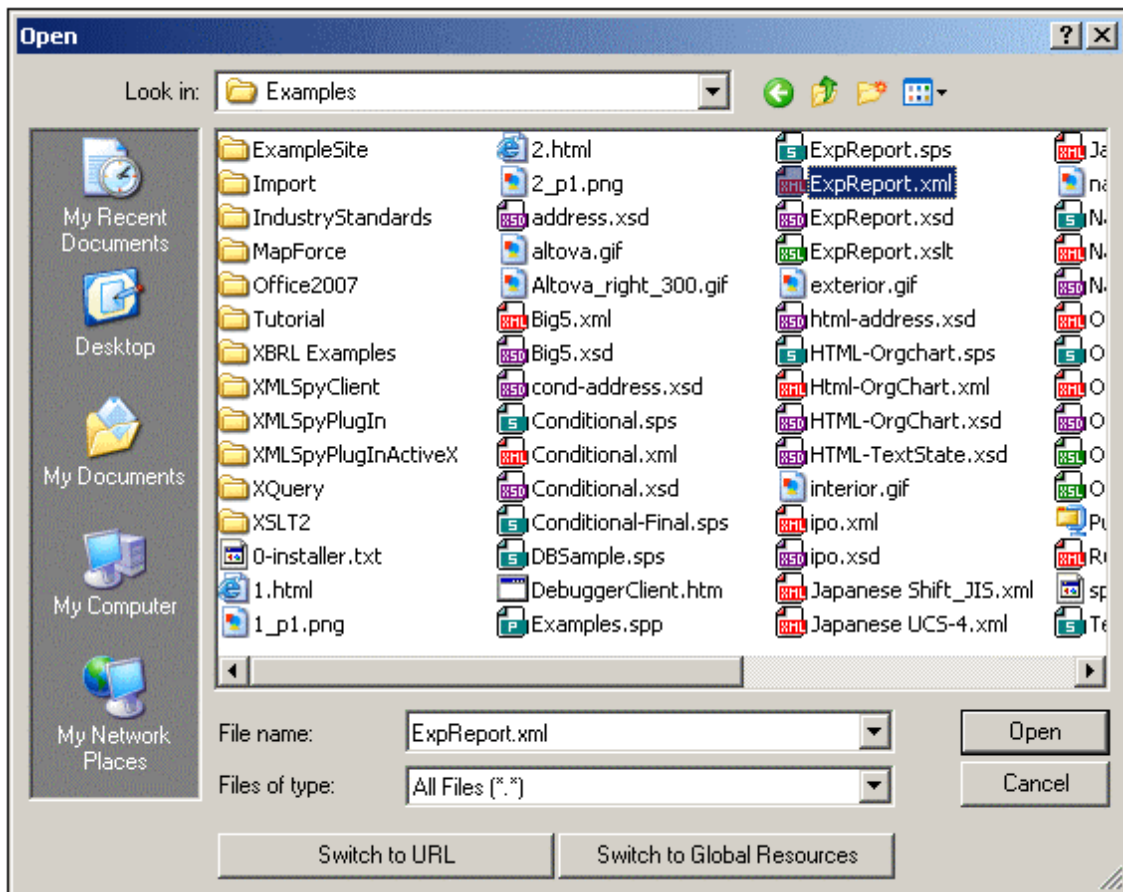


In a free-flowing document design, document content is laid out to fit the output media object or viewer (paper or screen). Items in the document content can only be placed relative to each other, and not absolutely. This kind of design is suited for documents such as reports, articles, and books.

In a form-based document, a single [Layout Container](#) is created, in which design components can be positioned absolutely. The dimensions of the Layout Container are user-defined, and Layout Boxes can be positioned absolutely within the Layout Container and document content can be placed within individual Layout Boxes. If you wish the design of your SPS to replicate a specific form-based design, you can use an image of the original form as a [blueprint image](#). The blueprint image can then be included as the background image of the Layout Container. The blueprint image is used to help you design your form; it will not be included in the output.

### Selecting files via URLs and Global Resources

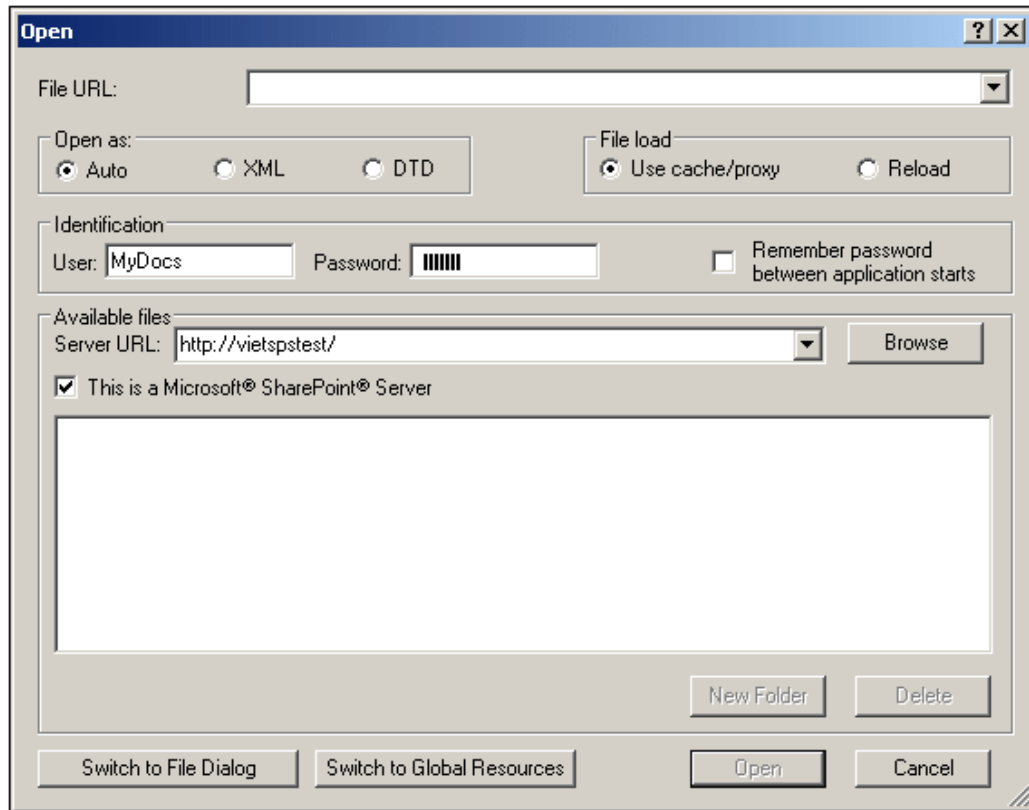
In several File Open and File Save dialogs, you can choose to select the required file or save a file via a URL or a global resource (see [screenshot below](#)). Select the **Switch to URL** or **Switch to Global Resource** to go to one of these selection processes.



### Selecting files via URLs

To select a file via a URL, do the following:

1. Click the **Switch to URL** command. This switches to the URL mode of the Open dialog (*screenshot below*).



2. Enter the URL you want to access, in the *Server URL* field (screenshot above). If the server is a Microsoft® SharePoint® Server, check the *Microsoft® SharePoint® Server* check box. See the Microsoft® SharePoint® Server Notes below for further information about working with files on this type of server.
3. If the server is password protected, enter your User-ID and password in the *User* and *Password* fields.
4. Click **Browse** to view and navigate the directory structure of the server.
5. In the folder tree, browse for the file you want to load and click it.



The file URL appears in the File URL field (*screenshot above*). The **Open** button only becomes active at this point.

6. Click the **Open** button to load the file. The file you open appears in the main window.

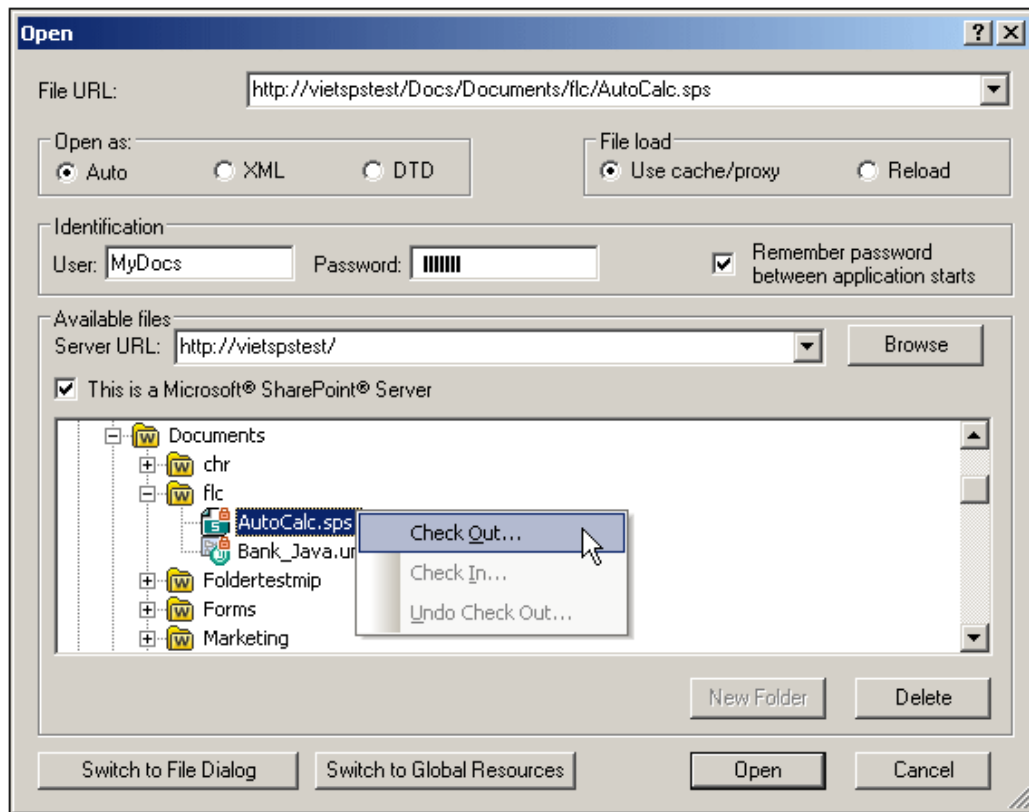
**Note:** The Browse function is only available on servers which support WebDAV and on Microsoft SharePoint Servers. The supported protocols are FTP, HTTP, and HTTPS.

**Note:** To give you more control over the loading process, you can choose to load the file through the local cache or a proxy server (which considerably speeds up the process if the file has been loaded before). Alternatively, you may want to reload the file if you are working, say, with an electronic publishing or database system; select the **Reload** option in this case

#### Microsoft® SharePoint® Server Notes




Note the following points about files on Microsoft® SharePoint® Servers:

- In the directory structure that appears in the Available Files pane (*screenshot below*), file icons have symbols that indicate the check-in/check-out status of files.

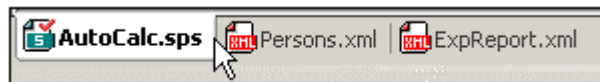


Right-clicking a file pops up a context menu containing commands available for that file (*screenshot above*).

- The various file icons are shown below:

	Checked in. Available for check-out.
	Checked out by another user. Not available for check-out.
	Checked out locally. Can be edited and checked-in.

- After you check out a file, you can edit it in your Altova application and save it using **File | Save (Ctrl+S)**.
- You can check-in the edited file via the context menu in the Open URL dialog (see *screenshot above*), or via the context menu that pops up when you click the file tab in the Main Window of your application (*screenshot below*).




- When a file is checked out by another user, it is not available for check out.
- When a file is checked out locally by you, you can undo the check-out with the Undo Check-Out command in the context menu. This has the effect of returning the file unchanged to the server.
- If you check out a file in one Altova application, you cannot check it out in another Altova application. The file is considered to be already checked out to you. The available commands at this point in any Altova application supporting Microsoft® SharePoint® Server will be: **Check In** and **Undo Check Out**.

**Opening and saving files via Global Resources**

To open or save a file via a global resources, click **Switch to Global Resource**. This pops up a dialog in which you can select the global resource. These dialogs are described in the section, [Using Global Resources](#). For a general description of Global Resources, see the [Global Resources](#) section in this documentation.



## Open, Reload, Close, Close All

The **Open** (**Ctrl+O**) command  allows you to open an existing SPS file. The familiar [Open dialog](#) of Windows systems is opened and allows you to select a file with an extension of .sps.

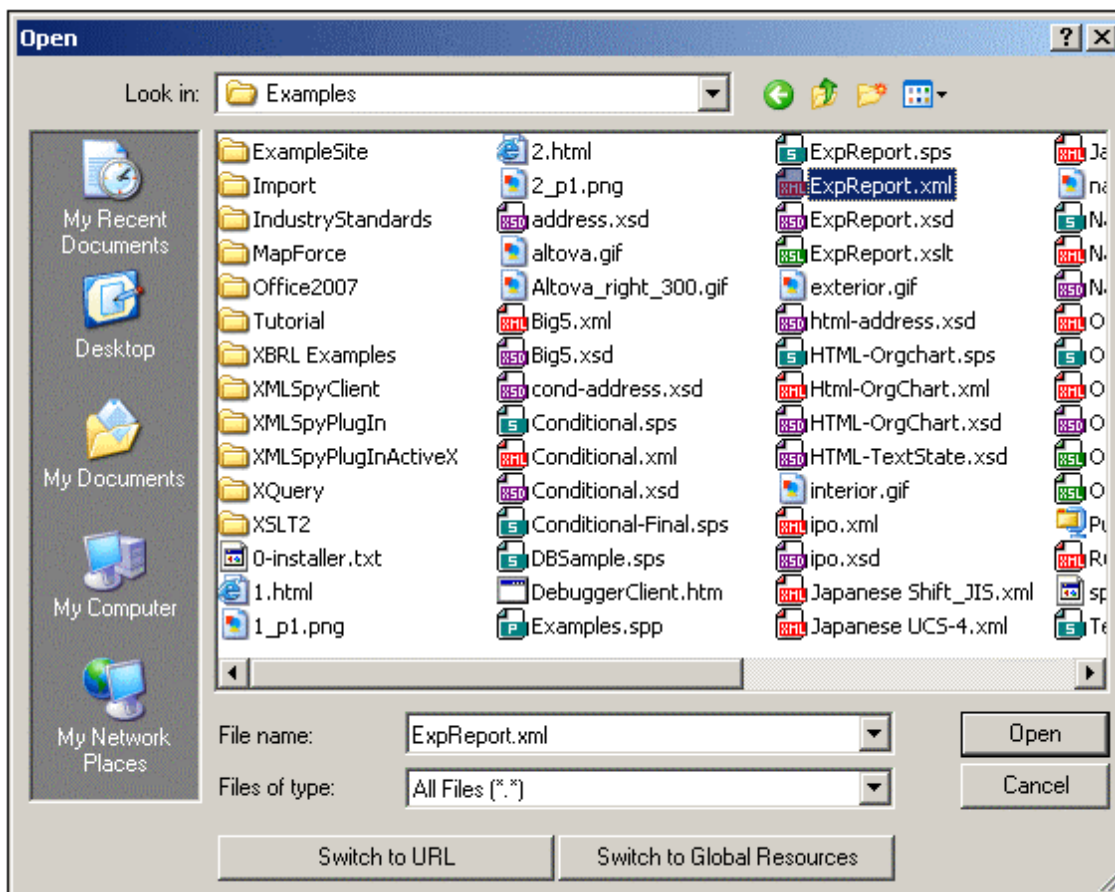
The **Reload** command reloads the SPS file from the file saved to disk. Any changes made since the file was last saved will be lost. The Working XML file will also be reloaded, enabling you to update the Working XML File if it has been changed externally.

The **Close** command closes the currently active SPS document. Note that while several files can be open, only one is active. The active document can also be closed by clicking the **Close** button at the top right of the [Main Window](#). If you have unsaved changes in the document, you will be prompted to save these changes.

The **Close All** command closes all the open SPS documents. If you have unsaved changes in an open document, you will be prompted to save these changes.

### Selecting files via URLs and Global Resources

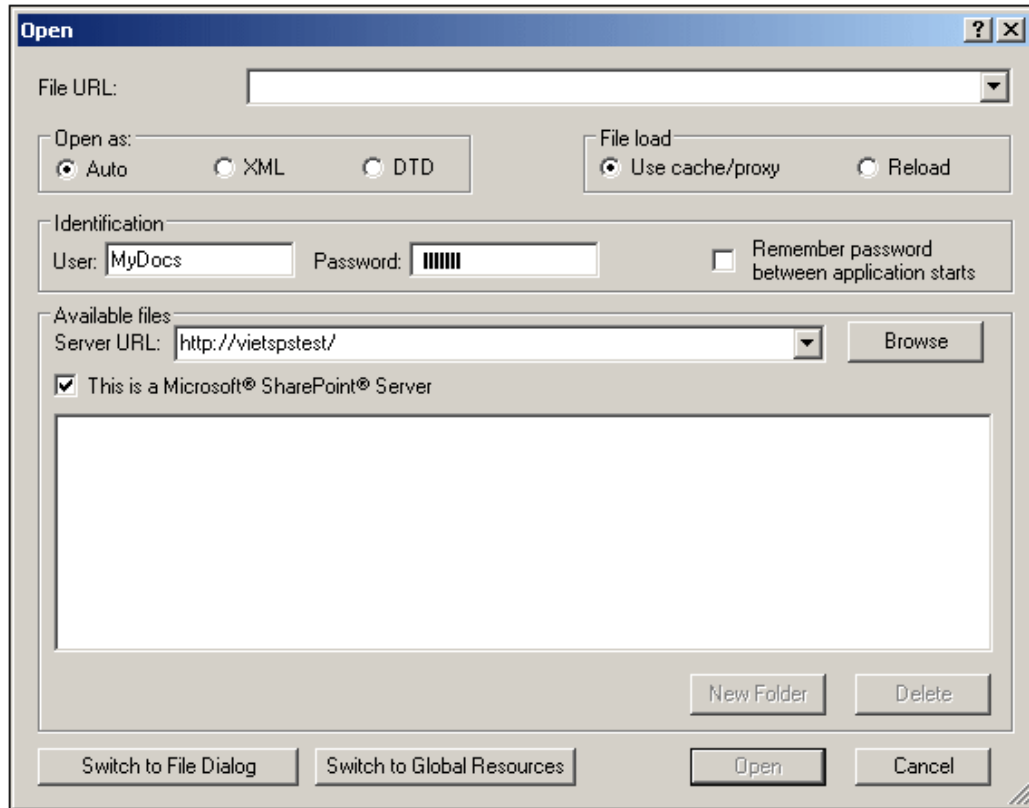
In several File Open and File Save dialogs, you can choose to select the required file or save a file via a URL or a global resource (*see screenshot below*). Select the **Switch to URL** or **Switch to Global Resource** to go to one of these selection processes.



### Selecting files via URLs

To select a file via a URL, do the following:

1. Click the **Switch to URL** command. This switches to the URL mode of the Open dialog (*screenshot below*).



2. Enter the URL you want to access, in the *Server URL* field (*screenshot above*). If the server is a Microsoft® SharePoint® Server, check the *Microsoft® SharePoint® Server* check box. See the Microsoft® SharePoint® Server Notes below for further information about working with files on this type of server.
3. If the server is password protected, enter your User-ID and password in the *User* and *Password* fields.
4. Click **Browse** to view and navigate the directory structure of the server.
5. In the folder tree, browse for the file you want to load and click it.



The file URL appears in the File URL field (*screenshot above*). The **Open** button only becomes active at this point.

6. Click the **Open** button to load the file. The file you open appears in the main window.

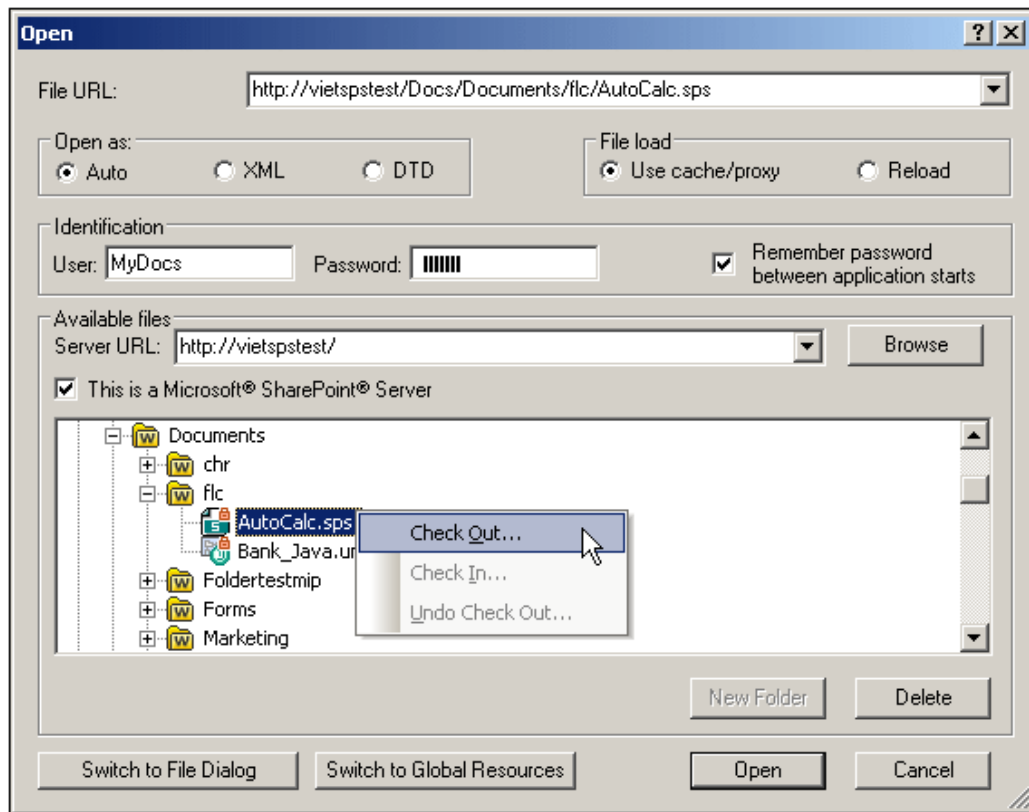
**Note:** The Browse function is only available on servers which support WebDAV and on Microsoft SharePoint Servers. The supported protocols are FTP, HTTP, and HTTPS.

**Note:** To give you more control over the loading process, you can choose to load the file through the local cache or a proxy server (which considerably speeds up the process if the file has been loaded before). Alternatively, you may want to reload the file if you are working, say, with an electronic publishing or database system; select the **Reload** option in this case

#### Microsoft® SharePoint® Server Notes




Note the following points about files on Microsoft® SharePoint® Servers:

- In the directory structure that appears in the Available Files pane (*screenshot below*), file icons have symbols that indicate the check-in/check-out status of files.

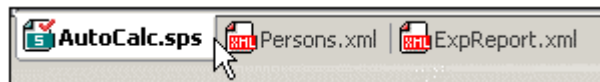


Right-clicking a file pops up a context menu containing commands available for that file (*screenshot above*).

- The various file icons are shown below:

	Checked in. Available for check-out.
	Checked out by another user. Not available for check-out.
	Checked out locally. Can be edited and checked-in.

- After you check out a file, you can edit it in your Altova application and save it using **File | Save (Ctrl+S)**.
- You can check-in the edited file via the context menu in the Open URL dialog (see *screenshot above*), or via the context menu that pops up when you click the file tab in the Main Window of your application (*screenshot below*).




- When a file is checked out by another user, it is not available for check out.
- When a file is checked out locally by you, you can undo the check-out with the Undo Check-Out command in the context menu. This has the effect of returning the file unchanged to the server.
- If you check out a file in one Altova application, you cannot check it out in another Altova application. The file is considered to be already checked out to you. The available commands at this point in any Altova application supporting Microsoft® SharePoint® Server will be: **Check In** and **Undo Check Out**.

**Opening and saving files via Global Resources**

To open or save a file via a global resources, click **Switch to Global Resource**. This pops up a dialog in which you can select the global resource. These dialogs are described in the section, [Using Global Resources](#). For a general description of Global Resources, see the [Global Resources](#) section in this documentation.

## Save Design, Design As, All

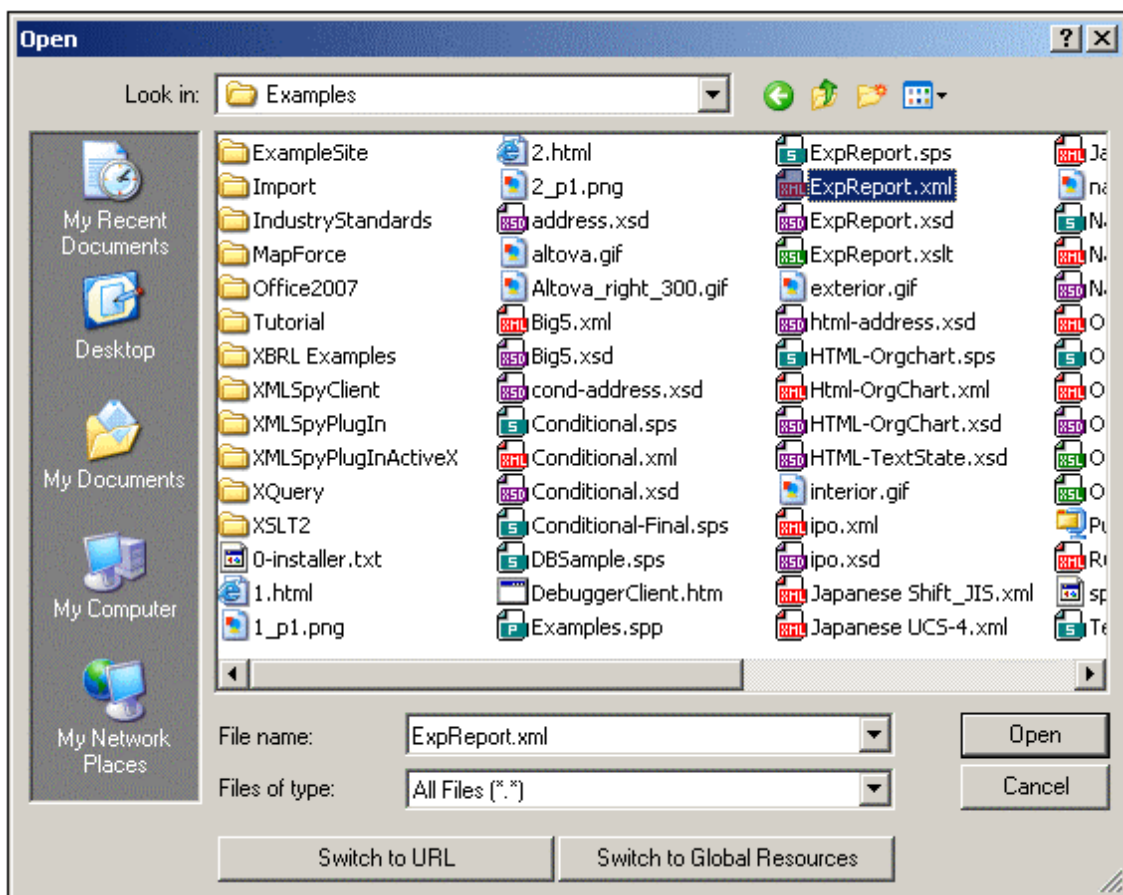
The **Save Design (Ctrl+S)** command  saves the currently open document as an SPS file (with the file extension `.sps`).

The **Save Design As** command shows the familiar Save As dialog of Windows systems. You can enter the name with which the active SPS file should be saved and the location where you want it saved. The newly saved file becomes the current file in StyleVision.

The **Save All (Ctrl+Shift+S)** command  saves all the open SPS documents.

### Selecting files via URLs and Global Resources

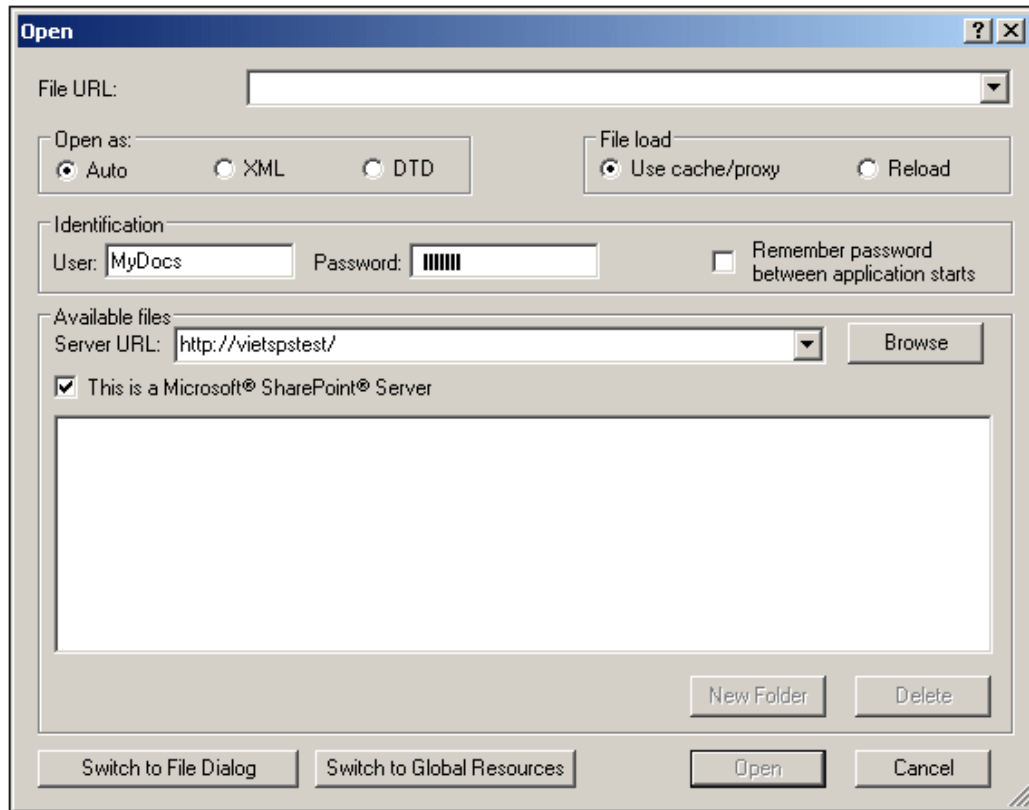
In several File Open and File Save dialogs, you can choose to select the required file or save a file via a URL or a global resource (see screenshot below). Select the **Switch to URL** or **Switch to Global Resource** to go to one of these selection processes.



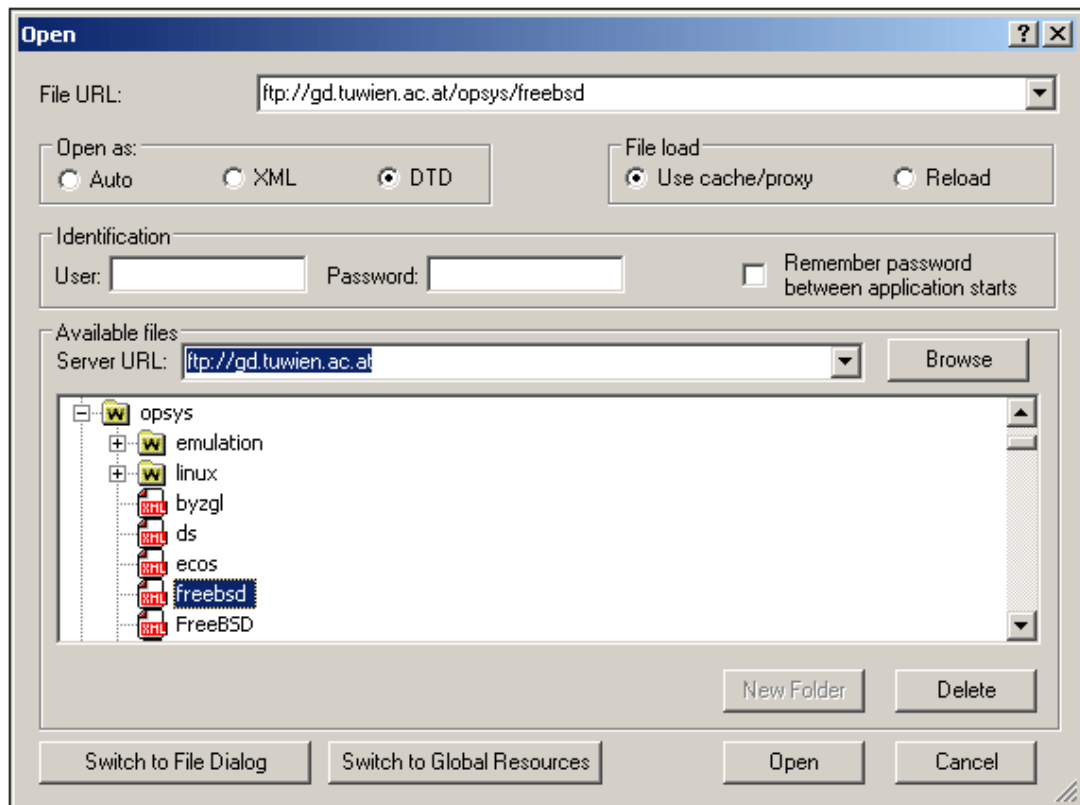
### Selecting files via URLs

To select a file via a URL, do the following:

1. Click the **Switch to URL** command. This switches to the URL mode of the Open dialog (screenshot below).



2. Enter the URL you want to access, in the *Server URL* field (screenshot above). If the server is a Microsoft® SharePoint® Server, check the *Microsoft® SharePoint® Server* check box. See the Microsoft® SharePoint® Server Notes below for further information about working with files on this type of server.
3. If the server is password protected, enter your User-ID and password in the *User* and *Password* fields.
4. Click **Browse** to view and navigate the directory structure of the server.
5. In the folder tree, browse for the file you want to load and click it.



The file URL appears in the File URL field (*screenshot above*). The **Open** button only becomes active at this point.

6. Click the **Open** button to load the file. The file you open appears in the main window.

**Note:** The Browse function is only available on servers which support WebDAV and on Microsoft SharePoint Servers. The supported protocols are FTP, HTTP, and HTTPS.

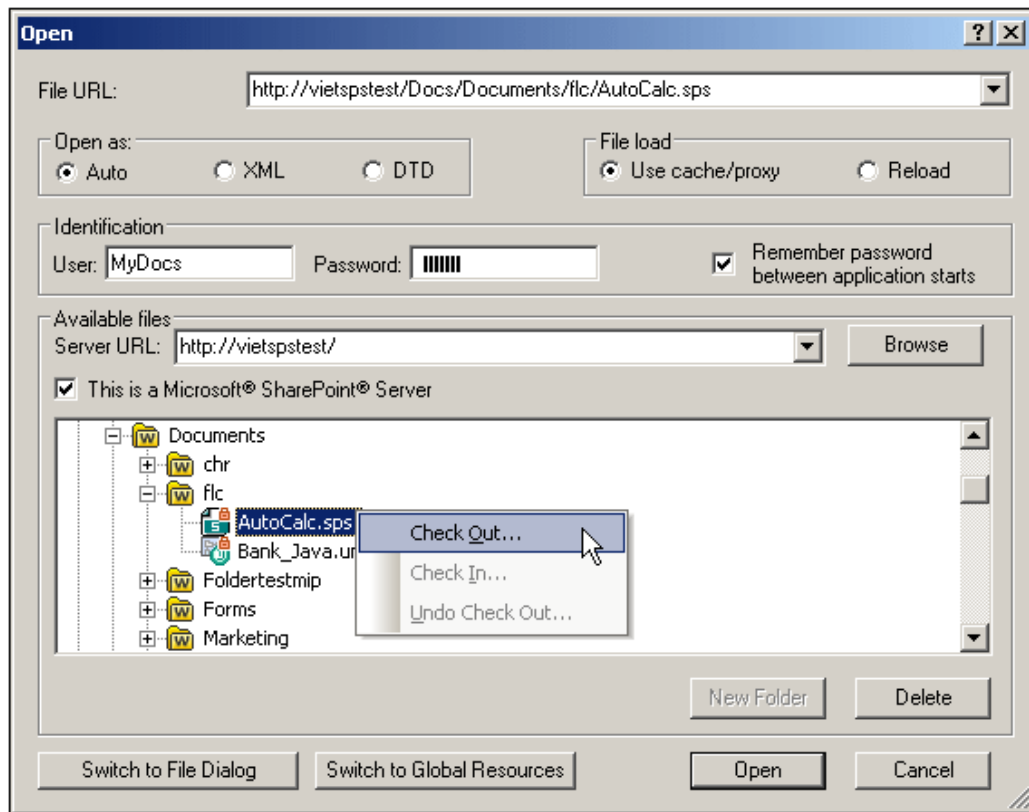
**Note:** To give you more control over the loading process, you can choose to load the file through the local cache or a proxy server (which considerably speeds up the process if the file has been loaded before). Alternatively, you may want to reload the file if you are working, say, with an electronic publishing or database system; select the **Reload** option in this case

#### Microsoft® SharePoint® Server Notes

Note the following points about files on Microsoft® SharePoint® Servers:




- In the directory structure that appears in the Available Files pane (*screenshot below*), file icons have symbols that indicate the check-in/check-out status of files.



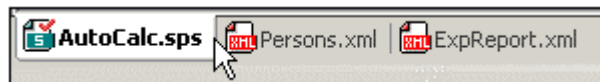


Right-clicking a file pops up a context menu containing commands available for that file (*screenshot above*).

- The various file icons are shown below:

	Checked in. Available for check-out.
	Checked out by another user. Not available for check-out.
	Checked out locally. Can be edited and checked-in.

- After you check out a file, you can edit it in your Altova application and save it using **File | Save (Ctrl+S)**.
- You can check-in the edited file via the context menu in the Open URL dialog (see *screenshot above*), or via the context menu that pops up when you click the file tab in the Main Window of your application (*screenshot below*).



- When a file is checked out by another user, it is not available for check out.
- When a file is checked out locally by you, you can undo the check-out with the Undo Check-Out command in the context menu. This has the effect of returning the file unchanged to the server.
- If you check out a file in one Altova application, you cannot check it out in another Altova application. The file is considered to be already checked out to you. The available commands at this point in any Altova application supporting Microsoft® SharePoint® Server will be: **Check In** and **Undo Check Out**.

**Opening and saving files via Global Resources**

To open or save a file via a global resources, click **Switch to Global Resource**. This pops up a dialog in which you can select the global resource. These dialogs are described in the section, [Using Global Resources](#). For a general description of Global Resources, see the [Global Resources](#) section in this documentation.

## Save Generated Files

The **Save Generated Files** command pops up a submenu which contains options for saving the following files (*screenshot below*). For perspective on how the generated files fit into the general usage procedure, see [Usage Procedure | Generated Files](#).

### Save Generated XSLT-HTML File

The Save Generated XSLT-HTML File command generates an XSLT file for HTML output from your SPS. You can use this XSLT file subsequently to transform an XML document to HTML.

### Save Generated HTML File

The Save Generated HTML File command generates an HTML file. This operation requires two input files:

- The Working XML File assigned to the currently active SPS file. If no Working XML File has been assigned, the **Save Generated HTML File** command is disabled.
- An XSLT file, which is automatically generated from the currently active SPS file.

### Save Generated User-Defined Schema

This command is activated when the SPS involves a user-defined schema. The schema you create in the Schema Tree sidebar is saved as an XML Schema with the `.xsd` extension.

### Save Generated User-Defined XML Data

The data in the imported HTML file that corresponds to the user-defined schema is saved as an XML file. The corresponding data are the nodes in the HTML document (in Design View) that have been created as XML Schema nodes.

### **Assign/Unassign Working XML File**

A Working XML File is an XML file that is assigned to an SPS in StyleVision in order to preview the output of the XML document in StyleVision. Without a Working XML File, the SPS in StyleVision will not have any dynamic XML data to process. The **Assign Working XML File** command assigns an XML file as the Working XML File to the SPS. Clicking the command, opens a dialog in which you can browse for the Working XML File. If a Working XML File is already assigned, clicking this command and assigning a file replaces the existing assignment with the new assignment.

#### **Unassigning the Working XML File**

The **Unassign Working XML File** command removes the assignment from the SPS. This command is enabled only when a Working XML File has been assigned for the active SPS.

## Properties

The **Properties** command pops up the Properties dialog, in which you can set properties for the active SPS: (i) the encoding of output documents; (ii) the CSS support level of the HTML and Authentic Views; and (iii) image handling.

### Encoding

In the Output Encoding pane you can select the encoding of your output documents. Changing the encoding in this dialog changes the encoding for the currently active SPS. You can also specify the for all subsequently created SPS documents; this is done in the Encoding tab of the Options dialog.

### HTML output mode

You can select whether an HTML 4.01 document or XHTML 1.0 Transitional document is generated for the HTML output. This setting can be changed at any time while creating or editing the SPS document.

### Internet Explorer CSS support

CSS support in versions of Internet Explorer (IE) prior to IE 6.0 was incomplete and in some respects incorrectly interpreted. CSS support was enhanced and corrected in IE 6.0, and further improved in IE 7.0.

In IE 6.0 and later, an HTML document can be displayed either in **compatibility mode** (corresponding to the CSS support level in IE versions prior to IE 6.0), or in **standards-compliant mode** (corresponding to CSS support in IE 6.0 and later). Which mode is used depends on a switch coded in the HTML document. (See [CSS Support in IE 6.0](#) and [CSS Support in IE 7.0](#) for details.)

In an SPS, you can select the desired mode in the Properties dialog (*screenshot above*). The appropriate switch will be generated in the output document, and the specified level of support is immediately available in HTML Preview. Note that new SPS documents are created with Standards-Compliant Mode selected. SPS documents created in versions of Altova StyleVision prior to Altova StyleVision 2007 sp2 will be opened in Compatibility Mode; they can be re-saved in Standards-Compliant Mode (by selecting the Standards-Compliant option in the [Properties](#) dialog).

**Note:** When setting CSS styles in a document, you should be aware of what CSS support level has been set for the document output and you should assign CSS styles accordingly.


### Select XSLT version

The XSLT version for the active document can be selected in the Select XSLT Version pane. Checking the *Use xsl:import-schema declaration* option causes the `xsl:import-schema` element of the XSLT 2 specification to be included in the XSLT 2.0 document generated by StyleVision. It is recommended that you use select this option in order for datatypes to be read from the schema in the event that there is no  `xsi:schemaLocation` attribute in the XML document.

### Relative image paths in Authentic View

You can set whether relative image paths in Design View should be relative to the SPS or to the XML file.

## Print Preview, Print


The **Print Preview** command  is enabled in Design View and Authentic View (*Authentic View is supported in the Enterprise and Professional editions only*). The **Print Preview** command opens a window containing a preview of the SPS design (when Design View is active) or of the Authentic View of the Working XML File when Authentic View is active). The preview will show the design with or without tags according to what is on screen.



You can do the following in the Print Preview window, via the toolbar commands at the top of the page (*screenshot above*) and the page navigation icons at the bottom of the page. The commands in the Print Preview toolbar are as follows, starting from the left.

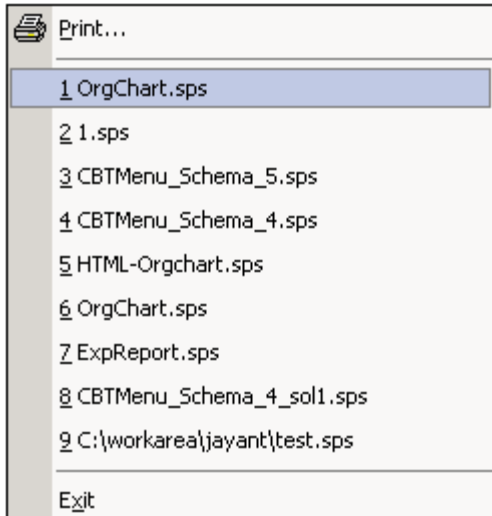
- Print the page using the Print button.
- Set paper orientation to portrait or landscape.
- Set page properties by clicking the **Page Setup** button to get the Page Setup dialog.
- Toggle on/off the display and printout of headers and footers.
- Set the view so that either the page width or page height occupies, respectively, the full screen width or full screen height.
- Set how many pages are to fit within the screen.
- Change the zoom factor of the preview pages using the Zoom In and Zoom Out buttons or the combo box to select a zoom factor.

To navigate the pages of the preview, use the page navigation buttons at the bottom of the preview or by entering the page number in the Page text-box.

The **Print** command  is enabled in the Authentic View and output preview tabs. It prints out the selected view of the Working XML File according to the page setup for that view. Note that the page setup for Authentic View can be edited in the Page Setup dialog, which you access via the Print Preview window.

## Most Recently Used Files, Exit

The list of most recently used files, shows the file name and path information for the nine most recently used files. Clicking one of these entries, causes that file to be opened in a new tab in the Main Window.



To access these files using the **keyboard**, press **ALT+F** to open the File menu, and then the number of the file you wish to open; for example, pressing **1** will open the first file in the list, **2** the second file, and so on.

The **Exit** command is used to quit StyleVision. If you have an open file with unsaved changes, you will be prompted to save these changes.




## 14.4 Edit Menu


The **Edit** menu contains commands that aid the editing of SPS documents. Besides the standard editing commands, such as **Cut** (Shift+Del), **Copy** (Ctrl+C), **Paste** (Ctrl+V), and **Delete** (Del), which are not described in this section, the following commands are available:

- [Undo, Redo, Select All](#), to undo or restore your previous actions, and to select all content of the SPS.
- [Find, Find Next, Replace](#), to find text in the SPS and XSLT stylesheet previews.
- [Stylesheet Parameters](#), to edit parameters declared globally for the SPS.
- [Collapse/Expand Markup](#), to collapse and expand SPS design component tags.

Commands are also available via the context menu which appears when you right-click a component or right-click at a cursor insertion point. Additionally, some commands are available as keyboard shortcuts and/or toolbar icons. Note, however, that commands which are not applicable in a particular document view or at a given location are grayed out in the menu.


## Undo, Redo, Select All

The **Undo (Ctrl+Z)** command  enables you to undo an editing change. An unlimited number of Undo actions is supported. Every action can be undone and it is possible to undo one command after another till the first action that was made since the document was opened.

The **Redo (Ctrl+Y)** command  allows you to redo any number of previously undone commands. By using the Undo and Redo commands, you can step backward and forward through the history of commands.

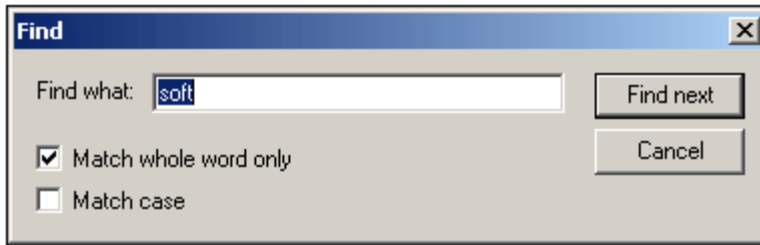
The **Select All** command selects the entire contents of the Design Document window.

## Find, Find Next, Replace

The **Find (Ctrl+F)** command  allows you to find words or fragments of words in the Design View, JavaScript Editor, and XSLT-for-HTML stylesheet.

### Design View

Clicking the **Find** command in Design View pops up the following dialog:

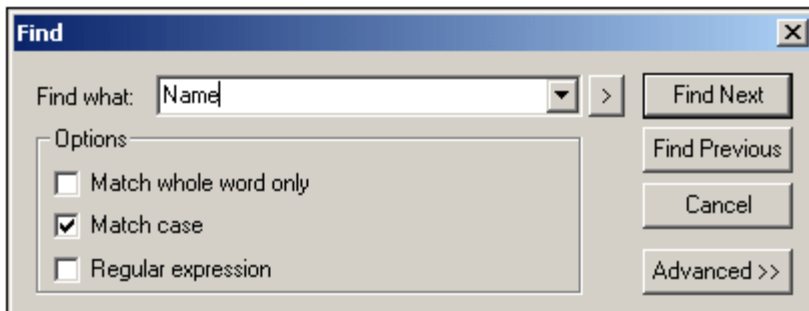


Note the following:

- In Design View, the static data is searched, but not node names.
- To match the entry with whole words, check "Match whole word only". For example, an entry of `soft` will find only the whole word `soft`; it will not find, for example, the `soft` in `software`.
- To match the entry with fragments of words, leave the "Match whole word only" check box unchecked. Doing this would enable you, for example, to enter `soft` and `software`.
- To make the search case-insensitive, leave the "Match case" checkbox unchecked. This would enable you to find, say, `Soft` with an entry of `soft`.

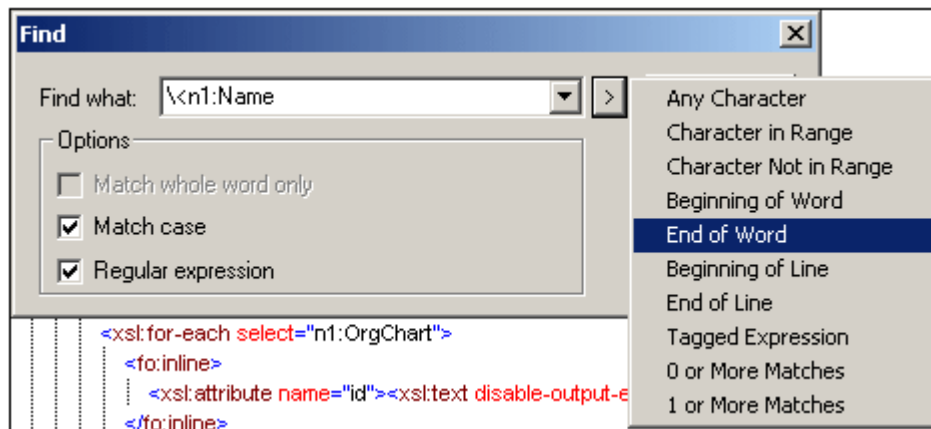
### XSLT-for-HTML and JavaScript Editor

Clicking the **Find** command in the XSLT-for-HTML or JavaScript Editor tab pops up the following dialog:

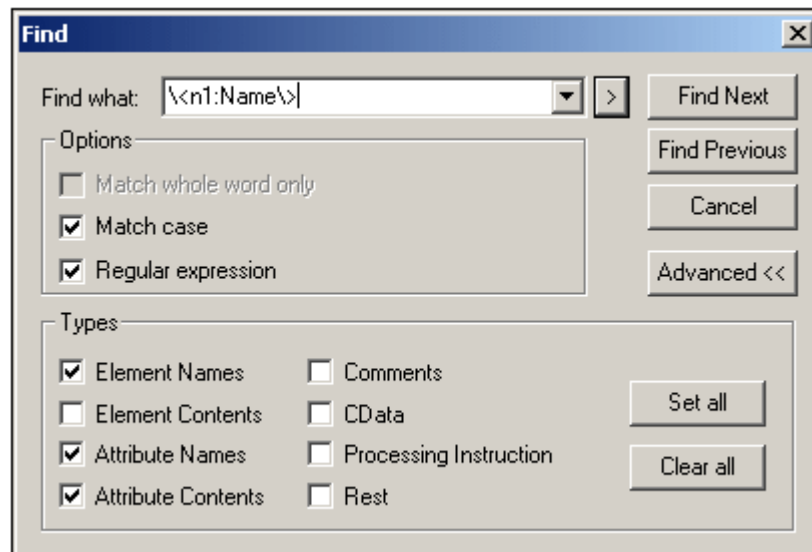


The following points should be noted:

- To enter a regular expression as the search term, check the Regular expression check box. You can create a regular expression with the help of a menu that pops out when you click the right-pointing arrowhead near the search term entry field.




- To set restrictions on what part of the document to search, click the Advanced button. This makes more search options available (*screenshot below*):



Select the types of document content you wish to search by checking the appropriate check box.


### Find Next command

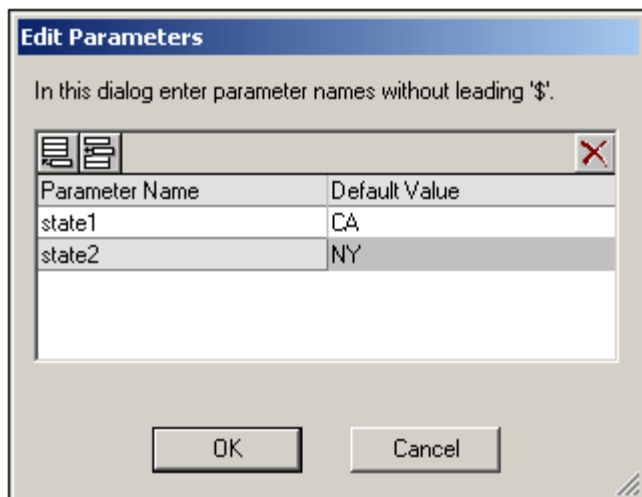
The **Find Next (F3)** command  repeats the last Find command to search for the next occurrence of the requested text. See [Find](#) for a description of how to use the search function.

### Replace (Ctrl+H)

The **Replace** command is enabled in Design View, JavaScript Editor, and Authentic View (*not supported in Standard edition*) and enables you to search for a text string and replace it with another text string.

## Stylesheet Parameters

The **Stylesheet Parameters** command  enables you to declare and edit parameters and their default values. The command is available in both the Design Document view and the Authentic Editor View. When you click this command, the Edit Parameters dialog (*shown below*) pops up.



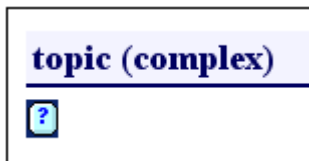
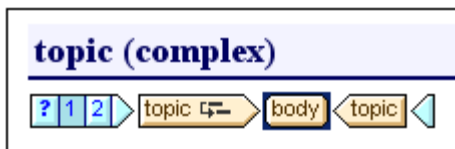
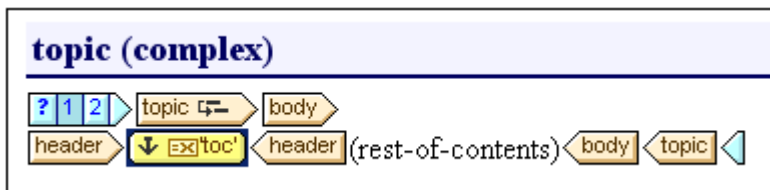
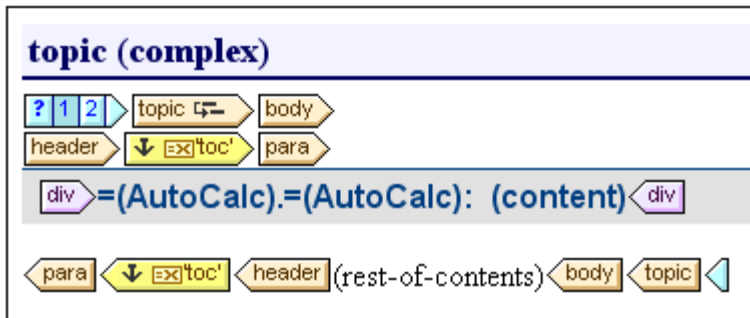
The following points should be noted:

- You can insert, append, edit and delete parameters for the entire stylesheet.
- Parameter names must begin with a letter, and can contain the characters A to Z, a to z, 0 to 9, and the underscore.
- The Edit Parameters dialog contains all the user-defined parameters in an SPS.
- Parameters can also be declared in the [Design Overview sidebar](#).

## Collapse/Expand Markup

The **Collapse/Expand Markup** command is a toggle command, which collapses and expands the selected tag. It can be applied to any kind of tag: node, predefined format, SPS mechanism, etc. To collapse/expand a tag, double-click the tag; the end tag of an expanded tag may also be double-clicked to collapse that tag.

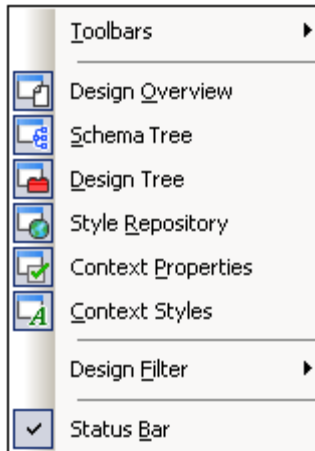
The screenshots below show how a series of tags are collapsed. Double-clicking a collapsed tag expands it.



Collapsing a tag can be useful for optimizing the display according to your editing needs.

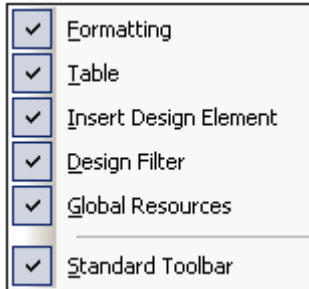
## 14.5 View Menu

The **View** menu (*screenshot below*) enables you to change the look of the GUI and to toggle on and off the display of GUI components. You can switch the display of individual toolbars, individual design sidebars, design filters, and the status bar on and off.



## Toolbars and Status Bar

Placing the cursor over the **Toolbars** item pops out a submenu (*screenshot below*), which enables you to turn on and off the display of the different toolbars.



When a toolbar is checked, it is displayed. In the screenshot above all the toolbars are displayed. To toggle on or off the display of a toolbar, click the appropriate toolbar. For a complete description of toolbars, see the section [Reference | Toolbars](#).

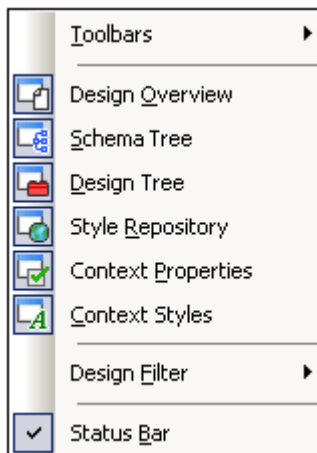
### Status Bar

The display of the Status Bar, which is located at the bottom of the application window, can be switched on or off by clicking the **Status Bar** toggle command.



## Design Sidebars

The **View** menu contains toggle commands to switch the display of each sidebar on and off ( *screenshot below*).









When a sidebar is toggled on (the command's icon is framed) it is displayed in the GUI. Click a sidebar to set its display on or off, as required. This command is also used to make a hidden sidebar visible again. The display setting specified for a sidebar is View-specific: a setting made in a particular View (Design View, Output View, no document open) is retained for that particular View till changed.

## Design Filter, Zoom

### Design Filter

The **Design Filter** menu item rolls out a sub-menu containing commands that enable you to filter the templates that are displayed in Design View. This is useful if your design is very long or contains several templates. Using the Design Filter mechanism, you can specify what kinds of template to display. The following filter options are available:

Icon	Command	Description
	<b>Show only one template</b>	Shows the selected template only. Place the cursor in a template and click to show that template only.
	<b>Show all template types</b>	Shows all templates in the SPS (main, global, named, and layout) .
	<b>Show imported templates</b>	Toggles the display of imported templates on and off.
	<b>Show/Hide main template</b>	Toggles the display of the main template on and off.
	<b>Show/Hide global templates</b>	Toggles the display of global templates on and off.
	<b>Show/Hide Design Fragments</b>	Toggles the display of Design Fragments on and off.

Note that these commands are also available as toolbar icons in the [Design Filters](#) toolbar.

### Zoom

The **Zoom** command enables you to select a Zoom factor from the submenu that rolls out. You can also zoom in or out by changing the Zoom factor in the Zoom combo box (in the Standard toolbar), or by pressing the **Ctrl** key and scrolling with the mouse.

## 14.6 Insert Menu

The **Insert** menu provides commands enabling you to insert a variety of design components into the SPS. Some of these commands are available as [toolbar icons](#). Additionally, **Insert** menu commands are also available via context menus which appear when, in the SPS design, you right-click a cursor insertion point. In the context menus, commands that are not available at that location in the SPS are disabled.

**Note:** Since the **Insert** commands are used for constructing the SPS, they are available in Design View only.

## Contents

The **Contents** command inserts a `( content )` placeholder at the cursor location point. There `( content )` placeholder can be inserted within two types of node, **element** and **attribute**, and it indicates that all children of the current node will be processed.

- If the current node is an element node, the node's children element nodes and text nodes will be processed. For the processing of children element nodes, global templates will be used if these exist. Otherwise the built-in template rule for elements will be used. For the processing of text nodes, the built-in template rule for text nodes will be used, the effect of which is to output the text. Effectively, the built-in template rule for elements, outputs the text of all descendant text nodes. It is important to note that the values of attributes will not be output when the `( content )` placeholder is used—unless a global template is defined for the attribute's parent element or one of its ancestors and the attribute is explicitly output, using either the `( content )` placeholder or any other content-rendering component.
- If the current node is an attribute node, the built-in template rule for the attribute's child text node will be used. This template copies the text of the text node to the output, effectively outputting the attribute's value.

The `( content )` placeholder can also be inserted for a node by placing the cursor inside the node tags, right-clicking, and selecting **Insert | Contents** or by clicking the **Insert Contents** icon in the [Insert Design Elements toolbar](#), and then clicking the location in the design where the element is to be inserted.

### Styling the contents

The `( content )` placeholder can be formatted by selecting it and using a predefined format and/or properties in Styles sidebar. This formatting is visible in the design, and, in the output, it will be applied to the contents of the node.

### Replacing contents

If another node from the schema tree is dropped into a node containing a `( content )` placeholder, then the existing `( content )` placeholder is replaced by the new node.

### Deleting contents

The `( content )` placeholder can be deleted by selecting it and pressing the **Delete** key on the keyboard.

**Note:** You can create an **empty template rule** by deleting the `( content )` placeholder of a node. An empty template rule is useful if you wish to define that some node have no template applied to it, i.e. produce no output.

## Rest of Contents

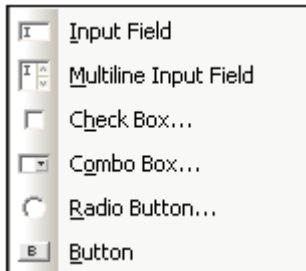
The **Rest of Contents** command inserts the `( rest-of-contents)` placeholder for that node. This placeholder represents the content of **unused child nodes** of the current node; it corresponds to the `xsl: apply-templates` rule of XSLT applied to the unused elements and text nodes of the current element. Note that templates are not applied for child attributes. the `( rest-of-contents)` placeholder can also be inserted for an element by placing the cursor inside the element tags, right-clicking, and selecting **Insert | Rest of Contents**.

Use the `( rest-of-contents)` placeholder in situations where you wish to process one child element in a specific way and apply templates to its siblings. It is important to apply templates to siblings in order to avoid the possibility that the siblings are not processed. This enables you to reach elements lower down in the document hierarchy.

The `( rest-of-contents)` placeholder can be deleted by selecting it and pressing the **Delete** key on the keyboard.

## Form Controls

Mousing over the **Form Controls** command rolls out a submenu (*screenshot below*) containing commands to insert various form controls ([data-entry devices](#)).

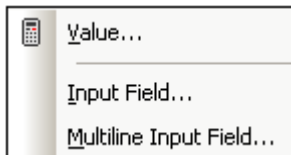


How to create each of these form controls is described in the section [Using Data-Entry Devices](#). After a form control has been created, its properties can be edited by selecting it and then editing the required property in the [Properties sidebar](#).

Form controls can also be inserted in the design by right-clicking at the insertion point and selecting **Insert | Contents**, or by clicking the respective Form Control icon in the [Insert Design Elements toolbar](#), and then clicking the location in the design where the element is to be inserted.

## Auto-Calculation

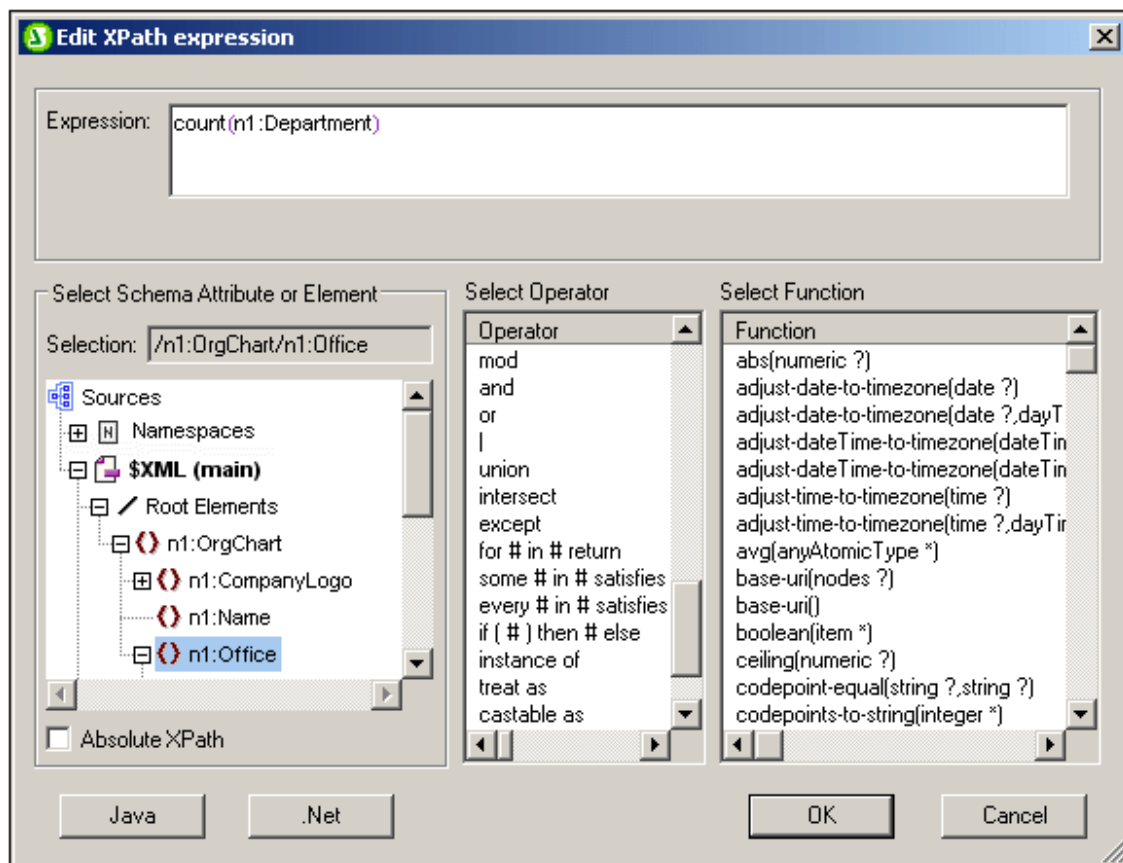
An **Auto-Calculation** uses an XPath expression to calculate a value. This value is displayed at the point where the Auto-Calculation is inserted. An Auto-Calculation can be inserted in the SPS as a text value, input field, or multiline input field. Place the cursor at the location where the Auto-Calculation is to be inserted, then either right-click or use the command in the **Insert** menu. When the cursor is placed over **Insert | Auto-Calculation**, a menu pops out (*screenshot below*), enabling you to choose how the Auto-Calculation should be inserted. Alternatively, you can use the Auto-Calculation icon in the [Insert Design Elements toolbar](#).



The value of the Auto-Calculation will be displayed accordingly in the output document.

### The XPath expression for the Auto-Calculation

On selecting how the Auto-Calculation should be represented, the [Edit XPath Expression dialog](#) (*screenshot below*) pops up.




The context node for the expression being built is highlighted in the schema tree in the pane at extreme left. You can enter the XPath expression directly in the text box, or you can double click an item (in any of the three panes) to insert that item. Nodes inserted from the schema tree in the left-hand pane are inserted relative to the context node (if the Absolute XPath check box is unchecked) or as an absolute expression starting from the document node (if the Absolute

XPath check box is checked).

After completing the XPath expression, click **OK** to finish inserting the Auto-Calculation.




## Paragraph, Special Paragraph

The **Paragraph** command  inserts an HTML paragraph `<p>` element around the selected component. A component is considered selected for this purpose when the entire node is selected (by clicking either of its tags) or when static text is selected. If the cursor is placed within static text, the paragraph element is inserted (start and end tags) at this point. A paragraph can also be inserted by using the **Insert Paragraph** icon in the [Insert Design Elements toolbar](#).

The **Special Paragraph** command allows you to assign a predefined format to the selected node. The available predefined formats can also be selected from the combo box in the toolbar.

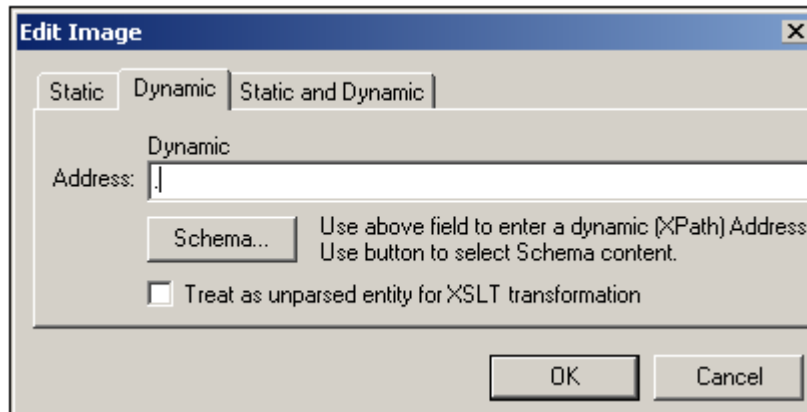
Each paragraph type has particular formatting features that can be used to advantage. Note that the `pre` format type enables carriage returns to be output as such instead of them being normalized to whitespace.

## Image

The **Image** command  allows you to insert an image using an image location address that either comes from the XML document (dynamic) or is entered by you directly in the SPS (static).

To insert an image, do the following:

1. Click **Insert | Image** or the Insert Image toolbar icon. The Insert Image dialog (*shown below*) appears. An image can also be inserted by using the **Insert Image** icon in the [Insert Design Elements toolbar](#).



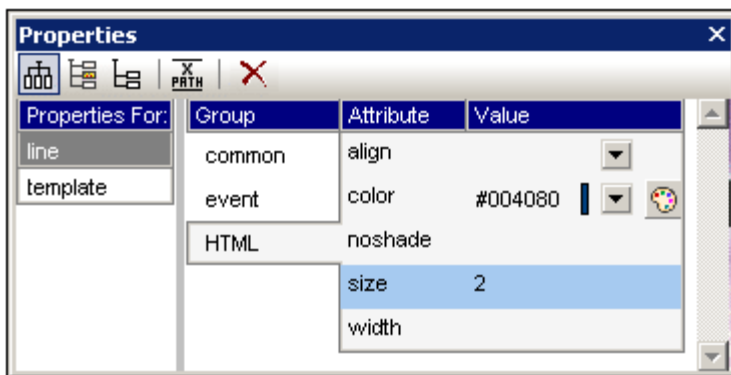
2. Select the required tab (Static, Dynamic, or Static and Dynamic), and enter the address of the image location and/or the XPath expression that locates the image address in the XML document. The screenshot above shows how a Static and Dynamic address is entered.

### Using unparsed entities

If the SPS is DTD-based and uses unparsed entities, then, for the dynamic part of an image address, the URI declared as the value of the unparsed entity can be used. For details of how to use unparsed entities, see [Unparsed Entity URIs](#).

## Horizontal Line

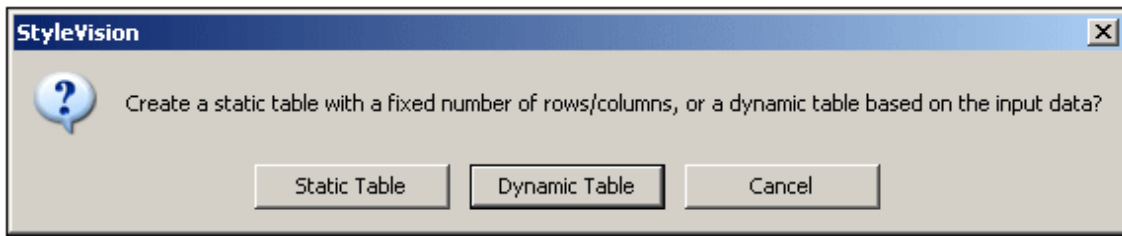
The **Horizontal Line** command inserts a horizontal line at the cursor insertion point. This command is not available when an SPS component is selected. To set properties for the horizontal line, select the line in the design, and in the Properties sidebar, select *line*, and specify values for properties in the *line* group (see screenshot below).




You can specify the following properties for the line: its `color`, `size` (thickness), `width` (in the design), `align`ment, and the `noshade` property.

## Table

The **Insert Table** command pops up the Create Table dialog (*screenshot below*).



According to whether you wish to create a static table or a dynamic table, select the appropriate button. How to proceed with each type of table is described in the section: [Static SPS Tables](#) and [Dynamic SPS Tables](#).

Note that tables can also be created by using the **Table | Insert Table** menu command and the  **Insert Table** icon in the Insert Design Elements toolbar.

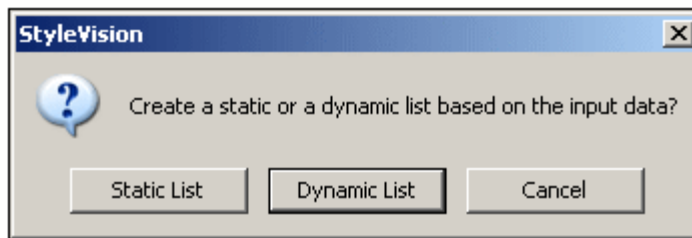
## Bullets and Numbering



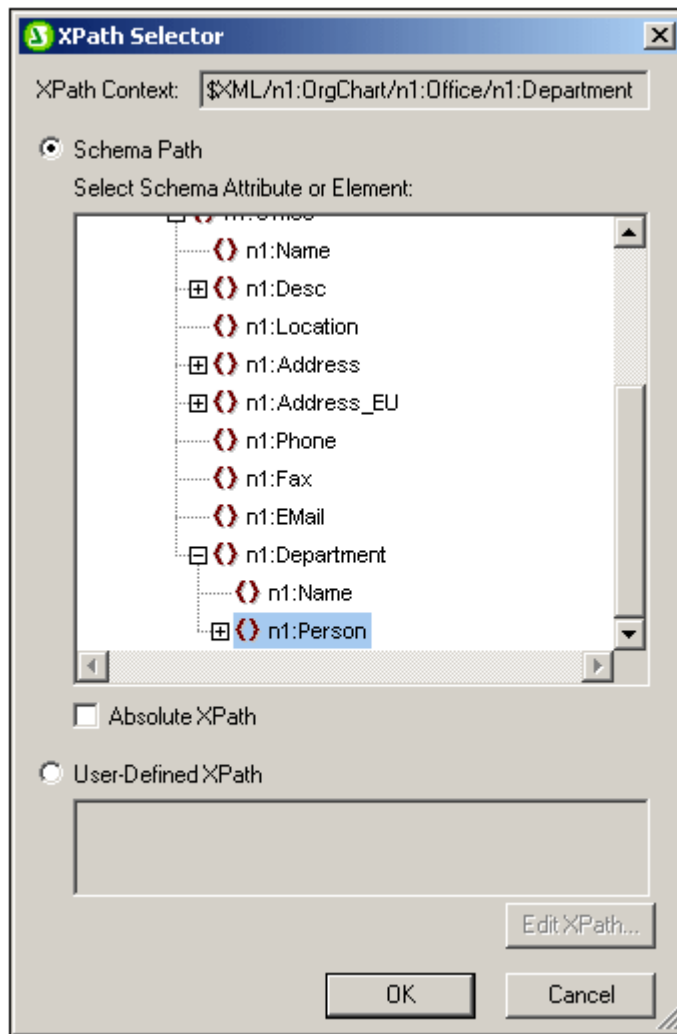
The **Bullets and Numbering** command allows you to create a list, either static or dynamic. The list items of a static list are entered in the SPS, while those of dynamic lists are the values of sibling nodes in the XML document.

To create a list do the following:

1. Place the cursor at the location where you wish to insert the list and click the **Bullets and Numbering** command. This pops up a dialog asking whether you wish to create a static list or dynamic list (*screenshot below*).

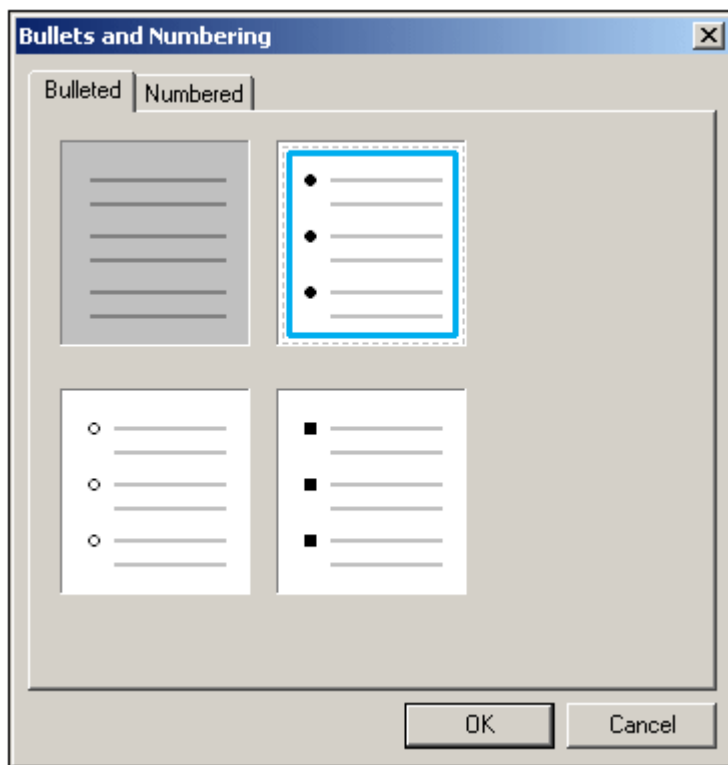


- If you click **Static List**, the Bullets and Numbering dialog described in Step 3 pops up. If you click **Dynamic List**, the XPath Selector dialog pops up (*screenshot below*).
2. In the XPath Selector dialog, notice that the XPath Context is the context of the insertion location, and that it cannot be changed in the dialog. Select the node that is to be created as the dynamic list. In the screenshot below, the context node is `n1:Department`, and the `n1:Person` node has been selected as the node to be created as a list. This means that the content of each `n1:Person` node will be created as an item in the list.



If you select the User-defined XPath option, then you can enter an XPath expression to select the node to be created as the dynamic table. Clicking **OK** pops up the Bullets and Numbering dialog described in the next step.

3. In the the Bullets and Numbering dialog, select the kind of list you wish to create. You can choose from a bulleted list (with a bullet, circle, or square as the list item marker), or a numbered list. Clicking **OK** creates the list with the type of list item marker you selected.



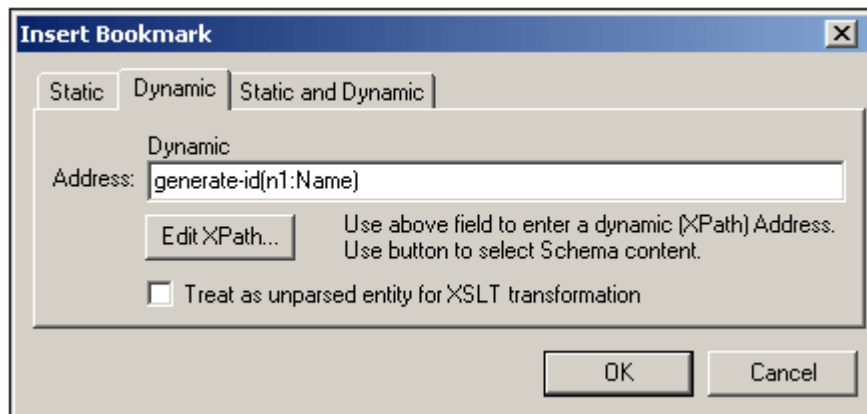
**Note:** A static list can also be created by placing the cursor at the location where the list is to be created and then clicking the Bulleted List icon or Numbered List icon in the [Insert Design Elements toolbar](#) as required. A dynamic list can also be created by dragging a node from the Schema Tree into the design.

## Bookmark

The **Bookmark** command allows you to insert a bookmark (or anchor) anywhere in the SPS. A bookmark can be referenced by a [Hyperlink](#).

To insert a bookmark, do the following:

1. Place the cursor at the location where you wish to create the bookmark.
2. Select **Insert | Bookmark**, or right-click and select **Insert | Bookmark**. The Insert Bookmark dialog appears.



3. In the [Insert Bookmark dialog](#), select a tab according to whether the name of the bookmark should be static (Static tab), dynamically obtained from the XML document (Dynamic), or composed of both static and dynamic parts (Static and Dynamic). In the screenshot above a dynamic bookmark is created, which has a name that is a unique ID for each `Name` child of the context node.
4. Click **OK**. The bookmark is defined.

**Note:** Bookmarks are created at the location specified in the design. If that location is within an element that repeats, a bookmark is created within each instance of that repeating element. If a static name is given, then each bookmark will have the same name. Therefore, it is better in such cases (of repeating elements) to give a dynamic name, which can be, for example, the name of a child element of the context node (the element within which the bookmark is created). If the node selected for the dynamic name might have the same content across multiple instances, then the uniqueness of the bookmark name can be ensured by using the `generate-id()` function to generate the name (see screenshot above). To reference such a bookmark, the same ID can be generated as the `href` value of a [hyperlink](#). In this case make sure you use the fragment-identifier `#` in front of the `generate-id()` function. The XPath expression would be: `concat('#', generate-id( nodeXXX ) )`.

You can edit the name of a bookmark after it has been created. Do this by right-clicking the bookmark and selecting the **Edit Bookmark Name** command from the context menu that appears. Alternatively, in the Properties sidebar, in the *Link* group of properties for the link, you can click the **Edit** button of the bookmark name attribute and make the required changes.

### Deleting a bookmark

To delete a bookmark, select it in the design and press the **Delete** key. Alternatively, select the link in the Properties sidebar and click the **Delete** button in the toolbar of the sidebar.



## Hyperlink



The **Hyperlink** command enables you to insert a link from any part of the output document (HTML) to an anchor within the output document or to an external document or document fragment.

To insert a hyperlink, do the following:

1. A hyperlink can be created around an existing design component or inserted at any point in the document (with the link text inserted subsequently). Select the SPS component or text fragment to be made into a hyperlink or place the cursor at the point where the link is to be inserted.
2. Click the Hyperlink icon in the toolbar, or select **Insert | Hyperlink**, or right-click and select **Insert | Hyperlink** (when no design component is selected) or **Enclose With | Hyperlink** (when a design component is selected). A hyperlink can also be inserted by using the **Insert Hyperlink** icon in the [Insert Design Elements toolbar](#).
3. In the [Insert Hyperlink dialog](#) that appears, specify the document or document fragment you wish to link to. If you are linking to a document fragment (that is, to a bookmark within a document, remember to include the # symbol. The URI for the hyperlink is specified in one of the following forms:
  - As a static address (entered directly; you can select an HTML file via the **Browse** button, and a fragment in the current document via the **Bookmark** button). Examples would be: `http://www.altova.com` (static Web page URI);  
`U:\documentation\index.html` (via Browse button); or `#top_of_page` (via Bookmark button).
  - As a dynamic address (which comes from a node in the XML document; you specify the node). An example would be a node such as `//otherdocs/doc1`. If the name of a bookmark has been generated using the `generate-id()` function, then the `href` of the hyperlink should be generated using the same `generate-id()` function. For information, see [Defining Hyperlinks](#).
  - As a combination of static and dynamic text for an address (you specify the static text and the XML document node). An example would be `www.altova.com -- department/name -- #intropara`.
4. Click **OK**. The hyperlink is created.

**Note:** When specifying the node for a dynamic hyperlink entry, you can enter the XPath expression as an absolute XPath expression by checking the Absolute Path check box. If this check box is not checked, the XPath expression for the node you select via the Schema button is entered as being relative to the currently selected component.

### Using unparsed entities

For the dynamic part of a hyperlink address, you can use the URI declared for an unparsed entity in the DTD—if you are using a DTD. For details of how to use unparsed entities, see [Using unparsed entity URIs](#).

### Removing a hyperlink

You can edit the `href` of a hyperlink after it has been created. Do this by right-clicking the hyperlink and selecting the **Edit URL** command. Alternatively, in the Properties sidebar, in the *Link* group of properties for the link, you can click the **Edit** button of the URL attribute and make the required changes.

**Deleting a hyperlink**

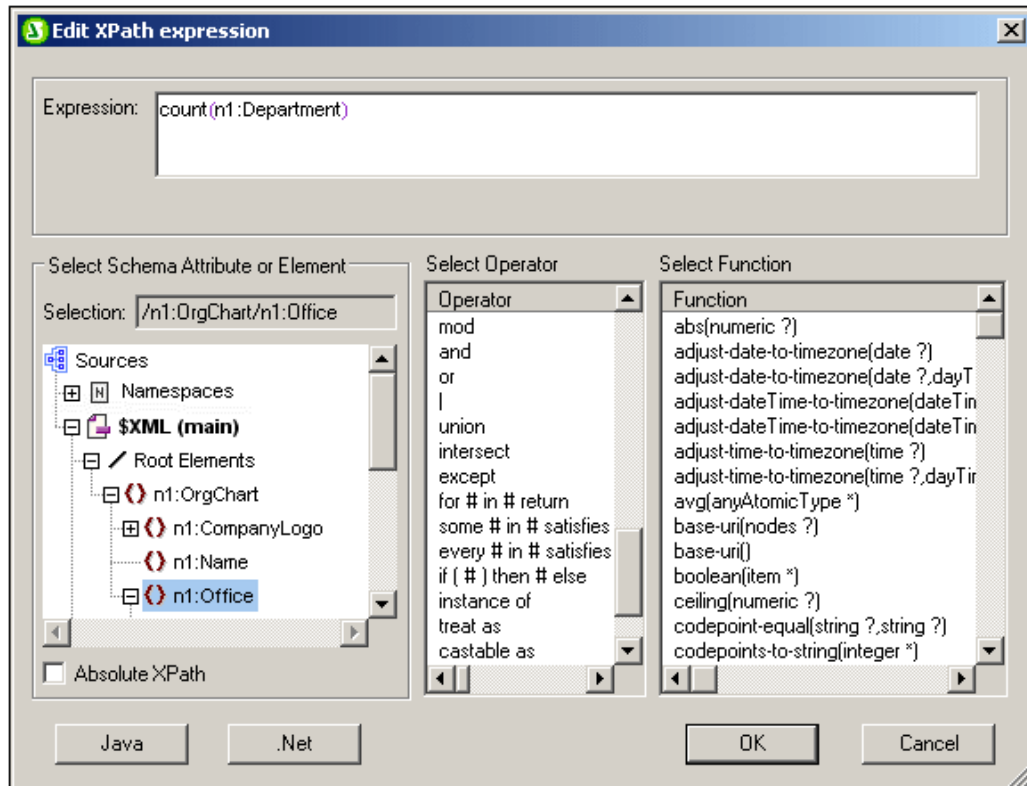
To delete a hyperlink, select it in the design and press the **Delete** key. Alternatively, select the link in the Properties sidebar and click the **Delete** button in the toolbar of the sidebar.

## Condition, Output-Based Condition

The **Condition** command enables you to insert a condition at the cursor point or around the selection. A condition consists of one or more branches, with each branch containing a specific set of processing rules. In this way, different sets of processing rules can be specified for different branches. For example, if the content of a node is the string `stop`, the branch can test this, and specify that the contents of the node be colored red; a second branch can test whether the contents of the node is the string `go`, and, if yes, color the contents of the node green; a third branch can specify that if the contents of the node is neither the string `stop` nor the string `go`, the contents of the node should be colored black.

To insert a condition, do the following:


1. Place the cursor at the desired location in the design or select the component around which the condition is to be inserted.
2. Select the menu command **Insert | Condition** or right-click and select the context menu command **Insert | Condition**.
3. In the [Edit XPath Expression dialog](#) that pops up (*screenshot below*), enter the XPath expression.



The context node for the expression being built is highlighted in the schema tree in the pane at extreme left. You can enter the XPath expression directly in the text box, or you can double click an item (in any of the three panes) to insert that item. Nodes inserted from the schema tree in the left-hand pane are inserted relative to the context node (if the Absolute XPath check box is unchecked) or as an absolute expression starting from the document node (if the Absolute XPath check box is checked).

4. Click **OK** to finish inserting the condition. The condition is created with one branch, the test for which is the XPath expression you entered.

### Editing the XPath expressions of branches

To edit the XPath expression of a branch, select the branch in Design View. Then, in the Properties sidebar, select `condition branch | when`. Click the **Edit** button  for the XPath item. This pops up the Edit XPath Expression dialog (*screenshot above*), in which you can edit the expression. Click **OK** when done.

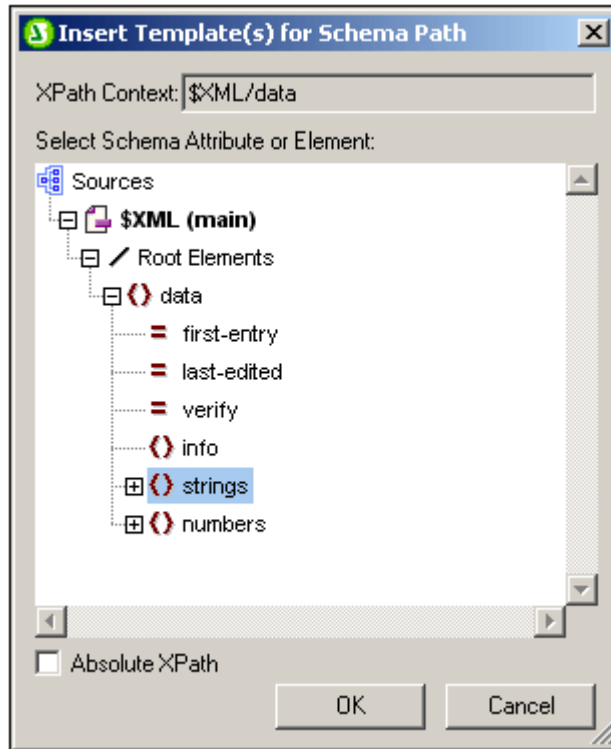
**Adding branches, changing the order of branches, and deleting branches**

To add new branches, change the order of branches, and delete branches, right-click the required branch and select the relevant item from the context menu.

## Template

The **Template** command inserts, at the cursor insertion point, an empty template for the schema tree node you select. Insert a template as follows.

1. Place the cursor in the design at the location where the template is to be inserted.
2. Click the **Insert | Template** command. This pops up the Insert Template dialog ( *screenshot below*).



3. The XPath Context field contains the context node of the cursor insertion point and will be the context node for the template when it is created. Select the node for which you wish to create the template. In the screenshot above the `strings` node is selected as the node for which the template is being created.
4. Click **OK** to finish.

An empty template for the selected node will be created (in the screenshot below, an empty template for the `strings` node has been created).



## User-Defined Template

The **User-Defined Template** command inserts, at the cursor insertion point, an empty template that selects a node the user specifies in an XPath expression. Insert a user-defined template as follows.

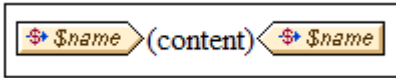
1. Place the cursor in the design at the location where the template is to be inserted.
2. Click the **Insert | User-Defined Template** command. This pops up the [Edit XPath Expression dialog](#).
3. Enter the XPath expression to select the node you want. There are a few points to note in this connection: (i) The XPath expression will be evaluated in the context of the node within which the user-defined template is being created; (ii) The XPath expression can select any node anywhere in the document as well as in another XML document.
4. After you have entered the XPath expression, click **OK** to finish.

An empty user-defined template for the targeted node will be created.

For more detailed information, see the section, [SPS File: Contents | User-Defined Templates](#).

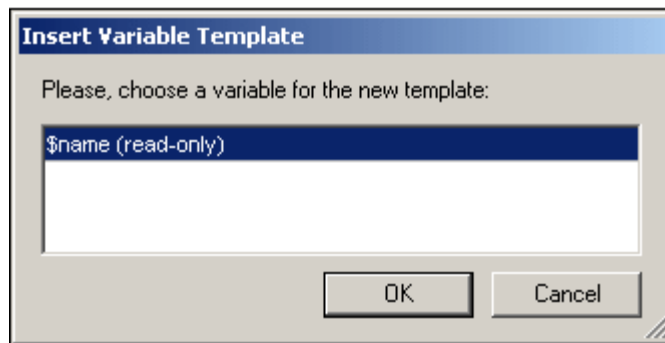
## Variable Template

A **Variable Template** is a template that targets a variable and, by default outputs its content. It is inserted with the **Insert | Variable Template** or **Enclose with | Variable** command, which inserts, at the cursor insertion point, a template for a variable defined in the SPS. The variable template (*screenshot below*) contains a `content` placeholder by default, and this serves to output the contents of the variable. You can insert additional content (static as well as dynamic) in the variable template as required, or modify it as you would any other template.



To insert a variable template, do the following:

1. Place the cursor in the design at the location where the template is to be inserted.
2. Click the **Insert | Variable Template** command. This pops up the Insert Variable Template dialog (*screenshot below*).



3. The dialog contains a list of all the [user-declared parameters and variables](#) defined in the SPS. Select the variable for which you wish to add a variable template.
4. Click **OK** to finish.

## Layout Container, Layout Box, Line

The **Insert | Layout Container** command enables a Layout Container to be inserted anywhere in the design. A Layout Box and a Line can be inserted in a Layout Container, and both these commands are enabled only when a Layout Container is selected.

Layout Containers, Layout Boxes, and Lines can also be inserted via the respective icons in the [Insert Design Elements toolbar](#). To insert via the toolbar icons, you must first select the appropriate toolbar icon and then click in the design at the location where you wish to insert the layout item.

For a detailed description of Layout modules and how to insert and use them in the design, see the section [Layout Modules](#).



## Table of Contents

Mousing over the **Table of Contents** command rolls out a submenu containing commands to insert various commands relating to the creation of a Table of Contents (TOC) template, TOC bookmarks, and a design document structure for the TOC.

The list of commands is as follows. For the details of how to use them click on the respective links, which will take you to the section on how to use that particular TOC component.

- [Insert Table of Contents](#)
- [TOC Bookmark](#)
- [TOC Bookmark \(Wizard\)](#)
- [TOC Reference](#)
- [TOC Reference | Entry Text / Leader / Page Reference](#)
- [Hierarchical Numbering](#)
- [Sequential Numbering](#)
- [Level](#)
- [Level Reference](#)
- [Template Serves as Level](#)

**Note:** These commands are also available as commands in a context menu, depending on where you right click in the design.

## Design Fragment

Mousing over the **Design Fragment** command rolls out a submenu containing all the Design Fragments currently in the design. Clicking a Design Fragment in the submenu inserts it at the cursor insertion point.

## User-Defined Item

Mousing over the **Insert | User-Defined Item** command causes a sub-menu to roll out that contains commands to insert a [User-Defined Element](#) or a [User-Defined XML Text Block](#). How to use these two components is described in the section [SPS File: Content | User-Defined Elements, XML Text Blocks](#).

## 14.7 Enclose With Menu

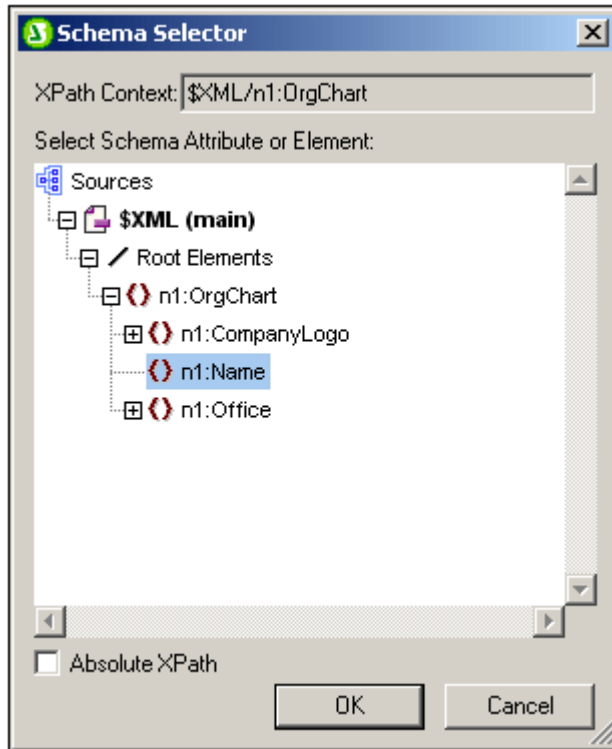
The **Enclose with** menu provides commands enabling you to enclose a selection in the design with a variety of design components. Some of these commands are available as [toolbar icons](#) that enable you to insert the component in the design (equivalent commands are available in the [Insert menu](#)). Additionally, **Enclose with** menu commands are also available via context menus which appear when, in the SPS design, you right-click a selection. In the menus and context menus, commands that are not available at that location in the SPS are disabled.

**Note:** Since the **Enclose with** commands are used for constructing the SPS, they are available in Design View only.

## Template

The **Enclose with | Template** command encloses the selected design component or text with a template for the schema tree node you select. Do this as follows.

1. Select the design component or text you wish to enclose with a template.
2. Click the **Enclose with | Template** command. This pops up the Schema Selector dialog (*screenshot below*).



3. The XPath Context field contains the context node of the selection and will be the context node of the template when it is created. Select the node for which you wish to create the template. In the screenshot above the `n1:Name` node is selected as the node for which the template is being created.
4. Click **OK** to finish.

A template for the selected node will be created around the selection.

## User-Defined Template

The **Enclose with | User-Defined Template** command encloses the selection with a template for a node the user specifies in an XPath expression. Insert a user-defined template as follows.

1. Select the component in the design that you wish to enclose with a user-defined template.
2. Click the **Enclose with | User-Defined Template** command. This pops up the [Edit XPath Expression](#) dialog.
3. Enter the XPath expression to select the node you want. There are a few points to note in this connection: (i) The XPath expression will be evaluated in the context of the node within which the user-defined template is being created; (ii) The XPath expression can select any node anywhere in the document as well as in another XML document.
4. After you have entered the XPath expression, click **OK** to finish.

A user-defined template for the targeted node will be created around the selection.

For more information, see the section, [SPS File: Structure | Templates and Design Fragments | Variable Templates](#).

## Variable Templates


The **Enclose with | Variable Template** command encloses the selection with a template for a variable defined in the SPS design.

1. Select the component in the design that you wish to enclose with a variable template.
2. Click the **Enclose with | Variable Template** command. This pops up the [Enclose with Variable Template dialog](#).
3. From the list in the dialog, select the variable for which you wish to create the template.
4. Click **OK** to finish.

A variable template will be created around the selection.

For more information, see the section, [SPS File: Structure | Templates and Design Fragments | Variable Templates](#).

## Paragraph, Special Paragraph

The **Paragraph** command  inserts an HTML paragraph `<p>` element around the selected component. A component is considered selected for this purpose when the entire node is selected (by clicking either of its tags) or when static text is selected. If the cursor is placed within static text, the paragraph element is inserted (start and end tags) at this point. A paragraph can also be inserted by using the **Insert Paragraph** icon in the [Insert Design Elements toolbar](#).

The **Special Paragraph** command allows you to assign a predefined format to the selected node. The available predefined formats can also be selected from the combo box in the toolbar.

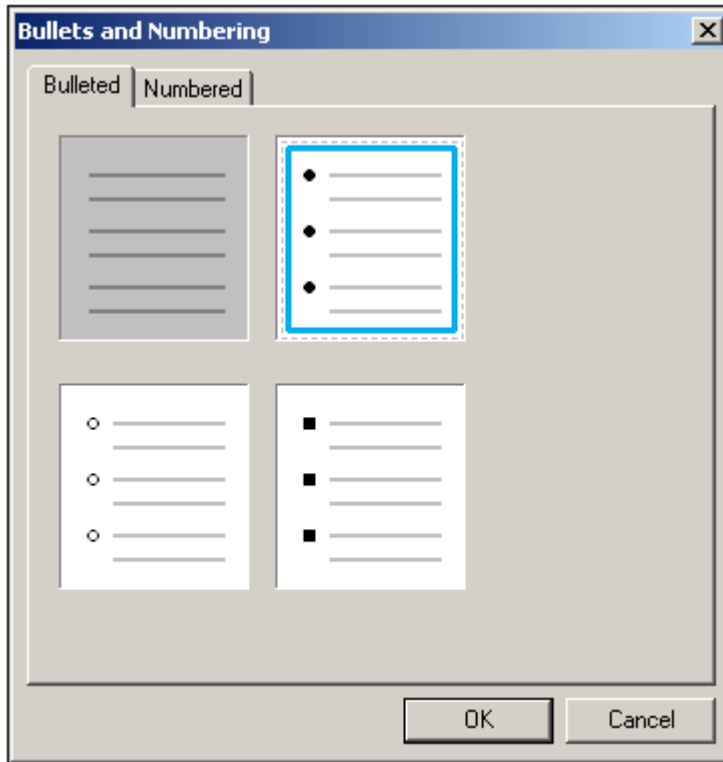
Each paragraph type has particular formatting features that can be used to advantage. Note that the `pre` format type enables carriage returns to be output as such instead of them being normalized to whitespace.



## Bullets and Numbering

The **Enclose with | Bullets and Numbering** command creates a static list and list items around the selection. If the selection contains a CR-LF, carriage-return and/or linefeed (inserted by pressing the **Enter** key), then separate list items are created for each text fragment separated by a CR-LF.

When this command is selected, the Bullets and Numbering dialog (*screenshot below*) pops up.



Select the list item marker you want and click **OK**. A list is created. The number of list items in the list corresponds to the number of CR-LFs (carriage-returns and/or linefeeds) in the selection. You can add more list items to the list by pressing **Enter**.

**Note:** You can obtain the same results by selecting static content and then clicking the Bulleted List or Numbered List icons in the [Insert Design Elements toolbar](#).

## Bookmarks and Hyperlinks

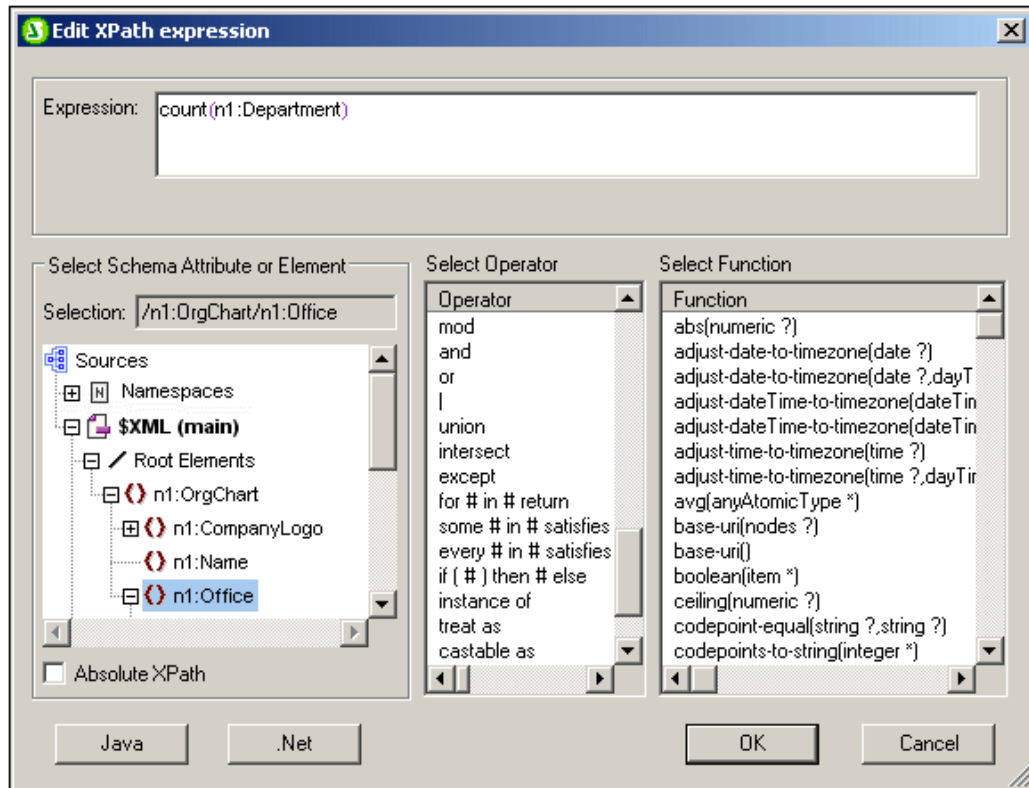
The **Enclose with | Bookmark** and **Enclose With | Hyperlink** commands are enabled when some text or component in the SPS design is selected. These commands enable a bookmark and hyperlink, respectively, to be created around the selection. For more information about how bookmarks and hyperlinks work and how to create them, see the section [Advanced Features | Table of Contents, Referencing, Bookmarks](#).

## Condition, Output-Based Condition

The **Condition** command enables you to insert a condition at the cursor point or around the selection. A condition consists of one or more branches, with each branch containing a specific set of processing rules. In this way, different sets of processing rules can be specified for different branches. For example, if the content of a node is the string `stop`, the branch can test this, and specify that the contents of the node be colored red; a second branch can test whether the contents of the node is the string `go`, and, if yes, color the contents of the node green; a third branch can specify that if the contents of the node is neither the string `stop` nor the string `go`, the contents of the node should be colored black.

To insert a condition, do the following:


1. Place the cursor at the desired location in the design or select the component around which the condition is to be inserted.
2. Select the menu command **Insert | Condition** or right-click and select the context menu command **Insert | Condition**.
3. In the [Edit XPath Expression dialog](#) that pops up (*screenshot below*), enter the XPath expression.



The context node for the expression being built is highlighted in the schema tree in the pane at extreme left. You can enter the XPath expression directly in the text box, or you can double click an item (in any of the three panes) to insert that item. Nodes inserted from the schema tree in the left-hand pane are inserted relative to the context node (if the Absolute XPath check box is unchecked) or as an absolute expression starting from the document node (if the Absolute XPath check box is checked).

4. Click **OK** to finish inserting the condition. The condition is created with one branch, the test for which is the XPath expression you entered.

## Editing the XPath expressions of branches

To edit the XPath expression of a branch, select the branch in Design View. Then, in the Properties sidebar, select `condition branch | when`. Click the **Edit** button  for the XPath item. This pops up the Edit XPath Expression dialog (*screenshot above*), in which you can edit the expression. Click **OK** when done.

**Adding branches, changing the order of branches, and deleting branches**

To add new branches, change the order of branches, and delete branches, right-click the required branch and select the relevant item from the context menu.

## TOC Bookmarks and TOC Levels

When a component in the design is selected, it can be enclosed with one or more relevant Table of Contents (TOC) components. The list of TOC commands is as follows. For the details of how to use them click on the respective links, which will take you to the section on how to use that particular TOC component.

- [TOC Bookmark](#)
- [TOC Bookmark \(Wizard\)](#)
- [Level](#)
- [Level Reference](#)

**Note:** These commands are also available as commands in a context menu, depending on where you right click in the design.

## User-Defined Element

The **Enclose with | User-Defined Element** command creates a [User-Defined Element](#) around the selection in the design. How to use user-defined elements is described in the section [SPS File: Content | User-Defined Elements](#).

## 14.8 Table Menu

The **Table** menu provides commands enabling you to insert a static or dynamic table and to change the structure and properties of static and dynamic tables. You can edit table structure by appending, inserting, deleting, joining, and splitting rows and columns. Properties of the table as well as of individual columns, rows, and cells are defined using [CSS styles](#) and [HTML properties for tables and its sub-components](#).

The Table commands are available in the **Table** menu (*see list below*) and as icons in the [Table toolbar](#). The availability of various table commands depends on the current cursor position. A table can be inserted at any location in the SPS by clicking the [Insert Table](#) command. To edit the table structure, place the cursor in the appropriate cell, column, or row, and select the required editing command. To edit a formatting property, place the cursor in the appropriate cell, column, row, or table, and, in the [Styles sidebar](#) and/or [Properties sidebar](#), define the required property for that table component.

The following commands are available in the Table menu:

- [Insert Table, Delete Table](#)
- [Add Table Headers, Footers](#)
- [Append/Insert Row/Column](#)
- [Delete Row, Column](#)
- [Join Cell Left, Right, Below, Above](#)
- [Split Cell Horizontally, Vertically](#)
- [View Cell Bounds, Table Markup](#)
- [Table Properties](#)
- [Vertical Alignment of Cell Content](#)

### Headers and footers

When you create a dynamic table, you can specify whether you wish to include headers and/or footers. (Footers are allowed only when the table grows top–down.) You can create a header and footer in a static table by manually inserting a top and bottom row, respectively. The structures of headers and footers in both static and dynamic tables can be modified by splitting and joining cells.


### Navigating in tables

Use the Tab and arrow keys to navigate the table cells.

### Adding cell content


Any type of SPS component can be inserted as the content of a cell. The component should be formatted using the standard formatting tools.

## Insert Table, Delete Table

The **Insert Table** command  inserts an empty static table into the design tab. Selecting this command opens a dialog box in which you select whether you wish to create a static or dynamic table.

- If you choose to create a static table, a dialog prompts you for the size of the table (in terms of its rows and columns).
- If you choose to create a dynamic, the XPath Selector dialog pops up, in which you can select the node that is to be created as a dynamic table. On clicking **OK**, the Create Dynamic Table dialog pops up, in which you can select the child nodes you wish to display as the fields of each table item. For details, see [Creating dynamic tables](#).

You can change the structure of a table subsequently by appending, inserting, and deleting rows and/or columns.

The **Delete Table** command  deletes the static or dynamic table in which the cursor is.







## Add Table Headers, Footers


Table headers can appear as a header row (above the table body) or as a header column (to the left of the table body, though markup-wise a header column might be placed inside the table body). Similarly, table footers can appear as a footer row (below the table body) or as a footer column (to the right of the table body, though markup-wise a footer might be placed inside the table body).


**Note:** In the HTML output since table headers are enclosed in `th` elements, they appear bold (because the bold formatting is inherent in the `th` element).


The Add Table Header and Add Table Footer commands add table headers and footers as columns and rows, as follows:


-  **Add Table Header Column:** Adds a header column to the left of the table body.
-  **Add Table Footer Column:** Adds a footer column to the right of the table body.
-  **Add Table Header Row:** Adds a header row above the table body.
-  **Add Table Footer Row:** Adds a footer row below the table body.

## Append/Insert Row/Column


The **Append Row** command  appends a row to the static or dynamic table in which the cursor is.


The **Insert Row** command  inserts a row above the row in which the cursor is. This command applies to both static and dynamic tables.

The **Append Column** command  appends a column to the static or dynamic table in which the cursor is.


The **Insert Column** command  inserts a column to the left of the column in which the cursor is. This command applies to both static and dynamic tables.


## Delete Row, Column


The **Delete Row** command  deletes the row in which the cursor is. This command applies to both static and dynamic tables.


The **Delete Column** command  deletes the column in which the cursor is. This command applies to both static and dynamic tables.

## Join Cell Left, Right, Below, Above


The **Join Cell Left** command  joins the cell in which the cursor is to the adjacent cell on the left. The contents of both cells are concatenated in the new cell. All property values of the cell to the left are passed to the new cell. This command applies to both static and dynamic tables.


The **Join Cell Right** command  joins the cell in which the cursor is to the cell on the right. The contents of both cells are concatenated in the new cell. All property values of the cell to the left are passed to the new cell. This command applies to both static and dynamic tables.

The **Join Cell Below** command  joins the cell in which the cursor is to the cell below. The contents of both cells are concatenated in the new cell. All property values of the cell on the top are passed to the new cell. This command applies to both static and dynamic tables.

The **Join Cell Above** command  joins the cell in which the cursor is to the cell above. The contents of both cells are concatenated in the new cell. All property values of the cell on top are passed to the new cell. This command applies to both static and dynamic tables.

## Split Cell Horizontally, Vertically

The **Split Cell Horizontally** command  creates a new cell to the right of the cell in which the cursor is. The contents of the original cell stay in the original cell. All properties of the original cell are passed to the new cell. This command applies to both static and dynamic tables.

The **Split Cell Vertically** command  creates a new cell below the cell in which the cursor is. The contents of the original cell remain in the upper cell. All properties of the original cell are passed to the new cell. This command applies to both static and dynamic tables.

## View Cell Bounds, Table Markup

The **View Cell Bounds** and **View Table Markup** commands display the boundaries of cells and table column and row markup, respectively. With these two options switched on, you can better understand the structure of the table. Switched off, however, you can visualize the table more accurately.



The **View Cell Bounds** command toggles the display of table boundaries (borders) on and off for tables that have a table border value of 0.

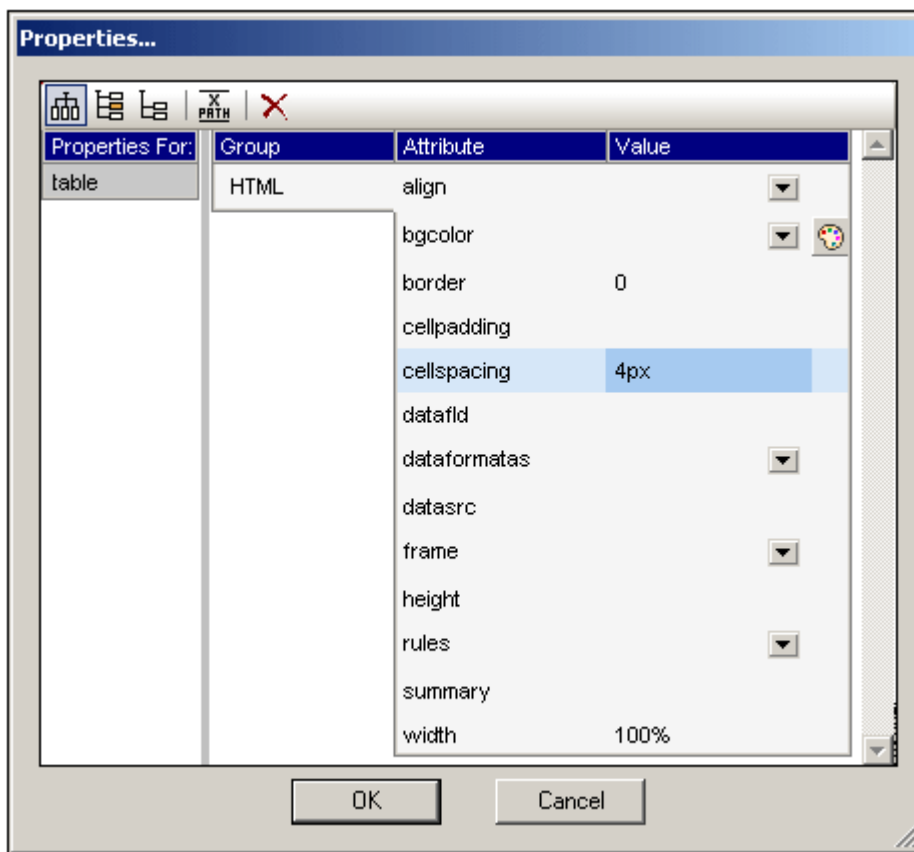


The **View Table Markup** command toggles the display of the blue column and row markers on and off.

## Table Properties



The **Table Properties** command is enabled when the cursor is placed inside a [static or dynamic table](#). Clicking the command, pops up the Properties sidebar, with the *Table* component selected (*screenshot below*).



You can now edit the properties of the table. Click **OK** when done.

## Vertical Alignment of Cell Content

Commands to set the vertical alignment of cell content are available as icons in the Table toolbar. Place the cursor anywhere in the cell, and click the required icon.



**Vertically Align Top** vertically aligns cell content with the top of the cell.



**Vertically Align Middle** vertically aligns cell content with the middle of the cell.



**Vertically Align Bottom** vertically aligns cell content with the bottom of the cell.



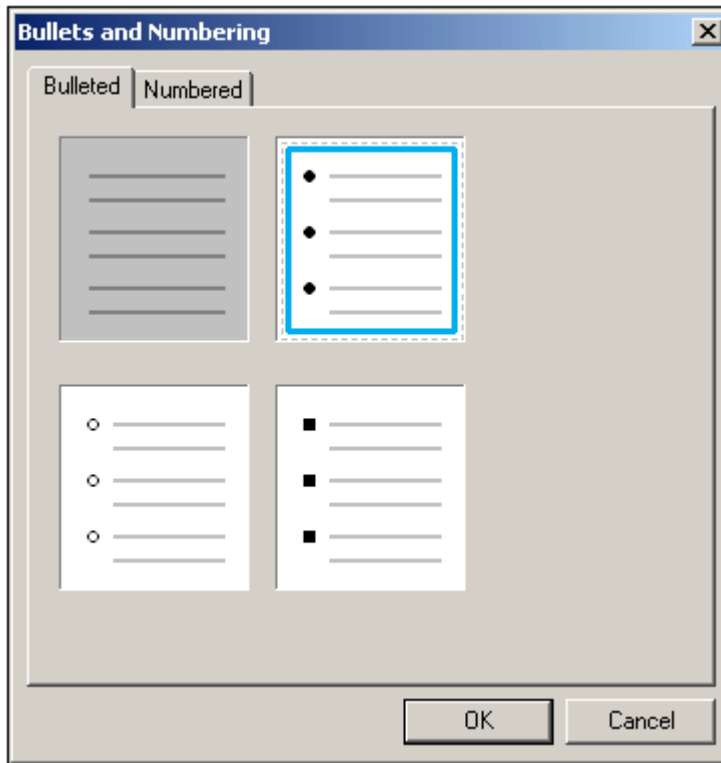
## 14.9 Properties Menu

The **Properties** menu contains commands that enable you to insert lists and define datatype formats for the [input formatting](#) feature. The description of the commands is organized into the following sub-sections:

- [Bullets and Numbering](#) command, to insert lists.
- [Predefined Format Strings](#) command, to define numeric datatype formats for a given SPS.

## Edit Bullets and Numbering

The **Edit Bullets and Numbering** command enables you to insert a list at the cursor location. Clicking the command pops up the Bullets and Numbering dialog (*screenshot below*), in which you can select the list style; in the case of a numbered list, the initial number can also be specified.



## Predefined Value Formatting Strings

Any (content) placeholder, input field, or Auto-Calculation which is of a numeric, date, time, dateTime or duration datatype can be assigned a custom format with the [Value Formatting](#) dialog. In the Value Formatting dialog, you can either create a format directly or select from a drop-down list of predefined formats.

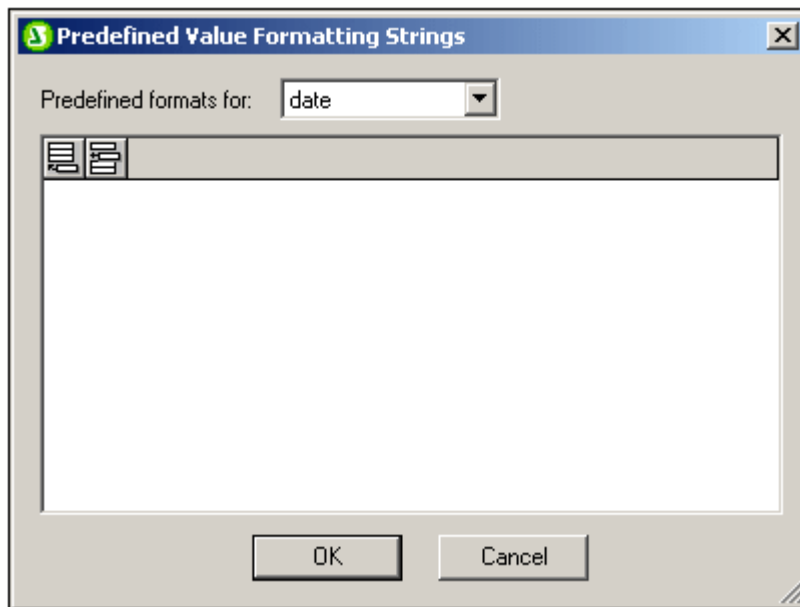
The predefined formats that are available in the dropdown list are of two types:

- Predefined formats that have been delivered with StyleVision, and
- Predefined formats that the user creates with the **Predefined Value Formatting Strings** command (this command). When a user creates predefined value formats, these are created for the currently open SPS file—not for the entire application. After the user creates predefined value formats, the SPS file must be saved in order for the formats to be available when the file is next opened.

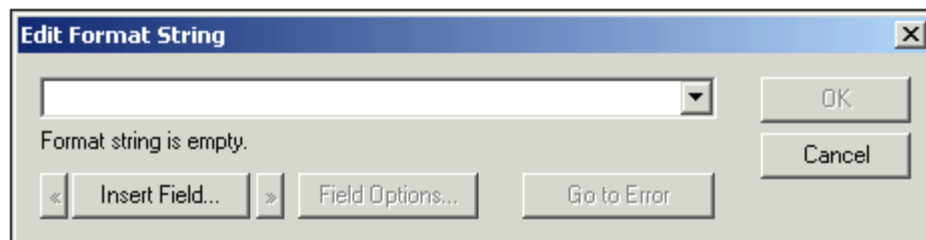
### Creating a predefined value formatting string

A predefined value format string is specific to a datatype. To create a predefined value formatting string, do the following:

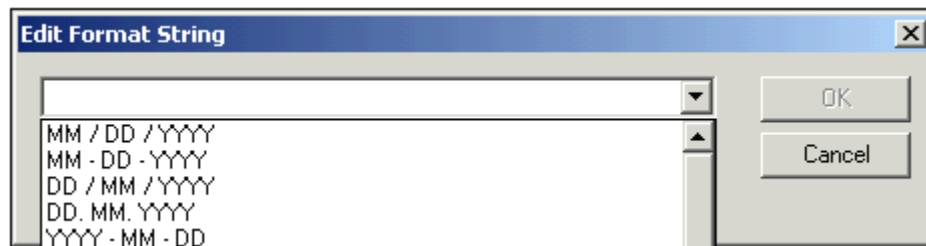
1. Click **Properties | Predefined Value Formatting Strings**. The following dialog appears:



2. Select a datatype from the drop-down list in the combo box, and then click the **Append** or **Insert** icon as required. This pops up the Edit Format String dialog:



If you click the down arrow of the combo box, a drop-down list with the StyleVision -supplied predefined formats for that datatype is displayed (shown in the screenshot below).



You can either select a format from the list and modify it, or you can enter a format directly into the input field. The syntax for defining a format is explained in the section, [Value Formatting](#). If you need help with the syntax, use the **Insert Field** and **Field Options** buttons.

3. After you have defined a format, click **OK** and save the SPS file. The formatting string is added to the list of predefined formats for that datatype, and it will appear as an option in the Value Formatting dialog (of the current SPS file) when the selected element is of the corresponding datatype.

**Note:**

- You can add as many custom format strings for different datatypes as you want.
- The sequential order of format strings in the Predefined Format Strings dialog determines the order in which these format strings appear in the Value Formatting dialog. The customized format strings appear above the supplied predefined formats.
- To edit a custom format string, double-click the entry in the Predefined Format Strings dialog.
- To delete a custom format string, select it, and click the **Delete** icon in the Predefined Value Formatting Strings dialog.

## 14.10 Tools Menu

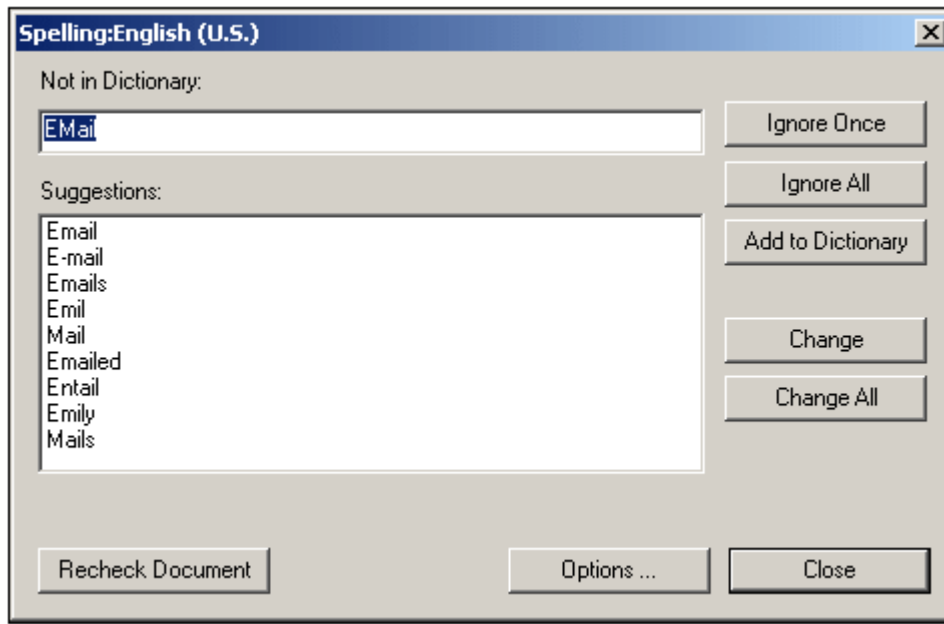
The **Tools** menu contains the spell-check command and commands that enable you to customize StyleVision.

The description of the Tools menu commands is organized into the following sub-sections:

- [Spelling](#)
- [Spelling Options](#)
- [Global Resources](#)
- [Active Configuration](#)
- [Customize](#)

## Spelling

The **Spelling (Shift+F7)** command runs a spelling check on the SPS (in Design View). On clicking this command, the dialog shown below appears. Words that are not present in the selected dictionary are displayed, in document order and one at a time, in the Not in Dictionary field of the dialog and highlighted in the Design Document.



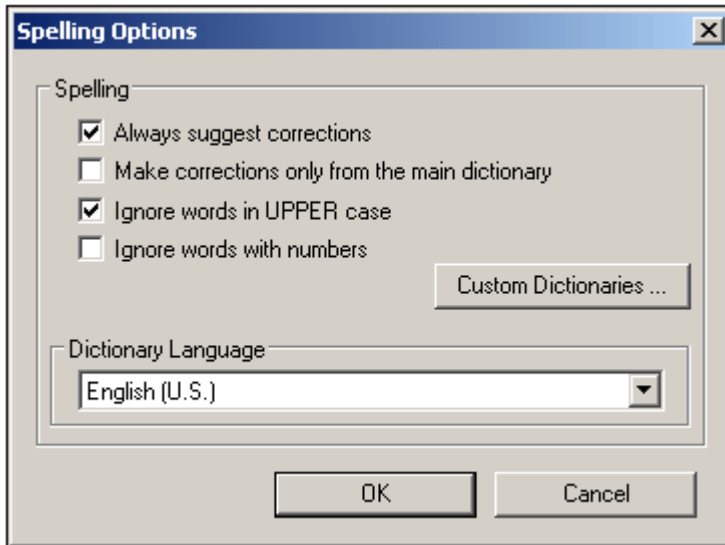
You can then select an entry from the list in the Suggestions pane and click **Change** or **Change All** to change the highlighted instance of this spelling or all its instances, respectively. (Double-clicking a word in the Suggestions list causes it to replace the unknown word.) Alternatively, you can ignore *this instance* of the unknown word (**Ignore Once**); or ignore *all instances* of this unknown word (**Ignore All**); or add this unknown word to the (default user) dictionary (**Add to Dictionary**). Adding the unknown word to the dictionary causes the spell-checker to treat the word as correct and to pass on to the next word not found in the dictionary.

After all the words not found in the dictionary have been displayed in turn, and an action taken for each, the spell-checker displays the message: "The spelling check is complete." You can then recheck the document from the beginning (**Recheck Document**) or close the dialog (**Close**).

The **Options** button opens the [Spelling Options](#) dialog, in which you can specify options for the spelling check.

## Spelling Options

The **Spelling options** command opens a dialog box (shown below) in which you specify options for the spell check.



### *Always suggest corrections*

Selecting this option causes suggestions from the current dictionary (main dictionary plus listed custom dictionaries) to be displayed in the Suggestions list box. Otherwise no suggestions will be shown.

### *Make corrections only from main dictionary:*

Selecting this option causes only the main dictionary to be used; none of the custom dictionaries is used. Additionally, the Custom Dictionaries... button is disabled, which prevents editing of the custom dictionaries.

### *Ignore words in UPPER case:*

Selecting this option causes all upper case words to be ignored.

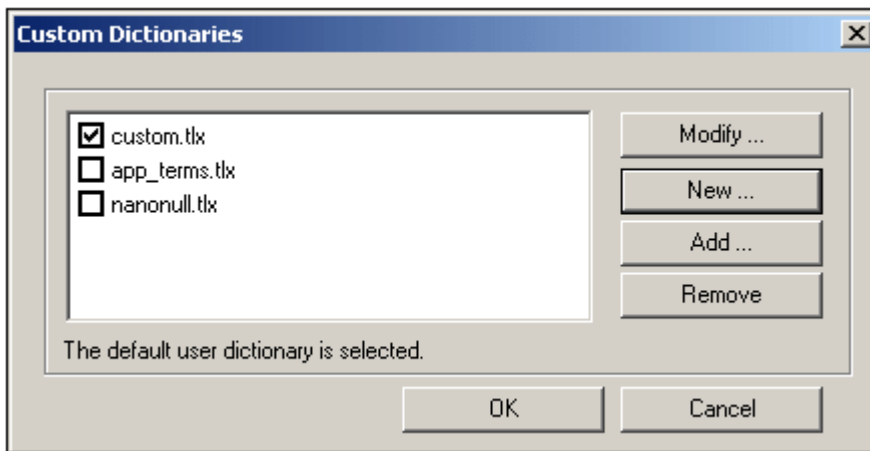
### *Ignore words with numbers:*

Selecting this option causes all words containing numbers to be ignored.

## **Dictionaries**

Each spell-checking round uses the current dictionary. The current dictionary consists of one uneditable main dictionary and the listed custom dictionaries. The number of available main dictionaries is fixed. You select a main dictionary from the drop-down menu in the Dictionary Language combo box. To edit the list of custom dictionaries used in a spell-check, or to edit the contents of a custom dictionary, click the Custom Dictionaries... button and select the required custom dictionary from the list of custom dictionaries.

When you click the **Custom Dictionaries** button, the following dialog appears:



### Editing the Custom Dictionaries list

The listed custom dictionaries are part of the current dictionary.

- To add an existing custom dictionary to the list, click the **Add** button; then browse for the required dictionary, and select it.
- To remove a custom dictionary from the list (and, therefore, from the current dictionary), select the dictionary to be removed and click the **Remove** button. This causes the dictionary to be removed from the list. It is, however, not deleted, and can be added to the list subsequently.
- To create a new custom dictionary and add it to the list, click the **New** button, open the folder in which the new dictionary is to be created, and give the new dictionary a name. This file must have a `.tlx` suffix.

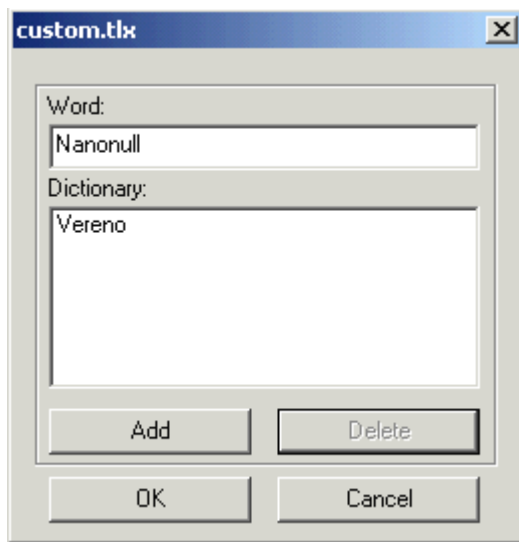
When you start a spell check, all dictionaries listed in the Custom Dictionaries list box are searched. If you want to limit the search to specific dictionaries, use the Remove command to remove from the list those dictionaries you do not want searched.

The **default user dictionary** is the custom dictionary to which unknown words encountered in a spell-check are added when you click the Add to Dictionary command (during the spell-check). Select the default user dictionary by clicking the check box next to the dictionary you wish to make the default user dictionary.

### Modifying the contents of a custom dictionary

To modify the content of a custom dictionary, click the custom dictionary to be modified, and click **Modify**. This opens the dictionary editor (shown below for the dictionary `custom.tlx`).



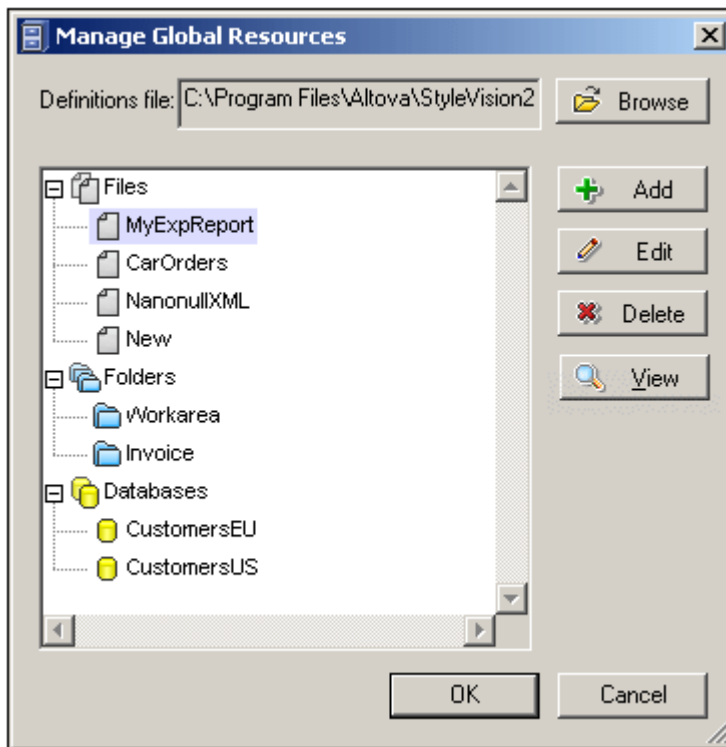


You can now add words to the dictionary and delete words. To add a word, place the cursor in the Word input field, enter the word, and click Add. To delete a word, select the word in the Dictionary pane, and click Delete.

## Global Resources

The **Global Resources** command pops up the Altova Global Resources dialog (*screenshot below*), in which you can:

- Specify the Altova Global Resources XML File to use for global resources.
- Add file, folder, and database global resources (or aliases)
- Specify various configurations for each global resource (alias). Each configuration maps to a specific resource.

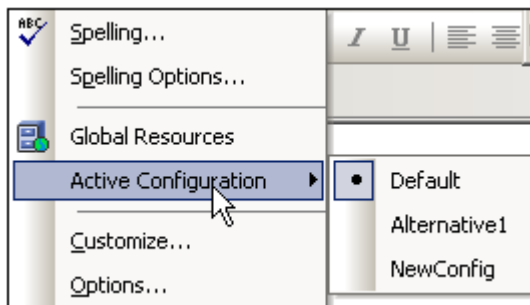


How to define global resources is described in detail in the section, [Defining Global Resources](#).

**Note:** The Altova Global Resources dialog can also be accessed via the [Global Resources toolbar](#) (**View | Toolbars | Global Resources**).

## Active Configuration

Mousing over the **Active Configuration** menu item rolls out a submenu containing all the configurations defined in the currently active [Global Resources XML File](#) (screenshot below).



The currently active configuration is indicated with a bullet. In the screenshot above the currently active configuration is `Default`. To change the active configuration, select the configuration you wish to make active.

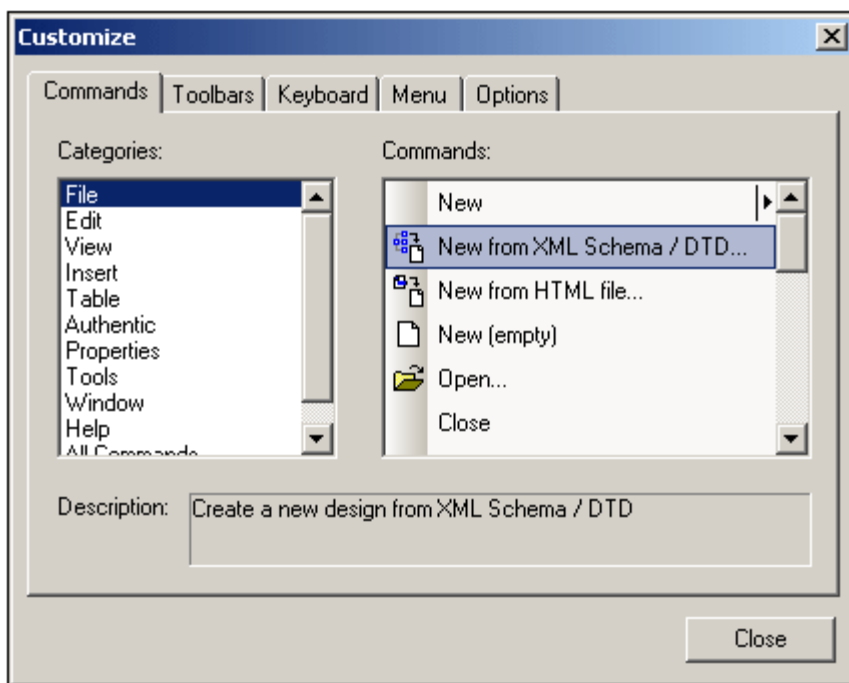
**Note:** The active configuration can also be selected via the [Global Resources toolbar](#) (**View | Toolbars | Global Resources**).

## Customize

The customize command lets you customize StyleVision to suit your personal needs.

### Commands

The **Commands** tab of the Customize dialog allows you to place individual commands in the menu bar and the toolbar.



**To add a command** to the menu bar or toolbar, select the command in the Commands pane of the Commands tab, and drag it to the menu bar or toolbar. When the cursor is placed over a valid position an I-beam appears, and the command can be dropped at this location. If the location is invalid, a check mark appears. When you drop the command it is created as an icon if the command already has an associated icon; otherwise the command is created as text. After adding a command to the menu bar or toolbar, you can edit its appearance by right-clicking it and then selecting the required action.

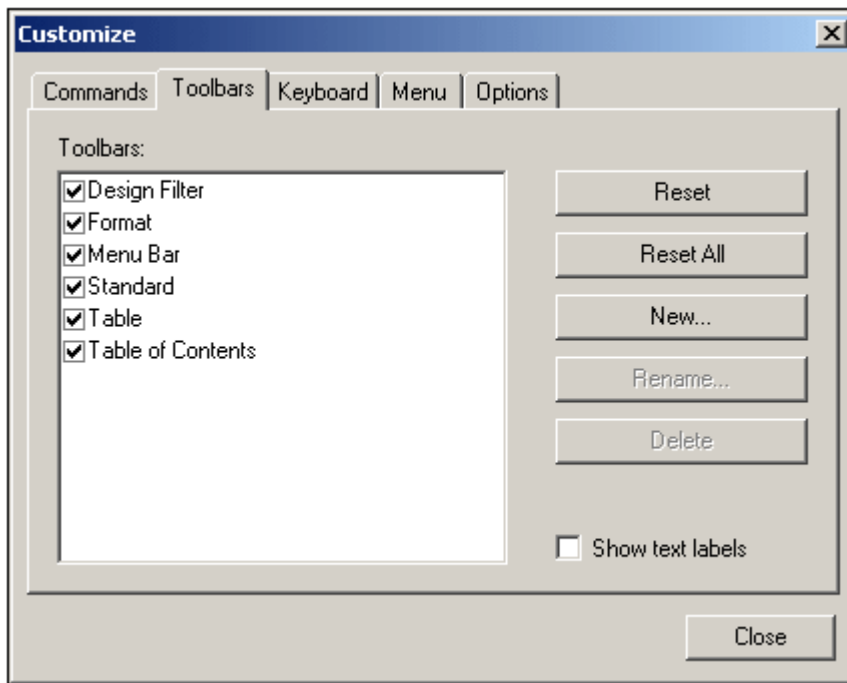
**To delete** a menu bar or toolbar item, with the Customize dialog open, right-click the item to be deleted, and select Delete.

### Note:

- The customization described above applies to the application, and applies whether a document is open in StyleVision or not.
- To reset menus and toolbars to the state they were in when StyleVision was installed, go to the Toolbars tab and click the appropriate Reset button.

### Toolbars

The **Toolbars** tab allows you to activate or deactivate specific toolbars, to show text labels for toolbar items, and to reset the menu bar and toolbars to their installation state.



The StyleVision interface displays a fixed menu bar and several optional toolbars (Design Filter, Format, Standard, Table, and Table of Contents).

Each toolbar can be divided into groups of commands. Commands can be added to a toolbar via the Commands tab. A toolbar can be dragged from its docked position to any location on the screen. Double-clicking a toolbar's (maximized or minimized) title bar docks and undocks the toolbar.

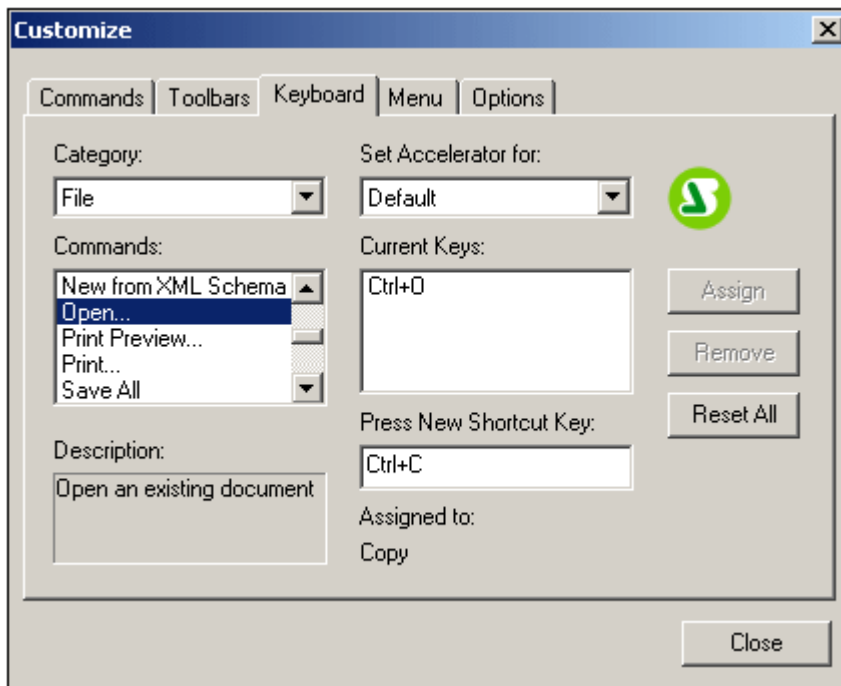
In the Toolbars tab of the Customize dialog, you can toggle a toolbar on and off by clicking in its checkbox. When a toolbar is selected (in the Toolbars tab), you can cause the text labels of that toolbar's items to be displayed by clicking the **Show text labels** check box. You can also reset a selected toolbar to the state it was in when StyleVision was installed by clicking the **Reset** button. You can reset all toolbars and the menu bar by clicking the **Reset All** button.

### Menu Bar

Commands can be added to, and items deleted from, the menu bar: see Commands above. To reset the menu bar to the state it was in when StyleVision was installed, select Menu Bar in the Toolbars tab of the Customize dialog, and click the **Reset** button. (Clicking the **Reset All** button will reset the toolbars as well.)

### Keyboard

The **Keyboard** tab allows you to define (or change) keyboard shortcuts for any StyleVision command.



#### To assign a shortcut to a command

1. Select the category in which the command is by using the Category combo box.
2. Select the command you want to assign a shortcut to in the Commands list box.
3. Click in the Press New Shortcut Key input field, and press the shortcut keys that are to activate the command. The shortcut immediately appears in the Press New Shortcut Key input field. If this shortcut has already been assigned to a command, then that command is displayed below the input field. (For example, in the screenshot above, Ctrl+C has already been assigned to the Copy command and cannot be assigned to the Open File command.) To clear the New Shortcut Key input field, press any of the control keys, Ctrl, Alt, or Shift.
4. Click the **Assign** button to permanently assign the shortcut. The shortcut now appears in the Current Keys text box.

#### To de-assign (or delete) a shortcut

1. Select the command for which the shortcut is to be deleted.
2. Click the shortcut you want to delete in the Current Keys list box.
3. Click the **Remove** button (which has now become active).

#### To reset all keyboard assignments

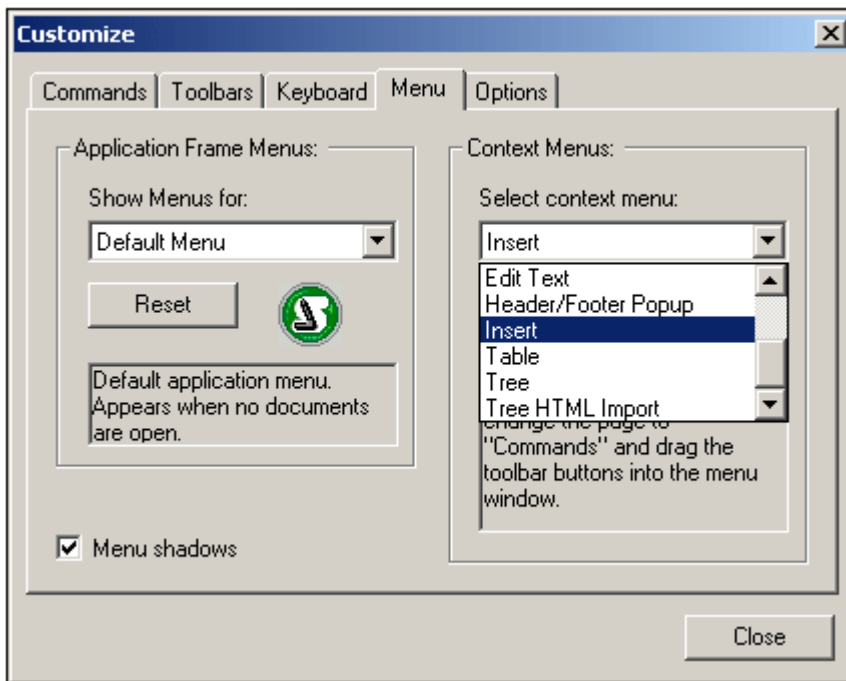
1. Click the **Reset All** button to go back to the original, installation-time shortcuts. A dialog box appears prompting you to confirm whether you want to reset all keyboard assignments.
2. Click Yes if you want to reset all keyboard assignments.

#### Set accelerator for

Currently no function is available.

#### Menu

The **Menu** tab allows you to customize the main menu bar as well as the context menus (right-click menus).



#### To customize a menu

1. Select the menu bar you want to customize (Default Menu currently).
2. Click the **Commands** tab, and drag the commands to the menu bar of your choice.

#### To delete commands from a menu

1. Click right on the command or icon representing the command, and
2. Select the **Delete** option from the popup menu,
  - or,
  1. Select **Tools | Customize** to open the Customize dialog box, and
  2. Drag the command away from the menu and drop it as soon as the check mark icon appears below the mouse pointer.

#### To reset either of the menu bars

1. Select the Default Menu entry in the combo box)
2. Click the **Reset** button just below the menu name. A prompt appears asking if you are sure you want to reset the menu bar.

#### To customize a context menu (a right-click menu)

1. Select the context menu from the combo box.
2. Click the **Commands** tab and drag the commands to the context menu that is now open.

#### To delete commands from a context menu

1. Click right on the command or icon representing the command, and
2. Select the **Delete** option from the popup menu
  - or
  1. Select **Tools | Customize** to open the Customize dialog box, and
  2. Drag the command away from the context menu and drop it as soon as the check mark icon appears below the mouse pointer.

#### To reset a context menu

1. Select the context menu from the combo box, and
2. Click the **Reset** button just below the context menu name. A prompt appears asking if

you are sure you want to reset the context menu.

#### To close a context menu window

- Click on the **Close icon** at the top right of the title bar, or
- Click the Close button of the Customize dialog box.

#### Menu animations

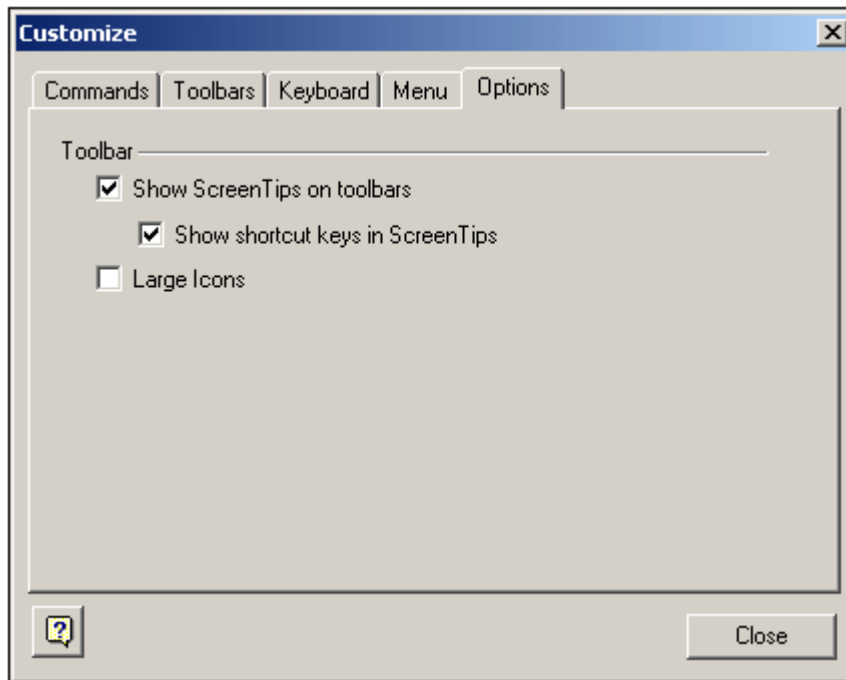
The menu animation option specifies the way a menu is displayed when a menu is clicked. Select an option from the drop-down list of menu animations.

#### Menu shadows

If you wish to have menus displayed with a shadow around it, select this option. All menus will then have a shadow.

#### Options

The **Options** tab allows you to customize additional features of the toolbar.



Screen Tips for toolbar items will be displayed if the Show Screen Tips option is checked. The Screen Tips option has a sub-option for whether shortcuts (where available) are displayed in the Screen Tips or not.

Toolbar items can also be displayed as large icons. To do this, check the Large Icons option.

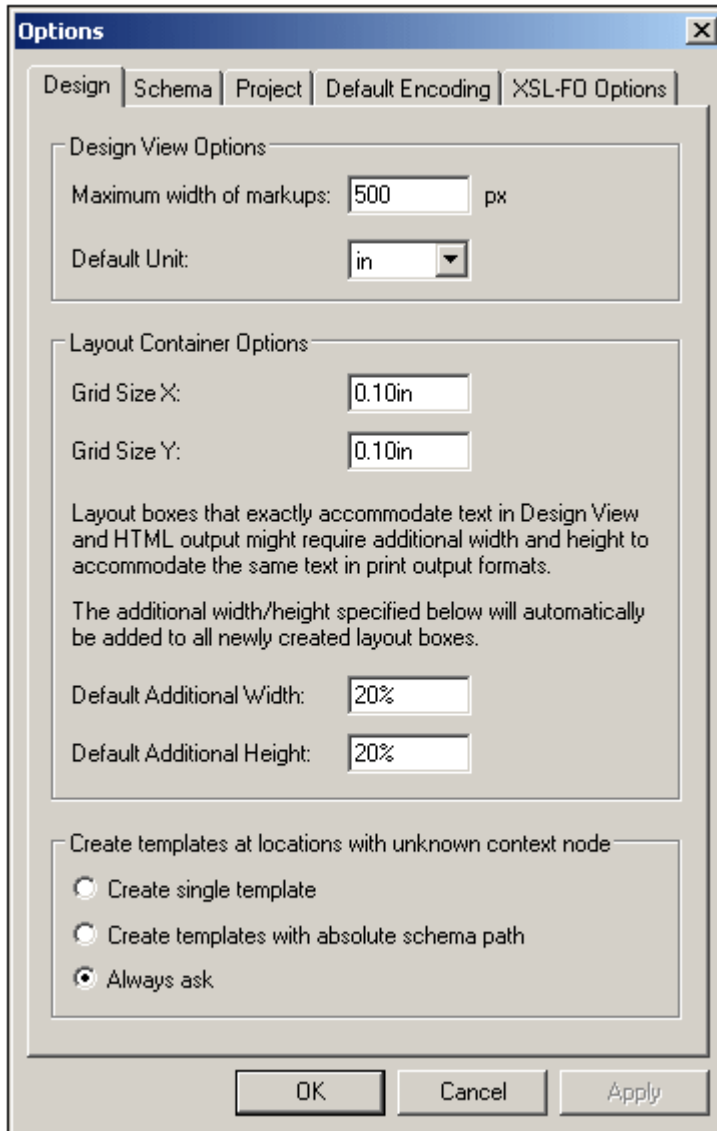


## Options

The **Options** command opens a dialog (*screenshot below*) in which you can specify the encoding of the HTML output file.

### Design View options

In the Design tab (*screenshot below*), you can set the application-wide general options for designs.



The following options can be set:

- Maximum width (in pixels) of markup tags. Enter the positive integer that is the required number of pixels.
- Grid size of layout containers in absolute length units. The specified lengths are the distances between two points on the respective grid axis.
- Default additional width and height of Layout Boxes. These additional lengths are added to all layout boxes in order to provide the extra length that is often required to

accommodate the bigger text renditions of print formats. These values can be specified as percentage values or as absolute length units.

- The default behavior when a node-template is created at a location where the context node is not know. This option typically applies to User-Defined Templates in which the template has been created for items that cannot be placed in context in the schema source of the design. If a node is created within such a user-defined template, then the node can be created with (i) only its name, or (ii) with the full path to it from the schema root. You can set one of these options as the default behavior, or, alternatively, ask to be prompted each time this situation arises. The default selection for this option is *Always Ask*.

### Schema Tree options

In the Schema Tree, elements and attributes can be listed alphabetically in ascending order. To do this, check the respective check boxes in the Schema Options tab. By default, attributes are listed alphabetically and elements are listed in an order corresponding to the schema structure, as far as this is possible.

### Default encoding

To set the default encoding of the output HTML file, open the dropdown menu of the combo box and select the desired option from the list of encoding options, and click **OK**. Every new SPS you create from this point on, will set the HTML output encoding as defined in this tab.

In the XSLT-for-HTML, the output encoding information is registered at the following locations:

- In the `encoding` attribute of the stylesheet's `xsl:output` element:  

```
<xsl:output version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" indent="no"
omit-xml-declaration="no" media-type="text/html" />
```
- In the `charset` attribute of the `content-type meta` element in the HTML header:  

```
<meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html;
charset=UTF-8" />
```

**Note:** These settings are the default encodings, and will be used for new SPSs. You cannot change the encoding of the currently open SPS using this dialog. To change the encoding of the currently open SPS, use the [File | Properties](#) command.

## 14.11 Window Menu

The **Window menu** has commands to specify how StyleVision windows should be displayed in the GUI (cascaded, tiled, or maximized). To maximize a window, click the maximize button of that window.

Additionally, all currently open document windows are listed in this menu by document name, with the active window being checked. To make another window active, click the name of the window you wish to make active.

### **Windows dialog**

At the bottom of the list of open windows is an entry for the Windows dialog. Clicking this entry opens the Windows dialog, which displays a list of all open windows and provides commands that can be applied to the selected window/s. (A window is selected by clicking on its name.)

**Warning:** To exit the Windows dialog, click OK; do **not** click the Close Window(s) button. The Close Window(s) button closes the window/s currently selected in the Windows dialog.

## 14.12 Help Menu

The **Help** menu contains commands to access the onscreen help manual for StyleVision, commands to provide information about StyleVision, and links to support pages on the Altova web site. The Help menu also contains the [Registration dialog](#), which lets you enter your license key-code once you have purchased the product.

The description of the Help menu commands is organized into the following sub-sections:

- [Table of Contents, Index, Search](#)
- [Activation, Order Form, Registration, Updates](#)
- [Other Commands](#)

## Table of Contents, Index, Search

The **Table of Contents** command opens the onscreen help manual for StyleVision with the Table of Contents displayed in the left-hand-side pane of the Help window. The Table of Contents provides a good overview of the entire Help document. Clicking an entry in the Table of Contents takes you to that topic.

The **Index** command opens the onscreen help manual for StyleVision with the Keyword Index displayed in the left-hand-side pane of the Help window. The index lists keywords and lets you navigate to a topic by double-clicking the keyword. If a keyword is linked to more than one topic, you are presented with a list of the topics to choose from.

The **Search** command opens the onscreen help manual for StyleVision with the Search dialog displayed in the left-hand-side pane of the Help window. To search for a term, enter the term in the input field, and press Return. The Help system performs a full-text search on the entire Help documentation and returns a list of hits. Double-click any item to display that item.

## Activation, Order Form, Registration, Updates

### Software Activation

After you download your Altova product software, you can activate it using either a free evaluation key or a purchased permanent license key.

- **Free evaluation key.** When you first start the software after downloading and installing it, the Software Activation dialog will pop up. In it is a button to request a free evaluation key-code. Enter your name, company, and e-mail address in the dialog that appears, and click Request Now! The evaluation key is sent to the e-mail address you entered and should reach you in a few minutes. Now enter the key in the key-code field of the Software Activation dialog box and click **OK** to start working with your Altova product. The software will be unlocked for a period of 30 days.
- **Permanent license key.** The Software Activation dialog contains a button to purchase a permanent license key. Clicking this button takes you to Altova's online shop, where you can purchase a permanent license key for your product. There are two types of permanent license: single-user and multi-user. Both will be sent to you by e-mail. A *single-user license* contains your license-data and includes your name, company, e-mail, and key-code. A *multi-user license* contains your license-data and includes your company name and key-code. Note that your license agreement does not allow you to install more than the licensed number of copies of your Altova software on the computers in your organization (per-seat license). Please make sure that you enter the data required in the registration dialog exactly as given in your license e-mail.

**Note:** When you enter your license information in the Software Activation dialog, ensure that you enter the data exactly as given in your license e-mail. For multi-user licenses, each user should enter his or her own name in the Name field.

The Software Activation dialog can be accessed at any time by clicking the **Help | Software Activation** command.

### Order Form

When you are ready to order a licensed version of the software product, you can use either the **Order license key** button in the Software Activation dialog (*see previous section*) or the **Help | Order Form** command to proceed to the secure Altova Online Shop.

### Registration

The first time you start your Altova software after having activated it, a dialog appears asking whether you would like to register your product. There are three buttons in this dialog:

- **OK:** Takes you to the Registration Form
- **Remind Me Later:** Pops up a dialog in which you can select when you wish to be next reminded.
- **Cancel:** Closes the dialog and suppresses it in future. If you wish to register at a later time, you can use the **Help | Registration** command.

### Check for Updates

Checks with the Altova server whether a newer version than yours is currently available and displays a message accordingly.

## Other Commands

The **Support Center** command is a link to the Altova Support Center on the Internet. The Support Center provides FAQs, discussion forums where problems are discussed, and access to Altova's technical support staff.

The **FAQ on the Web** command is a link to Altova's FAQ database on the Internet. The FAQ database is constantly updated as Altova support staff encounter new issues raised by customers.

The **Components Download** command is a link to Altova's Component Download Center on the Internet. From here you will be able to download a variety of companion software to use with Altova products. Such software ranges from XSLT and XSL-FO processors to Application Server Platforms. The software available at the Component Download Center is typically free of charge.

The **StyleVision on the Internet** command is a link to the [Altova website](#) on the Internet. You can learn more about StyleVision and related technologies and products at the [Altova website](#).

The **StyleVision Training** command is a link to the Online Training page at the [Altova website](#). Here you can select from online courses conducted by Altova's expert trainers.

The **About StyleVision** command displays the splash window and version number of your product.





## **Chapter 15**

---

### **Appendices**

## 15 Appendices

These appendices contain (i) information about the XSLT Engines used in StyleVision; (ii) information about the conversion of DB datatypes to XML Schema datatypes; (iii) technical information about StyleVision; and (iv) licensing information for StyleVision. Each appendix contains the sub-sections listed below:

### [XSLT Engine Information](#)

Provides implementation-specific information about the Altova XSLT Engines, which are used by StyleVision to generate output.

- Altova XSLT 1.0 Engine
- Altova XSLT 2.0 Engine
- XPath 2.0 and XQuery 1.0 Functions
- Extension Functions (Java, .NET, and MSXSL)

### [Technical Data](#)

Provides technical information about StyleVision.

- OS and memory requirements
- Altova XML Parser
- Altova XSLT and XQuery Engines
- Unicode support
- Internet usage

### [License Information](#)

Contains information about the way StyleVision is distributed and about its licensing.

- Electronic software distribution
- License metering
- Copyright
- End User License Agreement

## 15.1 XSLT Engine Information

This section contains information about implementation-specific features of the [Altova XSLT 1.0 Engine](#) and [Altova XSLT 2.0 Engine](#).

## XSLT 1.0 Engine: Implementation Information

The Altova XSLT 1.0 Engine is built into Altova's XMLSpy, StyleVision, Authentic, and MapForce XML products. It is also available in the free AltovaXML package. The Altova XSLT 1.0 Engine implements and conforms to the World Wide Web Consortium's [XSLT 1.0 Recommendation of 16 November 1999](#) and [XPath 1.0 Recommendation of 16 November 1999](#). Limitations and implementation-specific behavior are listed below.

### Limitations

- The `xsl:preserve-space` and `xsl:strip-space` elements are not supported.
- When the `method` attribute of `xsl:output` is set to HTML, or if HTML output is selected by default, then special characters in the XML or XSLT file are inserted in the HTML document directly as special characters; they are not inserted as HTML character references in the output. For instance, the character `&#160;` (the decimal character reference for a non-breaking space) is not inserted as `&nbsp;` in the HTML code, but directly as a non-breaking space.

### Implementation's handling of whitespace-only nodes in source XML document

The XML data (and, consequently, the XML Infoset) that is passed to the Altova XSLT 1.0 Engine is stripped of boundary-whitespace-only text nodes. (A boundary-whitespace-only text node is a whitespace-only text node that occurs between two elements within an element of mixed content.) This stripping may have an effect on the value returned by the `fn:position()`, `fn:last()`, and `fn:count()` functions.

For any node selection that selects text nodes also, boundary-whitespace-only text nodes would typically also be included in the selection. However, since the XML Infoset used by the Altova engines has boundary-whitespace-only text nodes stripped from it, these nodes are not present in the XML Infoset. As a result, the size of the selection and the numbering of nodes in the selection will be different than that for a selection which included these text nodes. The `fn:position()`, `fn:last()`, and `fn:count()` functions, therefore, could produce results that are different from those produced by some other processors.

A situation in which boundary-whitespace-only text nodes are evaluated as siblings of other elements arises most commonly when `xsl:apply-templates` is used to apply templates. When the `fn:position()`, `fn:last()`, and `fn:count()` functions are used in patterns with a name test (for example, `para[3]`, which is short for `para[position()=3]`), boundary-whitespace-only nodes are irrelevant since only the named elements (`para` in the above example) are selected. (Note, however, that boundary-whitespace-only nodes **are** relevant in patterns that use the wildcard, for example, `*[10]`.)

**Note:** If a boundary-whitespace-only text node is required in the output, then insert the required whitespace within one of the two adjoining child elements. For example, the XML fragment:

```
<para>This is <b>bold</b> <i>italic</i>.</para>
```

when processed with the XSLT template

```
<xsl:template match="para">
  <xsl:apply-templates/>
</xsl:template>
```

will produce:

```
This is bolditalic.
```

To get a space between `bold` and `italic` in the output, insert a space character within either

the `<b>` or `<i>` elements in the XML source. For example:

```
<para>This is <b>bold</b> <i> italic</i>. </para> or  
<para>This is <b>bold</b> <i>italic</i>. </para> or  
<para>This is <b>bold</b><i> italic</i>. </para>
```

When any of the `para` elements above is processed with the same XSLT template given above, it will produce:

```
This is bold italic.
```

## **XSLT 2.0 Engine: Implementation Information**

The Altova XSLT 2.0 Engine is built into Altova's XMLSpy, StyleVision, Authentic, and MapForce XML products. It is also available in the free AltovaXML package. This section describes the engine's implementation-specific aspects of behavior. It starts with a section giving general information about the engine, and then goes on to list the implementation-specific behavior of XSLT 2.0 functions.

For information about implementation-specific behavior of XPath 2.0 functions, see the section, [XPath 2.0 and XQuery 1.0 Functions](#).

## General Information

The Altova XSLT 2.0 Engine conforms to the World Wide Web Consortium's (W3C's) [XSLT 2.0 Recommendation](#) of 23 January 2007. Note the following general information about the engine.

## Backwards Compatibility

The Altova XSLT 2.0 Engine is backwards compatible. The only time the backwards compatibility of the XSLT 2.0 Engine comes into play is when using the XSLT 2.0 Engine of Altova XML to process an XSLT 1.0 stylesheet. Note that there could be differences in the outputs produced by the XSLT 1.0 Engine and the backwards-compatible XSLT 2.0 Engine.

In all other Altova products, the backwards-compatibility issue never arises. This is because these products automatically select the appropriate engine for the transformation. For example, consider that in XMLSpy you specify that a certain XML document be processed with an XSLT 1.0 stylesheet. When the transformation command is invoked, XMLSpy automatically selects the XSLT 1.0 Engine of XMLSpy to carry out the transformation.

**Note:** The stylesheet version is specified in the `version` attribute of the `stylesheet` or `transform` element of the stylesheet.

## Namespaces

Your XSLT 2.0 stylesheet should declare the following namespaces in order for you to be able to use the type constructors and functions available in XSLT 2.0. The prefixes given below are conventionally used; you could use alternative prefixes if you wish.

Namespace Name	Prefix	Namespace URI
XML Schema types	xs:	<a href="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema</a>
XPath 2.0 functions	fn:	<a href="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions">http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions</a>

Typically, these namespaces will be declared on the `xsl:stylesheet` or `xsl:transform` element, as shown in the following listing:

```
<xsl:stylesheet version="2.0"
  xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  xmlns:fn="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions"
  ...
/>
```

The following points should be noted:

- The Altova XSLT 2.0 Engine uses the XPath 2.0 and XQuery 1.0 Functions namespace (listed in the table above) as its **default functions namespace**. So you can use XPath 2.0 and XSLT 2.0 functions in your stylesheet without any prefix. If you declare the XPath 2.0 Functions namespace in your stylesheet with a prefix, then you can additionally use the prefix assigned in the declaration.
- When using type constructors and types from the XML Schema namespace, the prefix used in the namespace declaration must be used when calling the type constructor (for example, `xs:date`).
- With the CRs of 23 January 2007, the `untypedAtomic` and duration datatypes (`dayTimeDuration` and `yearMonthDuration`), which were formerly in the XPath Datatypes namespace (typically prefixed `xdt:`) have been moved to the XML Schema namespace.

- Some XPath 2.0 functions have the same name as XML Schema datatypes. For example, for the XPath functions `fn:string` and `fn:boolean` there exist XML Schema datatypes with the same local names: `xs:string` and `xs:boolean`. So if you were to use the XPath expression `string(' Hello' )`, the expression evaluates as `fn:string(' Hello' )` —not as `xs:string(' Hello' )`.

### Schema-awareness

The Altova XSLT 2.0 Engine is schema-aware.

### Whitespace in XML document

By default, the Altova XSLT 2.0 Engine strips all boundary whitespace from boundary-whitespace-only nodes in the source XML document. The removal of this whitespace affects the values that the `fn:position()`, `fn:last()`, `fn:count()`, and `fn:deep-equal()` functions return. For more details, see [Whitespace-only Nodes in XML Document](#) in the XPath 2.0 and XQuery 1.0 Functions section.

**Note:** If a boundary-whitespace-only text node is required in the output, then insert the required whitespace within one of the two adjoining child elements. For example, the XML fragment:

```
<para>This is <b>bold</b> <i>italic</i>.</para>
```

when processed with the XSLT template

```
<xsl:template match="para">
  <xsl:apply-templates/>
</xsl:template>
```

will produce:

```
This is bolditalic.
```

To get a space between `bold` and `italic` in the output, insert a space character within either the `<b>` or `<i>` elements in the XML source. For example:

```
<para>This is <b>bold</b> <i> italic</i>.</para> or
<para>This is <b>bold<#x20;</b> <i>italic</i>.</para> or
<para>This is <b>bold</b><i>&#x20;italic</i>.</para>
```

When such an XML fragment is processed with the same XSLT template given above, it will produce:

```
This is bold italic.
```

### XSLT 2.0 elements and functions

Limitations and implementation-specific behavior of XSLT 2.0 elements and functions are listed in the section [XSLT 2.0 Elements and Functions](#).

### XPath 2.0 functions

Implementation-specific behavior of XPath 2.0 functions is listed in the section [XPath 2.0 and XQuery 1.0 Functions](#).



## XSLT 2.0 Elements and Functions

### Limitations

The `xsl:preserve-space` and `xsl:strip-space` elements are not supported.

### Implementation-specific behavior

Given below is a description of how the Altova XSLT 2.0 Engine handles implementation-specific aspects of the behavior of certain XSLT 2.0 functions.

#### `xsl:result-document`

Additionally supported encodings are: `base16tobinary` and `base64tobinary`.

#### `function-available`

The function tests for the availability of in-scope functions (XSLT 2.0, XPath 2.0, and extension functions).

#### `unparsed-text`

The `href` attribute accepts (i) relative paths for files in the `base-uri` folder, and (ii) absolute paths with or without the `file://` protocol. Additionally supported encodings are: `binarytobase16` and `binarytobase64`.

## XPath 2.0 and XQuery 1.0 Functions

XPath 2.0 and XQuery 1.0 functions are evaluated by:

- the **Altova XPath 2.0 Engine**, which (i) is a component of the Altova XSLT 2.0 Engine, and (ii) is used in the XPath Evaluator of Altova's XMLSpy product to evaluate XPath expressions with respect to the XML document that is active in the XMLSpy interface.
- the **Altova XQuery 1.0 Engine**.

This section describes how XPath 2.0 and XQuery 1.0 functions are handled by the Altova XPath 2.0 Engine and Altova XQuery 1.0 Engine. Only those functions are listed, for which the behavior is implementation-specific, or where the behavior of an individual function is different in any of the three environments in which these functions are used (that is, in XSLT 2.0, in XQuery 1.0, and in the XPath Evaluator of XMLSpy). Note that this section does not describe how to use these functions. For more information about the usage of functions, see the World Wide Web Consortium's (W3C's) [XQuery 1.0 and XPath 2.0 Functions and Operators Recommendation](#) of 23 January 2007.

## General Information

### Standards conformance

- The Altova XPath 2.0 Engine implements the World Wide Web Consortium's (W3C's) [XPath 2.0 Recommendation](#) of 23 January 2007. The Altova XQuery 1.0 Engine implements the World Wide Web Consortium's (W3C's) [XQuery 1.0 Recommendation](#) of 23 January 2007. The XPath 2.0 and XQuery 1.0 functions support in these two engines is compliant with the [XQuery 1.0 and XPath 2.0 Functions and Operators Recommendation](#) of 23 January 2007.
- The Altova XPath 2.0 Engine conforms to the rules of [XML 1.0 \(Fourth Edition\)](#) and [XML Namespaces \(1.0\)](#).

### Default functions namespace

The default functions namespace has been set to comply with that specified in the standard. Functions can therefore be called without a prefix.

### Boundary-whitespace-only nodes in source XML document

The XML data (and, consequently, the XML Infoset) that is passed to the Altova XPath 2.0 Engine and Altova XQuery 1.0 Engine is stripped of boundary-whitespace-only text nodes. (A boundary-whitespace-only text node is a child whitespace-only text node that occurs between two elements within an element of mixed content.) This stripping has an effect on the value returned by the `fn:position()`, `fn:last()`, `fn:count()`, and `fn:deep-equal()` functions.

For any node selection that selects text nodes also, boundary-whitespace-only text nodes would typically also be included in the selection. However, since the XML Infoset used by the Altova engines has boundary-whitespace-only text nodes stripped from it, these nodes are not present in the XML Infoset. As a result, the size of the selection and the numbering of nodes in the selection will be different than that for a selection which included these text nodes. The `fn:position()`, `fn:last()`, `fn:count()`, and `fn:deep-equal()` functions, therefore, could produce results that are different from those produced by some other processors.

A situation in which boundary-whitespace-only text nodes are evaluated as siblings of other elements arises most commonly when `xsl:apply-templates` is used to apply templates. When the `fn:position()`, `fn:last()`, and `fn:count()` functions are used in patterns with a name test (for example, `para[3]`, which is short for `para[position()=3]`), boundary-whitespace-only nodes are irrelevant since only the named elements (`para` in the above example) are selected. (Note, however, that boundary-whitespace-only nodes **are** relevant in patterns that use the wildcard, for example, `*[10]`.)

### Numeric notation

On output, when an `xs:double` is converted to a string, scientific notation (for example, `1.0E12`) is used when the absolute value is less than 0.000001 or greater than 1,000,000. Otherwise decimal or integer notation is used.

### Precision of `xs:decimal`

The precision refers to the number of digits in the number, and a minimum of 18 digits is required by the specification. For division operations that produce a result of type `xs:decimal`, the precision is 19 digits after the decimal point with no rounding.

### Implicit timezone

When two `date`, `time`, or `dateTime` values need to be compared, the timezone of the values being compared need to be known. When the timezone is not explicitly given in such a value, the implicit timezone is used. The implicit timezone is taken from the system clock, and its value can be checked with the `fn:implicit-timezone()` function.

**Collations**

Only the Unicode codepoint collation is supported. No other collations can be used. String comparisons, including for the `fn:max` and `fn:min` functions, are based on this collation.

**Namespace axis**

The namespace axis is deprecated in XPath 2.0. Use of the namespace axis is, however, supported. To access namespace information with XPath 2.0 mechanisms, use the `fn:in-scope-prefixes()`, `fn:namespace-uri()` and `fn:namespace-uri-for-prefix()` functions.

**Static typing extensions**

The optional static type checking feature is not supported.

**Functions Support**

The table below lists (in alphabetical order) the implementation-specific behavior of certain functions. The following general points should be noted:

- In general, when a function expects a sequence of one item as an argument, and a sequence of more than one item is submitted, then an error is returned.
- All string comparisons are done using the Unicode codepoint collation.
- Results that are QNames are serialized in the form [ prefix: ] localname.

Function Name	Notes
base-uri	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If external entities are used in the source XML document and if a node in the external entity is specified as the input node argument of the <code>base-uri()</code> function, it is still the base URI of the including XML document that is used—not the base URI of the external entity.</li> <li>• The base URI of a node in the XML document can be modified using the <code>xml:base</code> attribute.</li> </ul>
collection	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The argument is a relative URI that is resolved against the current base URI.</li> <li>• If the resolved URI identifies an XML file, then this XML file is treated as a catalog which references a collection of files. This file must have the form: <pre> &lt;collection&gt;   &lt;doc href="uri-1" /&gt;   &lt;doc href="uri-2" /&gt;   &lt;doc href="uri-3" /&gt; &lt;/collection&gt; </pre>                     The files referenced by the <code>href</code> attributes are loaded, and their document nodes are returned as a sequence.                 </li> <li>• If the resolved URI does not identify an XML file with the catalog structure described above, then the argument string (in which wildcards such as <code>?</code> and <code>*</code> are allowed) is used as a search string. XML files with names that match the search expression are loaded, and their document nodes are returned as a sequence. See examples below.</li> <li>• XSLT example: The expression <code>collection("c:\MyDocs\*.xml")//Title</code> returns a sequence of all <code>DocTitle</code> elements in the <code>.xml</code> files in the <code>MyDocs</code> folder.</li> <li>• XQuery example: The expression <code>{for \$i in collection(c:\MyDocs\*.xml) return element doc{base-uri(\$i)}}</code> returns the base URIs of all the <code>.xml</code> files in the <code>MyDocs</code> folder, each URI being within a <code>doc</code> element.</li> <li>• The default collection is empty.</li> </ul>

contd. /

Function Name	Notes
---------------	-------

count	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>See note on whitespace in the <a href="#">General Information</a> section.</li> </ul>
current-date, current-dateTime, current-time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The current date and time is taken from the system clock.</li> <li>The timezone is taken from the implicit timezone provided by the evaluation context; the implicit timezone is taken from the system clock.</li> <li>The timezone is always specified in the result.</li> </ul>
deep-equal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>See note on whitespace in the <a href="#">General Information</a> section.</li> </ul>
doc	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An error is raised only if no XML file is available at the specified location or if the file is not well-formed. The file is validated if a schema is available. If the file is not valid, the invalid file is loaded without schema information.</li> </ul>
id	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In a well-formed but invalid document that contains two or more elements having the same ID value, the first element in document order is returned.</li> </ul>
in-scope-prefixes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only default namespaces may be undeclared in the XML document. However, even when a default namespace is undeclared on an element node, the prefix for the default namespace, which is the zero-length string, is returned for that node.</li> </ul>
last	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>See note on whitespace in the <a href="#">General Information</a> section.</li> </ul>
lower-case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Unicode character set is supported.</li> </ul>
normalize-unicode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The normalization forms NFC, NFD, NFKC, and NFKD are supported.</li> </ul>

contd. /

Function Name	Notes
position	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>See note on whitespace in the <a href="#">General Information</a> section.</li> </ul>

resolve-uri	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If the second, optional argument is omitted, the URI to be resolved (the first argument) is resolved against the base URI from the static context, which is the URI of the XSLT stylesheet or the base URI given in the prolog of the XQuery document.</li><li>• The relative URI (the first argument) is appended after the last "/" in the path notation of the base URI notation.</li><li>• If the value of the first argument is the zero-length string, the base URI from the static context is returned, and this URI includes the file name of the document from which the base URI of the static context is derived (e.g. the XSLT or XML file).</li></ul>
static-base-uri	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The base URI from the static context is the base URI of the XSLT stylesheet or the base URI specified in the prolog of the XQuery document.</li><li>• When using XPath Evaluator in the XMLSpy IDE, the base URI from the static context is the URI of the active XML document.</li></ul>
upper-case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The Unicode character set is supported.</li></ul>

## 15.2 Technical Data

This section contains useful background information on the technical aspects of your software. It is organized into the following sections:

- [OS and Memory Requirements](#)
- [Altova XML Parser](#)
- [Altova XSLT and XQuery Engines](#)
- [Unicode Support](#)
- [Internet Usage](#)



## **OS and Memory Requirements**

### **Operating System**

This software application is a 32-bit Windows application that runs on Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 and 2008, Windows Vista, and Windows 7.

### **Memory**

Since the software is written in C++ it does not require the overhead of a Java Runtime Environment and typically requires less memory than comparable Java-based applications. However, each document is loaded fully into memory so as to parse it completely and to improve viewing and editing speed. The memory requirement increases with the size of the document.

Memory requirements are also influenced by the unlimited Undo history. When repeatedly cutting and pasting large selections in large documents, available memory can rapidly be depleted.

## **Altova XML Parser**

When opening any XML document, the application uses its built-in validating parser (the Altova XML Parser) to check for well-formedness, validate the document against a schema (if specified), and build trees and Infosets. The Altova XML Parser is also used to provide intelligent editing help while you edit documents and to dynamically display any validation error that may occur.

The built-in Altova XML Parser implements the Final Recommendation of the W3C's XML Schema specification. New developments recommended by the W3C's XML Schema Working Group are continuously being incorporated in the Altova Parser, so that Altova products give you a state-of-the-art development environment.

## **Altova XSLT and XQuery Engines**

Altova products use the Altova XSLT 1.0 Engine, Altova XSLT 2.0 Engine, and Altova XQuery 1.0 Engines. Documentation about implementation-specific behavior for each engine is in the section Engine Information, in Appendix 1 of the product documentation, should that engine be used in the product.

These three engines are also available in the AltovaXML package, which can be downloaded from the [Altova website](#) free of charge. Documentation for using the engines is available with the AltovaXML package.

## Unicode Support

Unicode is the new 16-bit character-set standard defined by the [Unicode Consortium](#) that provides a unique number for every character,

- no matter what the platform,
- no matter what the program,
- no matter what the language.

Fundamentally, computers just deal with numbers. They store letters and other characters by assigning a number for each one. Before Unicode was invented, there were hundreds of different encoding systems for assigning these numbers. No single encoding could contain enough characters: for example, the European Union alone requires several different encodings to cover all its languages. Even for a single language like English, no single encoding was adequate for all the letters, punctuation, and technical symbols in common use.

These encoding systems used to conflict with one another. That is, two encodings used the same number for two different characters, or different numbers for the same character. Any given computer (especially servers) needs to support many different encodings; yet whenever data is passed between different encodings or platforms, that data always runs the risk of corruption.

### Unicode is changing all that!

Unicode provides a unique number for every character, no matter what the platform, no matter what the program, and no matter what the language. The Unicode Standard has been adopted by such industry leaders as Apple, HP, IBM, JustSystem, Microsoft, Oracle, SAP, Sun, Base and many others.

Unicode is required by modern standards such as XML, Java, ECMAScript (JavaScript), LDAP, CORBA 3.0, WML, etc., and is the official way to implement ISO/IEC 10646. It is supported in many operating systems, all modern browsers, and many other products. The emergence of the Unicode Standard, and the availability of tools supporting it, are among the most significant recent global software technology trends.

Incorporating Unicode into client-server or multi-tiered applications and web sites offers significant cost savings over the use of legacy character sets. Unicode enables a single software product or a single web site to be targeted across multiple platforms, languages and countries without re-engineering. It allows data to be transported through many different systems without corruption.

## Windows XP

Altova's XML products provide full Unicode support. To edit an XML document, you will also need a font that supports the Unicode characters being used by that document.

Please note that most fonts only contain a very specific subset of the entire Unicode range and are therefore typically targeted at the corresponding writing system. Consequently you may encounter XML documents that contain "unprintable" characters, because the font you have selected does not contain the required glyphs. Therefore it can sometimes be very useful to have a font that covers the entire Unicode range - especially when editing XML documents from all over the world.

The most universal font we have encountered is a typeface called Arial Unicode MS that has been created by Agfa Monotype for Microsoft. This font contains over 50,000 glyphs and covers the entire set of characters specified by the Unicode 2.1 standard. It needs 23MB and is included with Microsoft Office 2000.

We highly recommend that you install this font on your system and use it with the application if you are often editing documents in different writing systems. This font is not installed with the "Typical" setting of the Microsoft Office setup program, but you can choose the Custom Setup option to install this font.

In the `/Examples` folder in your application folder you will also find a new XHTML file called `Unicode-UTF8.html` that contains the sentence "When the world wants to talk, it speaks Unicode" in many different languages ("Wenn die Welt miteinander spricht, spricht sie Unicode") and writing-systems (世界的に話すなら、Unicodeです) - this line has been adopted from the 10th Unicode conference in 1997 and is a beautiful illustration of the importance of Unicode for the XML standard. Opening this file will give you a quick impression on what is possible with Unicode and what writing systems are supported by the fonts available on your PC installation.

**Right-to-Left Writing Systems**

Please note that even under Windows NT 4.0 any text from a right-to-left writing-system (such as Hebrew or Arabic) is not rendered correctly except in those countries that actually use right-to-left writing-systems. This is due to the fact that only the Hebrew and Arabic versions of Windows NT contains support for rendering and editing right-to-left text on the operating system layer.

## Internet Usage

Altova applications will initiate Internet connections on your behalf in the following situations:

- If you click the "Request evaluation key-code" in the Registration dialog (**Help | Software Activation**), the three fields in the registration dialog box are transferred to our web server by means of a regular http (port 80) connection and the free evaluation key-code is sent back to the customer via regular SMTP e-mail.
- If you use the URL mode of the Open dialog box to open a document directly from a URL (**File | Open | Switch to URL**), that document is retrieved through a http (port 80) connection. (*This functionality is available in XMLSpy and Authentic Desktop.*)
- If you open an XML document that refers to an XML Schema or DTD and the document is specified through a URL, it is also retrieved through a http (port 80) connection once you validate the XML document. This may also happen automatically upon opening a document if you have instructed the application to automatically validate files upon opening in the File tab of the Options dialog (**Tools | Options**). (*This functionality is available in XMLSpy and Authentic Desktop.*)
- If you are using the Send by Mail... command (**File | Send by Mail**) in XMLSpy, the current selection or file is sent by means of any MAPI-compliant mail program installed on the user's PC.
- As part of Software Activation and LiveUpdate as further described in this manual and the Altova Software License Agreement.

## 15.3 License Information

This section contains:

- Information about the [distribution of this software product](#)
- Information about the [intellectual property rights](#) related to this software product
- The [End User License Agreement](#) governing the use of this software product

Please read this information carefully. It is binding upon you since you agreed to these terms when you installed this software product.



## Electronic Software Distribution

This product is available through electronic software distribution, a distribution method that provides the following unique benefits:

- You can evaluate the software free-of-charge before making a purchasing decision.
- Once you decide to buy the software, you can place your order online at the [Altova website](#) and immediately get a fully licensed product within minutes.
- When you place an online order, you always get the latest version of our software.
- The product package includes a comprehensive integrated onscreen help system. The latest version of the user manual is available at [www.altova.com](http://www.altova.com) (i) in HTML format for online browsing, and (ii) in PDF format for download (and to print if you prefer to have the documentation on paper).

### 30-day evaluation period

After downloading this product, you can evaluate it for a period of up to 30 days free of charge. About 20 days into this evaluation period, the software will start to remind you that it has not yet been licensed. The reminder message will be displayed once each time you start the application. If you would like to continue using the program after the 30-day evaluation period, you have to purchase an [Altova Software License Agreement](#), which is delivered in the form of a key-code that you enter into the Software Activation dialog to unlock the product. You can purchase your license at the online shop at the [Altova website](#).

### Helping Others within Your Organization to Evaluate the Software

If you wish to distribute the evaluation version within your company network, or if you plan to use it on a PC that is not connected to the Internet, you may only distribute the Setup programs, provided that they are not modified in any way. Any person that accesses the software installer that you have provided, must request their own 30-day evaluation license key code and after expiration of their evaluation period, must also purchase a license in order to be able to continue using the product.

For further details, please refer to the [Altova Software License Agreement](#) at the end of this section.

## Software Activation and License Metering

As part of Altova's Software Activation, the software may use your internal network and Internet connection for the purpose of transmitting license-related data at the time of installation, registration, use, or update to an Altova-operated license server and validating the authenticity of the license-related data in order to protect Altova against unlicensed or illegal use of the software and to improve customer service. Activation is based on the exchange of license related data such as operating system, IP address, date/time, software version, and computer name, along with other information between your computer and an Altova license server.

Your Altova product has a built-in license metering module that further helps you avoid any unintentional violation of the End User License Agreement. Your product is licensed either as a single-user or multi-user installation, and the license-metering module makes sure that no more than the licensed number of users use the application concurrently.

This license-metering technology uses your local area network (LAN) to communicate between instances of the application running on different computers.

### Single license

When the application starts up, as part of the license metering process, the software sends a short broadcast datagram to find any other instance of the product running on another computer in the same network segment. If it doesn't get any response, it will open a port for listening to other instances of the application.

### Multi license

If more than one instance of the application is used within the same LAN, these instances will briefly communicate with each other on startup. These instances exchange key-codes in order to help you to better determine that the number of concurrent licenses purchased is not accidentally violated. This is the same kind of license metering technology that is common in the Unix world and with a number of database development tools. It allows Altova customers to purchase reasonably-priced concurrent-use multi-user licenses.

We have also designed the applications so that they send few and small network packets so as to not put a burden on your network. The TCP/IP ports (2799) used by your Altova product are officially registered with the IANA (see <http://www.isi.edu/in-notes/iana/assignments/port-numbers> for details) and our license-metering module is tested and proven technology.

If you are using a firewall, you may notice communications on port 2799 between the computers that are running Altova products. You are, of course, free to block such traffic between different groups in your organization, as long as you can ensure by other means, that your license agreement is not violated.

You will also notice that, if you are online, your Altova product contains many useful functions; these are unrelated to the license-metering technology.

## Intellectual Property Rights

The Altova Software and any copies that you are authorized by Altova to make are the intellectual property of and are owned by Altova and its suppliers. The structure, organization and code of the Software are the valuable trade secrets and confidential information of Altova and its suppliers. The Software is protected by copyright, including without limitation by United States Copyright Law, international treaty provisions and applicable laws in the country in which it is being used. Altova retains the ownership of all patents, copyrights, trade secrets, trademarks and other intellectual property rights pertaining to the Software, and that Altova's ownership rights extend to any images, photographs, animations, videos, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the Software and all accompanying printed materials. Notifications of claimed copyright infringement should be sent to Altova's copyright agent as further provided on the Altova Web Site.

Altova software contains certain Third Party Software that is also protected by intellectual property laws, including without limitation applicable copyright laws as described in detail at [http://www.altova.com/legal\\_3rdparty.html](http://www.altova.com/legal_3rdparty.html).

All other names or trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

## Altova End User License Agreement

**THIS IS A LEGAL DOCUMENT -- RETAIN FOR YOUR RECORDS**

ALTOVA® END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

Licensor:

Altova GmbH  
Rudolfplatz 13a/9  
A-1010 Wien  
Austria

### **Important - Read Carefully. Notice to User:**

This End User License Agreement (“Software License Agreement”) is a legal document between you and Altova GmbH (“Altova”). It is important that you read this document before using the Altova-provided software (“Software”) and any accompanying documentation, including, without limitation printed materials, ‘online’ files, or electronic documentation (“Documentation”). By clicking the “I accept” and “Next” buttons below, or by installing, or otherwise using the Software, you agree to be bound by the terms of this Software License Agreement as well as the Altova Privacy Policy (“Privacy Policy”) including, without limitation, the warranty disclaimers, limitation of liability, data use and termination provisions below, whether or not you decide to purchase the Software. You agree that this agreement is enforceable like any written agreement negotiated and signed by you. If you do not agree, you are not licensed to use the Software, and you must destroy any downloaded copies of the Software in your possession or control. You may print a copy of this Software License Agreement as part of the installation process at the time of acceptance. Alternatively, please go to our Web site at <http://www.altova.com/eula> to download and print a copy of this Software License Agreement for your files and <http://www.altova.com/privacy> to review the privacy policy.

### **1. SOFTWARE LICENSE**

#### **(a) License Grant.**

(i) Upon your acceptance of this Software License Agreement Altova grants you a non-exclusive, non-transferable (except as provided below), limited license, without the right to grant sublicenses, to install and use a copy of the Software on one compatible personal computer or workstation up to the Permitted Number of computers. Subject to the limitations set

forth in Section 1(c), you may install and use a copy of the Software on more than one of your compatible personal computers or workstations if you have purchased a Named User license. The Permitted Number of computers and/or users shall be determined and specified at such time as you elect to purchase the Software. During the evaluation period, hereinafter defined, only a single user may install and use the software on one personal computer or workstation. If you have licensed the Software as part of a suite of Altova software products (collectively, the "Suite") and have not installed each product individually, then the Software License Agreement governs your use of all of the software included in the Suite.

(ii) If you have licensed SchemaAgent, then the terms and conditions of this Software License Agreement apply to your use of the SchemaAgent server software ("SchemaAgent Server") included therein, as applicable, and you are licensed to use SchemaAgent Server solely in connection with your use of Altova Software and solely for the purposes described in the accompanying documentation.

(iii) If you have licensed Altova Software that enables users to generate source code, your license to install and use a copy of the Software as provided herein permits you to generate source code based on (i) Altova Library modules that are included in the Software (such generated code hereinafter referred to as the "Restricted Source Code") and (ii) schemas or mappings that you create or provide (such code as may be generated from your schema or mapping source materials hereinafter referred to as the "Unrestricted Source Code"). In addition to the rights granted herein, Altova grants you a non-exclusive, non-transferable, limited license to compile the complete generated code (comprised of the combination of the Restricted Source Code and the Unrestricted Source Code) into executable object code form, and to use, copy, distribute or license that executable. You may not distribute or redistribute, sublicense, sell, or transfer the Restricted Source Code to a third party, unless said third party already has a license to the Restricted Source Code through their separate license agreement with Altova or other agreement with Altova. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein, you may not distribute, incorporate or combine with other software, or otherwise use the Altova Library modules or Restricted Source Code, (or any Altova intellectual property embodied in or associated with the Altova Library modules or Restricted Source Code) in any manner that would subject the Restricted Source Code to the terms of a copyleft, free software or open source license that would require the Restricted Source Code or Altova Library modules source code to be disclosed in source code form. Altova reserves all other rights in and to the Software. With respect to the feature(s) of UModel that permit reverse-engineering of your own source code or other source code that you have lawfully obtained, such use by you does not constitute a violation of this Agreement. Except as otherwise expressly permitted in Section 1(i) reverse engineering of the Software is strictly prohibited as further detailed therein.

(b) **Server Use.** You may install one copy of the Software on a computer file server within your internal network solely for the purpose of downloading and installing the Software

onto other computers within your internal network up to the Permitted Number of computers in a commercial environment only. If you have licensed SchemaAgent, then you may install SchemaAgent Server on any server computer or workstation and use it in connection with your Software. No other network use is permitted, including without limitation using the Software either directly or through commands, data or instructions from or to a computer not part of your internal network, for Internet or Web-hosting services or by any user not licensed to use this copy of the Software through a valid license from Altova. If you have purchased Concurrent User Licenses as defined in Section 1(d), and subject to limits set forth therein, you may install a copy of the Software on a terminal server (Microsoft Terminal Server, Citrix Metaframe, etc.) or application virtualization server (Microsoft App-V, Citrix XenApp, VMWare ThinApp, etc.) within your internal network for the sole and exclusive purpose of permitting individual users within your organization to access and use the Software through a terminal server or application virtualization session from another computer on the same physical network provided that the total number of users that access or use the Software on such network or terminal server does not exceed the Permitted Number. Altova makes no warranties or representations about the performance of Altova software in a terminal server environment and the foregoing are expressly excluded from the limited warranty in Section 5 hereof and technical support is not available with respect to issues arising from use in such an environment.

(c) **Named Use.** If you have licensed the “Named User” version of the software, you may install the Software on up to 5 compatible personal computers or workstations of which you are the primary user thereby allowing you to switch from one computer to the other as necessary provided that only one instance of the Software will be used by you as the Named User at any given time. If you have purchased multiple Named User licenses, each individual Named User will receive a separate license key code.

(d) **Concurrent Use.** If you have licensed a “Concurrent-User” version of the Software, you may install the Software on any compatible computers in a commercial environment only, up to ten (10) times the Permitted Number of users, provided that only the Permitted Number of users actually use the Software at the same time and further provided that the computers on which the Software is installed are on the same physical computer network. The Permitted Number of concurrent users shall be delineated at such time as you elect to purchase the Software licenses. Each separate physical network or office location requires its own set of separate Concurrent User Licenses for those wishing to use the Concurrent-User versions of the Software in more than one location or on more than one network, all subject to the above Permitted Number limitations and based on the number of users using or needing access to the Software. If a computer is not on the same physical network, then a locally installed user license is required. Home User restrictions and limitations with respect to the Concurrent-User licenses used on home computers are set forth in Section 1(f).

(e) **Backup and Archival Copies.** You may make one backup and one archival

copy of the Software, provided your backup and archival copies are not installed or used on any computer and further provided that all such copies shall bear the original and unmodified copyright, patent and other intellectual property markings that appear on or in the Software. You may not transfer the rights to a backup or archival copy unless you transfer all rights in the Software as provided under Section 3.

(f) **Home Use (Personal and Non-Commercial).** In order to further familiarize yourself with the Software and allow you to explore its features and functions, you, as the primary user of the computer on which the Software is installed for commercial purposes, may also install one copy of the Software on only one home personal home computer (such as your laptop or desktop) solely for your own personal and non-commercial (HPNC”) use. This HPNC copy may not be used in any commercial or revenue-generating business activities, including without limitation, work-from-home, teleworking, telecommuting, or other work-related use of the Software. The HPNC copy of the Software may not be used at the same time on a personal home computer as the Software is being used on the primary computer.

(g) **Key Codes, Upgrades and Updates.** Prior to your purchase and as part of the registration for the thirty (30) -day evaluation period, as applicable, you will receive an evaluation key code. You will receive a purchase key code when you elect to purchase the Software from either Altova GmbH or an authorized reseller. The purchase key code will enable you to activate the Software beyond the initial evaluation period. You may not re-license, reproduce or distribute any key code except with the express written permission of Altova. If the Software that you have licensed is an upgrade or an update, then the latest update or upgrade that you download and install terminates the previously licensed copy of the Software to the extent it is being replaced. The update or upgrade and the associated license keys does not constitute the granting of a second license to the Software in that you may not use the upgrade or updated copy in addition to the copy of the Software that it is replacing and whose license has terminated.

(h) **Title.** Title to the Software is not transferred to you. Ownership of all copies of the Software and of copies made by you is vested in Altova, subject to the rights of use granted to you in this Software License Agreement. As between you and Altova, documents, files, stylesheets, generated program code (including the Unrestricted Source Code) and schemas that are authored or created by you via your utilization of the Software, in accordance with its Documentation and the terms of this Software License Agreement, are your property unless they are created using Evaluation Software, as defined in Section 4 of this Agreement, in which case you have only a limited license to use any output that contains generated program code (including Unrestricted Source Code) such as Java, C++, C# , VB.NET or XSLT and associated project files and build scripts, as well as generated XML, XML Schemas, documentation, UML diagrams, and database structures only for the thirty (30) day evaluation period.

(i) **Reverse Engineering.** Except and to the limited extent as may be otherwise specifically provided by applicable law in the European Union, you may not reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble or otherwise attempt to discover the source code, underlying ideas, underlying user interface techniques or algorithms of the Software by any means whatsoever, directly or indirectly, or disclose any of the foregoing, except to the extent you may be expressly permitted to decompile under applicable law in the European Union, if it is essential to do so in order to achieve operability of the Software with another software program, and you have first requested Altova to provide the information necessary to achieve such operability and Altova has not made such information available. Altova has the right to impose reasonable conditions and to request a reasonable fee before providing such information. Any information supplied by Altova or obtained by you, as permitted hereunder, may only be used by you for the purpose described herein and may not be disclosed to any third party or used to create any software which is substantially similar to the expression of the Software. Requests for information from users in the European Union with respect to the above should be directed to the Altova Customer Support Department.

(j) **Other Restrictions.** You may not loan, rent, lease, sublicense, distribute or otherwise transfer all or any portion of the Software to third parties except to the limited extent set forth in Section 3 or as otherwise expressly provided. You may not copy the Software except as expressly set forth above, and any copies that you are permitted to make pursuant to this Software License Agreement must contain the same copyright, patent and other intellectual property markings that appear on or in the Software. You may not modify, adapt or translate the Software. You may not, directly or indirectly, encumber or suffer to exist any lien or security interest on the Software; knowingly take any action that would cause the Software to be placed in the public domain; or use the Software in any computer environment not specified in this Software License Agreement.

You will comply with applicable law and Altova's instructions regarding the use of the Software. You agree to notify your employees and agents who may have access to the Software of the restrictions contained in this Software License Agreement and to ensure their compliance with these restrictions.

(k) **THE SOFTWARE IS NEITHER GUARANTEED NOR WARRANTED TO BE ERROR-FREE NOR SHALL ANY LIABILITY BE ASSUMED BY ALTOVA IN THIS RESPECT. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY SUPPORT FOR ANY TECHNICAL STANDARD, THE SOFTWARE IS NOT INTENDED FOR USE IN OR IN CONNECTION WITH, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE OPERATION OF NUCLEAR FACILITIES, AIRCRAFT NAVIGATION, COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS, AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL EQUIPMENT, MEDICAL DEVICES OR LIFE SUPPORT SYSTEMS, MEDICAL OR HEALTH CARE APPLICATIONS, OR OTHER APPLICATIONS WHERE THE FAILURE OF THE SOFTWARE OR ERRORS IN DATA PROCESSING COULD LEAD TO DEATH, PERSONAL INJURY OR SEVERE PHYSICAL OR**



**ENVIRONMENTAL DAMAGE. YOU AGREE THAT YOU ARE SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR THE ACCURACY AND ADEQUACY OF THE SOFTWARE AND ANY DATA GENERATED OR PROCESSED BY THE SOFTWARE FOR YOUR INTENDED USE AND YOU WILL DEFEND, INDEMNIFY AND HOLD ALTOVA, ITS OFFICERS AND EMPLOYEES HARMLESS FROM ANY 3RD PARTY CLAIMS, DEMANDS, OR SUITS THAT ARE BASED UPON THE ACCURACY AND ADEQUACY OF THE SOFTWARE IN YOUR USE OR ANY DATA GENERATED BY THE SOFTWARE IN YOUR USE.**

## **2. INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS**

**Acknowledgement of Altova's Rights.** You acknowledge that the Software and any copies that you are authorized by Altova to make are the intellectual property of and are owned by Altova and its suppliers. The structure, organization and code of the Software are the valuable trade secrets and confidential information of Altova and its suppliers. The Software is protected by copyright, including without limitation by United States Copyright Law, international treaty provisions and applicable laws in the country in which it is being used. You acknowledge that Altova retains the ownership of all patents, copyrights, trade secrets, trademarks and other intellectual property rights pertaining to the Software, and that Altova's ownership rights extend to any images, photographs, animations, videos, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the Software and all accompanying printed materials. You will take no actions which adversely affect Altova's intellectual property rights in the Software. Trademarks shall be used in accordance with accepted trademark practice, including identification of trademark owners' names. Trademarks may only be used to identify printed output produced by the Software, and such use of any trademark does not give you any right of ownership in that trademark. XMLSpy, Authentic, StyleVision, MapForce, UModel, DatabaseSpy, DiffDog, SchemaAgent, SemanticWorks, MissionKit, Markup Your Mind, Axad, Nanonull, and Altova are trademarks of Altova GmbH (registered in numerous countries). Unicode and the Unicode Logo are trademarks of Unicode, Inc. Windows, Windows XP, Windows Vista, and Windows 7 are trademarks of Microsoft. W3C, CSS, DOM, MathML, RDF, XHTML, XML and XSL are trademarks (registered in numerous countries) of the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C); marks of the W3C are registered and held by its host institutions, MIT, INRIA and Keio. Except as expressly stated above, this Software License Agreement does not grant you any intellectual property rights in the Software. Notifications of claimed copyright infringement should be sent to Altova's copyright agent as further provided on the Altova Web Site.

## **3. LIMITED TRANSFER RIGHTS**

Notwithstanding the foregoing, you may transfer all your rights to use the Software to another person or legal entity provided that: (a) you also transfer each of this Software License Agreement, the Software and all other software or hardware bundled or pre-installed with the

Software, including all copies, updates and prior versions, and all copies of font software converted into other formats, to such person or entity; (b) you retain no copies, including backups and copies stored on a computer; (c) the receiving party secures a personalized key code from Altova; and (d) the receiving party accepts the terms and conditions of this Software License Agreement and any other terms and conditions upon which you legally purchased a license to the Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, you may not transfer education, pre-release, or not-for-resale copies of the Software.

#### 4. PRE-RELEASE AND EVALUATION PRODUCT ADDITIONAL TERMS

If the product you have received with this license is pre-commercial release or beta Software (“Pre-release Software”), then this Section applies. In addition, this section applies to all evaluation and/or demonstration copies of Altova software (“Evaluation Software”) and continues in effect until you purchase a license. To the extent that any provision in this section is in conflict with any other term or condition in this Software License Agreement, this section shall supersede such other term(s) and condition(s) with respect to the Pre-release and/or Evaluation Software, but only to the extent necessary to resolve the conflict. You acknowledge that the Pre-release Software is a pre-release version, does not represent final product from Altova, and may contain bugs, errors and other problems that could cause system or other failures and data loss. CONSEQUENTLY, THE PRE-RELEASE AND/OR EVALUATION SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED TO YOU **“AS-IS” WITH NO WARRANTIES FOR USE OR PERFORMANCE**, AND ALTOVA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY OR LIABILITY OBLIGATIONS TO YOU OF ANY KIND, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. WHERE LEGALLY LIABILITY CANNOT BE EXCLUDED FOR PRE-RELEASE AND/OR EVALUATION SOFTWARE, BUT IT MAY BE LIMITED, ALTOVA’S LIABILITY AND THAT OF ITS SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE SUM OF FIFTY DOLLARS (USD \$50) IN TOTAL. If the Evaluation Software has a time-out feature, then the software will cease operation after the conclusion of the designated evaluation period. Upon such expiration date, your license will expire unless otherwise extended. Your license to use any output created with the Evaluation Software that contains generated program code (including Unrestricted Source Code) such as Java, C++, C, VB.NET or XSLT and associated project files and build scripts as well as generated XML, XML Schemas, documentation, UML diagrams, and database structures terminates automatically upon the expiration of the designated evaluation period but the license to use such output is revived upon your purchase of a license for the Software that you evaluated and used to create such output. Access to any files created with the Evaluation Software is entirely at your risk. You acknowledge that Altova has not promised or guaranteed to you that Pre-release Software will be announced or made available to anyone in the future that Altova has no express or implied obligation to you to announce or introduce the Pre-release Software, and that Altova may not introduce a product similar to or compatible with the Pre-release Software. Accordingly, you

acknowledge that any research or development that you perform regarding the Pre-release Software or any product associated with the Pre-release Software is done entirely at your own risk. During the term of this Software License Agreement, if requested by Altova, you will provide feedback to Altova regarding testing and use of the Pre-release Software, including error or bug reports. If you have been provided the Pre-release Software pursuant to a separate written agreement, your use of the Software is governed by such agreement. You may not sublicense, lease, loan, rent, distribute or otherwise transfer the Pre-release Software. Upon receipt of a later unreleased version of the Pre-release Software or release by Altova of a publicly released commercial version of the Software, whether as a stand-alone product or as part of a larger product, you agree to return or destroy all earlier Pre-release Software received from Altova and to abide by the terms of the license agreement for any such later versions of the Pre-release Software.

## 5. LIMITED WARRANTY AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

(a) **Limited Warranty and Customer Remedies.** Altova warrants to the person or entity that first purchases a license for use of the Software pursuant to the terms of this Software License Agreement that (i) the Software will perform substantially in accordance with any accompanying Documentation for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (ii) any support services provided by Altova shall be substantially as described in Section 6 of this agreement. Some states and jurisdictions do not allow limitations on duration of an implied warranty, so the above limitation may not apply to you. To the extent allowed by applicable law, implied warranties on the Software, if any, are limited to ninety (90) days. Altova's and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at Altova's option, either (i) return of the price paid, if any, or (ii) repair or replacement of the Software that does not meet Altova's Limited Warranty and which is returned to Altova with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Software has resulted from accident, abuse, misapplication, abnormal use, Trojan horse, virus, or any other malicious external code. Any replacement Software will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. This limited warranty does not apply to Evaluation and/or Pre-release Software.

(b) **No Other Warranties and Disclaimer.** THE FOREGOING LIMITED WARRANTY AND REMEDIES STATE THE SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDIES FOR ALTOVA OR ITS SUPPLIER'S BREACH OF WARRANTY. ALTOVA AND ITS SUPPLIERS DO NOT AND CANNOT WARRANT THE PERFORMANCE OR RESULTS YOU MAY OBTAIN BY USING THE SOFTWARE. EXCEPT FOR THE FOREGOING LIMITED WARRANTY, AND FOR ANY WARRANTY, CONDITION, REPRESENTATION OR TERM TO THE EXTENT WHICH THE SAME CANNOT OR MAY NOT BE EXCLUDED OR LIMITED BY LAW APPLICABLE TO YOU IN YOUR JURISDICTION, ALTOVA AND ITS SUPPLIERS MAKE NO

WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS OR TERMS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WHETHER BY STATUTE, COMMON LAW, CUSTOM, USAGE OR OTHERWISE AS TO ANY OTHER MATTERS. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ALTOVA AND ITS SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, INFORMATIONAL CONTENT OR ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT, WITH REGARD TO THE SOFTWARE, AND THE PROVISION OF OR FAILURE TO PROVIDE SUPPORT SERVICES. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS. YOU MAY HAVE OTHERS, WHICH VARY FROM STATE/JURISDICTION TO STATE/JURISDICTION.

(c) **Limitation of Liability.** TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW EVEN IF A REMEDY FAILS ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE, IN NO EVENT SHALL ALTOVA OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS INFORMATION, OR ANY OTHER PECUNIARY LOSS) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE OR THE PROVISION OF OR FAILURE TO PROVIDE SUPPORT SERVICES, EVEN IF ALTOVA HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. IN ANY CASE, ALTOVA'S ENTIRE LIABILITY UNDER ANY PROVISION OF THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE SOFTWARE PRODUCT. Because some states and jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion or limitation of liability, the above limitation may not apply to you. In such states and jurisdictions, Altova's liability shall be limited to the greatest extent permitted by law and the limitations or exclusions of warranties and liability contained herein do not prejudice applicable statutory consumer rights of person acquiring goods otherwise than in the course of business. The disclaimer and limited liability above are fundamental to this Software License Agreement between Altova and you.

(d) **Infringement Claims.** Altova will indemnify and hold you harmless and will defend or settle any claim, suit or proceeding brought against you by a third party that is based upon a claim that the content contained in the Software infringes a copyright or violates an intellectual or proprietary right protected by United States or European Union law ("Claim"), but only to the extent the Claim arises directly out of the use of the Software and subject to the limitations set forth in Section 5 of this Agreement except as otherwise expressly provided. You must notify Altova in writing of any Claim within ten (10) business days after you first receive notice of the Claim, and you shall provide to Altova at no cost such assistance and cooperation as Altova may reasonably request from time to time in connection with the defense of the Claim. Altova shall have sole control over any Claim (including, without limitation, the selection of

counsel and the right to settle on your behalf on any terms Altova deems desirable in the sole exercise of its discretion). You may, at your sole cost, retain separate counsel and participate in the defense or settlement negotiations. Altova shall pay actual damages, costs, and attorney fees awarded against you (or payable by you pursuant to a settlement agreement) in connection with a Claim to the extent such direct damages and costs are not reimbursed to you by insurance or a third party, to an aggregate maximum equal to the purchase price of the Software. If the Software or its use becomes the subject of a Claim or its use is enjoined, or if in the opinion of Altova's legal counsel the Software is likely to become the subject of a Claim, Altova shall attempt to resolve the Claim by using commercially reasonable efforts to modify the Software or obtain a license to continue using the Software. If in the opinion of Altova's legal counsel the Claim, the injunction or potential Claim cannot be resolved through reasonable modification or licensing, Altova, at its own election, may terminate this Software License Agreement without penalty, and will refund to you on a pro rata basis any fees paid in advance by you to Altova. THE FOREGOING CONSTITUTES ALTOVA'S SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE LIABILITY FOR INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY INFRINGEMENT. This indemnity does not apply to infringements that would not be such, except for customer-supplied elements.

## 6. SUPPORT AND MAINTENANCE

Altova offers multiple optional "Support & Maintenance Package(s)" ("SMP") for the version of Software product edition that you have licensed, which you may elect to purchase in addition to your Software license. The Support Period, hereinafter defined, covered by such SMP shall be delineated at such time as you elect to purchase a SMP. Your rights with respect to support and maintenance as well as your upgrade eligibility depend on your decision to purchase SMP and the level of SMP that you have purchased:

(a) If you have not purchased SMP, you will receive the Software AS IS and will not receive any maintenance releases or updates. However, Altova, at its option and in its sole discretion on a case by case basis, may decide to offer maintenance releases to you as a courtesy, but these maintenance releases will not include any new features in excess of the feature set at the time of your purchase of the Software. In addition, Altova will provide free technical support to you for thirty (30) days after the date of your purchase (the "Support Period" for the purposes of this paragraph a), and Altova, in its sole discretion on a case by case basis, may also provide free courtesy technical support during your thirty (30)-day evaluation period. Technical support is provided via a Web-based support form only, and there is no guaranteed response time.

(b) If you have purchased SMP, then solely for the duration of its delineated Support Period, **you are eligible to receive the version of the Software edition** that you have licensed and all maintenance releases and updates for that edition that are released during your Support Period. For the duration of your SMP's Support Period, you will also be eligible to

receive upgrades to the comparable edition of the next version of the Software that succeeds the Software edition that you have licensed for applicable upgrades released during your Support Period. The specific upgrade edition that you are eligible to receive based on your Support Period is further detailed in the SMP that you have purchased. Software that is introduced as separate product is not included in SMP. Maintenance releases, updates and upgrades may or may not include additional features. In addition, Altova will provide Priority Technical Support to you for the duration of the Support Period. Priority Technical Support is provided via a Web-based support form only and Altova will make commercially reasonable efforts to respond via e-mail to all requests within forty-eight (48) hours during Altova's business hours (MO-FR, 8am UTC – 10pm UTC, Austrian and US holidays excluded) and to make reasonable efforts to provide work-arounds to errors reported in the Software.

During the Support Period you may also report any Software problem or error to Altova. If Altova determines that a reported reproducible material error in the Software exists and significantly impairs the usability and utility of the Software, Altova agrees to use reasonable commercial efforts to correct or provide a usable work-around solution in an upcoming maintenance release or update, which is made available at certain times at Altova's sole discretion.

If Altova, in its discretion, requests written verification of an error or malfunction discovered by you or requests supporting example files that exhibit the Software problem, you shall promptly provide such verification or files, by email, telecopy, or overnight mail, setting forth in reasonable detail the respects in which the Software fails to perform. You shall use reasonable efforts to cooperate in diagnosis or study of errors. Altova may include error corrections in maintenance releases, updates, or new major releases of the Software. Altova is not obligated to fix errors that are immaterial. Immaterial errors are those that do not significantly impact use of the Software. Whether or not you have purchased the Support & Maintenance Package, technical support only covers issues or questions resulting directly out of the operation of the Software and Altova will not provide you with generic consultation, assistance, or advice under any circumstances.

Updating Software may require the updating of software not covered by this Software License Agreement before installation. Updates of the operating system and application software not specifically covered by this Software License Agreement are your responsibility and will not be provided by Altova under this Software License Agreement. Altova's obligations under this Section 6 are contingent upon your proper use of the Software and your compliance with the terms and conditions of this Software License Agreement at all times. Altova shall be under no obligation to provide the above technical support if, in Altova's opinion, the Software has failed due to the following conditions: (i) damage caused by the relocation of the software to another location or CPU; (ii) alterations, modifications or attempts to change the Software without Altova's written approval; (iii) causes external to the Software, such as natural disasters,

the failure or fluctuation of electrical power, or computer equipment failure; (iv) your failure to maintain the Software at Altova's specified release level; or (v) use of the Software with other software without Altova's prior written approval. It will be your sole responsibility to: (i) comply with all Altova-specified operating and troubleshooting procedures and then notify Altova immediately of Software malfunction and provide Altova with complete information thereof; (ii) provide for the security of your confidential information; (iii) establish and maintain backup systems and procedures necessary to reconstruct lost or altered files, data or programs.

## 7. SOFTWARE ACTIVATION, UPDATES AND LICENSE METERING

(a) **License Metering.** Altova has a built-in license metering module that helps you to avoid any unintentional violation of this Software License Agreement. Altova may use your internal network for license metering between installed versions of the Software.

(b) **Software Activation.** **Altova's Software may use your internal network and Internet connection for the purpose of transmitting license-related data at the time of installation, registration, use, or update to an Altova-operated license server and validating the authenticity of the license-related data in order to protect Altova against unlicensed or illegal use of the Software and to improve customer service. Activation is based on the exchange of license related data between your computer and the Altova license server. You agree that Altova may use these measures and you agree to follow any applicable requirements. You further agree that use of license key codes that are not or were not generated by Altova and lawfully obtained from Altova, or an authorized reseller as part of an effort to activate or use the Software violates Altova's intellectual property rights as well as the terms of this Software License Agreement. You agree that efforts to circumvent or disable Altova's copyright protection mechanisms or license management mechanism violate Altova's intellectual property rights as well as the terms of this Software License Agreement. Altova expressly reserves the rights to seek all available legal and equitable remedies to prevent such actions and to recover lost profits, damages and costs.**

(c) **LiveUpdate.** Altova provides a new LiveUpdate notification service to you, which is free of charge. Altova may use your internal network and Internet connection for the purpose of transmitting license-related data to an Altova-operated LiveUpdate server to validate your license at appropriate intervals and determine if there is any update available for you.

(d) **Use of Data.** The terms and conditions of the Privacy Policy are set out in full at <http://www.altova.com/privacy> and are incorporated by reference into this Software License Agreement. By your acceptance of the terms of this Software License Agreement or use of the Software, you authorize the collection, use and disclosure of information collected by Altova for the purposes provided for in this Software License Agreement and/or the Privacy Policy as revised from time to time. European users understand and consent to the processing of

personal information in the United States for the purposes described herein. Altova has the right in its sole discretion to amend this provision of the Software License Agreement and/or Privacy Policy at any time. You are encouraged to review the terms of the Privacy Policy as posted on the Altova Web site from time to time.

## 8. TERM AND TERMINATION

This Software License Agreement may be terminated (a) by your giving Altova written notice of termination; (b) by Altova, at its option, giving you written notice of termination if you commit a breach of this Software License Agreement and fail to cure such breach within ten (10) days after notice from Altova; or (c) at the request of an authorized Altova reseller in the event that you fail to make your license payment or other monies due and payable. In addition the Software License Agreement governing your use of a previous version that you have upgraded or updated of the Software is terminated upon your acceptance of the terms and conditions of the Software License Agreement accompanying such upgrade or update. Upon any termination of the Software License Agreement, you must cease all use of the Software that it governs, destroy all copies then in your possession or control and take such other actions as Altova may reasonably request to ensure that no copies of the Software remain in your possession or control. The terms and conditions set forth in Sections 1(h), 1(i), 1(j), 1(k), 2, 5(b), 5(c), 5(d), 7(d) 9, 10 and 11 survive termination as applicable.

## 9. RESTRICTED RIGHTS NOTICE AND EXPORT RESTRICTIONS

The Software was developed entirely at private expense and is commercial computer software provided with **RESTRICTED RIGHTS**. Use, duplication or disclosure by the U.S. Government or a U.S. Government contractor or subcontractor is subject to the restrictions set forth in this Agreement and as provided in FAR 12.211 and 12.212 (48 C.F.R. §12.211 and 12.212) or DFARS 227. 7202 (48 C.F.R. §227-7202) as applicable. Consistent with the above as applicable, Commercial Computer Software and Commercial Computer Documentation licensed to U.S. government end users only as commercial items and only with those rights as are granted to all other end users under the terms and conditions set forth in this Software License Agreement. Manufacturer is Altova GmbH, Rudolfplatz, 13a/9, A-1010 Vienna, Austria/EU. You may not use or otherwise export or re-export the Software or Documentation except as authorized by United States law and the laws of the jurisdiction in which the Software was obtained. In particular, but without limitation, the Software or Documentation may not be exported or re-exported (i) into (or to a national or resident of) any U.S. embargoed country or (ii) to anyone on the U.S. Treasury Department's list of Specially Designated Nationals or the U.S. Department of Commerce's Table of Denial Orders. By using the Software, you represent and warrant that you are not located in, under control of, or a national or resident of any such country or on any such list.



## 10. THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE

The Software may contain third party software which requires notices and/or additional terms and conditions. Such required third party software notices and/or additional terms and conditions are located at our Website at [http://www.altova.com/legal\\_3rdparty.html](http://www.altova.com/legal_3rdparty.html) and are made a part of and incorporated by reference into this Agreement. By accepting this Agreement, you are also accepting the additional terms and conditions, if any, set forth therein.

## 11. GENERAL PROVISIONS

If you are located in the European Union and are using the Software in the European Union and not in the United States, then this Software License Agreement will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the Republic of Austria (excluding its conflict of laws principles and the U.N. Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods) and you expressly agree that exclusive jurisdiction for any claim or dispute with Altova or relating in any way to your use of the Software resides in the Handelsgericht, Wien (Commercial Court, Vienna) and you further agree and expressly consent to the exercise of personal jurisdiction in the Handelsgericht, Wien (Commercial Court, Vienna) in connection with any such dispute or claim.

If you are located in the United States or are using the Software in the United States then this Software License Agreement will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, USA (excluding its conflict of laws principles and the U.N. Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods) and you expressly agree that exclusive jurisdiction for any claim or dispute with Altova or relating in any way to your use of the Software resides in the federal or state courts of Massachusetts and you further agree and expressly consent to the exercise of personal jurisdiction in the federal or state courts of Massachusetts in connection with any such dispute or claim.

If you are located outside of the European Union or the United States and are not using the Software in the United States, then this Software License Agreement will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the Republic of Austria (excluding its conflict of laws principles and the U.N. Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods) and you expressly agree that exclusive jurisdiction for any claim or dispute with Altova or relating in any way to your use of the Software resides in the Handelsgericht, Wien (Commercial Court, Vienna) and you further agree and expressly consent to the exercise of personal jurisdiction in the Handelsgericht Wien (Commercial Court, Vienna) in connection with any such dispute or claim. This Software License Agreement will not be governed by the conflict of law rules of any jurisdiction or the United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, the application of which is expressly excluded.

This Software License Agreement contains the entire agreement and understanding of the

parties with respect to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes all prior written and oral understandings of the parties with respect to the subject matter hereof. Any notice or other communication given under this Software License Agreement shall be in writing and shall have been properly given by either of us to the other if sent by certified or registered mail, return receipt requested, or by overnight courier to the address shown on Altova's Web site for Altova and the address shown in Altova's records for you, or such other address as the parties may designate by notice given in the manner set forth above. This Software License Agreement will bind and inure to the benefit of the parties and our respective heirs, personal and legal representatives, affiliates, successors and permitted assigns. The failure of either of us at any time to require performance of any provision hereof shall in no manner affect such party's right at a later time to enforce the same or any other term of this Software License Agreement. This Software License Agreement may be amended only by a document in writing signed by both of us. In the event of a breach or threatened breach of this Software License Agreement by either party, the other shall have all applicable equitable as well as legal remedies. Each party is duly authorized and empowered to enter into and perform this Software License Agreement. If, for any reason, any provision of this Software License Agreement is held invalid or otherwise unenforceable, such invalidity or unenforceability shall not affect the remainder of this Software License Agreement, and this Software License Agreement shall continue in full force and effect to the fullest extent allowed by law. The parties knowingly and expressly consent to the foregoing terms and conditions.

Last updated: 2010-4-26

# Index

▪  
**.docx (Enterprise Edition only), 17, 31**

**.NET extension functions,**

in XPath expressions, 388

support for, in Authentic View, 388

## A

**Abbreviations,**

used in user manual, 6

**About StyleVision, 493**

**Activating the software, 492**

**Active configuration, 481**

**Adding schema, 392**

**Additional editing procedures, 316**

**Alias,**

see Global Resources, 317

**Aligning table cell content,**

in SPSs, 470

**Altova Engines,**

in Altova products, 513

**Altova Global Resources,**

see under Global Resources, 317

**Altova website, 493**

**Altova XML Parser,**

about, 512

**Altova XSLT 1.0 Engine,**

limitations and implementation-specific behavior, 498

**Altova XSLT 2.0 Engine,**

general information about, 501

information about, 500

**AltovaXML, 352, 360**

and FOP, 358, 359

**Append,**

column to table in SPS, 464

row to table in SPS, 464

**Appendices, 496**

**Assign predefined formats,**

in Quick Start tutorial, 71

**atomization of nodes,**

in XPath 2.0 and XQuery 1.0 evaluation, 505

**Authentic Browser, 25**

**Authentic Desktop, 25**

**Authentic View,**

in Altova products, 25

**Auto Hide,**

feature of Design Entry Helpers, 33

**Auto-Calculations,**

and conditions, 225

and output escaping, 287

command for inserting in design, 429

creating, editing, formatting, 216

example files, 218

examples, 231

formatting of date results, 332

how to use, 215

in Quick Start tutorial, 77

Java and :NET functions in (Enterprise edition only), 216

moving, 216

symbol in Design View, 384

updating node with value of, 429

**Automated processing, 352**

**Auto-numbering, 269**

## B

**Background Information, 510**

**backwards compatibility,**

of XSLT 2.0 Engine, 501

**Base year,**

in input formatting, 289

**Batch files,**

and PDF (Enterprise edition only), 362

and scheduled tasks, 361

and scheduled tasks (in Windows Vista), 366

and scheduled tasks (in Windows XP), 363

creating, 362

for generating files from SPS via command line, 353

**Block styles, 309**

**Blueprints for layout, 154**

**Bookmarks, 152, 275**

command for inserting in design, 438

creating and editing, 276

deleting, 276

enclosing with, 456

**Bookmarks (anchors),**  
symbol in Design View, 384

**Borders,**  
of SPS tables, 468

**Bullets and Numbering, 134, 135, 137, 435, 472**  
enclosing with, 455

**Buttons, 151**

## C

**Catalog files, 99**

**CDATA sections, 105**

**Cell (of table),**  
split horizontally, 467  
split vertically, 467

**Cells,**  
joining in SPS tables, 466

**Change To command, 164**

**character entities,**  
in HTML output of XSLT transformation, 498

**Character references,**  
and output escaping, 287

**Check boxes, 148**

**Class attributes,**  
in Quick Start tutorial, 71

**Close (SPS) command, 399**

**collations,**  
in XPath 2.0, 505

**Column,**  
append to SPS table, 464  
delete from table in SPS, 465  
insert in SPS table, 464

**Columns (of tables),**  
hiding in HTML output, 132

**Combo box,**  
in Quick Start tutorial, 80

**Combo boxes, 149**

**Command line, 352**  
and parameters, 241  
and scheduled tasks, 361  
and scheduled tasks (in Windows Vista), 366  
and scheduled tasks (in Windows XP), 363  
examples of commands, 357  
syntax, 354  
using StyleVision from, 353

**Command line utility, 24**

**Commands,**  
customizing, 482

**Companion software,**  
for download, 493

**Complex global template, 196**

**Component download center,**  
at Altova web site, 493

**Condition,**  
command for inserting in design, 441

**Conditional templates, 441**  
see under: Conditions, 220  
symbol in Design View, 384

**Conditions,**  
and Auto-Calculations, 225  
editing, 224  
enclosing with, 457  
in Quick Start tutorial, 80  
setting up, 221

**Configurations,**  
of a global resource, 318, 481

**Configurations in global resources, 330**

**Consecutive markup, 30**

**Content editing procedures, 104**

**Contents,**  
command for inserting in design, 426

**Contents placeholder,**  
in Quick Start tutorial, 60  
inserting node as contents, 105

**Context node,**  
in XPath dialog, 388

**Copy command, 415**

**Copyright information, 518**

**count() function,**  
in XPath 1.0, 498

**count() function in XPath 2.0,**  
see fn:count(), 505

**Creating new SPS document,**  
in Quick Start tutorial, 57

**Cross references, 273**

**CSS files,**  
managing in Design Overview sidebar, 36

**CSS styles,**  
in Modular SPSs, 185  
in Quick Start tutorial, 71  
see also Styles, 49

**CSS stylesheets,**  
also see Styles, 300  
external stylesheets, 300

**CSS stylesheets,**

- import precedence of external, 300
- media applied to, 300

**Custom dictionaries,**

- for SPS spell-checks, 477

**Customize dialog,**

- for customizing StyleVision, 422

**Customizing StyleVision, 482****Cut command, 415**

## D

**Database,**

- toolbar buttons for editing, 382

**Database (Enterprise and Professional editions),**

- see under DB, 3

**Databases,**

- and global resources, 329

**Data-entry devices, 145**

- menu commands for inserting, 428
- symbol in Design View, 384

**datatypes,**

- in XPath 2.0 and XQuery 1.0, 505

**Date,**

- formatting of, 289

**Dates,**

- examples of data manipulation with XPath 2.0, 331
- formatting of, 332
- how to use in SPS, 331

**DB Parameters,**

- creating and editing, 419

**Decimals,**

- formatting of, 289

**deep-equal() function in XPath 2.0,**

- see fn:deep-equal(), 505

**default functions namespace,**

- for XPath 2.0 and XQuery 1.0 expressions, 505
- in XSLT 2.0 stylesheets, 501

**Default user dictionary,**

- for SPS spell-checks, 477

**Delete,**

- column from table in SPS, 465
- row from table in SPS, 465
- table in SPS, 462

**Delete command, 415****Design elements, 376****Design Entry Helper windows,**

- docking, 33
- floating, 33

**Design Entry Helpers,**

- Auto Hide, 33
- description of, 33
- Hide, 33
- switching display on and off, 423

**Design Filters,**

- switching on and off, 424

**Design Fragment,**

- insert, 448

**Design Fragments, 208****Design Overview,**

- sidebar window, 36

**Design structure, 168****Design Tree,**

- and Modular SPSs, 185
- see also Design Entry Helpers, 33
- sidebar window, 42

**Design View, 383**

- and JavaScript Editor, 30
- description of, 30
- display of markup, 30
- symbols in SPS design, 384

**Dictionaries,**

- for SPS spell-checks, 477

**disable-output-escaping, 287****Distribution,**

- of Altova's software products, 518, 519, 521

**Docking,**

- Design Entry Helper windows, 33

**Document element,**

- definition of, 20

**Document elements (see Root elements), 170****Document node,**

- definition of, 20

**Document views,**

- in GUI, 29

**Documentation,**

- overview of, 6

**Documents,**

- opening and closing, 29

**DPI, 411****DTD,**

- declaring unparsed entities, 335

**DTDs,**

- as SPS source, 172

**Dynamic content,**

in Quick Start tutorial, 60

**Dynamic lists, 134, 137, 435****Dynamic table,**

toolbar buttons for editing, 378

**Dynamic tables, 116**

and global templates, 121

difference from appended/inserted rows, 121

headers and footers in, 121

nested dynamic tables, 121

see also SPS tables, 121

see also Tables, 128

**E****Edit menu, 415****Edit Parameters dialog, 419****Edit Template Match command, 110****Edit Xpath Expression dialog,**

see XPath dialog, 388

**Element templates,**

user-defined, 114

**Elements,**

user-defined, 114

**Enclose With menu, 450****Encoding,**

for output files, 487

**Encoding command, 411****Encoding of output documents, 411****End User License Agreement, 518, 522****Engine information, 497****Entities,**

unparsed, 335

using as URI holders, 335

**Entity references,**

and output escaping, 287

**Entry helpers in Design View,**

switching display on and off, 423

**Evaluation key,**

for your Altova software, 492

**Evaluation period,**

of Altova's software products, 518, 519, 521

**Event handlers,**

assigning functions to, 339

**Exit command, 414****F****FAQs on StyleVision, 493****Features,**

of StyleVision, 17

**File menu, 391**

command Exit, 414

File | Close, 399

File | Encoding, 411

File | New, 392

File | Open, 399

File | Print, 413

File | Print Preview, 413

File | Save Design, 404

File | Save Generated Files, 409

**File modification alerts,**

in Modular SPSs, 185

**Files,**

open recently used, 414

**Filters,**

for viewing templates selectively, 380

**Filters for design templates,**

switching on and off, 424

**Filters on node-templates, 204****Find command, 417****Find Next command, 417****Floating,**

Design Entry Helper Windows, 33

**fn:base-uri in XPath 2.0,**

support in Altova Engines, 507

**fn:collection in XPath 2.0,**

support in Altova Engines, 507

**fn:count() in XPath 2.0,**

and whitespace, 505

**fn:current-date in XPath 2.0,**

support in Altova Engines, 507

**fn:current-dateTime in XPath 2.0,**

support in Altova Engines, 507

**fn:current-time in XPath 2.0,**

support in Altova Engines, 507

**fn:data in XPath 2.0,**

support in Altova Engines, 507

**fn:deep-equal() in XPath 2.0,**

and whitespace, 505

**fn:id in XPath 2.0,**

**fn:id in XPath 2.0,**  
support in Altova Engines, 507

**fn:idref in XPath 2.0,**  
support in Altova Engines, 507

**fn:index-of in XPath 2.0,**  
support in Altova Engines, 507

**fn:in-scope-prefixes in XPath 2.0,**  
support in Altova Engines, 507

**fn:last() in XPath 2.0,**  
and whitespace, 505

**fn:lower-case in XPath 2.0,**  
support in Altova Engines, 507

**fn:normalize-unicode in XPath 2.0,**  
support in Altova Engines, 507

**fn:position() in XPath 2.0,**  
and whitespace, 505

**fn:resolve-uri in XPath 2.0,**  
support in Altova Engines, 507

**fn:static-base-uri in XPath 2.0,**  
support in Altova Engines, 507

**fn:upper-case in XPath 2.0,**  
support in Altova Engines, 507

**FO processor (Enterprise edition),**  
setting up, 24

**FO transformations, 358, 359**

**Footers,**  
adding in table, 463  
in tables, 128

**Form controls,**  
menu commands for inserting, 428

**Format strings,**  
defining for Input Formatting, 473

**Formatting,**  
also see Presentation, 284  
for tables, 128  
lists, 375  
nodes on insertion, 108  
of numeric fields, 289  
overview of procedures, 284  
predefined HTML formats, 375  
text alignment, 375  
text properties, 375  
toolbar buttons for, 375

**Formatting numbers,**  
in Auto-Numbering, 269

**Form-based designs, 153, 392**

**functions,**  
see under XSLT 2.0 functions, 503

XPath 2.0 and XQuery 1.0, 504

## G

**General usage procedure, 94**

**Generated files, 98**

**Global Resources, 317**

changing configurations, 330

copying configurations, 324

defining, 318

defining file-type, 320

defining folder-type, 323

dialog, 480

selecting configuration via toolbar, 381

toolbar, 381

using, 325, 326, 329, 330

**Global Resources XML File, 318**

**Global styles,**

see under Styles, 302

**Global templates, 194, 195, 196**

effect on rest-of-contents, 109

in Quick Start tutorial, 87

**Global types,**

in templates, 196

**Graphics,**

overview of use in SPS, 140

see also under Images, 140

**Grouping, 226**

group-by example (Persons.sps), 229

group-by example (Scores.sps), 231

**GUI,**

description of, 28

document views in, 29

Main Window of, 29

multiple documents in, 29

## H

**Headers,**

adding in table, 463

in tables, 128

**Help,**

see Onscreen Help, 491

**Help menu, 490**

**Hide,**

feature of Design Entry Helpers, 33

**Hide markup, 30****Horizontal line,**

command for inserting in design, 433  
in Quick Start tutorial, 66

**HTML import, 342**

creating a new SPS, 343  
generating files from SPS, 349  
of HTML lists, 347  
of HTML tables, 347  
schema structure, 345  
SPS design, 345

**HTML output, 98**

and image support, 143

**HTML to XML conversion, 342****Hyperlink,**

command for inserting in design, 439

**Hyperlinks, 152, 275**

and unparsed entities, 279  
creating and editing, 279  
enclosing with, 456  
linking to bookmarks, 279  
linking to external resources, 279  
locating via hyperlinks, 335  
removing and deleting, 279  
symbol in Design View, 384

**I****Image,**

command for inserting in design, 432

**Images,**

accessing for output rendering, 141  
and unparsed entity URIs, 141  
example files, 144  
in Quick Start tutorial, 66  
locating via unparsed entities, 335  
specifying URIs for, 141  
supported types, 143  
symbol in Design View, 384

**implementation-specific behavior,**

of XSLT 2.0 functions, 503

**implicit timezone,**

and XPath 2.0 functions, 505

**Import of XSLT templates,**

into SPS, 211

**Inline styles, 309****Input fields, 147****Input formatting,**

defining format strings for, 473  
of dates, 332

**Insert,**

column in SPS table, 464  
row in SPS table, 464

**Insert menu, 425**

Bullets and Numbering, 435  
Insert | Auto-Calculation, 429  
Insert | Bookmarks, 438  
Insert | Condition, 441  
Insert | Contents, 426  
Insert | Design Fragment, 448  
Insert | Horizontal Line, 433  
Insert | Hyperlink, 439  
Insert | Image, 432  
Insert | Paragraph, 431  
Insert | Rest of contents, 427  
Insert | Special Paragraph, 431

**Inserting design elements via the toolbar, 376****Integer,**

formatting of, 289

**Interface,**

see GUI, 28

**Internet usage,**

in Altova products, 517

**J****Java and .NET functions (Enterprise edition only),**

in Auto-Calculations, 216

**Java extension functions,**

in XPath expressions, 388  
support for, in Authentic View, 388

**JavaScript,**

see under Scripts, 337

**JavaScript Editor, 337, 338**

in Design View, 30

**Joining cells,**

in SPS tables, 466



## K

**Keyboard shortcuts,**  
customizing for commands, 482

**Key-codes,**  
for your Altova software, 492

## L

**last() function,**  
in XPath 1.0, 498

**last() function in XPath 2.0,**  
see fn:last(), 505

**Layout,**  
of views in the GUI, 33

**Layout Box, 446**

**Layout Boxes, 158**

**Layout Container, 446**

**Layout Containers, 154**

**Layout containers and elements, 376**

**Layout Modules,**  
steps for creating, 153

**Legal information, 518**

**License, 522**  
information about, 518

**License metering,**  
in Altova products, 520

**Licenses,**  
for your Altova software, 492

**Line,**  
in Layout Containers, 446

**Links,**  
see under Hyperlinks, 152, 275

**List properties, 472**

**Lists, 134**  
enclosing with, 455  
imported from HTML document, 347  
in Quick Start tutorial, 80

**Lists (static and dynamic), 435**

**Local styles,**  
see under Styles, 305

**Local template, 194, 195**

## M

**Main schema, 195**

**Main schema (Enterprise Edition only), 39**

**Main template, 194, 195**  
definition of, 20

**Markup tags in Design View, 30**

**Memory requirements, 511**

**Menu,**  
customizing, 482

**Menu bar,**  
moving, 28

**Microsoft Office 2007 (Enterprise Edition only), 17, 31**

**Modular SPS,**  
activating and de-activating, 185  
adding the SPS module, 185  
and CSS styles, 182, 185  
and file modification alerts, 185  
and module objects, 182  
and namespace declarations, 182  
and schema sources, 182, 185  
and Scripts, 182  
and Template XML Files, 182  
and Working XML Files, 182  
creating, 185  
effect of order on precedence, 185  
example project, 189  
overview, 180  
the SPS module to add, 185  
working with, 185

**Modules,**  
managing in Design Overview sidebar, 36

**Multiline input fields, 147**

## N

**Named templates, 194**

**namespaces,**  
adding to the SPS, 39, 95, 98, 170  
in the SPS, 39  
in XSLT 2.0 stylesheet, 501  
overview of, 42

**New command, 392**

**New features, 10**

- v2010, 11

**Node,**

- changing what it is created as, 164

**Node-templates,**

- and chaining to child templates, 204
- and global templates, 204
- and XPath filters, 204
- operations on, 204
- User-Defined, 110

**Numbering nodes automatically, 269****Numbers,**

- formatting of, 289

**Numeric fields,**

- formatting of, 289

# O

**Office Open XML (Enterprise Edition only), 17, 31****Onscreen help,**

- index of, 491
- searching, 491
- table of contents, 491

**OOXML (Enterprise Edition only), 17, 31****Open,**

- recently used files, 414

**Open (SPS) command, 399****Ordering Altova software, 492****OS,**

- for Altova products, 511

**Otherwise condition branch, 221****Output encoding, 411****Output escaping, 287****Output files,**

- generating, 98
- using command line to generate, 353

**Output Views,**

- description of, 31

# P

**Paragraph,**

- command for inserting in design, 431
- enclosing with, 454

**Parameters, 240**

- and Authentic View, 241
- and command line, 241
- creating and editing, 419
- for design fragments, 243
- for schema sources, 246
- general description, 241
- in SPS, 241
- locating nodes in in multiple documents with, 246
- managing in Design Overview sidebar, 36
- overview of user-defined parameters, 42

**Parser,**

- built into Altova products, 512

**Paste command, 415****PDF output (Enterprise edition), 98**

- and image supportt, 143

**Pixels,**

- and print media lengths, 411
- and screen resolution, 411

**Platforms,**

- for Altova products, 511

**position() function,**

- in XPath 1.0, 498

**position() function in XPath 2.0,**

- see fn:position(), 505

**Precedence,**

- of styles, 46

**Predefined format strings,**

- for input formatting, 473

**Predefined formats,**

- command for inserting in design, 431
- on inserting a node, 108
- symbol in Design View, 384

**Presentation,**

- also see Formats, Formatting, 284
- overview of procedures, 284

**Print command, 413****Print Preview command, 413****Problems with preview, 24****Processors,**

- for download, 493

**Product features,**

- listing of, 17

**Project options, 487****Properties,**

- and property groups, 51
- defining, 51
- of SPS tables, 378, 469

**Properties,**

- see also Design Entry Helpers, 33
- sidebar window, 51

**Properties Entry Helper,**

- Event group, 339

**Properties menu, 471**

- Bullets and Numbering, 472

## Q

**QName serialization,**

- when returned by XPath 2.0 functions, 507

**Quick Start tutorial,**

- Auto-Calculations, 77
- class attributes, 71
- combo boxes, 80
- conditions, 80
- contents placeholder, 60
- creating new SPS document, 57
- CSS styles, 71
- dynamic content, 60
- generating XSLT stylesheets, 91
- global templates, 87
- horizontal lines, 66
- images, 66
- introduction, 56
- lists, 80
- predefined formats, 71
- required files, 56
- rest-of-contents, 87
- setting up new SPS document, 57
- static content, 66
- static text, 66
- testing Authentic View (Enterprise and Professional editions), 91

## R

**Radio buttons, 151****Recently used files, 414****Redo command, 416****Registering your Altova software, 492****Replace command (Enterprise and Professional editions), 417****Rest-of-contents, 109**

- and global templates, 196

- command for inserting in design, 427

- in Quick Start tutorial, 87

**Right-to-left writing systems, 516****Root elements, 39****Root elements (aka document elements),**

- and schema sources, 170

- selecting for schema, 170

**Row,**

- append to SPS table, 464

- delete from table in SPS, 465

- insert in SPS table, 464

**Rows (of tables),**

- expanding/collapsing in HTML output, 132

**RTF output (Enterprise edition), 98**

- and image support, 143

## S

**Save Design command, 404****Save Generated Files command, 409****Scheduled task,**

- creating a StyleVisionBatch command as, 361, 363, 366

- StyleVisionBatch batch files in, 361, 363, 366

**Schema sources, 95, 392**

- and root elements (document elements), 170

- changing sources, 246

- managing in Design Overview sidebar, 36

- multiple in SPS (Enterprise edition), 170

- multiple sources and locating nodes, 246

- multiple sources and XPath, 246

- overview of, 42

- selecting for SPS, 170

- sidebar window, 39

**Schema Sources window,**

- see also Design Entry Helpers, 33

**Schema tree options, 487****schema-awareness,**

- of XPath 2.0 and XQuery Engines, 505

**Schemas,**

- as SPS source, 172

- user-defined, 177

**Scripts,**

- and JavaScript functions, 337

- defining JavaScript functions, 338

- in the Design Tree, 337

**Scripts,**

- JavaScript functions as event handlers, 339
- overview of, 42
- using in an SPS, 337

**Scroll buttons,**

- in Main Window, 29

**Select All command, 416****Setting up new SPS document,**

- in Quick Start tutorial, 57

**Setting up StyleVision, 24****Shortcuts,**

- customizing for keyboard, 482

**Show markup, 30****Simple global template, 196****Software product license, 522****Sorting, 234**

- example files, 237
- of groups and within groups, 226, 229, 231
- Sorting mechanism, 235
- Sort-keys, 235

**Sort-keys, 234****Source files for SPS, 95****Special paragraph,**

- command for inserting in design, 431
- enclosing with, 454

**Spell-checker,**

- in StyleVision, 476

**Spell-checker options,**

- for SPSs, 477

**Split table cell,**

- horizontally, 467
- vertically, 467

**SPS,**

- and Authentic View (Enterprise and Professional editions), 15
- and StyleVision, 15
- and XSLT stylesheets, 15
- closing, 399
- general description of, 15
- opening, 399
- reloading, 399

**SPS design overview, 96****SPS file structure, 168****SPS tables,**

- see also Dynamic tables, 116
- see also Static tables, 116

**SPSs,**

- assigning Working XML File, 410

- unassigning Working XML File, 410

**Static content,**

- in Quick Start tutorial, 66

**Static lists, 134, 135, 435, 455****Static table,**

- inserting, 462
- inserting in SPS, 378
- toolbar buttons for editing, 378

**Static tables, 116**

- see also SPS tables, 119
- see also Tables, 128

**Static text,**

- and output escaping, 287
- in Quick Start tutorial, 66

**Status bar, 422****Structure of SPS design, 168****Style Repository,**

- and external CSS stylesheets, 300
- and global styles, 302
- see also Design Entry Helpers, 33
- sidebar window, 46

**Styles,**

- and property groups, 49
- assigning CSS stylesheets to SPS, 300
- cascading order, 298
- defining, 49
- defining global styles in SPS, 302
- defining local styles, 305
- from XML data, 312
- inline and block styling, 309
- media for assigned external stylesheets, 300
- precedence of, 46
- precedence of styles, 302
- see also Design Entry Helpers, 33
- selecting components to style locally, 306
- sidebar window, 49
- terminology of, 298
- via XPath expressions, 312
- working with in StyleVision, 298

**Stylesheets,**

- also see under CSS stylesheets, 300
- also see under XSLT stylesheets, 300

**StyleVision,**

- introduction, 14
- product features, 17
- running from the command line, 353
- user manual, 3

**StyleVision Power Stylesheet,**

**StyleVision Power Stylesheet,**

see under SPS, 3

**StyleVisionBatch, 24, 352**

command line utility, 353  
examples of commands, 357  
syntax, 354

**Support for StyleVision, 493****Support options, 6****Symbols in Design View,**

of Auto-Calculations, 384  
of bookmarks (anchors), 384  
of conditional templates, 384  
of data-entry devices, 384  
of hyperlinks, 384  
of images, 384  
of predefined formats, 384  
of XML document content, 384  
of XML document nodes, 384

# T

**Table,**

adding headers and footers, 463  
append column to, 464  
append row to, 464  
cell content, 461  
delete column from, 465  
delete row from, 465  
deleting in SPS, 462  
editing properties of, 469  
headers and footers, 461  
insert column in, 464  
insert row in, 464  
inserting a static table, 462  
navigating, 461  
show/hide borders in StyleVision, 468  
vertical alignment of cell content, 470

**Table menu, 461****Table of contents,**

see under TOC, 249

**Tables,**

Close button to hide columns, 132  
creating, 434  
creating dynamic tables, 121  
creating static tables, 119  
expanding/collapsing rows, 132

formatting, 128  
headers and footers in PDF, 128  
hiding empty columns, 132  
imported from HTML document, 347  
joining cells in, 466  
overview, 116  
styles for alternate rows, 312

**Tables (SPS),**

editing of properties, 378  
toolbar buttons for editing, 378

**Tables in Design View,**

enclosing with and removing templates, 126  
representation of, 126

**Tags,**

expanding and collapsing, 420

**Technical Information, 510****Technical support for StyleVision, 493****Template,**

changing the node match for, 164  
enclosing with, 451  
inserting, 443

**Template filters, 380****Template XML File (Enterprise and Professional editions), 95**

definition of, 20

**Templates,**

enclosing table rows and columns with, 126  
removing from around table rows and columns, 126  
switching view on and off, 424  
tree of, 42

**Templates for nodes,**

see Node-templates, 204

**Temporary output document, 24****Terminology,**

used in StyleVision, 20

**Text references, 273****TOC,**

example, hierarchical and sequential, 265  
marking items for inclusion, 252  
menu commands, 447  
overview of usage, 249

**TOC Bookmarks, 252**

and levels, 257  
creating, 257  
enclosing with, 459  
wizard for, 257

**TOC items,**

constructing, 264

**TOC items,**

formatting, 264

**TOC Levels, 252, 254**

enclosing with, 459

**TOC references, 263****TOC template,**

creating and editing, 260

formatting, 264

level references in, 262

reflevels in, 262

structuring, 262

**TOCrefs,**

see under TOC references, 263

**Toolbar buttons,**

adding and removing, 374

**Toolbars, 373**

adding/removing icons in, 373

customizing, 422

Formatting toolbar, 375

Insert Design Elements toolbar, 376

moving, 28

positioning in GUI, 373

resetting, 373

Standard toolbar, 382

switching display on and off, 422

switching display on/off, 373

Table toolbar, 378

**Tools menu, 475****Type-based templates, 196****Types as processing units,**

in global templates, 196

## U

**User-Defined Elements, 114****User-Defined XML Text Blocks, 115****Undo command, 416****Unicode,**

support in Altova products, 515

**Unicode support,**

in Altova products, 514, 516

**unparsed-entity-uri function of XSLT, 335****Updating nodes (Enterprise and Professional editions),**

with an Auto-Calculation result, 215

**URIs,**

holding in unparsed entities, 335

**Usage, 94****User Interface,**

see GUI, 28

**User manual,**

see also Onscreen Help, 491

**User reference, 372****User-Defined Elements, 113, 449, 460****User-defined schemas, 177****User-defined template,**

enclosing with, 452

inserting, 444

**User-Defined Templates, 110****User-Defined Text Blocks, 113, 449**

## V

**Validator,**

in Altova products, 512

**Value formatting, 289****Variable template, 203**

enclosing with, 453

inserting, 445

**Variables, 240, 247****Version 2010 new features, 11****Vertical alignment of table cell content,**

in SPSS, 470

**Vertical text,**

in layout boxes, 158

in table cells, 128

**View menu, 421****Views,**

layout of in GUI, 33

## W

**whitespace handling,**

and XPath 2.0 functions, 505

**whitespace in XML document,**

handling by Altova XSLT 2.0 Engine, 501

**whitespace nodes in XML document,**

and handling by XSLT 1.0 Engine, 498

**Window menu, 489****Windows,**

support for Altova products, 511

**Word 2007 (Enterprise Edition only), 17, 31**

**WordML (Enterprise Edition only), 17, 31**

**Working XML File, 39, 95**

and Output Views, 31

definition of, 20

for SPS, 410

print preview, 413

printing, 413

## X

**XML,**

inserting in design, 115

**XML data,**

inserting in SPS design, 105

**XML document content,**

symbol in Design View, 384

**XML document nodes,**

symbol in Design View, 384

**XML Parser,**

about, 512

**XML Schemas and DTDs,**

as SPS source, 172

**XML tables (Enterprise and Professional editions), 116**

**XMLSpy, 25**

**XPath,**

locating nodes in multiple documents, 246

**XPath 1.0,**

and dates, 331

**XPath 2.0,**

and dates, 331

**XPath 2.0 functions,**

general information about, 505

implementation information, 504

see under fn: for specific functions, 505

**XPath dialog,**

description of, 388

**XPath expressions,**

and styles, 312

**XPath filter,**

on global templates, 196

**XPath filters on node-templates, 204**

**XPath functions,**

in XPath dialog, 388

**XPath functions support,**

see under fn: for individual functions, 507

**XPath operators,**

in XPath dialog, 388

**XPath version in SPS, 97**

**XQuery 1.0 functions,**

general information about, 505

implementation information, 504

see under fn: for specific functions, 505

**XQuery processor,**

in Altova products, 513

**xs:QName,**

also see QName, 507

**xsl:preserve-space, 498**

**xsl:strip-space, 498**

**XSLT,**

engine information, 497

inserting code fragment in design, 115

**XSLT 1.0 Engine,**

limitations and implementation-specific behavior, 498

**XSLT 2.0 Engine,**

general information about, 501

information about, 500

**XSLT 2.0 functions,**

implementation-specific behavior of, 503

see under fn: for specific functions, 503

**XSLT 2.0 stylesheet,**

namespace declarations in, 501

**XSLT files,**

generating via command line from SPS, 353

**XSLT processors,**

in Altova products, 513

**XSLT stylesheet preview,**

in Output Views, 31

**XSLT Templates, 42**

importing into SPS, 211

managing in Design Overview sidebar, 36

**XSLT transformations, 358, 359, 360**

**XSLT version,**

setting for SPS, 382

**XSLT version in SPS, 97**

**XSLTelements,**

inserting as code in design, 114